SRL
2 6 3.93
2 vols. in 1
w/t work

with 63 plates

2 Vols. in 1.

Acquired 1974
The Gift of
Mrs. Eleanor
Langley Pendleton

Reinst
Mexicot

A

GENERAL SYSTEM

OF

HORSEMANSHIP

In all it's BRANCHES:

In TWO VOLUMES.

HORSE MANSHIP

OR

GENERAL SYSTEM

IN ALL ITS BRANCHES:

BY TWO AUTHORS.

A

GENERAL SYSTEM

OF

HORSEMANSHIP

IN ALL IT'S

BRANCHES:

CONTAINING A

FAITHFUL TRANSLATION

Of that moſt noble and uſeful WORK of his Grace,

WILLIAM CAVENDISH, Duke of *Newcaſtle*,

ENTITLED,

The Manner of Feeding, Dreſſing, and Training of Horſes for the Great Saddle, and Fitting them for the Service of the Field in Time of War, or for the Exerciſe and Improvement of Gentlemen in the Academy at home: A Science peculiarly neceſſary throughout all *Europe*, and which has hitherto been ſo much neglected, or diſcouraged in *England*, that young Gentlemen have been obliged to have recourſe to foreign Nations for this Part of their Education.

WITH

All the original COPPER-PLATES, in Number forty-three, which were engrav'd by the beſt Foreign Maſters, under his GRACE'S immediate Care and Inſpection, and which are explained in the different Leſſons.

And to give all the Improvements that may be,

This Work is ornamented with HEAD-PIECES and INITIAL LETTERS, properly adapted to the ſubſequent Chapters; and enlarged with an INDEX.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for J. BRINDLEY, Bookſeller to His Royal Highneſs the Prince of WALES, in *New Bond-ſtreet*.

M.DCC.XLIII.

1743

A

GENERAL SYSTEM

OF

HORSEMANSHIP

IN

THE BRANCHES:

CONTAINING A

FAITHFUL TRANSLATION

OF that most noble and useful WORK of His Grace,

WILLIAM CAVENDISH, Duke of NEWCASTLE,

ENTITLED,

The Manner of Feeding, Dreſſing, and Training of Horſes for the Great Saddle, and Fitting them for the Service of the Field in Time of War, or for the Exercile and Improvement of Gentlemen in the Academy at Home: A Science peculiarly neceſſary throughout all Europe, and which has hitherto been ſo much neglected, or diſcouraged in England, that young Gentlemen have been obliged to have recourſe to foreign Nations for this Part of their Education.

With

All the original Copper-Plates, in Number forty three, which were engrav'd by the beſt Foreign Maſters, under his Grace's immediate Care and Inſpection, and which are explained in the different Leſſons.

This Work is enamented with Hand-Pieces and Initial Letters, properly adapted to the ſubſequent Chapters; and enlarged with an INDEX.

VOL. I.

E6640

LONDON:

Printed for J. Darby, Bookſeller to His Royal Highneſs the Prince of Wales, in Long-Acre.

MDCCXLIII.

To His GRACE

CHARLES

DUKE OF

Richmond, *Lenox*, and *Aubigny*,

Maſter of the Horſe to His Majesty, &c.

May it please your Grace,

THE Dignity of the moſt noble Author, the great Reputation of the Work, and the Office Your Grace enjoys under His Majesty, will, I hope, juſtify my laying at Your Feet, *The new Method of Dreſſing Horſes*, written by Cavendish *Duke* of Newcastle.

After having been encouraged ſome Years ago, to publiſh a New Edition of that Nobleman's Works, then

then out of print in the original *French*, and ſupported in the Undertaking by the Right Honourable the COUNTESS of OXFORD, Heireſs of that Branch of the Illuſtrious Family of CAVENDISH, who had in Poſſeſſion all her Grandfather's Plates; I was ſoon convinced, that I ſhould farther oblige the Lovers of Horſemanſhip if I procured a *Tranſlation* of the Book, and printed it with the ſame Advantages as the *Original*.

This *Tranſlation*, MY LORD, with the Addition of ſeveral ornamental Prints, is what I now offer to YOUR GRACE as the *Firſt Volume* of *A Complete Syſtem of Horſemanſhip*, a Work that, I preſume to hope, will be found no leſs curious, uſeful, and ſatisfactory to the Reader, than it has been tedious and expenſive to the *Undertaker*.

YOUR GRACE as Maſter of the Horſe, has an undoubted Claim to the Patronage of this the *Fineſt Treatiſe* of Horſemanſhip extant; it is therefore I appear, MY LORD, as an humble Suppliant that you would, on this Occaſion, take me under Your Protection, and permit me to ſubſcribe myſelf, MY LORD,

Your GRACE's *moſt obliged,*

moſt obedient, and

moſt Humble Servant,

JOHN BRINDLEY.

PREFACE of the AUTHOR.

I Make no ſcruple to ſay, that it is with the Science of Horſemanſhip as with that of Phyſick; a ſimple Theory makes only ignorant Pretenders; there muſt be Practice, long and aſſiduous Practice, to render a Man Maſter of the perfect Knowledge of Horſes, their Defects, their Diſeaſes, the Cauſes of theſe latter, and the beſt Remedies that can be applied to them. A ſhort Detail of the Employs through which I have paſſed will ſhew, that I have had more Opportunities than any Man living to perfect myſelf in this Science, concerning which I had received very ample Inſtructions from my Father, and for the Study of which I was born.

After having been a long time Riding-Maſter to the Duke du Lude, *Grand-Maſter of the Ordnance in* France, *my Father's Reputation occaſioned his being choſen, in* 1680, *to fill up the Place of Inſpector of the King's great Stable, when his Majeſty quitted* St. Germains *to go and reſide at* Verſailles. *It was at the ſame time that he put me into the Royal Academy under Meſſieurs* de Bournonville *and* du Pleſſis, *both Riding-Maſters of that Academy; and under them, and Mr.* Deno, *who ſucceeded Mr.* de Bournonville, *it was that I completed my Knowledge in all that any way regarded the Art of Riding, and the Theory of Horſemanſhip.*

The French *King's Army having entered the* Palatinate, *under the Command of his Royal Highneſs the Dauphin, I attended the Duke of* Bourbon *thither, in quality of his Riding-Maſter; and after two Campaigns, in which I had occaſion to begin the Practice of thoſe Leſſons that I had received from my Father, I was nominated Inſpector of the Stud, which the King eſtabliſhed at* St. Leger *in the Duchy of* Monfort l'Amaury. *I continued ſome Years in this Poſt, and only left it to be made Riding-Maſter to the Lieutenant-general Count* de Montchevreuil, *who was killed at the Battle of* Norwingen. *I went afterwards in the ſame Quality into the Service of the Count* de Guiſcard, *Governor of* Namur, *who ſent me into* Frizeland, *to make a conſiderable Purchaſe.*

Though I had divers Opportunities, in theſe different Poſts, to make many important Remarks, I could not help thinking that I ſtill wanted Subjects for the making of new Experiments upon theſe Animals, ſo uſeful to Mankind. To ſatisfy this Paſſion, I entered myſelf into the Train of Proviſions, and continued there to follow the Army till the Peace of Ryſwick. *What a Multitude of Experiments had I opportunity to make upon ſuch a Number of Horſes, attacked with a thouſand different Diſorders! At the Peace, the Marquis* de Courtenvaux, *eldeſt Son of Mr.* de Louvois, *made me his Riding-Maſter; and it was then that I formed him a Stud at* Montmirel *in* Brie. *I returned at laſt to practiſe under my Father in the King's great Stable, and remained there till* 1702, *when entering Riding-Maſter in* Italy, *under Lieutenant-general Count* de Medavi, *I made three Campaigns there, during which, the Mortality that prevailed among the Horſes furniſhed me with Opportunities without number to add to my former Experience in all Caſes, and make myſelf*

ſelf perfect in my Art. I then entered again into the Train, where, in quality of Inſpector-general, I had under my Direction almoſt two thouſand five hundred Horſes, which, both in Italy *and* Germany, *had among them all Sorts of Maladies.*

Theſe are the different Schools in which I perfected, by a practice of more than 27 Years, the Precepts that I had received from my Maſters, and in which I have experimentally known the Good from the Bad amongſt that prodigious Number of Remedies that ſome Authors have ſo amply collected together, often without having made trial of one, and thoſe many others that the greateſt part of our Farriers know only by Tradition, and which they apply indifferently to all Sorts of Horſes, without examining either their Conſtitution or Deſcent, (for the ſame Diſtemper muſt often be treated differently in a Spaniſh *Horſe and a* Frizeland *one) or even the true Cauſe of their Diſorder, which however ought to determine the Nature of the Remedy.*

The Work which I give the Publick therefore is compoſed of Leſſons that I had received from my Father, (who I may venture to ſay, without ſpeaking too much in his favour, was looked upon to be a very ſkilful Man) and the great Number of Experiments that I have made upon all Sorts of Subjects, and in all Sorts of Diſeaſes; and can put the well-known Probatum *at the Bottom of every Remedy, becauſe I inſert none that I have not tried more than once. For the 22 Years that I have practiſed in the illuſtrious Univerſity of* Leyden, *under the Protection of its Guardians and the venerable Magiſtrate, my Diligence has often occaſioned my being ſent for to different Parts, to reſtore Health to ſuch Horſes as ignorant Farriers had almoſt ſent to the Dogs; and I have had the good Fortune to ſucceed.*

Thoſe who make uſe of this Work may have the ſame Succeſs. It is the Labour of two Men's Lives, the Fruit of their Application and continual Study. I freely ſurrender it up to the Publick, in hopes of meeting with its Indulgence, and that I may ſpur on by it the natural Diſpoſitions of ſome others, who may in Courſe of Time make new Diſcoveries.

I might make an Article here regarding the Stile, in which this Book is writ: But I think it ſufficient to obſerve to my Readers, that I neither write as a Wit myſelf, nor for Gentlemen of Wit. Educated in the Stable, in the Stud, in the Manage, in the midſt of Horſes in the Army, I have never been a Member of the French *Academy. I write for thoſe, who, like myſelf, make it their Profeſſion to be among Horſes; it is enough that I make myſelf underſtood by them, by a proper Uſe of the Terms of Art, in which I preſume I have pretty well ſucceeded.*

CONTENTS.

Introduction. - - pag. 11

BOOK I.

Chap. i. *CErtain Queſtions anſwered, of which the firſt is, In what time a Horſe may be dreſſed? The ſecond, Why a Horſe, that goes well upon a March, ſhould not perform the Terre-à-terre, Curvets, Demi-airs, Balotades, Croupades, and Caprioles?* - 15

Chap. ii. *A Reproof to Maſters who continually beat and abuſe their Scholars*, &c. 18

Chap. iii. *Of the different Colour and Marks of Horſes.* 19

Chap. iv. *Of the Shape of a Horſe, and particularly of thoſe in foreign Countries.* 21

Chap. v. *What kind of Horſe is beſt for a Stallion, and in what manner he ought to be uſed. What Mares are the moſt proper, with the Method of proceeding to procure a good Breed.* - - 23

Chap. vi. *What is the proper Time to take a Colt from his Dam, and how he ſhould be managed afterwards.* - - 25

Chap. vii. *Of the Saddle, Stirrups, Spurs, and Bridle.* - 26

Chap. viii. *Of the Method of breaking Colts.* - 27

BOOK II.

Chap. i. *Of the true Seat and the neceſſary Actions of a good Horſeman.* 29

Chap. ii. *Of the Movements of a Horſe in all his natural Paces.* 30

Chap. iii. *Of the artificial Movements of a Horſe's Legs.* 32

Chap. iv. *My Method in faſtening the Reins of the Caveſon.* 35

Chap. v. *How a raw Horſe ought to be treated at firſt to make him trot to the right Hand in a large Circle*, &c. - - ibid.

Chap. vi. *When and in what Manner a Horſe ſhould be galloped.* 38

Chap. vii. *Of the Method of ſtopping a Horſe.* - - 39

Chap. viii. *A new Method of working a Horſe's Croupe to the right Hand.* 41

Chap. ix. *The Method of working a Horſe's Croupe to the left Hand.* 42

Chap. x. *A new and true Way to work the Croupe of a Horſe upon a Walk, which is the Action of the Trot, the Croupe to the Center, which is the Pillar.* ibid.

Chap. xi. *To work a Horſe upon his Paſſage upon a Walk, which is the Action of a Trot, to the left Hand.* - - 43

Chap. xii. *To work to the right Hand, the Horſe's Croupe out.* 44

Chap. xiii. *To work to the left Hand, the Horſe's Croupe out.* 45

Chap. xiv. *To work a Horſe to the right in his own Length upon a Walk or Paſſage, which is the Action of the Trot.* - 46

Chap. xv. *To work a Horſe to the left in his own Length upon a Walk or Paſſage, which is the Action of the Trot.* - 47

Chap. xvi. *A new and exact Method of making a Horſe go Terre-à-terre, with Obſervations never made before.* - 48

Terre-à-terre towards the right Hand. - 51

Chap. xvii. *Terre-à-terre to the left Hand.* - ibid.

Chap. xviii. *The Method of putting a Horſe between two Pillars after the old Faſhion.* - - 53

Chap. xix. *An excellent Leſſon for all Horſes, as well thoſe that are heavy upon the Hand, as thoſe that are light.* - ibid.

Chap. xx. *How to make a Horſe obey the Bridle.* - 54

Chap. xxi. *For Terre-à-terre to the right Hand, the Caveſon being faſten'd to the Pommel of the Saddle, and the Bridle in the left Hand.* pag. 55
Chap. xxii. *To work a Horſe with falſe Reins.* - 56
Chap. xxiii. *To work a Horſe with the Bit only, the Reins ſeparated in both Hands* 57
Chap. xxiv. *To work a Horſe with the Reins of the Bridle only in the left Hand, which is the Perfection of Horſemanſhip,* &c. 58
Chap. xxv. *To work a Horſe Terre-à-terre, with the Bridle only in the left Hand.* 59
Terre-à-terre to the right Hand. - 60
Chap. xxvi. *For Paſſades along the Wall with the Bridle only, and many other Inſtructions.* - - 61
In Terre-à-terre Relevé a Horſe ought to go according to the Figure. 64
Chap. xxvii. *Three Leſſons to work, and I may ſay to perfectly finiſh a Horſe for the Manage.* - - 65
Chap. xxviii. *For Terre-à-terre.* - - 66

BOOK III.

Teaching how to dreſs a Horſe in all ſorts of Airs, by a new Method.

Chap. i. *Of the ſeveral Sorts of Airs.* - - 68
Chap. ii. *The new Method of the Pillar for all Airs, and firſt for the right Hand.* 71
Chap. iii. *For the Volts to the right Hand, the Horſe as he was before, with the right Rein of the Caveſon faſtened ſhort to the Pillar.* - 72
Chap. iv. *To work a Horſe in Curvets backwards upon the Volts to the right Hand, with the Rein of the Caveſon faſten'd ſhort as it was before.* 73
Chap. v. *To work a Horſe ſideways with the right Rein faſtened ſhort as it was before.* - - ibid.
Chap. vi. *The new Method of the Pillar for Airs to the left Hand.* 74
Chap. vii. *For the Volts to the left Hand, the Horſe being faſten'd to the Pillar with the left Rein, as he was before.* - 75
Chap. viii. *To work a Horſe in Curvets upon the Volts backwards to the left Hand,* &c. - - - 76
Chap. ix. *To wonk a Horſe ſideways, the Rein being faſtened ſhort as it was before.* - - - - ibid.
Chap. x. *To faſten the Horſe to the Pillar with the right Rein ſhort, holding the long one in Hand. He ſhould now be mounted.* 78
Chap. xi. *The Method of faſtening a Horſe ſhort to the Pillar with the left Rein, holding the long Rein in your Hand,* &c. - - 79
Chap. xii. *For Curvets upon the Volts to the right Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar.* 80
Chap. xiii. *For Curvets upon the Volts to the left Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar.* 81
Chap. xiv. *Of the Aids for Curvets, and the Horſeman's Seat.* 82
Chap. xv. *To change in Curvets upon the Volts.* - - 83
Chap. xvi. *Some more excellent Obſervations for Curvets.* - - 84
Chap. xvii. *Of the proper Helps, in Curvets upon the Volts.* - ibid.
Chap. xviii. *To work a Horſe in Curvets backwards upon the Volts.* 85
Chap. xix. *To work in Curvets along a Wall, the Wall on the left Side.* ibid.
Chap. xx. *To make a Horſe go backwards in Curvets by a Wall in a ſtrait Line, the Wall on the left Side.* - - - 86
Chap. xxi. *To make a Horſe go ſtrait forwards in Curvets by a Wall, the right Side to the Wall.* - - - - 87
Chap. xxii. *To make a Horſe go backwards in a ſtrait Line by a Wall in Curvets, the right Side ſtill to the Wall.* - - - - ibid.

Chap.

Chap. xxiii. *For Caprioles.* - - - - - - pag. 87
Chap. xxiv. *To dreſs a Horſe for the Balotade.* - - - 88
Chap. xxv. *To dreſs a Horſe for the Croupade.* - - - - ibid.
Chap. xxvi. *To dreſs a Horſe for a Step and a Leap.* - ibid.
Chap. xxvii. *The proper Helps for a leaping Horſe, either forwards or upon the Volts, in Caprioles, Croupade, Balotades,* &c. *and how the Rider is to be ſeated.* 89
Chap. xxviii. *Of the Helps with the Bridle-Hand.* - - 91
The Helps with the Bridle for Caprioles, Croupades, and Balotades. - - - - - - - - - 92
Chap. xxix. *Of the Helps of the Body.* - - - - ibid.
Chap. xxx. *Of the Helps with the Switch.* - - - - 93
The Helps with the Switch in Curvets and Demi-Airs. ibid.
Chap. xxxi. *A new Invention for putting a Horſe upon his Haunches,* &c. 95

BOOK IV.

Which treats of all the Vices belonging to Horſes, and the ſureſt Ways to cure them.

Chap. i. *Leſſon the Firſt, to work a Horſe's Shoulders.* - - 98
Chap. ii. *To make a Horſe obey the Heel.* - - - 100
Chap. iii. *How a Horſe's Croupe or Shoulders are to be worked occaſionally.* 102
Chap. iv. *To work a Horſe, the Croupe either in or out.* - - 103
Chap. v. *The abſurd Fault of ſome Horſemen, who by ſeeing imitate, and imagine they ride as I do.* - - - - - - 103
Chap. vi. *The way I took to reduce a Horſe, that was extremely reſty.* 105
Chap. vii. *Of the Correction and Cure of ſeveral Vices.* - 106
Chap. viii. *For a Horſe that is too light in the Hand, or which has not a good Appuy.* - - - - - 107
Chap. ix. *For a Horſe that is heavy on the Hand.* - - 109
Chap. x. *For a Horſe that is heavy in Hand, who will obey neither the Hand nor the Heel,* &c. - - - - - - - - 110
Chap. xi. *Containing certain Obſervations.* - - - 111
Chap. xii. *When a Horſe is ſo ſtiff-necked that he will not look into the Volt, nor turn his Head, or his Neck,* &c. - - - - ibid.
Chap. xiii. *Three Leſſons which are very efficacious, and moſt excellent in Terre-à-terre and Curvets. I call theſe the Rule of Three, or Golden Rule.* 112
Chap. xiv. *A very ſubtile and exact Rule to make a Horſe go Terre-à-terre truly, or in Curvets, by which, when he fails, the true Cauſe may be known.* 113
Chap. xv. *Another Poſture for a Horſeman in Curvets and Terre-à-terre.* 115
Chap. xvi. *To work a Horſe with his Head to the Pillar, to make him ſenſible to the Heel, and put him upon the Haunches.* - - - ibid.
Chap. xvii. *To work a Horſe's Croupe to the left, the Croupe being to the Pillar.* 116
Chap. xviii. *A Diſcourſe concerning the ſingle Pillar the old way, which is very falſe for Terre-à-terre.* - - - ibid.
Chap. xix. *A Diſcourſe concerning the two Pillars.* - - 117

THE EPITOME OF HORSEMANSHIP.

Chap. i. *How to ride a Horſe with Art. Firſt, of the many Uſes to be made of the inner Rein of the Caveſon, faſtened to the Pommel of the Saddle.* 118
Chap. ii. *The Rein of the Caveſon being ſtill fixed to the Pommel, to work the Shoulders and the Croupe together,* &c. - - - ibid.

Chap.

Chap. iii. *To put the Croupe to the Pillar, and work upon a Walk with the Leg and the contrary Rein, which should still be fastened to the Pommel of the Saddle.* p. 119
Chap. iv. *To passage a Horse in his own Length, the Rein still fastened to the Pommel of the Saddle.* - - - - - - 120
Chap. v. *The Rein of the Caveson should be still fixed to the Pommel and the Head to the Wall, working with the Rein with the contrary Leg.* ibid.
Chap. vi. *To fasten the inward Rein of the Caveson to the Pommel, and work with the Rein and the Leg on the same Side.* - - - ibid.
Chap. vii. *A true Observation as to the Walk, the Trot, the Gallop upon one Piste in a Circle; the Passage, either the Head or the Croupe to the Pillar; Terre-à-terre, the Croupe to the Pillar,* &c. - - 121
Chap. viii. *Which contains a true Observation for dressing Horses.* 122
Chap. ix. *To make a Horse obey the Heels.* - - 123
Chap. x. *To work the Croupe of a Horse before his Head, or his Shoulders, upon a Circle, is extremely wrong; unless upon the most urgent Necessity,* &c. ibid.
Chap. xi. *The Perfection of Terre-à-terre.* - - 124
To change Terre-à-terre. - - 125
To change upon the Gallop à la Soldade. - ibid.
Chap. xii. *The Conveniencies and Inconveniencies of the Caveson-Rein tied short my Way to the Pommel of the Saddle.* - - ibid.
The Inconvenience in Terre-à-terre from the inner Caveson-Rein tied to the Pommel of the Saddle. - - 126
Chap. xiii. *For the Piroüette.* - - 127
Chap. xiv. *For Passades.* - - ibid.
Chap. xv. *For Curvets.* - - - ibid.
For Curvets along a Wall. - - 128
Chap. xvi. *Of the different Helps of the inner Rein of the Caveson (or false Rein) in the Rider's Hand.* - - ibid.
Chap. xvii. *Of the Use of the two Reins of the Bridle.* - 129
Concerning Bits. - - ibid.
The Conclusion to the Reader. - - 133

ADDITIONS.

After this Work of mine was all printed some very necessary Lessons came to my Mind, which I give you here in Form of Appendix, or Additions, and particularly recommend them to your Study. They treat of the Actions of a Horse's Legs; for without a perfect Knowledge of these, it is impossible for any Man to dress a Horse well, unless by mere Chance.

The Gallop of a Horse in a Circle. - - 134
For Terre-à-terre upon Volts. - - 135
Remarks with regard to the Bridle-Hand. - - 136
Lessons to make a Horse attend to, and obey, both Hand and Heel. 137
Of the Spur. - - - 139
The Aid of the Spur called Pinching. - - ibid.
Of fastening the inner Rein of the Caveson to the Pommel of the Saddle. ibid.
For a resty Horse. - - - 140
For a Horse that runs away. - - ibid.
Of the Imperfections of a Horse's Mouth. - - ibid.
For Terre-à-terre. - - ibid.
Curvets upon Volts. - - - 141
In Passades. - - ibid.

LA BATAILLE GAIGNEE.

Abr. a Diepenbeeke delineavit
Petr. Clouwet sculpsit
1.

Apres l'homme le
Eſt rendu par ce S
Par cette Methode,
Qu'on voit aiſemen
Son aſſiette ſi-belle,
Tout à la negligen
Nous ſont un argu
Qu'il eſt à ſes ta
Et que tous les Ch
Puis qu'ils luy obeï

S'il montoit u
Ce Diable jroit

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.

plus noble animal,
si juste et si égal,
le monde admire,
sujet de Son Empire.
si secrettes;
re si bien-faittes,
és valide et puissant,
Bride obeïssant,
nt assujettis à sa loÿ;
ume à leur propre ROY.

ble tres-robuste,
s Airs fort Iuste.
M. D. V.

Petr. van Lisebetten sculpsit. 2.

NEWCASTLE
Qui te fait tri
Qui au choc f
Dedans les co
Dedans tes ce
Quand tu mon
Puis que tu do
Et que tous e

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineavit *Petr. Clouwet sculpsit.*

rce de ton genie,
la Cavalerie;
ur l'amour de la gloire,
orte la victoire.
fais que conjurer,
ux, que Philosopher;
queux, et le sage,
te font hommage.
V.

Il monte avec la main, les éperons, et gaule
Le Cheval de pegase qui volle en Capriole;
Il monte si haut qu'il touche de sa teste les Cieux
Et par ses merveilles ravit en extases les Dieux.
Les Chevaux corruptibles qui là bas sur terre sont
En Courbettes, demi-airs, terre à terre vont
Avec humilité soumission et bassesse.
L'adorer comme Dieu, et auteur de leur adresse.

M. D. V.

4.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delinc. aut. et Pet. Clouwet sculpsit.

CHARLES LE SECOND
ROY DE LA GRANDE
BRETAGNE

Que Pallas soit vôtre guide, Cupidon vôtre
Mars le Capitaine qui conduise vôtre
Que votre propre monture soit le Pega
Et Mercure, comme laquay, toûjours a
Que la Fortune soit en votre seul pouvoi
Elle, qui sur nos testes est jusques icy

Abr: van Diepenbeeck inu: C. Caukercken fecit.

age,
ge;
e,
e côte
ise;
se.

WELBECK.

La Maison de WELBECK *appartenant à Monseigneur le Marquis de* NEWCASTLE, *le quel est dans la Province de* NOTTINGHAM.

Paragon un Barbe.

6.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineavit.
Petr. van Lisebetten sculpsit.

WELBECK.

Wicpenbeeck del:

Le Superbe Cheval De Spanie.
Evan Caukercken fecit.

La boutique du Marechall.

Le Manege co

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineauit.
Lucas Vorstermans iunior sculpsit.

CK.

é de bois large de 40 pieds, longe de 120 pieds.

ia un Turke.

L'Ecurie voutée de pierre, les piliers de pierre, la mangeoire de pierre, à l'Italienne, et une fontaine qui coule le long de la mangeoire, et se rend dans une voute au dessous ou coule un petit ruisseau. Contre la teste de Chaque Cheval il y a une petite cheminée pour l'haleine du Cheval, laquelle s'ouure ou se ferme, selon la chaleur, ou froideur; Elle est pauée de pierre de taille.

A. Dipenbeeck del. Corn. van Caukercken fecit.

Nobilissimo Coursier Napolit

CK.

Grenier de l'Ecurie.

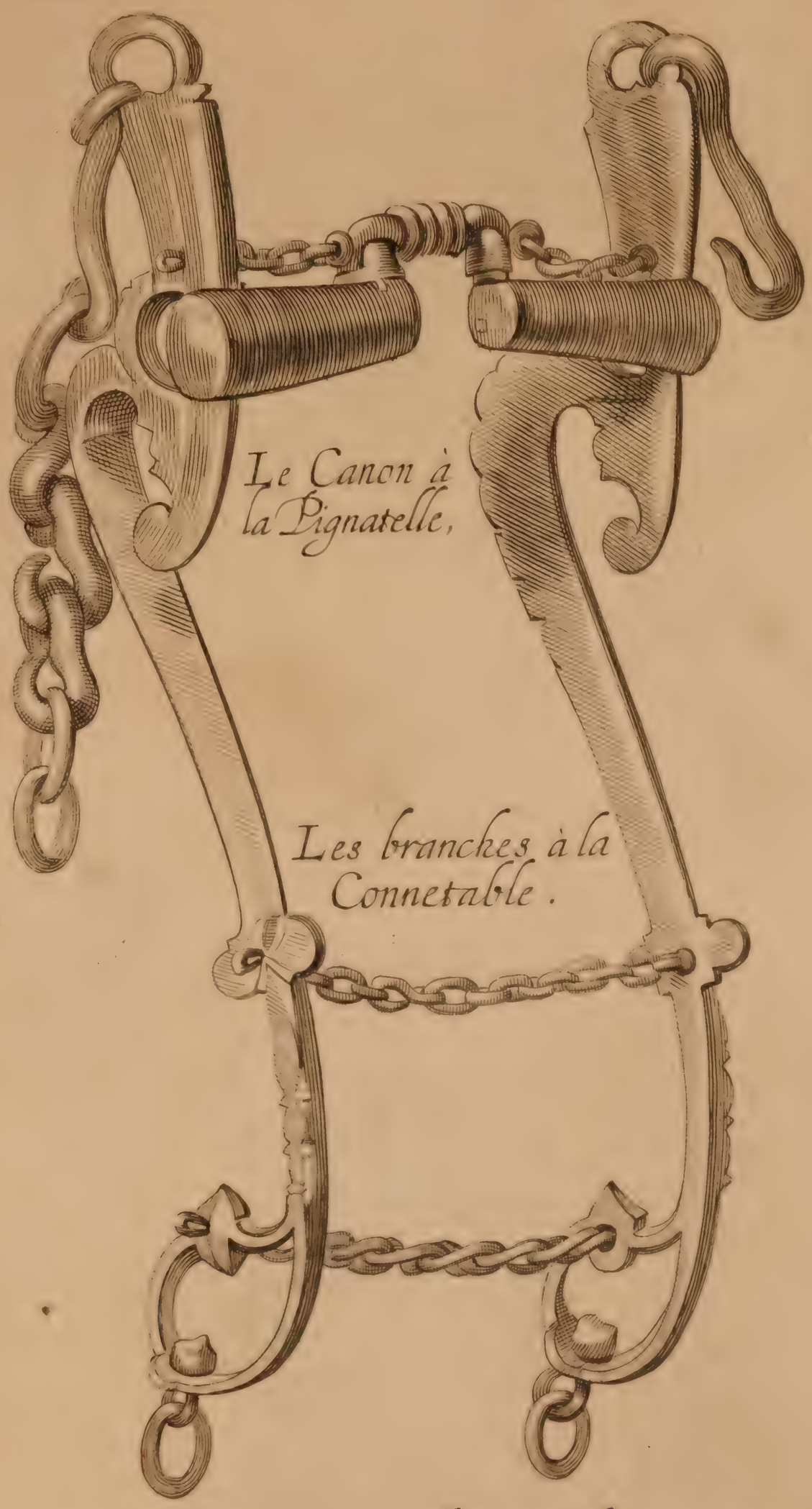
Il y a d'autres quatre-vint Ecuries pour Chevaux.

Rubecan un Rouſin.

Mr. a Dagerbele Schoone Peter Clouet, Belgae

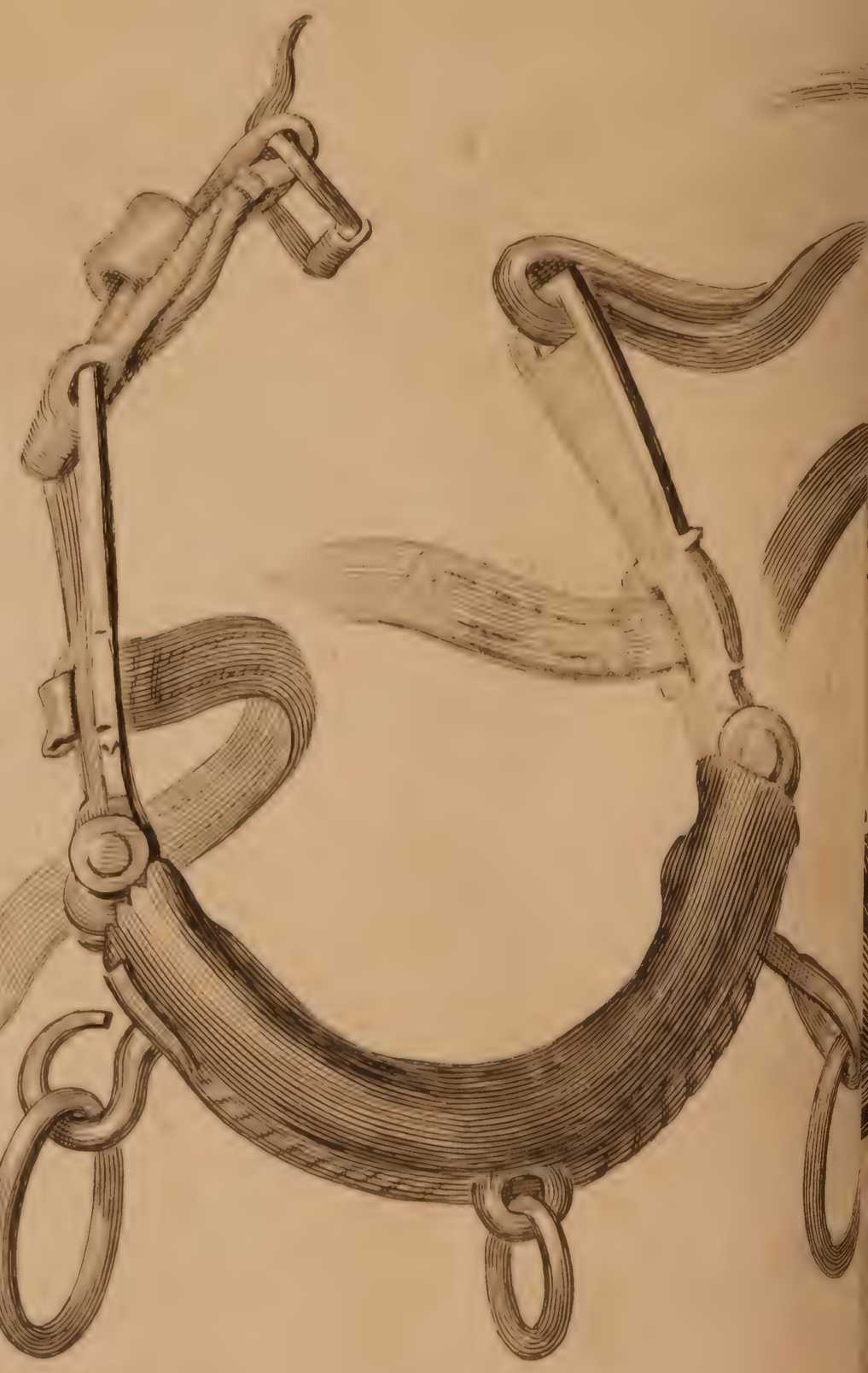
les Haras.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delin. Lommelin sculp.



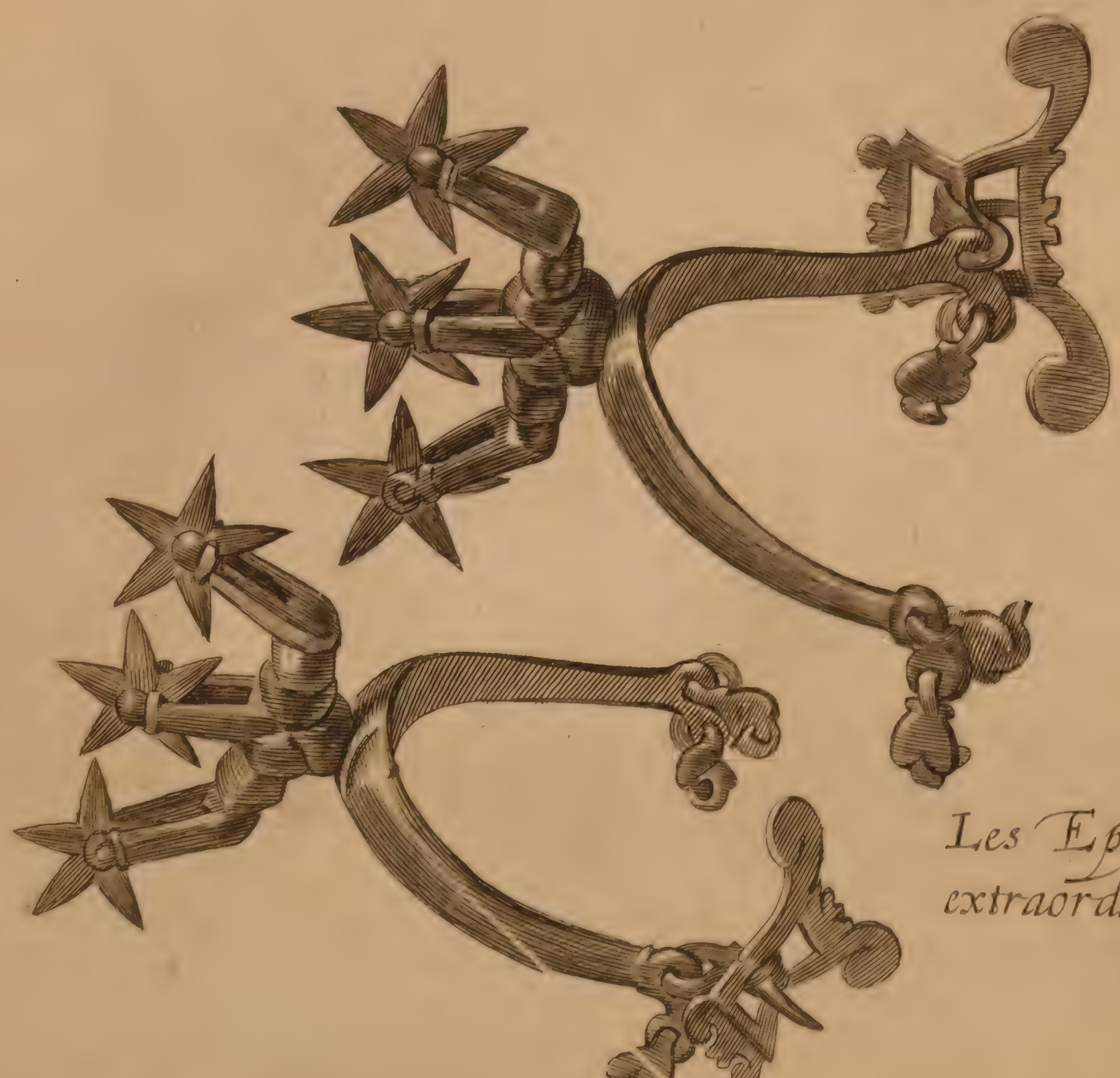
Le Canon à la Pignatelle.

Les branches à la Connetable.



Le Cavesson ordinaire.

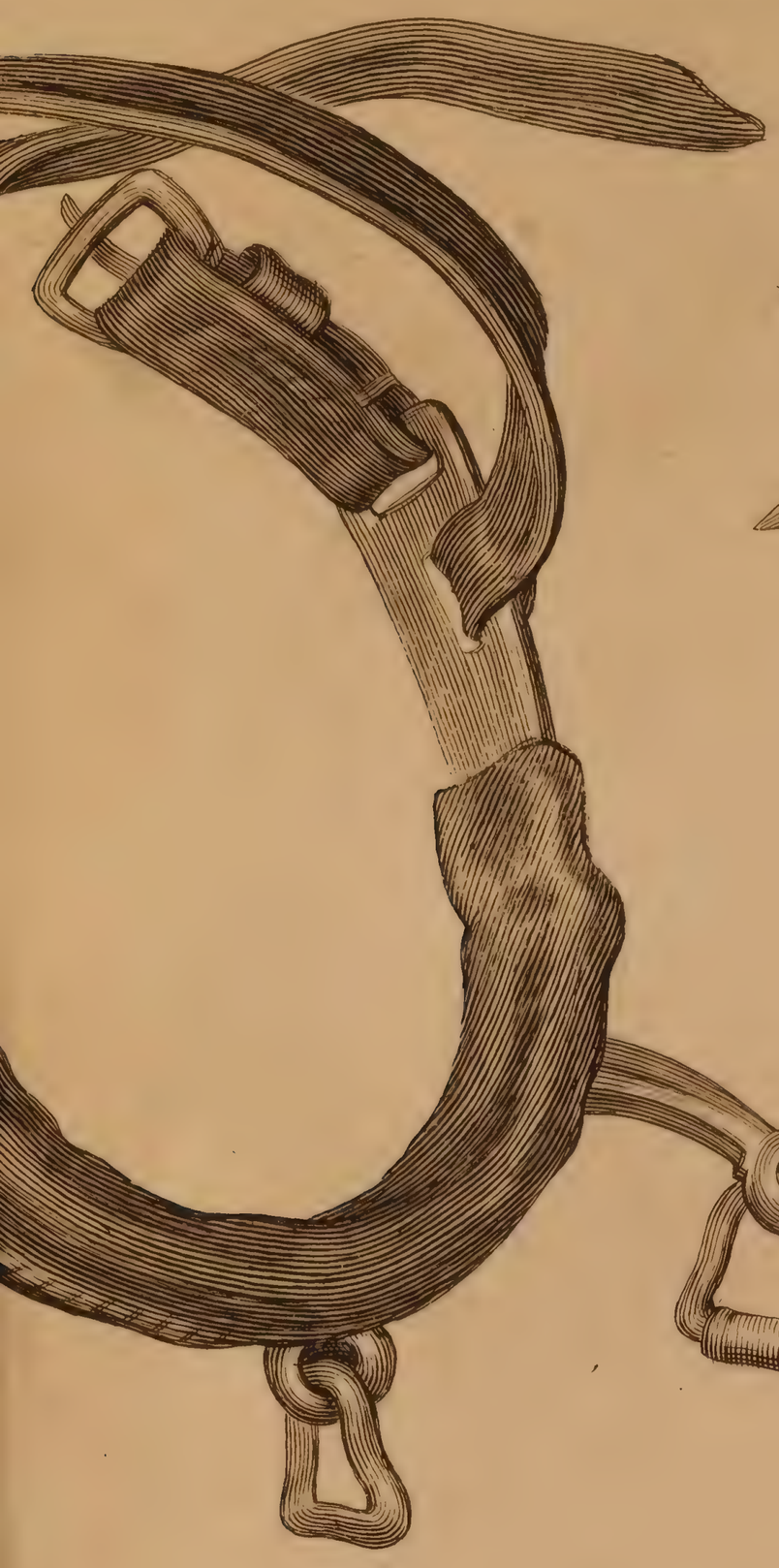
Ces éperons extraordinaires doivent être fort piquants, Contre la vieille opinion; Car il faut luij donner le farein. Qui plus est, rien n'a tant de pouvoir sur un Cheval rétif, que de luij pi extraordinaires. Vos éperons ordinairs doivent pourtant être piquants, affin que les côtés de l'e La chambriere est trop lourde, et le nerf est encore pire; mais il sentira une bonne leç



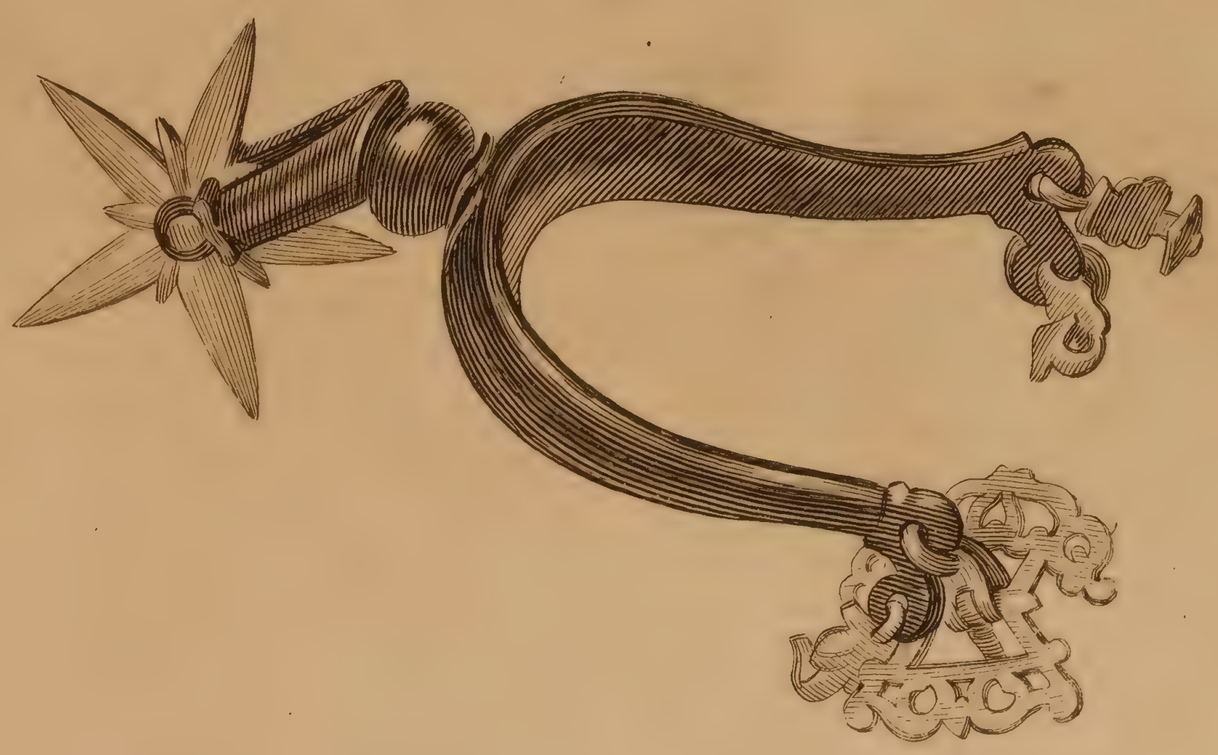
Les Eperons extraordinaires.

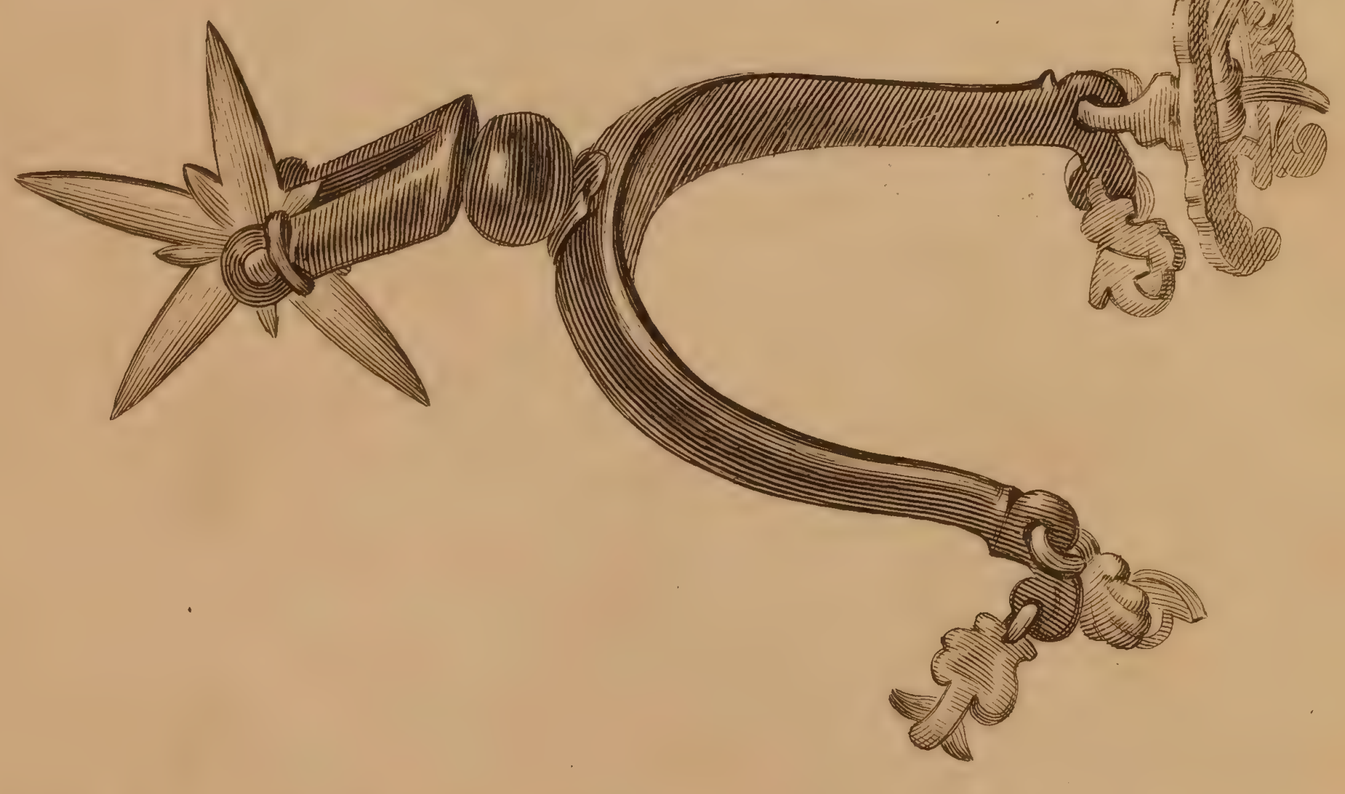
Voicij la plus ex

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.



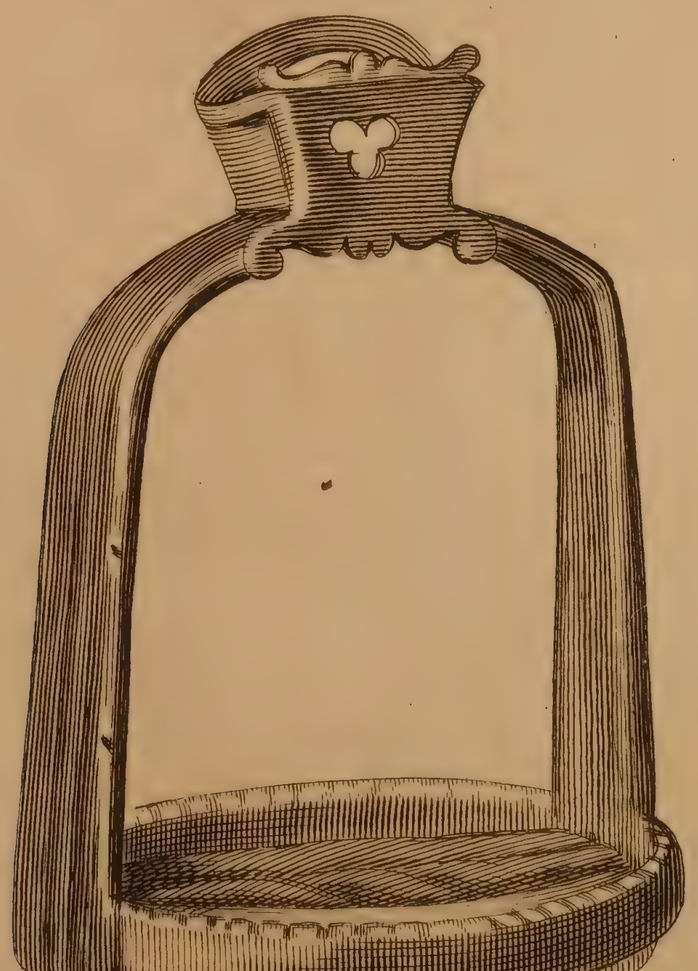
La meilleure sorte d'Eperons.

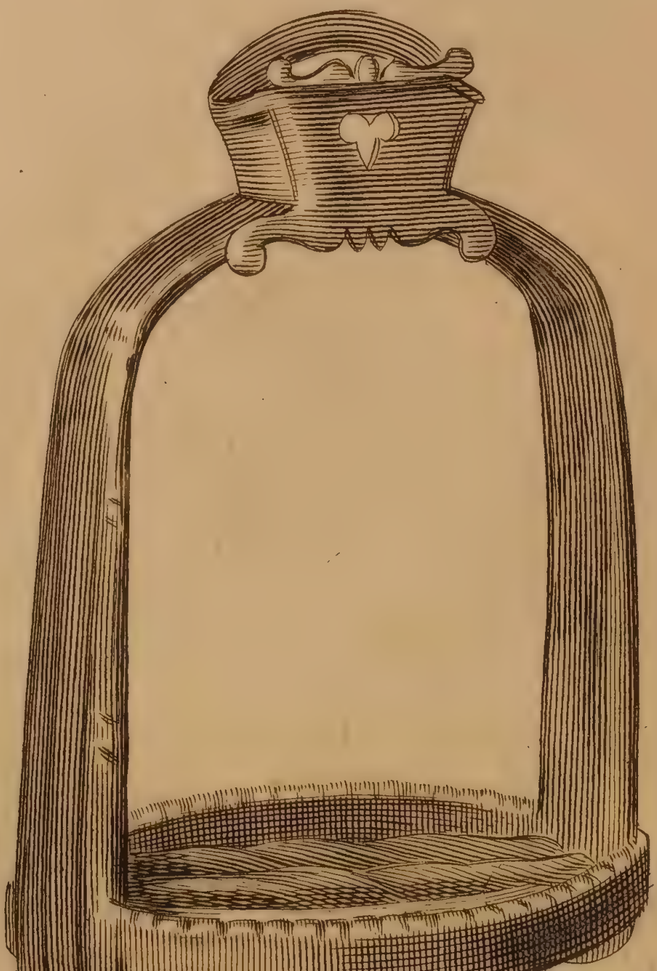




esson extraordinaire pour donner
à un cheval qui à le coû roide.

Seigner les côtés d'un Cheval, que de les faire enfler avec des éperons mouslés, qui pourroient
n peu ses côtés; Il faut donc des éperons aigus mais ces éperons ne sont que pour des occasions
i cuisent; Car le Cheval, de quelque pais que ce soit, qui ne peut souffrir les éperons, ne vaut à rien.
sang en viendra.





La meilleure sorte d'Etriés.

qui puisse être.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior sculpsit.

Monseigneur le Marquis
estant à cheval, pour
mõntrer la vraije assiette
du Cavallier.

Le cheval étant sur son
plan naturel, pour faire
voir la plus parfaitte
posture du Cavallier.

M. Housley.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineauit
Lucas Vorsterman excudit

La rêne du Cauezon dedans la volte,
et la Iambe dedans la volte, toutes deux
de mesme côté, pour trauailler et assouplir
les épaules sur le cercle large du trot,
et la teste du Cheual contre le pillier.

Le galop a Gauche.

Le pas a Gauche.

Trot a Gauche

Le Capitaine Mazin monte,
et
Monseigr. le Marquis donne leçon

Le vray galop a Droicte.

Au pas a Droicte.

Trot a Droicte.

Lucas Vorstermans junior fecit aqua forti.

Parade du trot pour
La Main Gaucke.

Page ..

Parade au Galop pour la Main Gaucke.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delin.

Parade du trot pour
La Main Droicte.
Le Capitane Mazin a Cheual

Parade du Galop pour la Main Droicte.

Theod. van Kessel fecit aqua forti.

16.

Pour aller auec la reine du Cauesson,
dedans la Volte, et la Jambe dehors,
la Volte, reines, et Jambes contraires,
pour trauailler les espaulles et
croupe ensemble.

Pour

Au pas, a sa Longueur
et Droict.

La Croupe au Mur
au Pas et Courbettes

La Croupe au Mur
au Pas et Courbettes

Le Deuxiesme dessein [illegible] au Galop et Droict au But

Le Capitaine Mazin monte, et Monseigneur le Marquis donne leçon.

Au pas, à sa Longeur, à Gauche

La teste contre la muraille, a Gauche, au pas

Monseigneur le Marquis.

a Gauche, au pas.

La teste contre la muraille, a Droite, au pas.

Pour travailler avec la réne du cauesson dedans la volte et dans la main, et la jambe hors la volte, sur le terre à terre, a droite et à gauche.

Terre à terre, à Main droite.

Terre à terre, la teste contre la muraille, à Main gauche.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineavit.

Le Capitaine Mazin etant a Cheval,

Monseigneur le Marquis donne leçon.

Terre à terre, à Main gauche.

Marquis.

Terre a terre la teste contre la muraille
a Main droite.

Petr. Clouwet sculpsit.

La reene du Cauesson attachée au pommeau de la selle pour donner le pli au Cheual et pour trauailler les Carrés et la gourmette sur le trot et galop et Terre a terre larges

Le trot à Droite sur le cercle Large

La croupe au pilier de pas à Droite.

Le terre a terre à Droite de sa Longueur.

ûer à Dieppe rière Lhonneur.

Le Capitaine Mazin monte
et
Monseigneur le Marquis donne le Caru.

Le galop à Droite, sur le cercle Large.

Mr. Procter

La teste au pilier, à Droite.

Le terre à terre, à Gauche.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti.

Les rênes de la Bride Separées dans les deux mains, pour faire sentir la Bride, tant à main Droite qu'à Gaucke.

De pas, à Main droite de sa longueur.

De pas la croupe au Pilier, à Main droite

Terre à terre, à Main droite de sa longeur.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineavit.

Monseigneur le Marquis étant à cheual,
et
Le Capitaine Mazin à pied.

De pas a Main Gauche, de sa longueur.

Mazin.

De pas la teste au Pilier, à droite.

Terre à terre, à Main gauche.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti.

Les renes dans la main, tant
au passage que sur les croupes
terre a terre tant la teste au pulier
que la croupe au pulier.

La croupe au
pulier a Droite.

Terre à terre à droite.

Terre à terre à Droite de sa Longueur.

C. a Diepenbeke delin.

Monseigneur le Marquis etant à Cheval,
et
Le Capitaine Mazin à pié.

Terre à terre à gauche.

Mazin.

Terre à terre à Gauche de sa Longueur.

21.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti.

Pl. 6

Passades au Petit Galop,
la demy-volte à Main Gauche.

Passades à toute Bride la demy-
volte à Main Gauche.

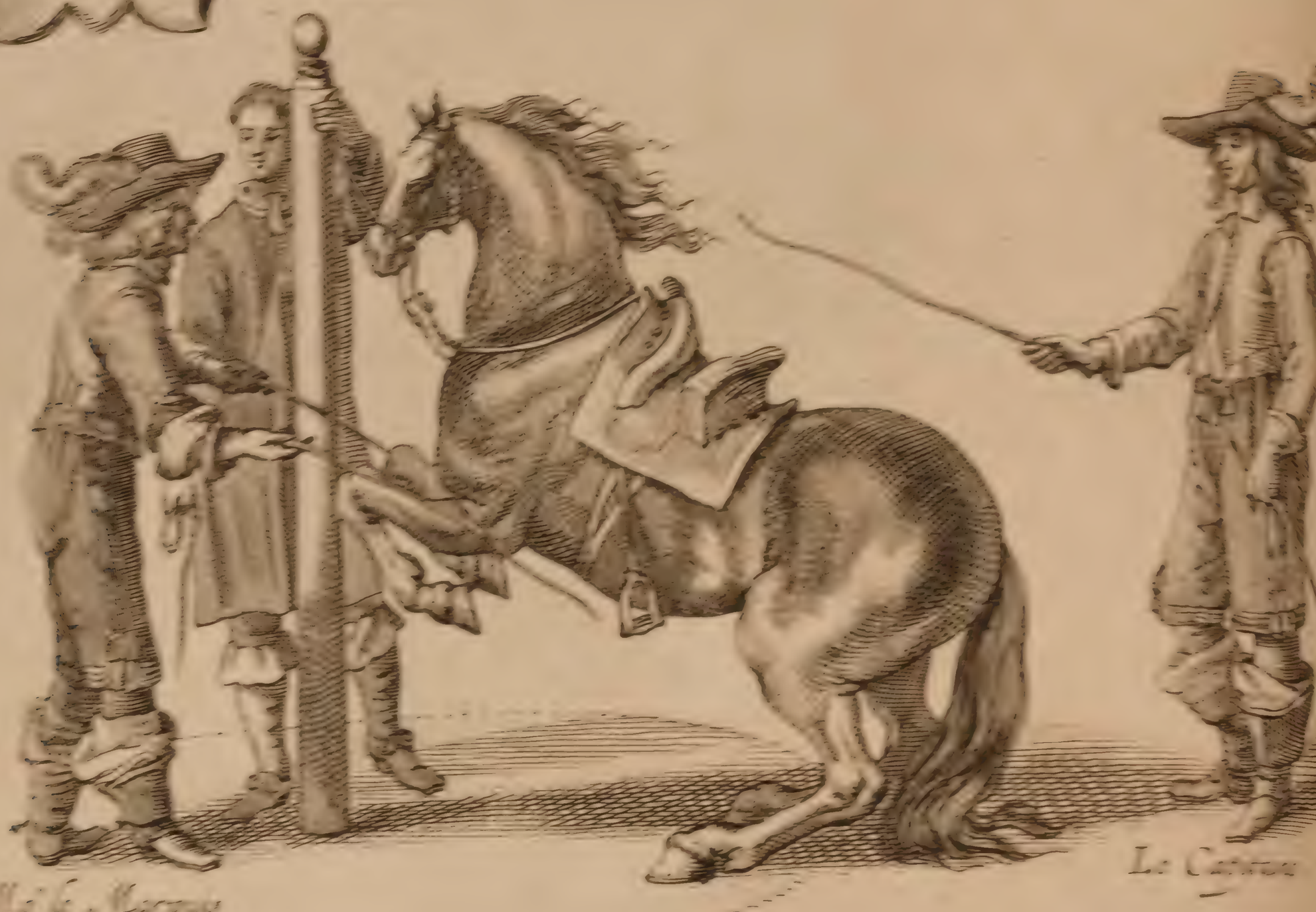
Aux Imprimeurs Libraires

Monseigneur le Marquis étant à Cheval.
Passades au Petit Galop,
la demij-volte à Main Droite.

Passades à toute Bride, la demij-
volte à Main Droite.

Theod: van Kessel fecit aqua forti

La Nouë courbettes sur les
deux a Droite et sur les
deux a Droite



Mgr le Marquis

La Carriere

Courbettes de ferme a ferme, a Droite

Le Carriere

Mgr le Marquis

Dufresnoy

Courbettes en arriere, sur les croupes, a Droite.

Sur a Degrabin Libraire

Le Cheual seul, sans personne dessus.
Monseigneur le Marquis travaille,
estant à pied, et le Capitaine
Mazin luy aÿde.

Mg^r. le Marquis.

Le Capitaine.

Courbettes sur les voltes, à Droite.

Mg^r. le Marquis.

Le Capitaine.

Palfrenier

Courbettes de côté, à Droite.

Theod. van Kessel fecit aqua forti.

La nouvelle invention pour les airs à Courbettes de ferme à ferme sur les voltes à Gauche et en arriere et de côté à Gaucke.

Le Capitaine

Mgr. le Marq.

Courbettes sur les voltes a Gaucke

Le Capitaine.

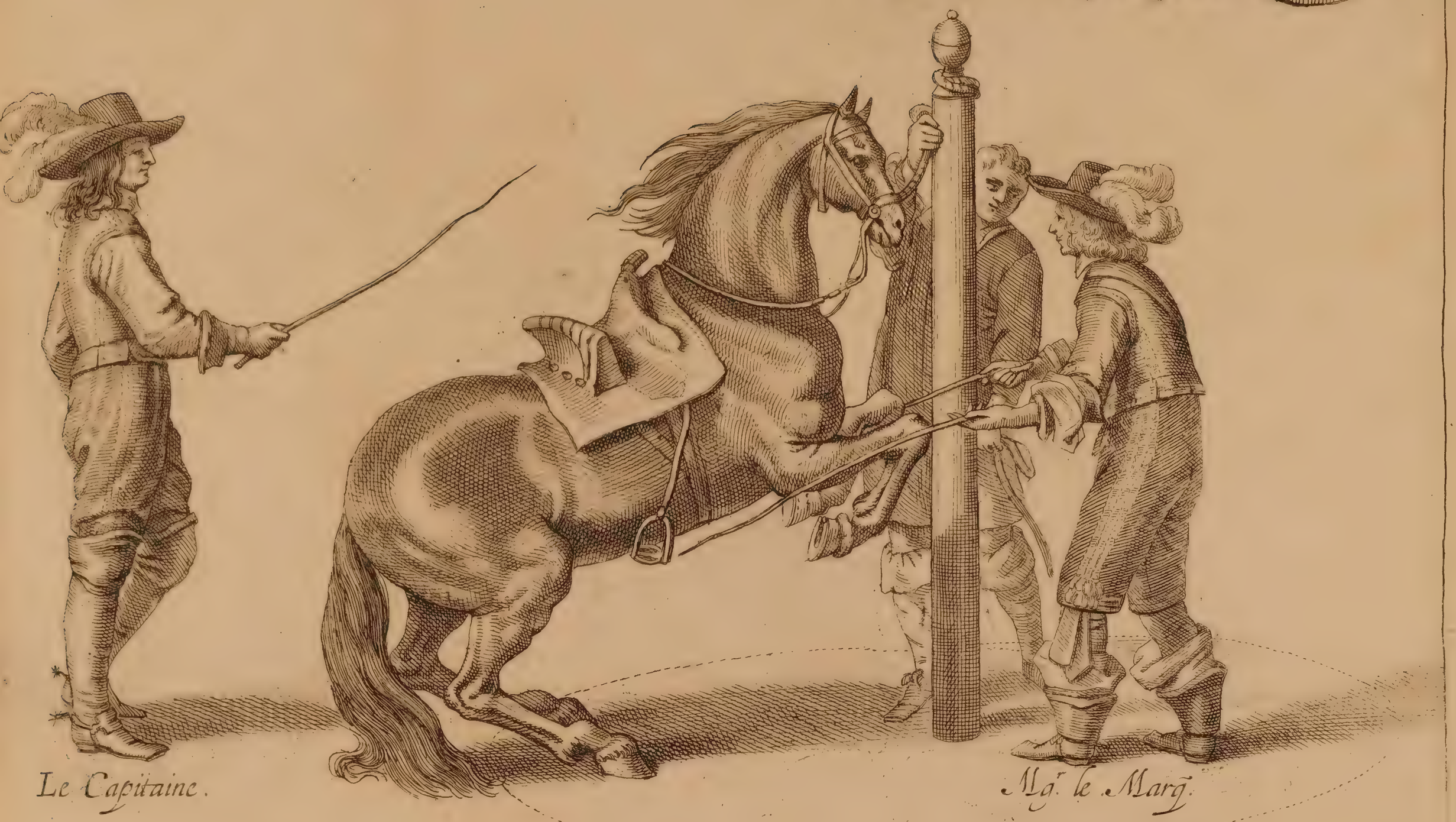
Mgr. le Marq.

Palfrenier

Courbettes de côté à Gaucke.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.

Le Cheval seul, sans personne dessus.
Monseigneur le Marquis trauaille,
estant à pied, et le Capitaine
Mazin luj aÿde.



Le Capitaine.

Mg.r le Marq.

Courbettes de ferme à ferme, à Gauche.

Passrenier.

Mg.r le Marq.

Courbettes en arriere, sur les voltes à Gauche.

Le Capitaine.

24.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti.

La maniere d'instruire tous les airs à Courbettes de ferme à ferme sur les Voltes à Droite et en arriere et de côté à Droite. le Cabitaine étant à Cheval.

Mgr. le Marquis.

Courbettes de ferme à ferme, à Droite.

Mgr. le Marquis.

Palfrenier.

Courbettes en arriere sur les Voltes, à Droite.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delin.

Le Capitaine étant à Cheval,
Monseigneur le Marquis donne leçon.

Mgr. le Marquis.

Courbettes sur les Voltes à Droite.

Mgr. le Marquis.

Courbettes du Côté à Droite.

Palfrenier.

25.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti

La nouvelle inuention pour les airs à Courbettes, de ferme à ferme, sur les voltes à Gauche, et en arriere, et de côté à Gaucke; le Capitaine étant a cheval.

Courbettes sur les voltes à Gauche.

Mgr. le Marq.

Courbettes de côté, à Gaucke.

Mgr. le Marq.

Diéterenier.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delin.

Le Capitaine étant à cheval,
Monseigneur le Marquis
donne leçon.

Courbettes de ferme à ferme, à Gaucke. Mgr le Marq.

Mg. le Marq.

Palfrenier

Courbettes en arriere, sur les voltes, à Gaucke.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti

La nouvelle invention pour les
Airs releves, demj-Air Groupades,
balotades, et caprioles, de ferme à
ferme, sur les volses, à Droite.

Demj-Air de ferme à ferme,
à Droite.

Mg.r le Marq.

P.

Balotades à Droite.

Mg.r le Marq.

P.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.

Pag. III.

Le Capitaine étant à Cheval,
Monseigneur le Marquis donne leçon.

Groupades à Droite

Marq.

P.

Caprioles à Droite.

Marq.

P.

Lucas Vorstermans iunior fecit aqua forti

La Novelle invention pour les airs releues, Demj-airs Groupades Balotades et Caprioles de ferme à ferme sur les voltes à Gaucke.

Groupades à Gaucke.

P.

Caprioles à Gaucke.

P.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delinèavit.

Le Capitaine estant à Cheval
Monseigneur le Marquis
donne leçon.

Demj-air de ferme à
ferme à Gauche.

P.

Mg.r le Marquis.

Balotades à Gaucke.

P.

Mg.r le Marquis.

28.

Theod. van Keßel fecit aqua forti.

La Maison de Monsgnieur
Le Marquis apellee Bolseuer
en la Province de Darby.

Courbetts sur les Voltes a Droicte

Ier. a Diepenbeke delineauit

Le vray pasaige sur les Voltes a Gauche.

Monsignieur le Marquis a Cheual
Le Capitaine a pie

Courbetts sur les Voltes a Gauche

Le vraij pasaige sur les Voltes a Gauche.

29.

Petr. van Liſebetten fecit aqua forti.

Ma Maeson de Bolsouer

Demij-air par le D

Abr. a Diepenbeke delin.
Petr. van Lisebetten sculp.

Monseigneur le Marquis
à
Cheval.

Monseigneur le Marquis
à Cheval.

Groupades par le D

Alor. a Diepenbeke dehinc hauit
Petr. van Lysebetten sculpsit

Bolsover

Monseigneur le Marquis
a Cheval.

Balotta

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.

Bolsouer

oite.

P. Clouvet Sculpsit.

Monseigneur le Marquis à Cheval

Caprioles par le Droit

Ph. a Desgodets delin
Pte. Clouet sculpsit

Bolsouer

Monseigneur le Marquis a Cheval.

Capriolles sur les Pistes a Mar

Bolsouer

Abr. a Diepenbeke delineavit
Lucas Vorstermans junior sculpsit.

Bolsouer
Groupades sur les Volles

La gallerie

Monseigneur Le Marquis à cheual

Pour tr
cavezson
la jamb
pisse. du
Dro

Le qui le m
ment; à ca
sont faites
jambe de de
est mise v

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineauit.

rene du
e et de
ße, d'une
trot a
he.

hes extréme-
es de derriere
as, et que la
s la volte,
ors; ce qui le
ret.

Theodor. van Keßel fecit

La Demie-Volte à Gauche.

Le Petit Galop à Gauche.

La Vraije Metrode pour les passades qui n'ont q'une Demie-Volte d'une piroüette aidant fort aveca la main, tirant la rene contraire et aidant avec les jambes contraires.

Abr a Diepenbeke delineavit.

La Piroüette à Gauche.

Le Petit Galop à Droite.

La Demie-Volte à Droite.

Pour la pirouëtte les mesmes aydes que pour la Demie-Volte des passades, les jambes du Cheval dedans la Volte contraintes et les jambes de hors la Volte plus libres.

La Pirouëtte à Droite.

Franciscus vanden Wyngaerde fecit aqua forti 37.

Le Parc
Nom

Le Parc est

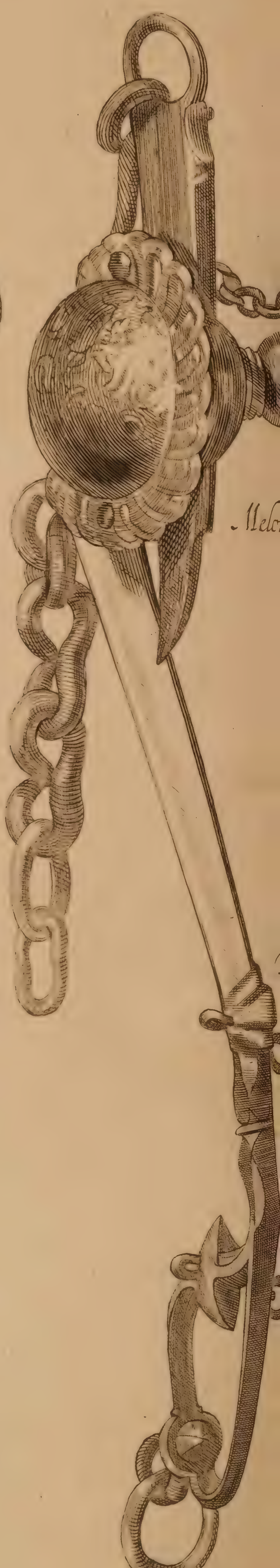
Abr. a Diepenbeke delineauit.

appartenant à
argius de
e
e de Nottingham.

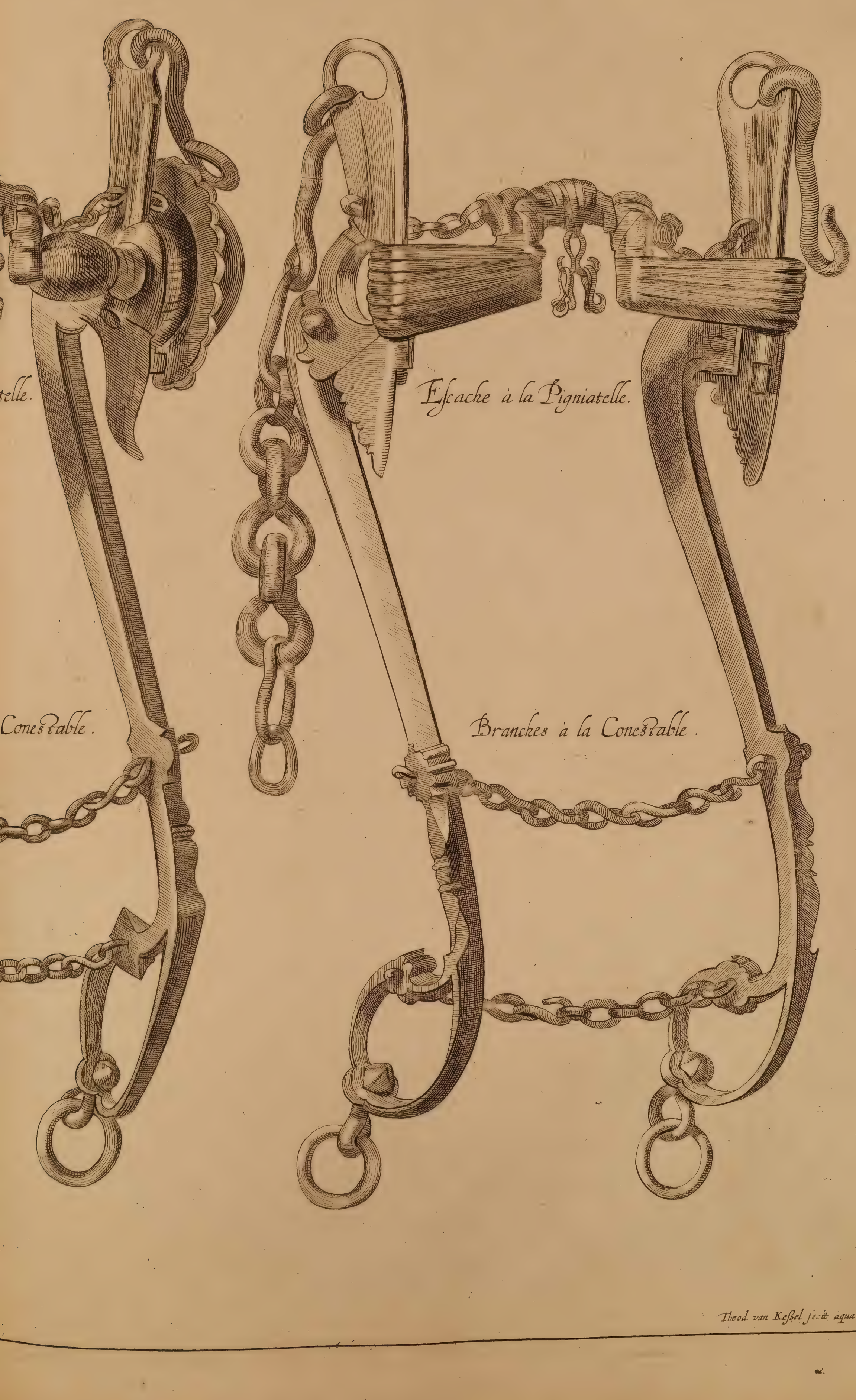
Theod. van Kessel fecit aqua forti.

Vné Cannon l'embouchoeure à la Pigniatelle.

Branches à la Conestable.



Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.



telle.

Escache à la Pigniatelle.

Cones Table.

Branches à la Cones Table.

Theod. van Keßel fecit aqua forti.

Abr. à Diepenbeke delineavit.

LE CHATEAU D'OGLE,

qui fut à Monseigneur le Baron d'Ogle (le quel fut fait Baron par Edouard quatrieme Roi d'Angleterre) Grand-pere de Monseigneur le Marquis. Le quel Chateau eſt dans la province de Northumberland, et appartient apreſent à Monseigneur le Marquis.

Lucas Vorſtermans iunior ſculpsit. 40.

LE CHATEAU DE BOTHEL
(dans la province de Northumberland
qui fut à Mons.r le Baron d'Ogle,
et est apresent à Monseigneur
le Marquis.

Alr. a Dierenbeke delin.

41

Le Seigneur Charles vicomte de Mansfield l'Ené

Les deux Seigneurs qui sont a
regardent sont tous enfans d
autres Dames sont femmes
hommes sont maris de ces trois

RQVIS,

ISE.

LE COMTE DE BVLLINGBROOKE,
ET
MADAME LA COMTESSE.

MONSIEVR CHEYNE,
ET
MADAME IEANE SA FEMME.

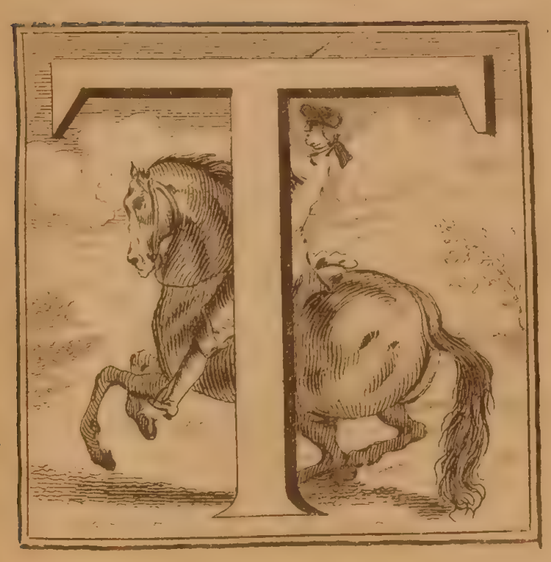
trois Dames qui les
r le Marquis; et les deux
Seigneurs, et les trois
Monseigneur de Marquis.

Et le Seigneur Henrÿ Cavendÿßhe le Cadet.

Abr. a Diepenbeke delin
Petr. van Lÿßebetten sculp.

42.

INTRODUCTION.



THE underſtanding of a Horſe is infinitely degraded below that of a Man by ſeveral, who notwithſtanding, by their actions, ſhew, that they believe the Horſe to be the more intelligent of the two. And indeed, a boy is a long time before he knows his alphabet, longer before he has learn'd to ſpell, and perhaps ſeveral years before he can read diſtinctly: and yet there are ſome people, who, as ſoon as they have got upon a young horſe, entirely undreſſed or untaught, fancy, that by beating and ſpurring they will make him a dreſs'd horſe in one morning only. I would fain aſk ſuch ſtupid people, whether, by beating a boy, they could teach him to read, without firſt ſhewing him his alphabet? Sure, they would beat the boy to death, before they would make him read. Don't then expect more underſtanding from a horſe than a man, ſince the horſe is dreſs'd in the ſame manner that children are taught to read. The horſe is taught firſt to know, and then by frequent repetition to convert that knowledge into habit. It is in like manner in what men learn: for example, a boy is a long time before he can play perfectly on the lute; but when once he is become perfect, his fingers move without his thinking on every note, or every point. There is juſt as much to be ſaid for a managed horſe. It is true, that the hand and the heels are all that is required to make a perfect horſe; but there are other things requir'd to make him perfectly obedient to the hand and heels.

It might as well be ſaid, that to be a good ſcholar one needs only underſtand Latin, Greek, and Hebrew, and know how to make uſe of thoſe languages;

guages; and, to play upon the lute, to preſs with one hand, and touch the ſtrings with the other: but a great deal more is requir'd before one becomes a good ſcholar, a dextrous player on the lute, or an able horſeman.

There are but two things that can make an accompliſh'd horſe, *viz.* the hope of reward, or the fear of puniſhment, which all the world are influenc'd by; and, as far as we know, God has no other means of exciting his people to virtue, but by the largeneſs of his infinite rewards, and the terror of the pains that are prepar'd for their crimes.

A horſe muſt be wrought upon more by proper and frequent leſſons, than by the heels, that he may know, and even think upon what he ought to do. If he does not think (as the famous philoſopher DES CARTES affirms of all beaſts) it would be impoſſible to teach him what he ſhould do. But by the hope of reward, and fear of puniſhment; when he has been rewarded or puniſhed, he thinks of it, and retains it in his memory (for memory is thought) and forms a judgment by what is paſt of what is to come (which again is thought;) inſomuch that he obeys his rider not only for fear of correction, but alſo in hopes of being cheriſh'd. But theſe are things ſo well known to a complete horſeman, that it is needleſs to ſay more on this ſubject.

Altho' horſes do not form their reaſonings from the A B C, which, as that admirable and moſt excellent philoſopher maſter HOBBS ſays, is no language, but the marks and repreſentation of things; he muſt notwithſtanding give me leave to think, that they draw their reaſonings from things themſelves. For inſtance; that I obſerve the clouds to darken, I ſee it lighten, or hear it thunder, and that I have been once wetted after having made theſe obſervations, and that a horſe at paſture has been likewiſe wetted: tho' he knows not theſe words, *dark*, *cloud*, *lightening*, *thunder*, both he and I will notwithſtanding take to our heels to ſhelter ourſelves from the rain under the trees. So far the one is as wiſe as the other. I am reaſoning by marks expreſs'd in language, and he is reaſoning from the preſence or abſence of things without theſe marks. The ſame judgment is to be made in a thouſand other things. It is true, the horſe cannot expreſs his reaſoning by a propoſition, not knowing the marks A, B, C; whence he has at leaſt this advantage, that he never errs as men *do*.

Many are of opinion, that the reaſon why men ſpeak, and not the beaſts, is owing to nothing elſe, but that the beaſts have not ſo much vain-glory as men, which produces language in them; and we ſee that the rarity of things among many *Indians* occaſions their uſing language very little; therefore the beaſts do not amuſe themſelves with bracelets, enamel'd rings, and innumerable baubles of that kind, but follow nature ſimply, without having, like men, their heads crouded with a multitude of thoughts and buſineſs, of which horſes are not ſolicitous. Some too are pleaſed to ſay, that horſes are void of underſtanding, becauſe men get the better of them: but when the horſe gets the better of the man, which frequently happens, is the man then void of underſtanding? Force ſubdues men, as well as beaſts. If the wiſeſt man in the world were taken by a ſavage people, and put to draw in a cart proportion'd to his ſtrength, and if he were beaten when he refuſed to do his duty, would not he draw juſt as a horſe does when he is threaten'd? And in like manner when he felt hunger, would he not be very uneaſy till he got victuals?

Some-

Somebody will perhaps ſay, that he is ſo proud he would ſooner die than draw a cart, and ſo full of reſolution, that he would rather throw himſelf down than ſtir. A horſe will do as much as all that, and will (I believe) bear beating ſomewhat longer than the mighty man that talks at this rate. We call the horſes of that temper *reſtive*, and the men *obſtinate*, 'tis all one.

Many men are too ſtrong for one horſe, and many wild horſes a little too untractable for one man. One perſon can drive ſeveral horſes before him, but it muſt be ſuch as are bred to it, and not ſeveral horſes that are wild in a wood. I have in like manner ſeen a few men drive two thouſand priſoners before them. The learned will hardly be brought to allow any degree of underſtanding to horſes; they only allow them a certain *inſtinct*, which no one can underſtand; ſo jealous are the ſchoolmen of their rational empire.

If a man was locked up from his birth in a dungeon till the age of twenty, and afterwards let out, we ſhould ſee that he would be leſs rational than a great many beaſts that are bred and diſciplin'd.

What makes ſcholaſticks degrade horſes ſo much, proceeds (I believe) from nothing elſe, but the ſmall knowledge they have of them, and from a perſuaſion that they themſelves know every thing. They fancy they talk pertinently about them, whereas they know no more than they learn by riding a hackney-horſe from the Univerſity to LONDON, and back again. If they ſtudied them as horſemen do, they would talk otherwiſe: for example, if a man has loſt his way in a dark winter's night, let him leave the horſe to himſelf, and the horſe will find the way to the place whither he ſhould go; whereas a man, tho' ſober, would ſpoil his horſe, and not be able to compaſs his journey. This is fact, for I have been in the ſame circumſtances; and I believe I ſhould have loſt my way, had it not been for my horſe. As for men of letters, tho' they ſtudy, they don't ſtudy horſemanſhip, but their ſtudies turn to better account, by procuring themſelves to rule over the reſt of mankind, till ſuch time as they are ſubdued by the ſword; wherefore it is not ſurprizing, if they be ſomewhat miſtaken in what is not their profeſſion, and which they do not ſtudy; nay, what is more, have not the leaſt knowledge of. This puts me in mind of what the great and excellent doctor EARLE ſays in his characters, that a ſcholar and a horſe are very troubleſome to one another; and ſo I leave them, without giving them or myſelf any farther trouble.

All that I have ſaid hitherto is only to ſhew, that a horſe's reaſon is to be wrought upon; towards which this book upon Horſemanſhip is very much to the purpoſe, and may ſuffice for the preſent. As for the paſſions, a horſe knows as much of ours, as we do of his; becauſe we know perfectly the paſſions of one another; as love, hatred, thirſt of revenge, envy, *&c.*

I have ſeen very few paſſionate horſemen get the better of a horſe by their anger; on the contrary, I have ſeen the horſe always get the better of them: and ſince the weakeſt underſtanding is always the moſt paſſionate, it is probable that the horſe will always outdo the man. In this act there ſhould always be a man and a beaſt, and not two beaſts. Indeed, a good horſeman ought never to put himſelf in a paſſion with his horſe, but chaſtiſe him like a kind of divinity ſuperior to him. If the horſeman ſpurs his horſe rudely, the horſe will anſwer in the ſame manner, by flinging maliciouſly. Don't we ſee men in play give each other blows without being angry with one another? but when they

are

are in earneſt, the leaſt jeſting occaſions a duel. It is juſt the ſame with a horſe; if the rider be angry with him he will be malicious, but otherwiſe will take all in good part, and never be offended: ſo that patience is one means of dreſſing a horſe. It is true, that patience without knowledge will never do, as knowledge will ſeldom do without patience: you muſt therefore treat him gently, and not exert your full power; but the thing is difficult; for if he takes it into his head to rebell, you muſt either let him maſter you, or elſe venture a bold ſtroke to reduce him. If you let him maſter you, you have done with him; if he ſubmits, you muſt alight that moment and cheriſh him. If he does not yield, you had better ſtay till next morning, than ſpoil him. Reduce him by degrees, mixing gentleneſs with helps and corrections. From hence you will learn how to fit a horſe either for uſe or pleaſure.

Some wagg perhaps will aſk, what is a horſe good for that can do nothing but dance and play tricks? People of that character (who from a wrong turn and for want of judgment) are good for nothing themſelves, and laugh at all the world, and at every thing; they therefore ſtrive to reduce every thing to their own way of thinking, that it may reſemble themſelves.

If theſe gentlemen will retrench every thing that ſerves them either for curioſity or pleaſure, and admit nothing but what is uſeful, they muſt make a hollow tree their houſe, and cloath themſelves with fig-leaves, feed upon acorns, and drink nothing but water, for nature needs no greater ſupport.

When a commonwealth is to be form'd, that men may live together in ſociety, thoſe who make feathers to put into their maſters hats, are as uſeful in the republick, for the maintenance of themſelves and families, and for the good of the community, as thoſe who ſell beef and mutton; for the tendency of the whole is to live by aiding one another, without wronging or offending any body. As for a managed horſe, which they call dancer and prauncer; if thoſe gentlemen were to fight a duel, or go to the wars, they would find their error; for theſe horſes perform a journey, as well as they do the high airs; and the long marches occaſionally make them ſoon forget thoſe airs, which are calculated merely for pleaſure; moreover, they are much fitter for galloping, trotting, wheeling, or any thing elſe which is neceſſary.

I preſume thoſe great wits (the *ſneering gentlemen)* will give Kings, Princes, and perſons of quality leave to love pleaſure-horſes, as being an exerciſe that is very noble, and that which makes them appear moſt graceful when they ſhew themſelves to their ſubjects, or at the head of an army, to animate it; ſo that the pleaſure in this caſe is as uſeful as any thing elſe, beſides the glory and ſatisfaction that attends it.

THE

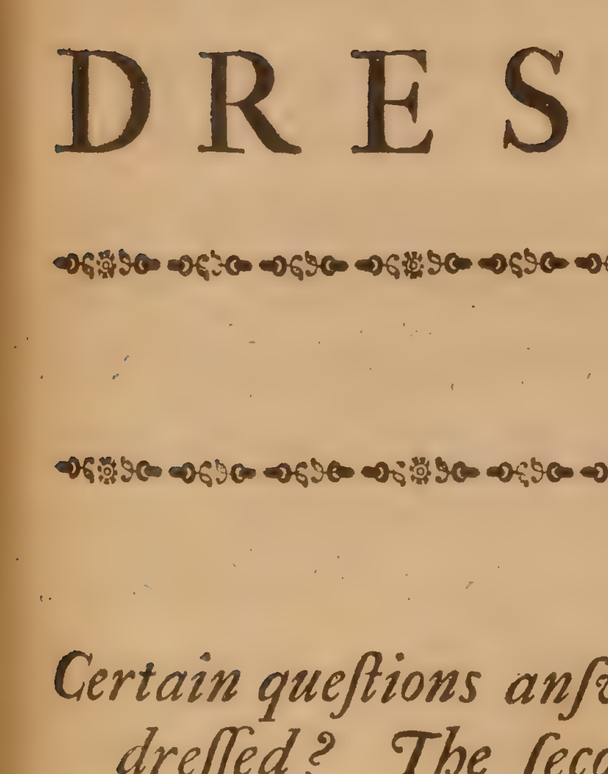
R. Parr Sculp

THE NEW METHOD OF DRESSING HORSES.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

Certain queſtions anſwered, of which the firſt is, In what time a Horſe may be dreſſed? The ſecond, Why a Horſe, that goes well upon a March, ſhould not perform the Terre-à-terre, Curvets, Demi-airs, Balotades, Croupades, and Caprioles?



S to the firſt queſtion, it is abſurd, for it is very difficult to ſay in what time a horſe may be dreſſed, becauſe that depends upon his age, ſtrength, ſpirit and diſpoſition; his agility, memory, ſagacity, good or bad temper; for there are horſes naturally as ſtupid or as obſtinate as men; and it is a difficult taſk to make a learned man of a fool. One can't form a judgment of theſe horſes, but by repeated trials; and it is impoſſible even for the beſt horſeman to make a ſolid judgment concerning them, becauſe a young horſe alters his diſpoſition as he grows older. It is therefore as impoſſible to

CHAP. I.

BOOK I.

anſwer this queſtion, as it would be for the ableſt maſter in the world to ſay, that all the ſcholars in the univerſity will become learned at a certain time. There are ſome ſcholars, that have ſuch a diſpoſition to ſtudy, that they will learn more in a year, than others in all their life: ſome are eminent doctors, others are but ordinary ſcholars; and others are ſo dull, as not to be capable of underſtanding Latin. Wherefore I wiſh people would not require more capacity of a horſe than of a man, whom they ſtile rational.

As to the other queſtion, whereby it is demanded, Why ſhould not a horſe go Terre-à-terre, in Curvets, Demi-airs, Balotades, Croupades, and Capriols, ſince he goes a Travelling-pace well? I'd fain know, whether all thoſe, who make learning their profeſſion, be themſelves perfect in every ſcience. Some are excellent preachers, and not very learned; others are very learned, and but indifferent preachers: ſome good orators, others good logicians: ſome good hiſtorians, others good philoſophers: ſome good poets, others are profound in morality and claſſical learning: ſome in church-hiſtory and controverſy, others in law: ſome in phyſick, and others in mathematicks. Among the mathematicians, ſome are good aſtronomers or aſtrologers, or geometricians, or geographers; others arithmeticians; notwithſtanding which they are all learned men, and excellent in their different profeſſions. Moreover, there are different degrees: among divines, one is capable of being a biſhop; another is hardly fit to be a reader, or ſchool-maſter in a country pariſh-church. In like manner, ſome are good aſtronomers, and others are not capable of making an almanack or ſun-dial: ſome underſtand algebra perfectly, and others know nothing of addition and ſubſtraction. Some are very learned in the law, whilſt others are not fit to be clerks to a country-attorney; and yet they would have horſes excell in every branch of the Manege, which is certainly a very unreaſonable expectation.

But to give an example likewiſe among muſicians, who all profeſs the ſame art: Perhaps it may be aſked of one who plays perfectly on the fiddle, or the viol, if he can play as well on the lute? (By the by, ſome are admirable players upon the fiddle, while others can hardly thrum a reel at a country-wake) or the harp, the organ, or on all other muſical inſtruments, or if he be a good ſinger? Would not this be very abſurd, ſince it requires a man's whole lifetime to make himſelf perfect in any one of thoſe branches? Once more then, do not require more of a horſe than of a man. Again, for example among painters, ſome draw to the life in oil-colours, and at full length; others draw to the life in water-colours and in miniature. Some have a genius for hiſtory-painting, others for beaſts, others for birds; ſome for painting the dead, others the living; ſome flowers, others fruit; ſome battles, ſome naked figures, others figures with drapery; ſome ſea-pieces and ſhips, others landſkips; and there are ſome who can unite all theſe pieces into a landſkip. Notwithſtanding, all theſe painters may be excellent in their different branches, and famous to poſterity. There are painters likewiſe, who can paint nothing elſe but doors and windows, or coach-wheels. It is juſt the ſame with horſes; and tho' a horſe may go a very good Travelling-pace, he is not fit for the army unleſs he knows more. If another goes a good Terre-à-terre, it's ſufficient; and ſo it is if he goes well in Curvets, or Demi-airs, or Balotades, Croupades, or Capriols. When he goes well in any one of the three laſt airs, he is eſteemed a good

CHAP. I.

a good horſe, and bears a great price, and ought to be as much valued in his kind, as a learned man in his particular ſcience, or as a muſician for the inſtrument he excells in, or for his voice, or as any painter in his kind: wherefore whoever requires more of a horſe than of a man, thereby expoſes his own ignorance. All thoſe that go to a ball-room, don't dance equally well: ſome dance high, others low; ſome nimbly and gracefully, others heavily and aukwardly. In like manner, horſes perform according to their different genius and diſpoſition. As every particular man makes a part of mankind, ſo every horſe compoſes a part of his ſpecies; and truly, every particular air among horſes may be compared to every particular trade among men. Would it not be ridiculous, if one ſhould ſay, that man is a good taylor, and another ſhould reply, Yes, but he cannot make ſhoes, nor dance the ropes? The ſame may be ſaid of horſes airs, for they are as ſo many particular trades amongſt men. Altho' a horſe may perform two ſorts of airs pretty well, he poſſibly may not perform a third. Thus a man may profeſs to be of two or three different trades, but not ſo as to excell in every one; beſides, a horſe can never be put to any thing, unleſs nature has deſign'd him for it, any more than a man can undertake to be maſter of a trade for which he is not naturally qualified. Thoſe gentlemen, who aſk theſe fooliſh queſtions, are ſometimes led to it by ignorance, but for the moſt part it proceeds from a jealouſy, and envy they bear to the horſeman, and to the horſe for the rider's ſake, whom they would leſſen and bring into contempt; for having but little merit themſelves, they are not able to eclipſe by their actions the reputation of a man of worth, and ſo they have reſource to detraction, and by their malicious inſinuations endeavour to tarniſh the brighteſt virtues. But we have ſaid enough on this head with too much truth, tho' with little eloquence.

Many horſes, naturally good, fall into the hands of bad maſters, who ruin them; and many bad horſes are improved by good maſters, from whom ſome benefit will always ariſe. Tho' art ſhould always follow the dictates of nature, and never thwart her, ſince ſhe is miſtreſs of the world, and ought to be obey'd. I ſpeak with regard to the Manege, and ſuch like, without concerning myſelf with theological myſteries, but only with horſemanſhip. To proceed: there are ſome who ſay, this is a good horſe, and that is a jade; in which they are much miſtaken, for there is no ſuch thing in the world like to what they call a jade: it is altogether the ignorance of the horſeman that makes jades, and not nature; wherefore if the horſeman ſtudies nature, and the diſpoſitions of his horſes, he would know better how to appropriate them to the uſes for which they were created, and conſequently they would become good horſes. For example, to begin with the Manege:

If the horſe is fit to go a Travelling-pace, let him do it; if he is naturally inclined to make Curvets, he muſt be put to it; and ſo of the Demi-airs, Paſſadoes, Terra-à-terre, Croupades, Balotades, and Capriols. If he be not fit for any of theſe, put him to run the ring: if he be not cut out for that, uſe him as a drudge to go of errands. If none of theſe ſuit him, he will perhaps be good for racing, hunting, or travelling, or for the portmanteau, for burdens, or for coach or cart; or, in ſhort, he may be fit to turn the mill, or ſome ſuch uſe as that: ſo that it is the fault of the horſeman, and not of the horſe, if he paſſes for a jade; for really there is no horſe but what is fit for

BOOK I.

ſome uſe or other. If princes were as induſtrious to know the capacities o men for the different truſts they put in them, as good horſemen are to emplo each horſe in that which nature deſign'd him for, kings would be better ſerv'd than they are; and we ſhould not ſee ſuch confuſion, as ſurpaſſes that o BABEL, happen in ſtates through the incapacity of perſons entruſted. He tha is qualified to be a biſhop, is not fit to command an army; nor he that is fi to be a ſecretary of ſtate, to be keeper of the ſeals; becauſe the conſcience o a ſecretary of ſtate might be ſomewhat too large for a keeper of the ſeals, who is entruſted with the conſcience of the king, and the commonwealth. Which ſhews what diſorder there is in all things when they are miſplaced. Would it not be abſurd to require of a taylor to make boots, or of a ſhoe-maker to make breeches? But leaving kings to chuſe their officers as they pleaſe, let us follow nature in what concerns horſes.

If a horſe be tractable, and has ſpirits and vigour, a quick diſpoſition, judgment, and memory, and without faults, he may be dreſs'd in three months: the practice muſt make him perfect, even as it does mankind in every thing. One thing I can venture to affirm, that in what time ſoever another dreſſes a horſe, and renders him perfect by all his care, whether tractable or vicious, the method I here propoſe will perfect him in leſs than half the time; nay, he ſhall go better, and more juſt and perfect, which is what I have ſeen few horſes do, that have been dreſſed by others.

CHAP. II.

A reproof to maſters who continually beat and abuſe their ſcholars, and always make uſe of the whip.

SOME maſters are ſo paſſionate, or at leaſt ſeem to be ſo, that they are always beating their ſcholars with the ſwitch or long ſtaff. I have even heard ſay, that ſome fill their pockets full of ſtones to throw at them. If they forbear thoſe vile practices, they abuſe their ſcholars all the while they are on horſe-back with moſt unbecoming language, ſuch as--*Poor fellow!--Your humble ſervant, ſir!---Ah the blockhead! he ſits his horſe like a portmanteau----Simpleton!--turn your hand---help with your legs----Spur----Hold up----Ah the the devil--what a beaſt there is!*---Some make uſe of much worſe language than this, and that in a haughty and imperious manner, thinking to paſs for great and able maſters, by thus ſhewing their authority; whereas they expoſe their own indiſcretion and folly by giving themſelves ſuch inſolent airs. Such behaviour is very unbecoming gentlemen, who are ſuch by their profeſſion; beſides, it alienates the affections of their ſcholars, and tends to bring the maſter into contempt, by inſpiring them with ſentiments of revenge rather than confidence. Now without confidence there can be neither pleaſure nor profit in ſuch a ſchool: moreover, it confounds both the horſe and the rider; for it is impoſſible even for a good horſeman, though mounted on a well-managed horſe, to keep time with as much exactneſs and quickneſs as the maſter's tongue requires. What then can be expected of ſcholars? It may likewiſe happen, that the horſe is not thoroughly taught, and if the maſter himſelf were upon his back, perhaps he might not make a better figure; wherefore the

maſter

master, in honour to his profession, should (gentleman-like) be courteous, and behave with gravity and modesty, but yet with authority; and instruct his scholar what he should do before he moves his horse. After he has wrought him sufficiently, order him to stop, and then tell him in private the faults he has committed, without reproaching him openly before the company; afterwards making him try again, repeating frequently what he has said to him: for a scholar can't be a master in one day, no more than a colt can be a complete horse within the same time. First of all then teach your scholar what he should do, repeating it often to him in a mild manner, or he will never learn. As to the whip, it is often-times of service, but I wish it were more sparingly used. For the too frequent use of it is the cause why a horse will not go without it: besides, it is a very disagreeable sight, to see two men about a horse when he is a riding, and that a riding-master (like a carr-man) should continually have the trouble of driving his horse. I say then, I would have it used only in case of necessity, and never otherwise; for it is an unbecoming thing, that a man should not be able to mount his horse unless another helps him with his whip; besides, the thing is scandalous, unless it be to make him go in a cart; but in that case it is proper for a carter.

When a man is in the wars, or obliged to fight on horseback, must he have another to whip his horse? No sure, that would be ridiculous. I say then, I am for making use of it in cases of necessity only, otherwise I would have it banish'd out of the Manege; the rather, because a horse that requires continual whipping is unfit for that exercise. If the hand and heels be not sufficient, it is either the horseman's fault, or else the horse is not fit for that purpose; in which case condemn both horse and whip to the cart. I must farther add, the whip is become now-a-days very odious in the Manege and the Academies, because the master does not think himself such if he has it not continually in his hand; and when any Prince or Nobleman comes to see his Manege, he is sure to find him *Whip in hand*, which, as he fancies, is the most becoming air he can assume, whereas it is the most ridiculous; wherefore never use it when it can be avoided. It is very proper sometimes behind a horse, when he is between the pillars, provided you quit it afterwards; or when a horse retains his strength and is lazy; but when he is brought into subjection, leave it off, and take a switch, which is the most becoming thing a horseman can hold in his hand, whether on foot or horseback.

CHAP. III.

Of the different Colour and Marks of Horses.

SEveral horsemen have blotted more paper to demonstrate their Natural Philosophy, than their art in Horsemanship, endeavouring to discover the constitution and particular disposition of horses by their marks and colour, and which of the four elements enters chiefly into their composition, whether it be earth, water, air, or fire. Some philosophers deny the existence of elementary fire in this sublunary globe, in which case there will be only three elements remaining: others say, that the whole world is only matter put into motion, therefore motion performs all. Antient philosophers maintain, that we are

BOOK I.

preſerved alive by means of the four elements compounded together; but as to my own part, I believe we ſubſiſt by eating and drinking. Chymiſts ſay, that all matter is compoſed of ſalt, ſulphur and mercury; but my buſineſs is to treat only of Horſes, and not of Natural Philoſophy; for I find by long experience, that their rules are as falſe as the predictions of the weather in an almanack, which in one year's revolution is diſcover'd to be as falſe as true. But ſuppoſe I ſhould take the oppoſite ſide of the queſtion, one will prove as true as the other. Therefore theſe are only trifling and chimerical conjectures. From whence I conclude, that a horſeman ought to mount a horſe often, by which means he will be able to form a better judgment, than any of thoſe who philoſophize upon his colour, or by the elements, ſince that is only a piece of empiriciſm or quackery.

The marks of horſes, let them be in what manner you pleaſe, are only ſo many abſurdities, there being only four good marks and ſeven bad ones in a horſe that has white feet. The firſt is, that of his having the off-foot before white and ſound; the ſecond good mark is, his having his near hind-leg white, &c. But all this ſeems to be a kind of conjuration or ſorcery to me. For ſhould theſe marks happen to be accidentally true, the cauſe does not ſo much proceed from the colour of the foot, as from the quantity of ſpirits in the horſe's nature. Therefore the beſt method to judge of a horſe is to ride and prove him often, before a proper opinion can be given of his perfections; ſince the beſt horſeman in the world may be deceiv'd when another perſon mounts a horſe, and he may be deceived even when he mounts a horſe himſelf, particularly when he is young, ſince his ſpirits are liable to alter in proportion to his age, as it happens in the human ſpecies, only with this exception, that a horſe ſooner arrives to perfection, with regard to his ſize, than a mare.

But let us conſider a little wherein the beſt marks conſiſt, or at leaſt the greateſt variety of the colours. For we ought to be careful of the colour of the ſtallion's hair, if we aim at conveying a good one to thoſe of the ſtud. Men have different opinions with regard to the colour of horſes, yet ſome are more agreeable to the generality of mankind; for example, the light bay, provided the horſe has a black mane and tail, a liſt upon his back, black legg'd, with a ſtar upon his forehead; others are white legged, but this ſhould not be too high. The black ought to be marked like the bay; the cheſnut with white upon the legs, and a ſtar. A dark grey is the moſt durable colour; tho' I have ſeen a mare with a ſorrel mane and tail, well marked in every other reſpect, that has appear'd perfectly genteel; another with a ſorrel mane and white tail, and both equally good; but a pied horſe, which is properly black and white, is contrary to my taſte. I have ſeen many beautiful white horſes, with black eyes and noſtrils. An aſh-colour'd grey is not a bad colour. A grey of the colour of a fly is very beautiful, but few attain to it till they begin to be advanced in years. There are even ſome iron-greys exceeding fine, tho' the colour is not extraordinary. The fallow is not a bad colour, provided the horſe's mane, tail, and feet are black. The colour of a horſe pleaſes according to a gentleman's fancy, ſince there are good and bad horſes of all marks and colours; therefore the only way of knowing them is by trial. Some have been pleaſed to ſay, that an ill colour'd horſe is never good; but, with ſubmiſſion to their judgment, it is very poſſible to have a good horſe of a bad

bad colour. But tho' it be indifferent as to the colour of a horſe's ſkin, I ſhould ever prefer one of the five firſt ſorts for a ſtallion, for which I gave you a reaſon before. And theſe are all the remarks I ſhall make with reſpect to the colour and marks of horſes. CHAP. IV.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Shape of a Horſe, and particularly of thoſe in Foreign Countries.

SOME authors, who have treated of the ſhape of horſes, have deſcribed them in ſuch a manner, as nature has not hitherto produced; becauſe they take and add together the moſt beautiful parts of horſes belonging to different nations, and by means of this compoſition frame a horſe according to their own fancies, and not according to nature. For Barbary, Turkiſh, Neapolitans, &c. are differently ſhaped; yet a horſe from each of theſe nations may be completely ſhaped, according to his kind; we may, however, diſtinguiſh from what country they come. I have been often aſk'd the queſtion, What nation produces the moſt beautiful horſe? To which I anſwer'd, that I could not decide it, till I knew for what purpoſe the horſe was intended, each breed being good and beautiful in its kind. Let us therefore examine into the qualities of horſes belonging to each nation, and enquire in particular what they excell in. I am not throughly acquainted with Turkiſh horſes; but they are of different breeds from the extent of the country, are generally tall, and exceeding beautiful, ſwift, ſtrong, and good winded, but ſeldom have a good mouth. I have often heard Neapolitan horſes commended, which I think they juſtly deſerve; but thoſe I have ſeen were ill ſhaped, though ſtrong and vigorous. I have ſeen Spaniſh horſes, and have had them in my own poſſeſſion, which were proper to be painted after, or fit for a king to mount on a publick occaſion; for they are not ſo tender as the Barbs, nor ſo ill-ſhaped as the Neapolitans, but between both. Genets have a lofty fine air, trot and gallop well, &c. but are ſeldom ſtrong; though, when they are well choſen, they bear a very good character. Fame ſtill adds ſomething more ſurpriſing, relating to the courage of theſe horſes, which is, that they have carried an officer ſafe from the field of battle, after their guts have been hanging on the ground, with the ſame courage and vigour as when he firſt mounted him. The beſt breed of horſes is in Andalouſia, eſpecially that of the king of Spain's at Cordova. With regard to Barbary horſes, I freely confeſs they are my favourites; which may proceed from my having ſeen more of thoſe, than of any other kind, and I allow 'em the preference as to ſhape, ſtrength, a natural genteel air and docility. Barbary horſes are ſaid never to grow old, becauſe they always retain their original natural ſtrength and vigour. I confeſs, that they have not ſo genteel a trot or gallop as the Genets; but no horſes in the world have a better movement in general, when they are well choſen and inſtructed. Tho' I have been informed in France, by an old officer of the army in Henry the fourth's time, that he had often ſeen a Barb beat down by the ſuperior ſtrength of a large Flanders horſe. I have experienced this difference between the bone of the leg of a Barbary horſe and one from Flanders, *viz.* that the cavity of the bone in one ſhall hardly admit of a ſtraw, whilſt you may

BOOK I.

may thruſt your finger into that of the other. Barbs, for the generality, are ſinewy, ſtrong, ſwift, and good winded; tho' we meet with one ſometimes that is dull and heavy. Mountain-Barbs are horſes of the beſt courage, and many of them wear the marks of wounds they have received from lions.

With reſpect to the Northren horſes, I have ſeen ſome beautiful in their kind, genteel in all ſorts of paces, and have excelled all others in leaping. Moreover they have a peculiar excellency in the motion of their fore-legs, which is the principal grace in the action of a horſe; but they differ from a Barb in one thing, which is, that they ſooner come to decay; and you will always find among them more horſes fit for the cart than the Manege.

Hence it appears how ridiculous it is to attempt the deſcription of a complete horſe. For provided a horſe carries his head well, has his neck well-proportioned, and is well ſhaped according to the country where he was bred, it is ſufficient; but a particular regard ought to be had to the ſoundneſs of his feet, otherwiſe the reſt of his beauties are of no value. If the paſterns of a horſe are ſtiff and long, he can never be active; if, on the contrary, they are lax and weak, he will, generally ſpeaking, be inactive; therefore his paſterns ought to be ſhort and flexible, ſince they are generally more active and ſtrong when formed in ſuch a manner.

It would be an endleſs work, to attempt the deſcription of horſes of a mix'd breed, ſince the reſult of ſuch mixture may produce both good and bad.

A ſhort horſe ſeems to be the moſt proper for the Manege, as we can compell him by art to contract himſelf, ſtop, or go backwards; whence it is evident, that a ſhort horſe is ſooner inſtructed in his paces than a longer: tho' I muſt take the liberty of obſerving, that I have ſeen ſome long horſes perform their exerciſe as well as the ſhort.

Many perſons have remarked, that a horſe heavy before, that is to ſay, one who is large-headed, thick-necked and ſhoulder'd, bears heavy upon the hand, eſpecially when he has not a large ſhare of ſpirits. But this is not the reaſon; for let him have the leaſt defect in his feet, legs, or ſhoulders, he muſt conſequently be heavy upon the hand, let his ſhape be ever ſo excellent.

Hence it appears, that an expert horſeman in ſuch a caſe cannot be ſo uſeful as a good farrier. Others ſay, that ſuch a horſe, tho' very ſound, muſt naturally be heavy upon the hand, and that a horſe differently framed will be light upon it; wherein I think they are much miſtaken, ſince I have ſeen horſes ſhaped like a bull before, that have been as eaſy upon the hand as thoſe of a more delicate ſhape. Whence it ſeems evident, that this does not proceed ſo much from the different make of the fore-part of the horſe, as from the inequality of ſtrength in his back and reins. For the principal art in horſemanſhip is to place a horſe well upon his haunches; and he that is ſtrong in his loins is the moſt capable of enduring the exerciſe of the academy; but a horſe with weak loins bears forward in order to relieve them. From whence I may conclude, that a horſe is heavy or light in hand, in proportion to the ſtrength of his loins. Methinks I hear ſome ignorant horſeman ſay, that the ſtronger a horſe is in his loins, the difficulty is ſo much the greater to place him properly upon his haunches. This may be really difficult to an unexpert rider, tho' not ſo to another more knowing than himſelf; ſince, in ſome horſes nature furniſhes us with a proper ſubject to work upon, and denies us the ſame

assistance in others. Therefore, when you have a proper subject in hand to manage, the fault of the horse entirely proceeds from the ignorance of the riding-master and his want of skill. Some horses indeed are naturally apt to leap continually, in which case the rider ought to follow his natural disposition; but he ought to put him upon his haunches notwithstanding, otherwise he will never have a genteel and graceful air. Others conceit, that a horse with a thick mane and tail is generally heavy and dull; but I have been master of some with such marks, who were exceeding vigorous and active; whence I conclude, that a judgment cannot be sooner formed from the shape of a horse, than from his colour. CHAP. V. *Fig.* 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.

CHAP. V.

What kind of horse is best for a Stallion, and in what manner he ought to be used. What Mares are the most proper, with the method of proceeding to procure a good breed.

THE best Stallion is a well-chosen Barb, or a beautiful Spanish horse, well marked, that the same may remain in the breed. He had better have too much courage than too little, since the colt he produces will be apt to inherit the same imperfections in a greater degree. Therefore I should think it absolutely necessary to choose a stallion naturally well-disposed in every respect, otherwise the breed will be the same, which I have often found by experience. A stallion of this kind is best both to produce a breed proper for service or pleasure. Some people pretend, that a Barb or a Genet produce too small a breed, and give this reason for it, that nature is always in a declining state. There is no fear of having too small horses in England, since the coolness and moisture of the climate, and fatness of the land, rather produces horses too large.

As to what is said relating to the declining state of a horse, I take it to be false, since the same heat remains in the sun at present, as when it was first created, and the earth is equally fruitful. If nature had been in a constant decay ever since the creation, we should by this time have been no larger than ants. For which reason the Barbary and Spanish horses are the best for stallions.

In the choice of Breeding-Mares, I would advise you to take either a well-shaped Spanish one, or a Neapolitan. But when these are not easily obtain'd, choose a beautiful English mare, which is as good as any, provided she be of a good colour, and well marked, both which qualifications are necessary to produce a handsome breed. With regard to covering the mare, I disapprove of its being in hand, or by confining the creature, since it is then rather a compulsion than a natural inclination; for every natural action of this kind ought to be perform'd with freedom and love, and not by violence or constraint. Moreover, I am no friend to astrological remarks in this case. The moon's aspect, or that of any other celestial body, are equally absurd in affairs of this kind; and it matters not whether the moon is increasing or decreasing, or whether any of the other planets are in conjunction or opposition; for horses are not begot by astronomy, or by the almanack. Such observations are as ridiculous, as those relating to the point from whence the wind blows,

BOOK I.

to produce a male or female colt; or that ridiculous practice of tying the left teſticle to generate a male, and the right a female; or another of the ſame nature, which is, that of placing a cloth before the mare's face, of what colour you pleaſe, that ſhe may conceive a colt of the ſame. This doctrine ſeems calculated only to amuſe the credulous, and common ſort of people, by endeavouring to make them believe there is ſome ſecret myſtery couched under ſuch remarks. Nature is exactly uniform in her operations, but particularly in that of generation; and we always find her ſo very circumſpect in this action, that altho' ſhe admits of copulation between two animals of a different ſpecies, yet the product is incapable of producing a creature of the ſame ſpecies. Therefore let us follow the laws of nature in the act of generation, ſince it is originally derived from her, and not from art.

Your ſtallion being well prepared and fed with good oats, beans, coarſe bread, a little hay, and a large quantity of wheat ſtraw, water him twice in a day, and breathe him gently to preſerve his wind, but he muſt not be ſweated; for ſhould he not be in wind when he covers, he may chance to break it entirely. The reaſon why I adviſe that a horſe ſhould be well fed at this time, is, that altho' this action is pleaſant in itſelf, it is laborious notwithſtanding; and if he is not well nouriſhed, he will deceive your mares, and generate none but weak colts; ſince, according to the old proverb, *Without meat and drink love grows cold.* Therefore feed him as well as you can, he will ſtill be ſufficiently lean. If he ſerves many mares, he will not laſt long, and his mane and tail will fall off to ſuch a degree, that it will be difficult to reſtore him to his former ſtrength the year following: he ſhould therefore cover only a certain number of mares in proportion to his ſtrength, but never exceed twenty in a ſeaſon. The proper time in England is in the month of June, that your mares may foal the May following, when there is plenty of graſs, for which reaſon they yield moſt milk at that time. You ought therefore at this ſeaſon to put all your mares together into an incloſure well fenced, where there is plenty of graſs during the time the ſtallion is with them, and they are hot: then let your ſtallion run with them, firſt taking off his hind-ſhoes, that he may not hurt the mares by a kick, leaving his fore-ſhoes on. Let him cover one mare twice in hand at firſt, to render him more gentle; then take off his bridle, and let him have the liberty of running among the reſt, which will make him ſo familiar with them by degrees, that they will be fond of his careſſes, ſo that no mare will be cover'd before ſhe is inclined. When he has ſerved them all, he will try them again one after the other, and cover all thoſe that are willing to receive him. The horſe is ſenſible that he has finiſhed his performance, by the mare's refuſal of his careſſes, and then begins to kick againſt the fence that he may be gone: therefore it is proper to remove him at this time, and ſend your mares into a freſh paſture.

Theſe are the prudent laws obſerv'd by nature; and I dare venture to affirm, that not one mare in twenty will fail, whilſt half of thoſe cover'd in hand will not prove with foal. A ſtallion will ſtay ſix or ſeven weeks with the mares, during which time he ought to be provided with a proper place to defend him from the heat of the ſun, wherein there ſhould be a manger ſtored with oats, peaſe, ſplit beans and bread. Your ſtallion ought not to be under five, or more than fifteen years old; but this may be regulated according to his

his ſtrength, obſerving that your mares be not cover'd before they are three years old, nor after fifteen. The goodneſs of the mares and colts they produce will ſerve you for a guide in this caſe. A horſe may cover a mare of his own begetting, without hurting your ſtud; for there is no inceſt amongſt horſes, this being a privilege allowed them by nature. Moreover, they will produce finer colts when cover'd by a beautiful ſtallion, eſpecially by a good Barb. But you muſt never make uſe of a ſtallion of your breed, ſince he will be widely different from a real Barb; and if you continue to uſe them ſucceſſively, they will at length degenerate, and reſemble the horſes of the country where they are bred. The ſame thing may be ſaid of all other creatures in the world, and even of mankind; the climate, air, and land producing the ſame effect in all other animals. Therefore I would adviſe you not to make choice of a ſtallion of your own breed, but rather of a young Barb, or Spaniſh horſe, by which means you will be always maſter of a ſtud of fine horſes; but you muſt always take care to chooſe the moſt beautiful mares in your ſtud to breed from. By this means your ſtallion will be as jealous in his Seraglio as the Grand Seignor, and always furniſh you with a fine breed of horſes. It will be abſolutely neceſſary, whilſt the ſtallion runs amongſt the mares, that a man ſhould watch them night and day, to ſee how they are ſerved, and leſt another horſe ſhould be with them, or other mares with him, and to acquaint you with any accident that may happen. This is what I have to ſay relating to ſtallions and mares. *Fig.* 11.

CHAP. VI.

CHAP. VI.

What is the proper time to take a Colt from his Dam, and how he ſhould be managed afterwards.

YOU ought to build a lodge in the paſture-ground into which you remove your mares, as well as in all others where they feed, to defend them from the inclemencies of the weather; for there is no creature to which cold is more injurious than to horſes, neither will they endure much heat. Good ſtore of hay ought likewiſe to be provided for them againſt the winter. Several people recommend ſuckling of colts till they are one or two years old; but herein they are much miſtaken, ſince they become tender and ill-ſhaped by this method, and you loſe the fertility of your mares during that time. You ought therefore to take up your colts from their dams at the beginning of winter, when the weather begins to be cold, that is, between Michaelmas and Chriſtmas, putting both males and females into a clean warm ſtable provided with low racks and mangers. Always take care to keep your ſtable clean, and your colts well litter'd, leaving them looſe. They ought to be ſeldom handled, for fear of hurting them, or preventing their growth. They ought to be plentifully fed with good hay and bran, which, by making them drink freely, will render their bodies fat and plump. Feed them likewiſe with oats; for it is ridiculous to imagine, that oats will make them blind, or their teeth crooked. In fine weather walk them in the ſun-ſhine about your court, that it may comfort and cheriſh their ſpirits. Turn them to graſs towards the latter end of May into ſome paſture that will contain all your yearling colts, firſt providing a hovel or lodge to defend them from the heat of the ſun; the ſhape of it

you

BOOK I.

you ſhall ſee in the ſequel, it being left open on one ſide, that you may the better ſee how it is contrived; for it ought to be ſhut up by a large door, leſt they ſhould hurt themſelves. At the ſame ſeaſon next year take up your colts that are a year and half old, dreſs them, tie them up, and uſe them in the ſame manner as other horſes, to make them gentle and quiet. The ſummer following, when they are two years old, you may turn them out again into ſome good paſture, that is provided with a proper lodge, or otherwiſe keep them in the ſtable to make them fit to be mounted, which ought never to be done till they are above three years old; for by this practice they will be more able to endure fatigue. It matters not in what paſture they run, provided it be dry, and has a pond of water belonging to it. If they fill their bellies once in twenty four hours, it is ſufficient; and there is no neceſſity for a great variety of paſture, as rocky ground, mountainous, meadow, or fine graſs, provided you ſeparate the yearling colts from thoſe that are two years old, and thoſe of three from the reſt. I could feed a horſe very well in my own court; for what is the reaſon that the Barbs, Neapolitans, Turks, and Genets, are ſo ſleek and ſtrong, and of ſo delicate a ſhape, unleſs it proceeds from the dryneſs of their nouriſhment?

Therefore the ſecret of feeding horſes, in a cold climate, conſiſts only in keeping them warm during the winter, nouriſhing them with dry meat in that ſeaſon, and dry paſture in the ſummer. Take two colts equally beautiful, and deſcended from the ſame lineage; keep the one warm in the winter, and feed him with dry meat till he is three years old, and ſuffer the other to remain at graſs till he is of the ſame age, and I dare venture to affirm, that the legs of the former will be as beautiful, nervous, and pliant, as any Barb, or Spaniſh colt's whatſoever, whilſt the other ſhall have a coarſe head and neck, and be as ill ſhaped as a cart-horſe. Hence you may ſee the efficacy of a dry food and warm houſes for your ſtud.

As to your mare-colts, you may let them run abroad till they are three years old, becauſe they are not ſo ſubject to grow poor, eſpecially in the fore parts, as horſes are; but if you can in winter put your young mares into ſtables, as well as your horſes, it will be ſo much the better. I am afraid the charge will be too great for a private perſon, at leaſt if his ſtud be any thing conſiderable. I well know by my own experience, that this method of breeding horſes is the beſt; for I have tried all ways both with the males and females of every country. It is proper I ſhould adviſe you to back your young mares a year or two before you have them cover'd, or elſe they will grow ſo wild, they will be in danger of ſpoiling themſelves and their colts; but by this method they become ſo gentle, that neither the one nor the other will be afterwards in danger. This is the manner of managing your foals, your young horſes, and mares.

Fig. 12.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Saddle, Stirrups, Spurs, and Bridle.

THE ſaddle I uſe is ſo well made, that a man muſt ſit upon it with a good grace, whether he will or no; you have the faſhion and figure of it here, and alſo that of the ſtirrup and the ſpur. As to bridles, there are none like the ſimple canon for a young horſe; and for a horſe that you ride, a bridle

bridle *à la Pignatelle*, (made full and free, with reins *à la Conetable*) is the moſt proper. You have the figure of that alſo here annext. CHAP. VIII.

It is neither a good ſaddle, nor good ſtirrups that make a complete horſe, any more than a good pair of ſpurs put upon the heels of an ignorant perſon. Neither is it a good bridle that breaks the horſe well. For if they were made tractable by this piece of iron put in their mouths, the bit-makers would be the beſt horſemen in the world. Thus if a book put into the hand of a boy would teach him to read without inſtructions, we ſhould have nothing to do but give give him a good and numerous library, to make him in a moment the moſt learned perſon in the univerſe. But it is in good leſſons, well applied to the nature, ſpirits, and ſtrength of every horſe, that the great and ſubtile ſcience of Horſemanſhip conſiſts, that ſcience that can manage a horſe with only a bit of wood in his mouth. The bridle, I confeſs, is of ſome uſe, tho' but little; art avails much more, as all your excellent riders well know; for I have managed a horſe with a halter only, and he went as well as with the bridle, of which I have many witneſſes in this city of Antwerp, who have ſeen the thing: I have alſo managed an Engliſh one with a ſcarf, and made him curvet and vault very juſtly; ſo that it is not the bridle, but the art of the rider, that renders the horſe tractable.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Method of Breaking Colts.

IF the method I formerly preſcribed is made uſe of from the beginning, which is, to put him into the ſtable, and tie him up for two or three winters ſucceſſively, in order to make him tractable as other horſes, it will then not be difficult to back him; for by this means he will not be wanton, apt to lie down, or be guilty of any extravagant actions common to young horſes, and thereby endanger the rider. By this method you will avoid the trouble of working him upon ploughed lands, moraſſes, &c. before you mount him; by which exerciſe he is in danger of breaking his wind, or at leaſt of ſpoiling his genteel air. When you have made him tractable by theſe means, the firſt ſaddle you put upon him ſhould be quilted, or one made of chaff or ſtraw, well faſtened by a ſurcingle, that it may not hurt his back, but leave his ſhoulders liberty that he may trot freely, as every colt ſhould do. He ought not to be ſhod at all; but if he wear any ſhoes, they ought to be only *lunettes*, or half ſhoes upon his fore-feet, leſt he ſhould hurt himſelf by trotting briſkly. Nothing more ſhould be put upon his head than a halter, or caveſon, with reins to it of the ſame kind. Moreover, he ought to have nothing in his mouth; ſhould there be any thing in it, it ought only to be a ſmall piece of whip-cord, with a head-ſtall without reins, as this is an improper time to put a bit into his mouth. When he has been thus managed, the rider ought to mount himſelf upon a gentle horſe, and lead the colt behind him three or four days, till he follows the horſe freely. Then the maſter ought to mount him for two or three days ſucceſſively, and afterwards ſuffer him to go alone. But the rider muſt at this time take care to manage his head by degrees; and although he proves ſtubborn either as to his mouth or head, he

BOOK I.

ſhould by no means give way to it, but reſtrain him, and gradually gain his point, till he has placed his head in a proper poſture, which he ought to keep thus, by working it downwards with his hand. Trot him upon large circles at firſt, holding the inward rein of the caveſon tight, that he may not only keep within the circle, but have his haunches rather without than within it. In order to perform this, ſpur him gently with the leg on the inſide the circle, which will not only render his ſhoulders pliant and eaſy, but make him a compleat horſe, which requires ſome labour and pains. But above all things let me recommend this, not to ſtop him on a ſudden, ſince ſuch practice may occaſion a violent pain in the reins of a young horſe; therefore let him be gently ſtopped about five or ſix lengths, beginning with a trot, and ſtop him upon his walk. When you have backed and trotted him a ſmall time, leave him at laſt as vigorous as you found him. When he has been a month exerciſed in this manner, then put a bit into his mouth, which ſhould be a ſingle curb with the branches *à la Conetable*. The firſt day you bridle him, let him be rubbed with a little honey, to make him the more quiet; then uſe him for a few days as you did before he wore the bridle. After this put the *gourmette* or curb upon him, which ought to be rather too long than too ſhort, uſing him continually in the ſame manner, managing him with the caveſon, and not with the bridle, ſo that he may be only juſt ſenſible of it: uſe him likewiſe ſometimes to move gently backwards, and, when he ſeems to comply, careſs him. During this time, which will require a month, or more, you muſt keep him trotting. After the expiration of two months, put his ſaddle on, and a caveſon made according to my own invention, which I ſhall deſcribe in its proper place. The main point is to manage a horſe's head, and to give him a proper weight upon the hand; for it is very eaſy to manage his haunches. I have therefore been often ſurprized, that ſome horſemen ſhould begin by managing the crouper or tail. If the head of a horſe is well regulated, you may afterwards manage him as you pleaſe, provided his nature and ſtrength will admit of it; for ſhould you not ſecure his head, it is impoſſible ever to make him a compleat horſe, ſince you have only your hands and heels to manage him, otherwiſe the moſt eſſential parts will fail you.

Fig. 13.

Hitherto I have ſuccinctly and clearly ſhown my new method of breaking a colt, hoping you readily comprehend what I have ſaid upon this ſubject; but the peculiar management of horſes ſhall follow hereafter.

But before I begin the ſecond book, I am willing to acquaint you, that there are a few other figures in this volume than thoſe of my own, that of Captain MAZIN and my groom's. As to Captain MAZIN, I bred him from an infant, and he thoroughly underſtood the manner of dreſſing horſes according to my new method, which he has imbibed from my inſtruction, as well as his own induſtry and long experience in the art of managing horſes. From whence I may venture to affirm, there is not a more underſtanding horſeman than himſelf. Tho' I have been always happy with regard to my ſervants, yet I muſt ſtill confeſs, that I never found ſo much love, fidelity and honeſty in any other: he conſtantly attended me in my adverſity, both in the time of peace and war, and always with the ſame affection as if I had been in the greateſt proſperity, notwithſtanding the largeneſs of his family; which obliges me in gratitude to remember him.

THE

F. Farr Sculp

THE NEW METHOD OF DRESSING HORSES.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

Of the true Seat and the neceſſary Actions of a good Horſeman.

BEFORE a horſeman mounts, he ought firſt to take care that all his horſe's furniture be in order, which is ſoon done, without prying into every minute circumſtance, to ſhew himſelf an affected connoiſſeur in the art. When he is once ſeated (for I take it for granted that every one knows how to mount a horſe) he ought to ſit upright upon the twiſt, and not upon the buttocks; though moſt people think they were made by nature to ſit upon; however, it is not to be ſo on horſeback. When he is thus placed upon his twiſt in the middle of the ſaddle, he ought to advance, as much as he can, towards the pommel, leaving a hand's breadth between his backſide and the arch of the ſaddle, holding his legs perpendicular, as when he ſtands upon the ground, and his knees and thighs turned inwards towards the ſaddle, keeping

CHAP. I.

BOOK II.

keeping them as close as if they were glued to the saddle: for a horseman has nothing else but this, together with the balance of his body, to keep himself on horse-back. He ought to fix himself firm upon his stirrups, with his heels a little lower than his toes, so that the ends of his toes may pass about half an inch beyond the stirrup, or somewhat more. He should keep his hams stiff, having his legs neither too near, nor too far distant from the horse; that is to say they should not touch the horse's sides, because of the aids which shall afterwards be explained. He ought to hold the reins in his left hand, separating them with his little finger, holding the rest fast in his hand, having the thumb upon the reins, and his arm bent and close to his body, but in an easy posture. The bridle-hand ought to be held three inches above the pommel of the saddle, and two inches before it, that it may not hinder the working of the reins, which should be held strait over the horse's neck. He should have a slender switch in his right hand, not too long, like a fishing rod, nor too short, like a bodkin; but rather short than long, because there are many useful aids with a short one, that a long one won't admit of. The handle of it ought to be a little beyond the hand, not only for the sake of caressing the horse with it, but likewise to hold it the faster. The right hand, that holds the switch, ought to advance a little before the bridle-hand, with the small end of the switch pointing towards the inside. The rider's breast ought to be in some measure advanced, his countenance pleasant and gay, but without a laugh, pointing directly between the horse's ears as he moves forward. I don't mean, that he should fix himself stiff like a post, or that he should sit upon a horse like a statue; but, on the contrary, that he should be in a free and easy position, as it is expressed in dancing with a free air. Therefore I would have a Gentleman appear on horseback without stiffness or formality, which rather savours of the scholar than the master; and I could never observe such a formality, without conceiting the rider to look aukward and silly. A good seat is of such importance, as you will see hereafter, that the regular movement of a horse entirely depends upon it, which is preferable to any other assistance; therefore let it not be despised. Moreover I dare venture to affirm, that he who does not sit genteely upon a horse, will never be a good horseman. As to the management of the bridle-reins and caveson, I will teach you more concerning them in the following discourse than has been hitherto known.

Fig. 14.

CHAP. II.

Of the Movements of a Horse in all his Natural Paces.

1. A Horse, in Walking, has two of his feet in the air, and two upon the ground, which move otherways at the same time, one fore and one hind-foot, which is the movement of a gentle trot.

2. The Trot; the action of his legs in this movement is two feet in the air, and two upon the ground, which he moves cross-ways at the same time; one fore and one hind-foot across, which is the movement of the walk: for the movement of a horse's legs is the same in walking as in trotting, where he moves them cross-ways, two in the air across, and two upon the ground at the same time; so that those which were across in the air at one time, are afterwards

afterwards in the ſame ſituation upon the ground, and ſo *vice verſa*. This is the real movement of a horſe's legs in trotting. CHAP. II.

3. The Amble. A horſe in this action moves both legs on the ſame ſide; for example, he moves his two off-legs both before and behind at the ſame time, while thoſe of the near ſide are at a ſtand; and when thoſe two which were in motion before touch the ground, he moves the other ſide, *viz.* the fore and hind leg on the near ſide, and the off-legs are then at reſt. Hence a pacing horſe moves both legs on one ſide, and changes the ſide at each motion, having both legs on the ſame ſide in the air, and thoſe of the other ſide upon the ground at the ſame time, which motion is the perfect amble.

4. Galloping is a different movement; for in this pace a horſe can lead with which leg the rider pleaſes, but the leg on the ſame ſide muſt follow it; I mean when he gallops directly forward, and then this is a true gallop. But that the leading of the fore-leg may be rightly underſtood, which ought to be followed by the hind-leg of the ſame ſide, the leg moves in the following manner: for example, if the fore off-leg leads, it conſequently follows by ſuch leading, that the ſame fore-leg ought to be before the other fore-leg, and the hind-leg on the ſame ſide ought to follow, which hind-leg ought to be before the other hind-leg, which is the right gallop.

But in order to underſtand it the better, the motion in galloping is in this manner: the horſe raiſes his two-fore legs at the ſame time in the action I have deſcribed, which is one leg before the other, and when his fore-legs come down, before they touch the ground, they are immediately followed by thoſe behind; ſo that, as I have ſaid before, they are all in the air at the ſame time: for his hind-legs begin to move when the fore-legs begin to fall, by which the whole horſe is entirely in the air. How would it otherwiſe be poſſible, that a horſe in running ſhould leap twice his length, if the motion of the gallop was not a leap forwards? This deſcription is very juſt both with reſpect to the motion and poſture of a horſe's legs in galloping, which, though it be true, is not eaſily perceived in a gentle gallop, but very viſible in a ſwift one, where the motion is violent: I ſay, his four legs may then plainly appear to be in the air at the ſame time, running being no more than a quick gallop, the motion and poſture of a horſe's legs being entirely the ſame. It is however neceſſary to obſerve, that a horſe in a circular gallop ought to lead with his two legs within the volte, *viz.* his fore-leg and hind-leg within the circle.

5. Running. The motion of a horſe and the action of his legs are the ſame in running as in galloping, the different velocity of the motion only excepted; ſo that running may be properly called a ſwift gallop, and a gallop a ſlow running. This is the true movement in running. The trot is the foundation of a gallop; and the reaſon is, becauſe the trot being croſs-ways, and a gallop both legs on the ſame ſide, if you put a horſe upon a trot beyond the ſpeed of that pace, he is obliged when his off fore-leg is lifted up, to ſet down his near hind-leg ſo quickly, that it makes the hind-leg follow the fore-leg of the ſame ſide, which is a real gallop; and for this reaſon a trot is the foundation of a gallop.

A Gallop is the foundation of the Terre-à-terre, the motion of the horſe's legs being the ſame. He leads with the fore-leg within the volte, and the hind-

BOOK II.

leg on the ſame ſide follows. You keep him only a little more in hand in Terre-à-terre, that he may keep his time more regularly.

I could wiſh that Pacing was excluded the Manege, that action being only mixed and confuſed, by which a horſe moves both legs on the ſame ſide, and ſhifts them each movement; and this is as directly contrary to the Manege as is poſſible, if, from an amble, you would put a horſe to the gallop; for when he is upon a trot you may puſh him to a gallop, but being upon the amble you muſt ſtop him upon the hand before he can gallop.

I muſt here acquaint you with what is commonly ſpoken of, tho' little underſtood. It is ſaid that a horſe may gallop with the wrong leg before, which is impoſſible; for if the hind-leg follows the fore-leg on the ſame ſide, it is a real gallop; therefore it is rather the wrong leg behind. But let us explain what is meant by the wrong leg foremoſt. In the true gallop, the fore-leg that moves firſt ought to be followed by the hind one on the ſame ſide; and when a horſe puts down his two fore-legs, they are follow'd by the hind ones before they touch the ground; ſo that all four legs are in the air at the ſame time, and the horſe ſprings forward. What is therefore called the wrong leg foremoſt happens in this manner: when a horſe is in motion upon the quickneſs of the gallop, he ſhifts his legs croſs-ways, which is the action of a trot, and which is ſo contrary, that it is ready to make the horſe fall. This is one ſort of what is termed the wrong leg before: this the other. When a horſe is galloping, as I ſaid before, he ought in a gallop to keep both legs on the ſame ſide always foremoſt, inſtead whereof he changes the ſide every time, both fore and hind-leg on the ſame ſide, and changes ſides each time, being the action of an amble, which is performed by having both feet on one ſide in the air, and thoſe on the other ſide upon the ground at the ſame time. This action of ambling upon the ſwiftneſs of a gallop ſo far differs from the action of a gallop, that it is ready to make the horſe fall. Theſe two actions, *viz.* that of trotting and that of ambling upon the ſwiftneſs of a gallop, is what they ignorantly call the wrong leg before. It is very certain however, that altho' a horſe gallops as he ought to do, and his hind-leg follows his fore-leg on the ſame ſide; nevertheleſs, if he is not uſed to that ſide, he will not gallop ſo briſkly, or ſo faſt, as he will on that ſide with which he is uſed to lead: for it is the ſame with a horſe as with a left-handed man, or one that uſes his right. Cuſtom is very prevalent both in men and beaſts, and in reality upon all things in general.

CHAP. III.

Of the artificial Movements of a Horſe's Legs.

FIRST of Terre-à-terre. Here the horſe always leads with the two legs within the volte; his two fore-legs are in the air, as in the gallop, and his two hind-legs follow when he begins to put down thoſe before, in ſuch manner that the horſe has all his legs in the air at the ſame time, making a leap forwards. His action in the Demivolte is altogether like that of Terre-à-terre.

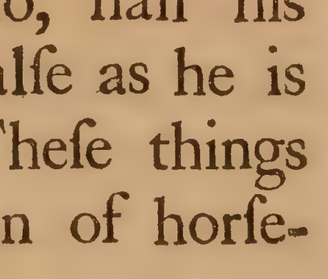
2. Secondly,

2. Secondly, he makes only a leap upwards in Curvets, Demi-airs, Groupades, Balotades, and Capriols: for he has all four legs in the air at the same time, as well when he brings down, as when he raises his fore-part. There are only these two artificial movements, *viz.* Terre-à-terre and the Airs I have just mentioned.

Some imagine that the croupe of the horse is his center, and that his fore-part makes the circumference, which is impossible. For a horse by no means resembles a pair of compasses, that has only two legs, but an animal with four; so that the center is never in the horse, but in the pillar, or in an imaginary center of the circle in which the horse works: you shall see the true movements of his legs about the centre in all the artificial airs. It is necessary for you to know, that let a horse be either on the right or left hand, he ought always to be a part of that circle in which he moves; and therefore he ought always to be bent on the inside, and not on the outside of it. For suppose him on the right hand, he ought to be bent to that side as the circle is. Should he be plied outward, he would be for the left hand, and not for the right, to which he is going; so that he would go false, not only with his body, but his legs. The nearer a horse goes to the centre, the more ought he to be bent, or plied. If he goes Terre-à-terre large, altho' he seems near the center by a strait line drawn, nevertheless, because of the largeness of the circle, his ply will not be so great, and by it he will be more at his ease. Notwithstanding a large circle may be more irksome to him than a smaller, the bent or ply of his body will be less in the former than the latter. It is moreover necessary to observe, that let a horse go to either hand, he ought to have the center or pillar on his inside: for instance, suppose him to the right, the pillar ought to be on that side towards the volte, altho' he is very near it. For by this means the horse will be always aslaunt, let him do what he will, and the half of his shoulders will go before the half of his haunches, which is as he ought to be. Was he on the other side of the pillar, half his haunches would go before the half of his shoulders, which would be false. Besides, were he so, half his croupe would go before half of his shoulders, which would be false as he is to the right hand, but as it should be if he went to the left. These things ought to be well consider'd, because they are the very foundation of horsemanship.

Let us therefore first consider the natural posture in which a horse stands, and then what art can do to him; for art ought never to be contrary to nature, but to follow and perfect it. I have here given you the natural posture in which a horse stands, having his fore and hind-legs equidistant and parallel to each other, as you see in the figure. The artificial lines in which I make them move are thus; that is, to place his hind-feet in their natural position, as you see in the second figure. By this means half the shoulders of the horse will go before the half of his haunches on the inside of the volte, and the other half of his haunches on the outside of it will be in their natural posture; so that his two hind-legs are brought by art within the lines of nature of his fore-legs, by which method a horse will always move well, that is, with the half of his shoulders within that of his haunches on the side of the circle, and never become *entier*; and this also puts him upon his

1.



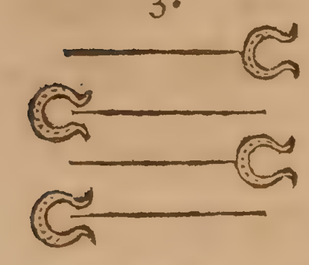
2.

haunches,

BOOK II.

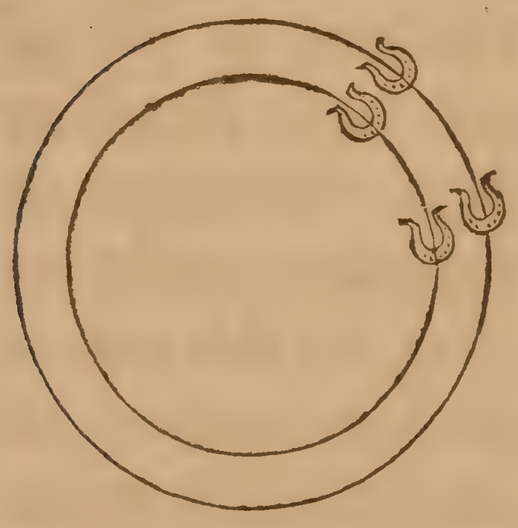
haunches, which is the quinteſſence of horſemanſhip. If a horſe puts himſelf upon his croupe by parting his legs, he will be indeed upon his croupe, but not upon his haunches, unleſs his hind-feet are in their natural direction, as you may ſee by the ſecond figure. Many riders work the croupe of a horſe, as if he had only one hind-leg, whereas he has two; and each of them ought to be conſider'd in all the actions he makes, otherwiſe he works ignorantly or by chance, as you will perceive by the following figure marked 3.

3.



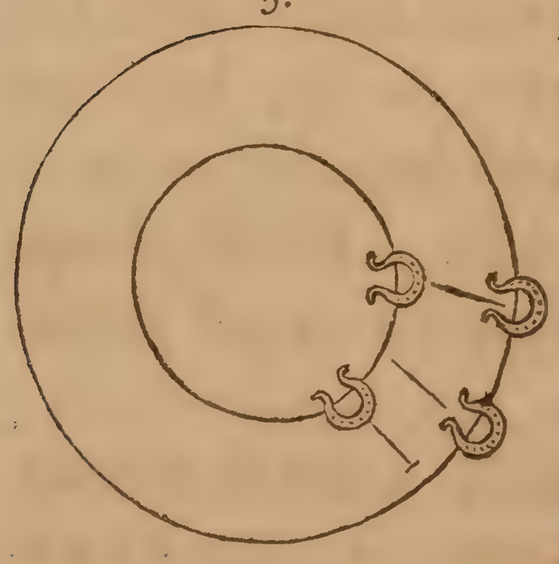
Moſt riders turn the bridle-hand when they go upon the voltes; for example, if they go to the right, they turn the bridle-hand to the ſame ſide, which muſt naturally throw out the horſe's croupe; which the rider perceiving, he ſpurs him briſkly with the left leg; he ſpurs him, I ſay, at the ſame time, ſo that he throws out the croupe of the horſe by one aid, and would bring it in at the ſame time by another, which is impoſſible; for the ſame thing cannot have two contrary motions at the ſame time. Some horſemen notwithſtanding are ſo ſtupidly ignorant, that they are continually whipping and ſpurring the poor beaſt till they have forc'd his hind-leg from its natural direction, which was before in a line with his fore-leg without the volte, as you may perceive by fig. 3. Thus the half of his croupe will be within the half of his ſhoulders, which is falſe, and very liable to make the horſe fall; all this proceeds from the ignorance of the rider.

4.



This volte or circle is by moſt horſemen ſuppoſed to be only of one piſte, which is abſolutely falſe; for as a horſe has by nature four legs, they muſt conſequently deſcribe two circles, or piſtes. A horſe in this figure goes according to the lines of nature, which in a Manege ought never to be done, as you ſhall ſee hereafter.

5.



Your great philoſophers in horſemanſhip deſcribe theſe two circles for the Terre-à-terre, placing the horſe's two fore-feet in the larger and his hind-feet in the leſſer; ſuppoſing, that Terre-à-terre is the ſame action as Walking a horſe upon the voltes with his croupe in, by which they are much miſtaken. It is very true, that in Walking a horſe with his croupe within the volte, only two circles are deſcribed; but in the Terre-à-terre a horſe deſcribes four compleat circles with his four feet, as you may eaſily ſee in fig. 5.

Another grand error is committed in this circle, which is, when you make the half of a horſe's croupe go before the half of his ſhoulders, as you may ſee in figure 5. which is both falſe and dangerous; becauſe in the Manege, the ſhoulders ought always to go before the haunches. Nobody travels with his horſe's croupe before his head, and this is equally as ridiculous with reſpect to a managed horſe. You therefore plainly ſee, by theſe two figures, the faults in the common way of working; the true one ſhall follow hereafter.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

My Method in faſtening the Reins of the Caveſon.

TAKE a long rein, with a ſmall ring faſten'd to one end of it, and paſs the other end of the rein thro' this ring, which bring over the pommel of the ſaddle, and fix it there in ſuch a manner that it cannot move; then draw the rein downwards, and paſs it under the fore-bolſter of the ſaddle, and then put the remainder of the rein through the ring of the caveſon directly before, bringing the ſame end of the rein into your hand; then do the ſame by the other rein, fixing both ends well to the pommel of the ſaddle, carrying it directly downwards, as above, under the fore-bolſter of the ſaddle, paſſing it thro' the other ring of the caveſon, and by this means bring the rein into your hand. This ſort of caveſon is exceeding uſeful, both to ſettle a horſe's head, to make him ſteady in hand, to give his body a proper bent, to preſerve his mouth, to ſtop him, make him go backwards, or to turn him eaſily to either hand; moreover, I have a greater command over him with two fingers in this manner, than with both hands by the common method. I may venture to ſay farther, that the old faſhion has not near ſo much effect as this; I therefore adviſe you to make uſe of it. The figure of it may be ſeen in the firſt part of this book.

CHAP. V.

The firſt Diviſion of LESSONS for making the Shoulders of a Horſe free and eaſy.

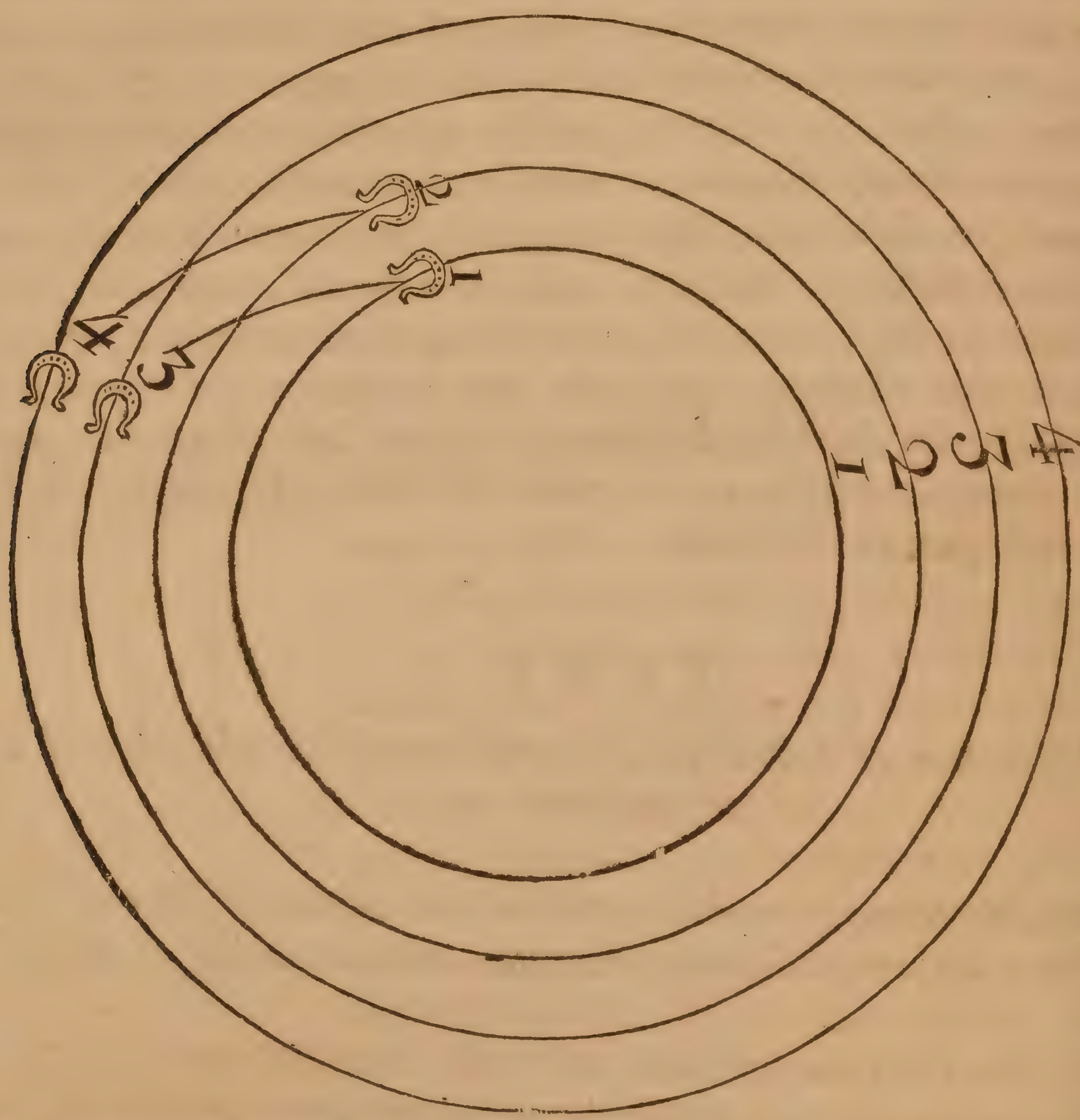
How a raw Horſe ought to be treated at firſt to make him trot to the Right Hand in a large Circle, with a Caveſon made according to my Faſhion.

FIRST, let the rider be ſeated as I have directed before, and let him pull the rein of the caveſon within the volte upwards, towards the left ſhoulder, the nails of the right hand upwards, and the little finger towards the ſhoulder. The reins of the caveſon ought neither to be too long nor too ſhort, for by both theſe faults the power of the rider will be diminiſhed. He ſhould therefore adjuſt the length himſelf, ſince he alone is the proper judge of it. Then drawing the rein of the caveſon inward, he ſhould touch his horſe gently with the right leg, which will force his croupe outward, and work his ſhoulders at the ſame time, but only the half of his croupe, the other being loſt, the rider having no feeling of it. Let him remember, that leg and rein of a ſide works always both the ſhoulders, and but one half of the croupe. The better to work his ſhoulders, the rider ſhould turn inward the contrary ſhoulder to the hand he is working the horſe upon. For example, in trotting him to the right hand, the rider ſhould place his left ſhoulder within, having his bridle-hand a little out of the volte, working all the time with the caveſon, and very little with the bridle. The rider's leg out of the volte ought to be a little more advanced than the other, becauſe the aid is with the inward, and not the outward leg. Both the horſe's ſhoulders being work'd in this man-

BOOK II.

ner, both with the rein of the caveſon and the rider's leg on the ſame ſide a the volte (his croupe being outwards) which always works the ſhoulders, the muſt therefore be more wrought than his hind-part; for the croupe is put out and the ſhoulders neareſt the center, and the part neareſt thereto will alway be more reſtrained, more laboured and confined, than that which is farther off whether it be in walking, trotting, or galloping, as appears by the figure following.

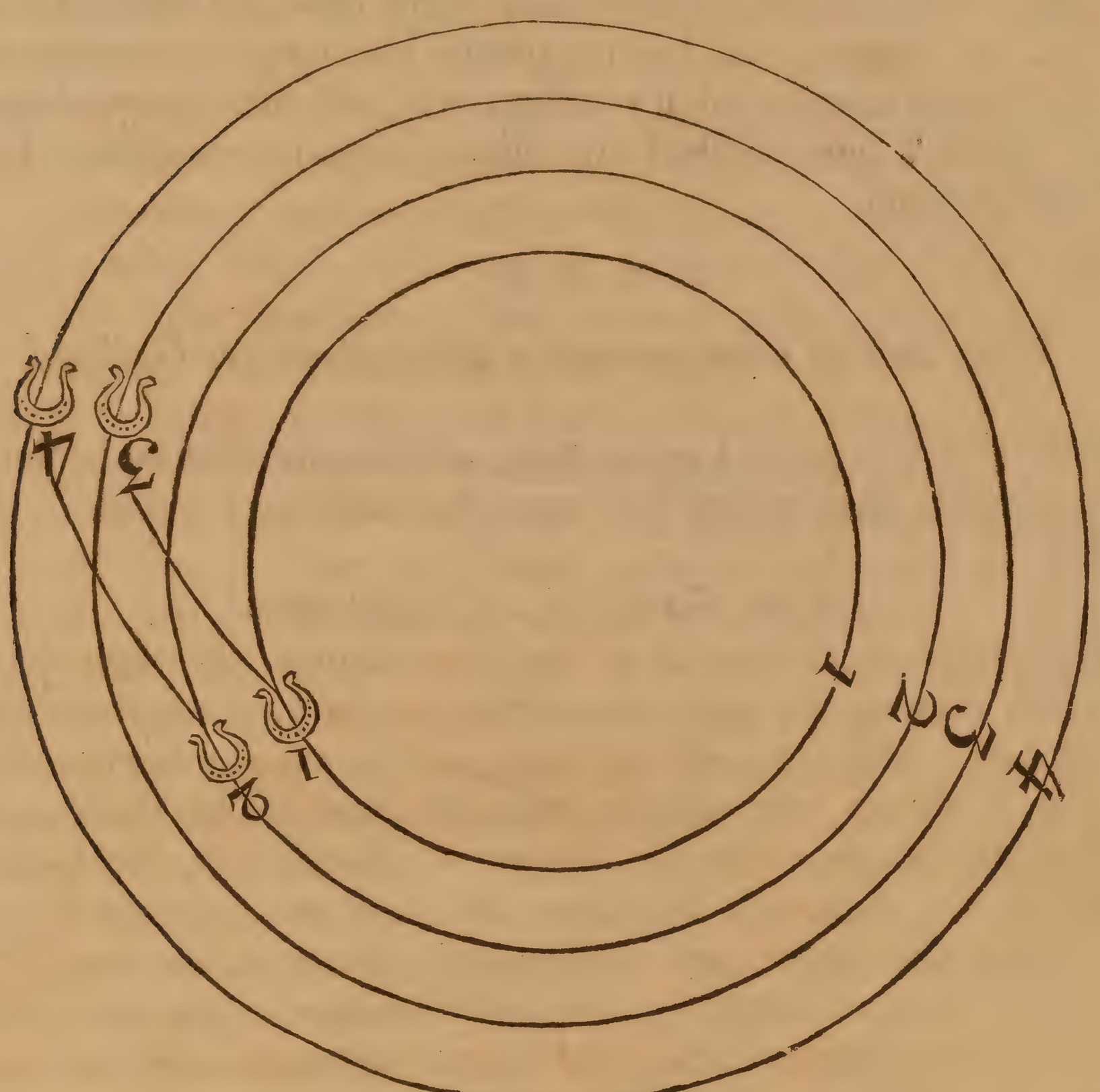
The firſt Leſſon for a Colt or young Horſe trotting on the Right Hand.



By this figure it appears, that the feet of a horſe deſcribe four diſtinct circles on the right hand. The fore-foot, marked 1. deſcribes the ſmalleſt; the other marked 2. deſcribes the ſecond; the hind-foot marked 3. deſcribes the third; and the other hind-foot the fourth. Thus you ſee, that he keeps his ſhoulders within his hind-legs, which prevents him from being *entier*, (that is, to refuſe to turn) and renders his ſhoulders ſupple and pliant; and this is the beſt leſſon for a young horſe in the beginning, it being more difficult to work the ſhoulders than the croupe. You ought moreover to ſtop him in this poſture, and make him advance and retire at a proper time, ſince there is no fear of making him throw out his croupe at the beginning, or even for ſome time after; but it is much to be feared, that he may be apt to throw it in, this being abſolutely wrong, and may chance to make him *entier*, (viz. refuſe to turn) and render his ſhoulders ſtiff, ſo that he may never turn eaſily afterwards, which is the greateſt fault belonging to a horſe. It is not ſufficient to keep the head and neck of a horſe within the volte, but give an entire ply or bent to his whole body from the noſe to the tail. I have already

already demonſtrated, in what manner it ſhould be done. For altho' ſome object that his neck will be weaken'd by this method, I can anſwer that objection in no other manner, than by ſaying, that ſuch horſemen do not underſtand the art they pretend to profeſs, who would make a horſe ſtiff-necked by their management, and not able to turn or wheel about. As to my own part, I confeſs, when I have uſed my utmoſt endeavours, I find them hardly ſufficient to make the ſhoulders of a horſe eaſy; and therefore would adviſe you to follow the inſtructions I have laid down. And thus I finiſh my diſcourſe upon trotting a horſe on the right hand. CHAP. V.

The firſt Leſſon for a Colt or young Horſe trotting to the Left.



The feet of a horſe in this motion deſcribe four diſtinct circles on the left hand. The fore-foot mark'd 1. deſcribes the leaſt, and the other fore-foot mark'd 2. the ſecond; the hind-foot marked 3. the third, and the other hind-foot marked 4. deſcribes the fourth. From whence you may perceive the excellency of this leſſon in making a horſe's ſhoulders free and eaſy. But it will be here unneceſſary to repeat what I have ſaid before, and therefore I ſhall only ſhow you the aids neceſſary for the left hand, which are theſe. Now the rider ought to take the bridle-reins in his right hand, and thoſe of the caveſon in his left, and the ſwitch in which hand he pleaſes. The reins of the caveſon being thus held in the left hand, that is, toward the volte, they muſt be drawn, having the nails turned towards his right ſhoulder, aiding with the left leg, ſo that you may work both his ſhoulders, and only the half of his croupe. This leſſon ought to be continued till the horſe is very light, and ſo light that he offers to gallop of himſelf, for till then he ſhould not to be

BOOK II.

be put to it. I muſt however remark one thing, which is, that in working the ſhoulders of a horſe, he muſt neceſſarily be put a little upon his ſhoulders; for it is plain, when his croupe is loſt, it is impoſſible to place him upon his haunches; but the ſhoulders is the moſt difficult taſk, it being an eaſy matter to ſettle the croupe, as you ſhall ſee hereafter. Whilſt you are working the ſhoulders of a horſe, he ought to feel very little of the bridle, which may ſerve to put him gently upon his haunches, ſince he has little for his fore-part to lean upon: the rein of the caveſon ought moreover to be held lightly, and as eaſy as poſſible, which will aſſiſt him likewiſe in placing himſelf upon his haunches. He ought to be ſtopt very gently at firſt, and more ſtrongly by degrees. You ought to conſider beſides, that as the rein of the caveſon and the leg, both working upon the ſame ſide, work both the horſe's ſhoulders and only half of his croupe, that by this means his croupe is entirely loſt to the rider, ſince he feels nothing of it: a ſhort trot will likewiſe put him upon his haunches. Thus I have finiſhed my diſcourſe upon the method of trotting a horſe to the left hand.

CHAP. VI.

When and in what manner a Horſe ſhould be Galloped.

WHEN a horſe is perfect in his trot, and ſo eaſy that he begins to gallop of himſelf, then gallop him upon the ſame large circles in the following manner.

For the Gallop to the Right Hand.

The rider ought to be ſeated in the ſame manner as when the horſe was upon the trot, drawing the right rein of the caveſon towards the volte, putting the bridle-hand a little out of the turn, and aiding the horſe with the right leg, ſince it is always rein and leg of a ſide that works the ſhoulders, and only half of the croupe; but the croupe is actually loſt, ſince the rider has no feeling of it. A horſe's ſhoulders are more worked than his croupe, as they are nearer the center, and conſequently more preſſed than the croupe, which is large and at liberty. The left ſhoulder of the rider ought to be turned towards the volte or circle, that he may better manage the horſe's ſhoulders, having his left leg a little more advanced than the other, becauſe no aid is to be given with that but with the right, that is within the volte. It ought to be obſerved in this place, that nature has framed a horſe's legs of equal length; this being granted, and the rider working with the rein within the volte, and with his leg on the ſame ſide, the horſe's fore-leg next the volte will be longer than the other, and more advanced, and thus he will begin his gallop, the hind-leg on the ſame ſide ought to follow, being more at liberty, which is the true gallop to the right; for the fore-leg within the volte ought always to move firſt, and the hind-leg on the ſame ſide ſhould follow. By this means he is obliged to gallop right, which is not eaſily performed by any other method. You may ſee this in the preceding figures for this leſſon upon the trot: for the horſe's legs in the gallop deſcribe here the ſame circles; the fore-foot mark'd 1. makes the little circle, the other fore-foot mark'd 2. makes the ſecond circle, the hind-foot mark'd 3. makes the third circle, and the other foot mark'd 4. makes the fourth circle. This is the beſt leſſon that can be

given

given to a young raw horſe, becauſe there is more difficulty in working the ſhoulders than the croupe. He ought to be ſtopped in that poſture, without raiſing him, for the reaſons given before, and ſhould be made after his ſtop to rein gently back. This is the method of galloping a horſe to the right. Remember, that the Gallop ſettles a horſe's head, and gives him a good *appuy*, or feeling of the bit. Moreover, as a Trot is the foundation of a Gallop, ſo a Gallop is the foundation of Terre-à-terre, as has been ſhewn in its proper place.

For the Gallop to the Left.

The rider ought to be ſeated as was ſhewn before in the gallop to the right, only with this difference, that he ought to hold his bridle in the right hand, the caveſon in the left, and the ſwitch in which hand he pleaſes. The reins of the caveſon being held in the left hand, that is, next the volte, he muſt draw them, having the nails of his hand turn'd up towards the right ſhoulder, and bringing that ſhoulder in, muſt help his horſe with the left leg, that he may work both his ſhoulders, and only half of the croupe. It appears plainly by the foregoing circles, that a horſe by this method cannot gallop falſe. His fore-leg next the volte ſhould move firſt, ſince it is the longeſt on account of the bent of the horſe's body, as I have ſaid before, and the hind-leg on the ſame ſide ought to follow, becauſe it is moſt at liberty. This is the true gallop to the left, as you may ſee by the preceding figures for this leſſon upon the trot; for the horſe's legs in the gallop here deſcribe the ſame circles, by which it appears, that the feet of a horſe deſcribe four compleat circles when he gallops to the left. The fore-foot marked 1. deſcribes the inward circle, the other fore-foot marked 2. the ſecond circle; the hind-foot marked 3. deſcribes the third, and the other foot marked 4. the fourth circle. Thus you may ſee how this excellent leſſon renders the ſhoulders of a horſe ſupple and eaſy, wherein the difficulty of the work conſiſts; if theſe are made ſupple at firſt, the reſt will be no hard taſk. You muſt ſtop, and rein him back in the ſame poſture; but don't make him riſe before, till he is very perfect in this leſſon, and ſome others to be ſhewn hereafter. This only makes the ſhoulders of a horſe free and ſupple, for the croupe is entirely out of the queſtion, tho' he obeys the rider's leg next the volte. This gives a proper ply to his body, which is not eaſily done by any other method, and is the principal thing in the dreſſing of a horſe. Thus I conclude the method of working a young raw horſe's ſhoulders at firſt both upon the trot and gallop, which is the perfection of the beginning of the work. You ought ſometimes to walk your horſe upon theſe large circles in the ſame manner as you trotted and galloped him before, in order to work his ſhoulders. This gentle walk will pleaſe him, divert him in his exerciſe, and make him love the Manege.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Method of ſtopping a Horſe.

WHEN a horſe is trotting, the rider ought to preſs him a little faſter before he ſtops, and ſtop him immediately after, by drawing the inward rein of the caveſon a little ſtronger than the other, and more towards his body, putting his body a little back, that he may be obliged by the weight to

BOOK II.

put himſelf upon his haunches; but particular care ought to be taken, that h does not advance, by which I mean that he ſhould not riſe before, but onl ſtop without riſing; for a ſure way to ſpoil a horſe, is to teach him to ri before he trots and gallops freely, for he would be apt to riſe and be reſtif, in ſtead of advancing. Particular care ought therefore to be taken never to mak him riſe, till he anſwers freely the ſpurs both in trotting and galloping; bu the ſpurs in the beginning ſhould be given with great care, and but ſeldom, an then gently. He ſhould be ſtopped without ſuffering him to riſe, as this figur and my inſtructions direct.

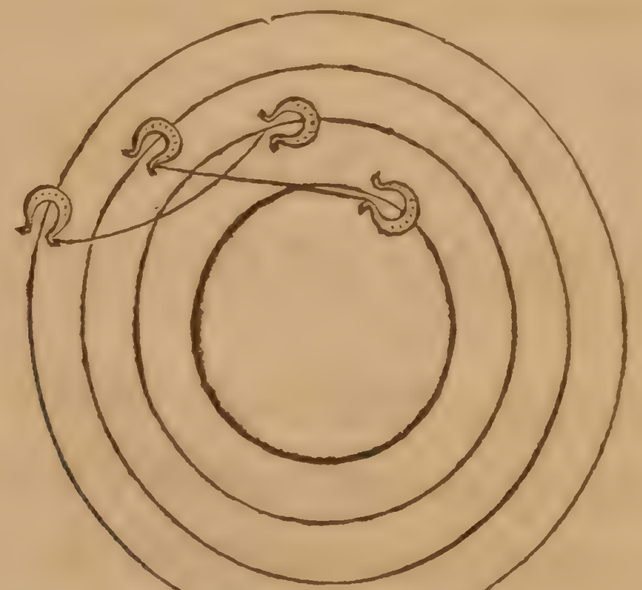
The bridle ought to be ſlack, when the horſe firſt begins to rein back, draw ing both reins of the caveſon, as if you was ſawing a piece of wood, the rider leaning a little back, when the horſe goes back, according to the deſcription in the following figure.

Trotting and ſtopping a horſe is the foundation of all airs, they ſettle his head and croupe, put him well upon his haunches, and make him light before.

Reining back ſettles the horſe's head, puts him upon his haunches, and makes him light before.

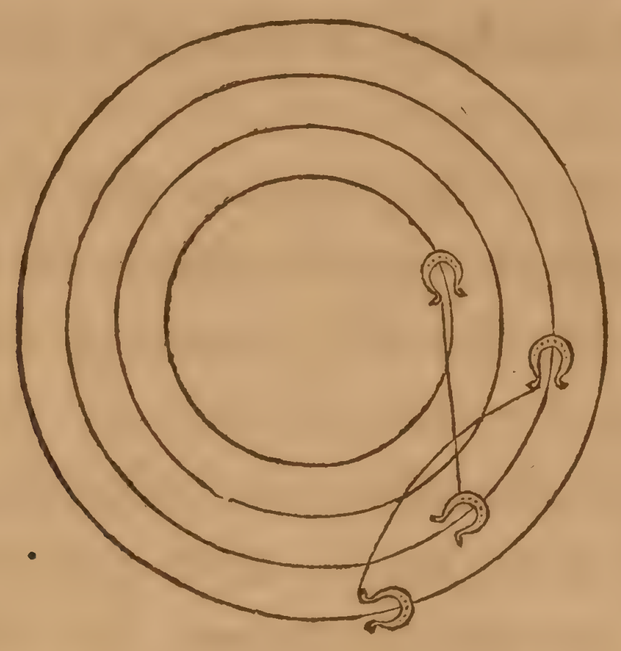
I muſt in this place ſhew you, that it is a bad practice to make a horſe go more turns to the right hand than the left. Notwithſtanding their philoſophical argument, that a foal lies upon the left ſide in the womb of the dam, ſucks on the ſame ſide; that he is always ſaddled, turned about, and led ſo; many horſes being however eaſier to the right hand than the left; therefore the moſt difficult ought always to be the moſt worked; for what can you deſire more, than to have your horſe equally ſupple to both ſides? In the old way of fighting on horſeback, they always turned to the right to get the advantage of the croupe. But Monſieur FURGO, who was an excellent horſeman, and the beſt in the world for the ſingle combat, by a new invention of his own, never took that method. You muſt obſerve, that the motion of a horſe's legs in trotting is croſs-ways; that thoſe legs in the air are always the moſt advanced, and thus they change alternately; for inſtance, when the near fore-leg is in the air, the off hind-leg is from the ground at the ſame time, and thus *vice verſa* he changes them in every motion. When a horſe has been thus well worked to both hands upon theſe large circles, you may walk him gently and in his length, in the ſame manner you had worked him before. Work him both with rein and leg on the ſame ſide, which will render his ſhoulders ſupple and eaſy; and the narrower the circle, the more pliant will it make them; but let him be ſoftly worked in this manner, firſt on the right hand, and then on the left.

Upon the Right Hand in a Walk in the Horſe's Length.



Upon

Upon the Left Hand the ſame Leſſon. CHAP. VIII.



An End of the firſt Diviſion of LESSONS *which were to render the Shoulders of a Horſe free and eaſy.* *Vide Fig.* 15, 16.

CHAP. VIII.

The ſecond Diviſion of LESSONS.

A new Method of working a Horſe's Croupe to the Right Hand.

I SHALL now begin to inſtruct you firſt how to make a horſe obey the ſpur. Place his head towards the wall, for the right hand, drawing the inward rein of the caveſon, with the nails of your hand directed upwards to the left ſhoulder, and the bridle-hand a little outward, and the left ſhoulder a little within, aiding him gently with the left leg, to advance his ſhoulder within the volte; by which means his body will have a right turn, and he will look into the volte. It ſhould be here obſerved, that the rein within the volte, and the rider's leg without, uſed at the ſame time, work always his croupe; for I plainly perceive, that the rein towards the volte works the hind-leg on the ſame ſide. It is neceſſary to be obſerved beſides, that the wall is a ſort of center or pillar, when the horſe's head fronts it; therefore when his head is placed towards the wall, upon a trot, his fore-legs are nearer together than the hind-ones: therefore the lines of his fore-legs are within thoſe of his hind, becauſe his fore-part is placed againſt the wall, which ought to be looked upon as the center. I find however, that I work his croupe, ſince leg and rein contrary always does. In this leſſon, when a horſe trots, he deſcribes only two lines; one where his fore-legs move near together, and the other where the hind-ones move at a greater diſtance from each other. A horſe in this action paſſages, which is, to lap one leg over another; but becauſe he is upon the action of the trot, in which he moves his legs croſsways, he places or croſſes the outward fore-leg over the inward, and at the ſame time he advances the inward hind-leg; the next ſtep he advances the inward fore-leg, and croſſes the outward hind-leg over the inward, ſo that it is impoſſible for him in this action to croſs both his near-legs at the ſame inſtant over his off-ones; but he croſſes them one over the other every ſecond movement. When you are near the end of the wall, aid your horſe more briſkly with the left leg than the other, in order to command more of his croupe, and if he yeilds to it, careſs him. Thus I have ſhewn you the manner of working a horſe's croupe to the right hand.

CHAP.

II. BOOK

CHAP. IX.

The Method of working a Horſe's Croupe to the Left Hand.

I MAKE the horſe obey the heel in the following manner: Since it is on the left, you muſt ſhift your bridle-rein into the right hand, and hold thoſe of the caveſon with the left, turning the horſe's head towards the wall, for the left, and drawing the inward rein of the caveſon with the nails of your hand directed to the right ſhoulder, and that ſhoulder a little in, the bridle-hand a little outward, aiding him gently with the right leg, to advance his ſhoulder within the the volte, by which means his body will have a right turn. It ſhould be here obſerved, that the rein within the volte, and the rider's leg without, working at the ſame time, always work a horſe's croupe; for I plainly perceive, that the rein towards the volte works the hind-leg on the ſame ſide, and my own leg that on the other ſide. The wall being a ſort of center confines his fore-legs, whilſt the others are at liberty. The head to the wall, the fore-part muſt be the moſt preſſed, which I have no occaſion to repeat in this place, ſince I ſhewed it you in the preceding chapter. I ſhall only obſerve one thing more, which is, that when you come near the end of the wall, you muſt aid your horſe briſkly with the right leg, in order to have more command of the croupe before you ſtop, and work him upon this leſſon till he is perfect at it.

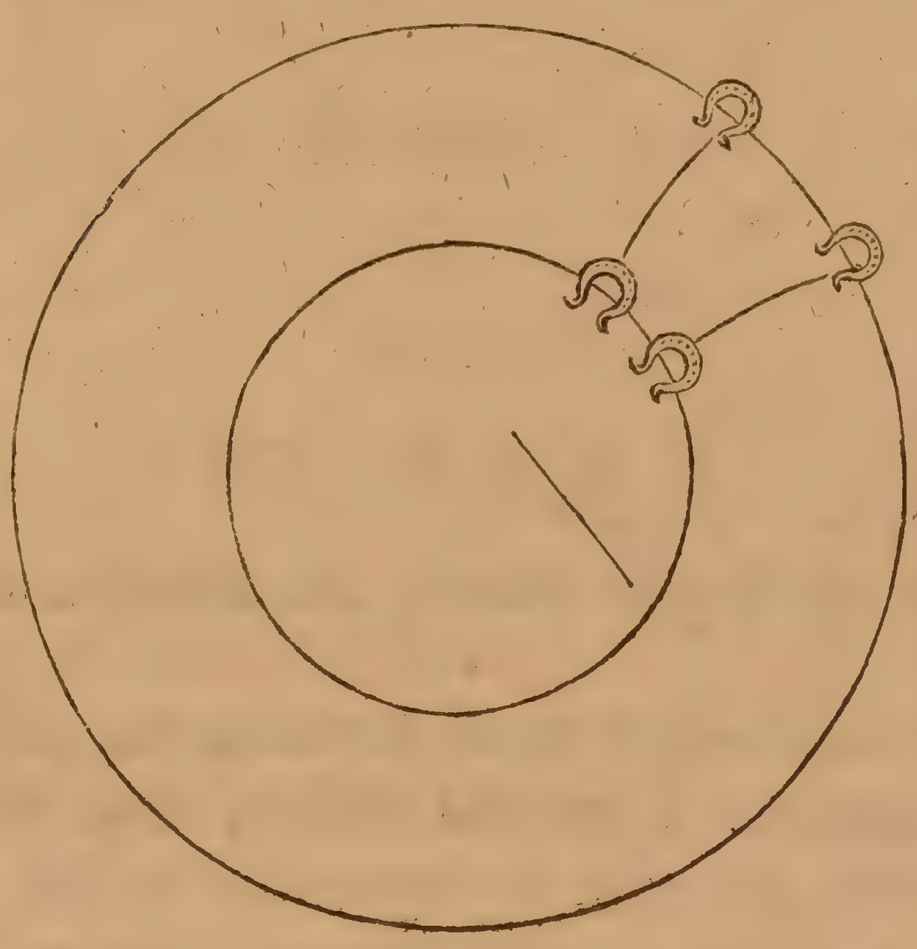
CHAP. X.

A new and true way to work the Croupe of a Horſe upon a Walk, which is the Action of the Trot, the Croupe to the Center, which is the Pillar.

WHEN the croupe of a horſe is near the center or pillar, you muſt draw the rein of the caveſon within the volte, having the nails upwards, and the little finger towards the left ſhoulder, aiding him with your leg out of the volte, which is the left, and by this means the horſe's hind-legs will be brought nearer together. The rein of the caveſon within the volte preſſes the hind-leg on the ſame ſide outward, whilſt the rider's leg on the outſide preſſes the other hind-leg inward; ſo that they are put both under his belly. By this method therefore both the horſe's hind-legs are in ſubjection, and only the half of his ſhoulders preſſing his croupe, and leaving his fore-part at liberty, that he may the better embrace the volte. If both his ſhoulders ſhould come in, one of his haunches muſt conſequently be without, which would be falſe. This being to the right, your left ſhoulder ought neceſſarily to come in, not only to keep yourſelf upright in the ſaddle, but to facilitate the motion of the horſe's ſhoulders, and you muſt turn your head to look into the volte. In this paſſage, which is the action of the trot, a horſe croſſes his legs without the volte, only every other time; for example, when he croſſes the outward fore-leg over the inward fore-leg, the inward hind-leg advances at the ſame time; in the next motion the horſe croſſes his outward hind-leg over the inward hind-leg, and he advances at the ſame time the inward fore-leg. He cannot poſſibly croſs his legs but every other time, ſince the movement of them upon the trot is always

always acroſs. The pillar, which is the center, ought always to be within the croupe, by which the fore-part of the horſe will always go before his croupe, and he will go ſideways, as he ought to do, when his croupe is to the pillar or center. Working a horſe this way upon a walk, which is the action of the trot, he deſcribes only two circles; his hind-feet, as being next the center, deſcribe the leſſer, and his fore-feet the larger, ſince they are at a greater diſtance from it, as you may ſee by the following figure. CHAP. XI.

For the Right Hand.



A horſe deſcribes but two circles, becauſe he is upon the trot, which is croſsways, and he croſſes his legs only every other time.

The ſtrait line within the leſſer circle demonſtrates, that the center is within the horſe's croupe, and that though the center was farther diſtant, he will never become reſtive, as long as it remains within the croupe.

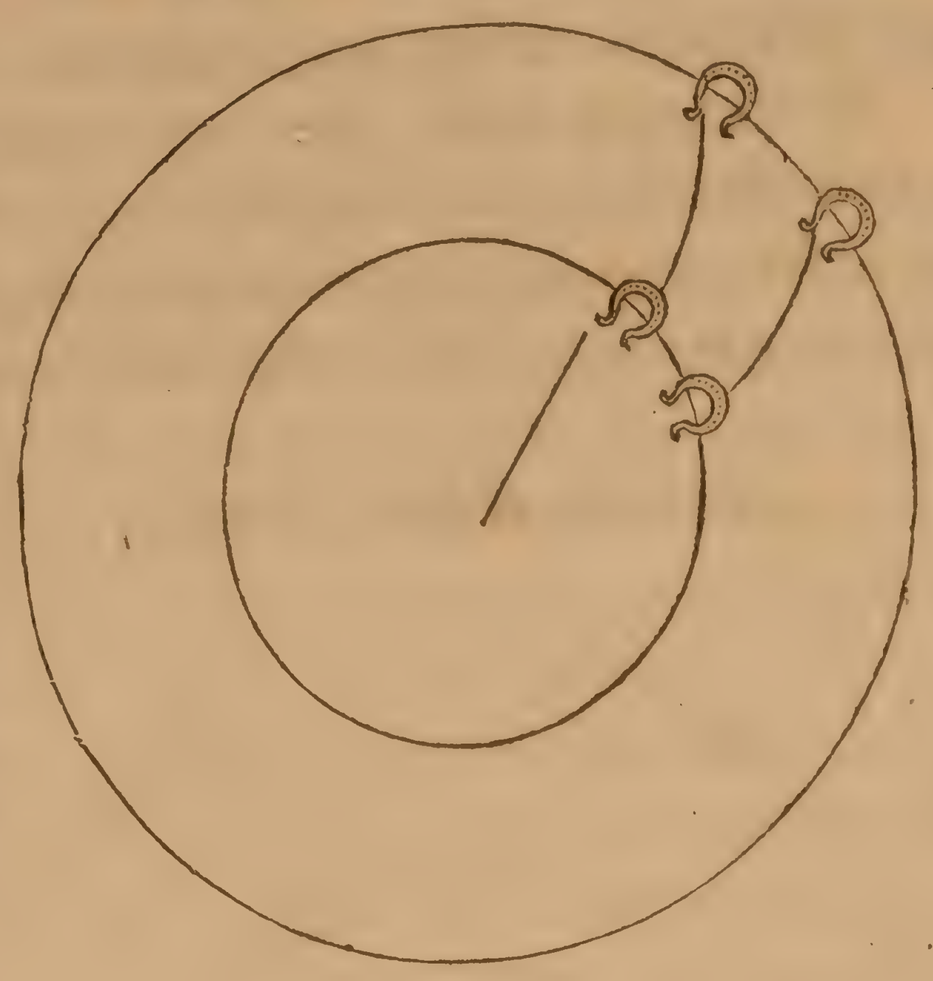
CHAP. XI.

To work a Horſe upon his Paſſage upon a Walk, which is the Action of a Trot, to the Left Hand.

HERE it is proper to change the bridle from the left hand to the right, and hold the reins of the caveſon with the left, having your little finger towards the right ſhoulder, aiding the horſe at the ſame time with your outward leg, *viz.* the right, which brings his hind-legs together. The rein of the caveſon within the volte puts the horſe's hind-leg next to it out, and the rider's leg out of the volte puts his other hind-leg in, ſo that they come under his belly, and put him upon his haunches. By this method therefore a horſe's hind-legs are both worked, and only the half of his ſhoulders, by forcing his croupe, and leaving his ſhoulders at liberty, that he may the better embrace the volte. In this paſſage, which is a trot, a horſe only croſſes his legs without the volte over thoſe within it, every other movement, for the reaſons I explained in the former chapter. But one conſtant rule ought always to be obſerved, which is, to keep the center or pillar always within the horſe's croupe, though he ſhould be never ſo near it; by which means his ſhoulders will neceſſarily move before his croupe, and ſideways, as they ought to do. By working a horſe upon the trot in this manner, he deſcribes only two circles with his legs; thoſe neareſt the center deſcribe the leſſer, and the moſt remote the larger, as you may ſee by the figure following.

BOOK II.

For the Left Hand.



A horſe deſcribes but two circles when he is upon the trot, becauſe he only croſſes his legs alternately.

The ſtrait line within the leſſer circle, ſhews, that the center is within the horſe's croupe; and, though the center was farther diſtant, he will never become *entier*, which is, to refuſe to turn, as long as it remains within his croupe.

CHAP. XII.

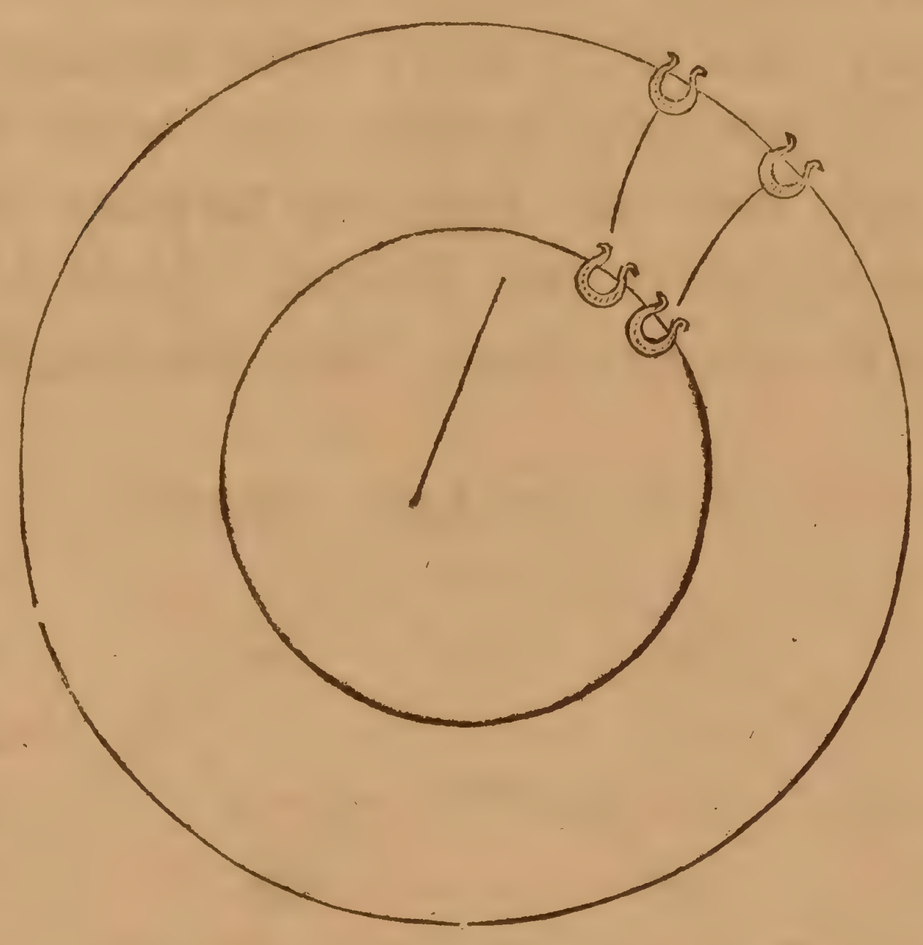
To work to the Right Hand, the Horſe's Croupe out.

HERE the horſe's head ought to be towards the pillar, for the right hand. I have laid it down as a maxim before, that when a horſe's croupe is worked towards the pillar, it ought to be always within his croupe; but when his head is towards it, and his croupe from it, the pillar ought to be quite contrary. For inſtance, in the preſent caſe, the horſe ought to have the pillar on the outſide of his head; whereas in the other he had it on the inſide of his croupe, when it was turned to it. The reaſon why the horſe's head ought to be within the pillar, is, that by this means his ſhoulders are ſo worked, that he cannot bring his croupe too much within, nor become *entier*. The horſe's croupe ſhould be worked as much as poſſible, always obſerving to keep the pillar without his head; for by this means his croupe cannot be thrown too much in, but will make him move perfectly well ſideways: the fore-part of the horſe, which is neareſt the center, is more conſtrained than his croupe, that is more diſtant from it. Here follows the method of working a horſe's head on the right hand, having the pillar without it, which is on the left.

The rider ought to pull the inner rein of the caveſon, having the nails of his hand turned upwards, and his little finger towards the left ſhoulder, the bridle-hand a little without, and the left ſhoulder ſomewhat in, turning his face towards the volte, touching him gently at the ſame time with the left leg. The horſe's ſhoulder next the volte ought to advance a little, that he may have a proper turn with his body, and may look towards it. It is neceſſary to obſerve in this place, that the inward rein and the outward leg of the rider, moving at the ſame time, conſtantly work the horſe's croupe, as they are oppoſite to each other. For I am perfectly ſenſible, that the inward rein of the caveſon works the hind-leg on that ſide, and that my own leg works the other without the volte. It ought moreover to be obſerved, that when a horſe's head is toward the pillar or center in this action, his fore-part is more conſtrained than his croupe, ſince it is nearer the center, by which means his fore-legs are within his hind-ones; but ſtill I perceive that I work the horſe's croupe.

croupe. A horſe deſcribes but two circles when he is upon the trot, one where his fore-legs go narrow, and the other where his hind-legs go larger. The horſe goes upon his paſſage, which is when he laps one leg over the other; but as he is upon the action of the trot, and moves his legs acroſs, he only does it at every other motion, which I have ſufficiently ſhewn already; and for this reaſon he deſcribes only two circles. When you think you have walked your horſe ſufficiently, preſs him very much with the left leg, to put his croupe towards the pillar, and let him take breath in that poſture. Here is the figure, to ſhew how a horſe's head is to be worked when it is towards the pillar, and his croupe from it. CHAP. XIII.

For the Right Hand.



The ſtrait line within the leſſer circle ſhews, that the horſe's head ought to be within the pillar or center.

The reaſon why he deſcribes but two circles, proceeds from his head being towards the pillar, and that when he trots, he croſſes his legs one over the other only every other time.

CHAP. XIII.

To work to the Left, the Horſe's Croupe out.

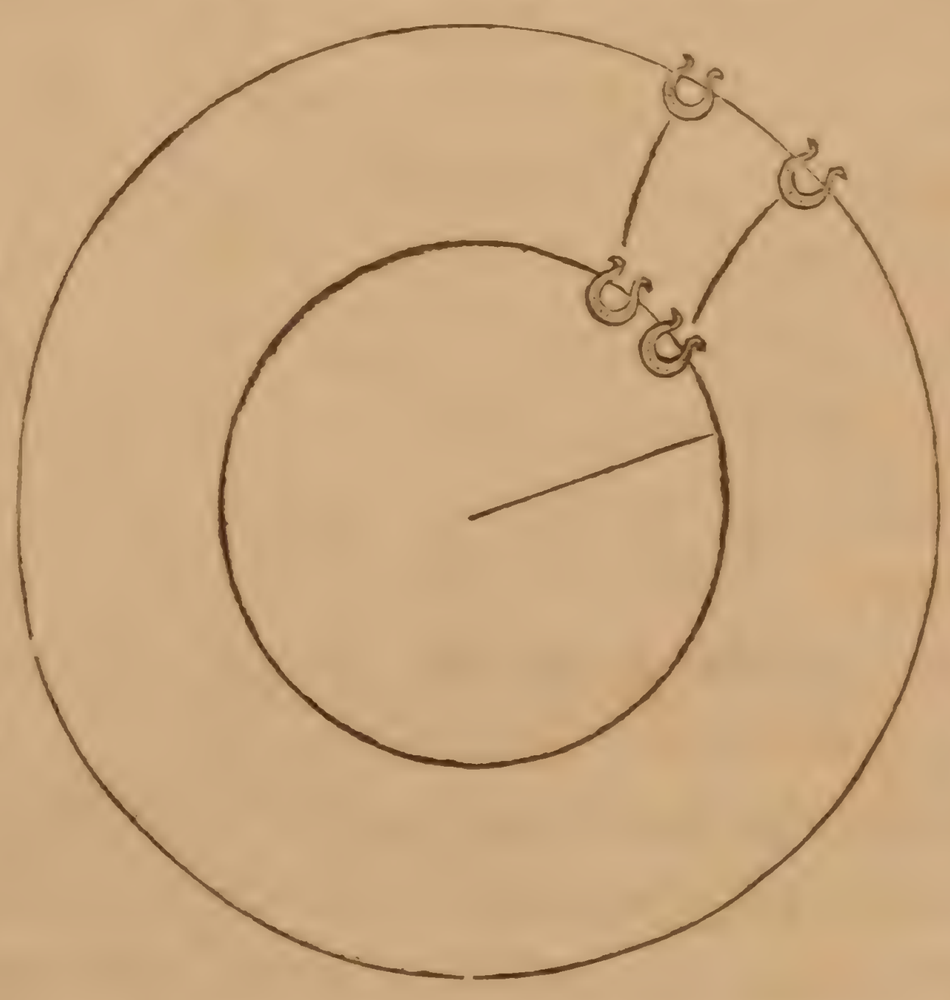
THE horſe's head, for the left-hand, ought to be to the pillar. I gave it to you before as a maxim, that when the croupe is worked to the pillar, it ſhould always be within the croupe; but in the preſent caſe, the horſe ought to have the pillar without his head, his croupe being out, which is quite contrary, for he has it within his croupe, when that is towards the center. The reaſon why a horſe ſhould have the pillar without his head is, that he then works better with his ſhoulders, which prevents his bringing his croupe too much in, or becoming *entier*. One may work the horſe's croupe as much as poſſible, provided the pillar is without his head, for ſo he can't put it too much in, but will go perfectly ſideways; the fore-part of the horſe next the center, being narrower than his croupe, which is more diſtant from it. This is the method of working a horſe's head towards the pillar or center on the left hand, his head being on the inſide of it: The bridle ought to be put into the right hand, drawing the inward rein of the caveſon with the left, having the nails of the hand turned upwards, and your little finger towards the right ſhoulder, holding the bridle-hand a little out, and your right ſhoulder a little in, with your head turned to look into the volte, touching him gently with the right leg, to make him advance his ſhoulder within the volte. It is

neceſſary

BOOK II.

neceſſary to obſerve in this place, that the inward rein and the outward leg of the rider, moving at the ſame time, always work the croupe, as they are oppoſite one to the other. I am perfectly ſenſible, that the rein within the volte works the hind-leg on the ſame ſide, and that my own leg without the volte works the other hind-leg. It is moreover neceſſary to obſerve, that when a horſe's head is towards the pillar or center upon a trot, that his fore-part is more confined than his croupe, and therefore his fore-legs will conſequently be within the lines of the hind-ones. Nevertheleſs, I perceive that I work his croupe, ſince the rein of the caveſon and my own leg, that are oppoſite, always work the croupe. The horſe being upon the action of the trot, deſcribes but two circles, one where his fore-legs go narrow, the other where his hind-legs go larger. The horſe goes upon his paſſage, which is, when he laps one leg over the other; but as he is upon the action of the trot, in which his legs move croſsways, he only does it at every other motion, which I have ſufficiently ſhewn already. When you imagine that your horſe has been walked enough, preſs him ſtrongly with the right leg to place his croupe towards the pillar, and let him take breath in that poſture. Here I give you the figure of working a horſe's head to the left-hand, with his head to the pillar and his croupe from it.

For the Left Hand.



The ſtrait line drawn within the leſſer circle ſhews, that the horſe's head ought to be on the inſide the pillar or center.

The horſe's head to the pillar, upon the action of the trot, he can only deſcribe two circles, by reaſon that he croſſes his legs one over the other only every other movement.

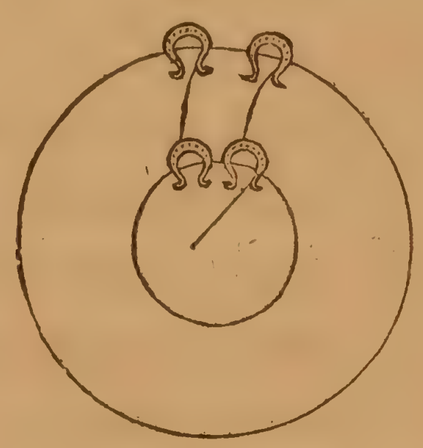
CHAP. XIV.

To work a Horſe to the Right in his own Length upon a Walk or Paſſage, which is the Action of the Trot.

WHEN a horſe is rode to the right upon a walk, in ſo ſmall a compaſs as his own length, it ought not to be performed round a pillar, ſince he ſhould move in leſs compaſs than the pillar will admit of; ſo that the beſt method will be to perform it in a corner of a covered Manege, where two walls meet. Here are the aids for the right hand: Firſt draw the reins of the caveſon within the volte with your right hand, the nails being turned upward, and your little finger pointing towards the left ſhoulder; then touch him gently with the contrary leg, which will keep his ſhoulders free, and command his croupe. If his ſhoulders ſhould go too much in, take care to keep them a little out; and when they are not ſufficiently within, you may touch him gently

gently with your outward leg, and ſometimes with the other, to keep him even, putting it back afterwards in its proper place to be ready upon occaſion. This is the beſt leſſon in the world, for if a horſe is perfectly obedient to me upon a walk in his own length, and anſwers both hand and heel, I can make him perform all that his ſtrength will permit. This method far exceeds that of the quarters, halfs and three quarters of voltes; ſince you have an entire volte by this, wherein thoſe diviſions and ſubdiviſions are all included, and one quarter more added: But this can be performed only by a maſter, as it requires the greateſt exactneſs and nicety. You muſt always change as you ſee occaſion, not forgetting, that though the ſhoulders go more ground than the croupe, the latter is the moſt conſtrained notwithſtanding, ſince it is the leaſt at liberty. Here follows the figure. CHAP. XV.

For the Right Hand.

The line ought to be as  near the center as poſſible.

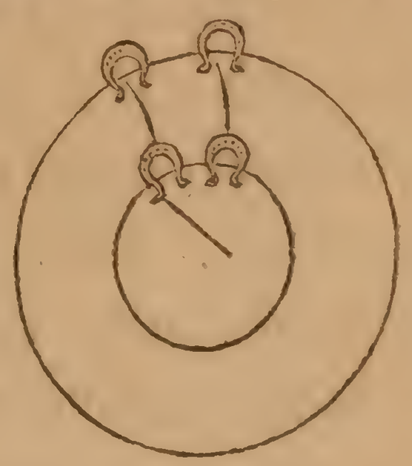
CHAP. XV.

To work a Horſe to the Left in his own Length upon a Walk or Paſſage, which is the Action of the Trot.

WHEN a horſe is rode to the left upon a walk, in ſo ſmall a compaſs as his own length, it ought not to be performed round a pillar, ſince he ſhould move in leſs compaſs than the pillar will admit; ſo that the beſt method will be to perform it in the corner of a covered *Manege*, where two walls meet. Here are the aids for the left hand. The bridle muſt be changed from the left hand to the right; then draw the reins of the caveſon within the volte with your left-hand, the nails of it being turned upward, and your little finger pointing towards the right ſhoulder; then touch him gently with the contrary leg, which will keep his ſhoulders free, and command his croupe. If his ſhoulders ſhould go too much in, take care to keep them a little out; and when they are not ſufficiently within, you muſt touch him gently with the outward leg, and ſometimes with the other, to keep him even, putting it back afterwards in its proper place, to be ready upon occaſion. This is the beſt leſſon in the world; for if a horſe is perfectly obedient to me upon a walk in his own length, and he anſwers both hand and heel, I can make him perform all that his ſtrength will permit. This method far exceeds that of quarters, halfs and three quarters of voltes, ſince you have an entire volte by it, and one quarter more added, wherein thoſe diviſions and ſubdiviſions are all included. But this can be perform'd only by a maſter, as it requires the greateſt exactneſs and nicety. You muſt always change as you ſee occaſion, not forgetting, that though the ſhoulders go more ground than the croupe, the latter is the moſt conſtrained notwithſtanding, ſince it is the leaſt at liberty.

BOOK II.

For the Left Hand.

The line ought to be as  near the center as poſſible.

CHAP. XVI.

A new and exact Method of making a Horſe go Terre-à-terre, *with Obſervations never made before. This Practice was a kind of* Terra à Terra Incognita, *till I had attained it by ſtudying the Art of Horſemanſhip; and I have found a Treaſure of Knowledge, which I offer to all Honourable and worthy Horſemen.*

THE motion of a horſe's legs in Terre-à-terre, is a gallop in time. To the right, draw the rein of the caveſon within the volte, the nails of your hand turned upwards, and your little finger towards the left ſhoulder, aiding him gently with your leg out of the volte. Work the horſe in this manner acroſs, with the rein of the caveſon on one ſide, and your leg on the other, and they will always work his croupe, ſince his hind-legs are by this means kept cloſe together. The rein of the caveſon puts out the horſe's hind-leg within the volte, and the horſeman's leg without the volte puts in the other hind-leg ſo, that it goes under his belly, and puts him upon his haunches. Conſequently, by this correct method, both the horſe's hind-legs are worked, and only the half of his ſhoulders; and it conſtrains his hind-legs, leaving the others at liberty, that he may the better embrace the volte. If both the ſhoulders of the horſe come in, the outward hind-leg muſt go out, which is falſe. By this method a horſe deſcribes four circles with his four feet, as he ought to do when he goes Terre-à-terre; that is to ſay, his fore-leg next the volte deſcribes the largeſt, his other fore-leg the ſecond, his hind-leg next the volte deſcribes the third, and his other hind-leg the fourth or ſmalleſt circle. The legs of a horſe, being of an equal length, he muſt conſequently be upon his haunches, when his hind-legs are within the lines of nature; I mean, within the lines of his fore-legs. For the ſame reaſon, when you pull the inward rein of the caveſon, and make the body of the horſe deſcribe a ſemicircle, the fore-leg within the volte muſt of neceſſity be longer than that without; which is as it ought to be, that the hind-leg on the ſame ſide may go foremoſt. By drawing the inward rein, the hind-leg within the volte is forced outward, and affords him the greater liberty of tracing the ſtep of the foremoſt on the ſame ſide, which is right; aiding the horſe with the outward leg conſtrains and ſubjects his hind-leg on that ſide, and of neceſſity puts it behind his other hind-leg, which is as it ſhould be. You may obſerve from what I have ſaid, that a horſe ought always to fly the pillar or center with his hind-leg within the volte, which makes the half of his ſhoulders go foremoſt, as they ſhould. But here the danger is, that the horſe ſhould not bring his hind-legs cloſe enough together: If he anſwers the outward leg of the rider, it will do; if he does not, it won't: I ſhall explain how to make him do it hereafter.

The

CHAP. XVI.

The rider ought to be ſeated upon his twiſt according to the inſtructions I have given before, in the chapter relating to the proper ſeat of a horſeman. When a horſe goes Terre-à-terre on the right hand, he ſhould pull the inward rein of the caveſon, having the nails of his hand turned upward, the little finger directed towards the left ſhoulder, looking into the volte, aiding him with the outward leg, to make him convex like a bow in the middle, and concave at each end, bending towards the circle; for every horſe ought to form a part of the circle in which he moves; from whence it naturally follows, that every horſeman muſt deſcribe a part of the circle of his horſe. He ought therefore to incline his body on the ſame ſide, which, on the right hand, is to place his left ſhoulder within, then, his right ſhoulder being behind, he makes room for the horſe's legs to advance within the volte, which are the longeſt, on account of the bent of his body. The right ſhoulder of the rider being thus without, and his left within, the horſe's legs out of the volte are by this means ſo confin'd, that they are the ſhorteſt, and don't alter his Terre-à-terre, which is only a gallop in time, termed *Relevé*; not becauſe it is high, but becauſe he beats time with his feet, whilſt he is upon his haunches. Since a horſe therefore is bent like a bow, convex in the middle, and concave at both extremities within, it may be plainly perceiv'd, that the inſide of this arch is more at liberty at each end, than it is in the middle, one part being more ſtretched than the other. Whence that part of the horſe within the volte may be compared to the concave part of the bow, and that without to the convex part of the ſame. A horſe going in this manner, can never move irregularly with his feet, for reaſons I have given before. Being without convex, it is impoſſible he ſhould go back or lean; ſince the inward rein of the caveſon forces his hind-leg within the volte out, and the rider's manner of ſitting upon him gives him liberty within, and ſtops him there; becauſe his left ſhoulder can only advance to a certain degree, which gives him a juſt ply and no more, which is as it ought to be.

As to the horſeman's helps, he ought to be ſeated upon his twiſt, leaning more upon the ſtirrup without the volte, than upon that within it, having his leg within the volte more advanced than the other. If he bears hard upon the ſtirrup within the volte, his weight will be on the ſame ſide, which would be abſolutely wrong. Nobody will pretend to deny, that the weight does not bear in this manner; for example, only look at the ſtirrup, and you will plainly perceive that within the volte to be four inches longer than that without. This is to be weighed as with a pair of ſcales. But one queſtion may be accidentally aſked, What is there to ſupport the horſe? You have nothing to do, but to help him with the rein of the caveſon, as I ſaid before; that is, by drawing it to a certain degree, which not only forces the horſe's hind-leg next the volte out to ſupport him, but keeps it there, which is a farther ſupport; from whence he has room to move the half of his ſhoulders before the half of his croupe within the volte, which affords him a natural and eaſy ſupport. Hence you may perceive, that it is the inward rein of the caveſon that ſupports him, and not the rider's leg within the volte, extended like that of St. GEORGE's when he ſlew the dragon, and I am ſurpriſed this thought ſhould have eſcaped mankind. My way is to have the rider bear upon the ſtirrup within the volte, with his toes turned a little outwards, and ſomewhat more advanced than the

outward

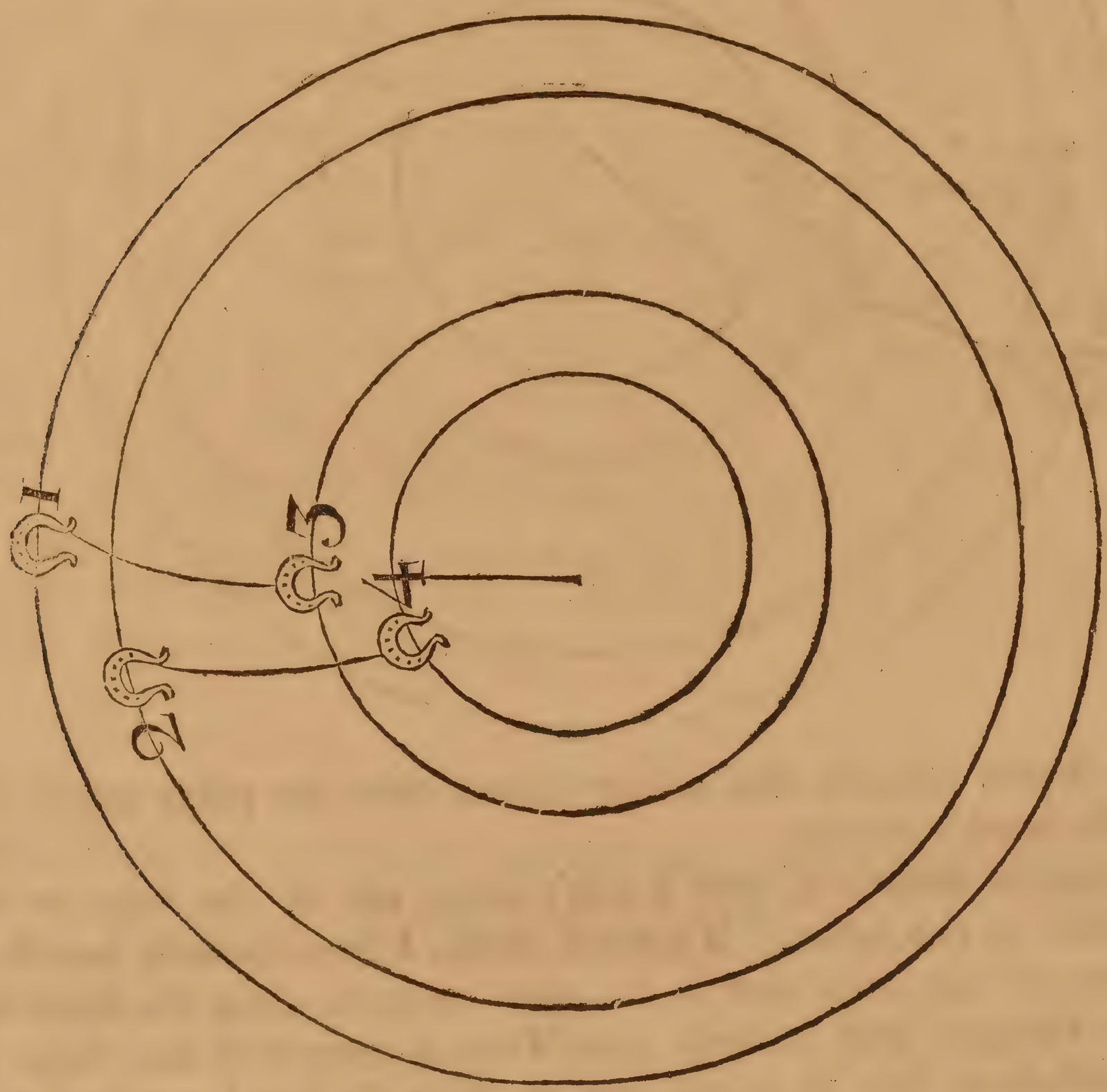
BOOK II.

outward leg. The old method of a horſeman's leaning back for a Terre-à-terre, in order to put his horſe upon the haunches, is falſe, ſince it rather puts him upon his ſhoulders; for the rider, who is only one piece, cannot lean back, without placing himſelf upon his buttocks, which is very falſe, as he then is no longer upon his twiſt. Moreover, when he is ſeated firm upon his ſtirrups, and leans backward, his legs muſt neceſſarily come forward, which is not their proper ſituation; ſo that the rider, in order to keep a juſt ſeat, and have his heels at command, ſhould bend his body gently forward, by which means his legs will go back, and be in their right poſition; for by the motion of the body backward, the legs will come forward, and ſo *vice verſa*, if he leans firm upon his ſtirrups. By ſaying, that I would have the rider advance his body, I don't mean that he ſhould bend his back; but, on the contrary, that he ſhould keep it ſtrait, and advance his cheſt, and have a general inclination of his whole body from head to foot, and that however ſo little, as in many riders, it can hardly be perceived: by this means, he will always be fixed upon his twiſt, and his legs properly placed, to be ready for any aid that may be wanted. I am now going to tell you how to help the horſe with the leg. If the rider extends his ſinews till he is ſtiff in the ham, this preſſes the horſe with the calf of the leg; but the thigh, by the particular mechaniſm of the body, goes from him; ſo that by the extenſion of the ſinews, that is to ſay, by keeping a ſtiff ham, the thigh becomes concave on the inſide next the ſaddle, whilſt the calf of the leg preſſes againſt the horſe: if you bear much harder upon the out ſtirrup, than the other, and bend the outward knee, that cavity will be filled, and become convex in that part where it was concave before; at this time the horſe is preſſed by the thigh, and the calf of the leg goes from him. From hence you may perceive, that bending in the ham is the leaſt help, being the help with the thigh; and being ſtiff in the ham is a ſtronger help, as it is the help of the calf of the leg; and pinching the horſe with the ſpurs is the ſtrongeſt help, which is done in the following manner: The rider's legs being very near the horſe, and placed a little backward, he ſhould touch him gently with his heels, bending his hams a little upon each motion he makes. Thus you ſee there are three degrees of helps; one with the thigh, which is the moſt gentle; a ſecond with the calf of the leg, that is ſtronger; and a third with the ſpurs, which is the ſtrongeſt of all: any one of theſe are to be uſed as you ſee occaſion.

It is a conſtant maxim, that the pillar ought always to be within the horſe's croupe, when it is towards the center, by which means a horſe can never become *entier*, becauſe the half of his ſhoulders go before his hind-leg within the volte, ſo that he is obliged to go ſideways, as he ought. I muſt adviſe you likewiſe, not to lean too hard upon the out-ſtirrup; for, ſhould you do ſo, your horſe will be apt to lean on the ſame ſide, which is not only ungraceful, but is abſolutely falſe; a horſe in ſuch a poſture may be compared to a wooden bench with four legs; when the inward legs are held up, they become ſhorter than the others that are not held up. The horſe is in the ſame poſture, if you lean your body too much on the outſide, for he will lean on that ſide too; from whence it will neceſſarily follow, that his legs within the volte will be ſhorter than thoſe without, which is entirely falſe, ſince his legs within the volte ought to be longeſt when he advances Terre-à-terre. Take particular

particular care therefore not to incline too much on that ſide, but ſit as ſtrait as you can, for the reaſons I have given you. I have already ſaid, that when a horſe goes Terre-à-terre, he deſcribes four diſtinct circles with his four feet; his fore-foot within the volte deſcribes the largeſt, the other fore-foot the ſecond, his hind-leg next the volte deſcribes the third, and the other without the volte deſcribes the fourth and ſmalleſt circle, as will appear by the following figure. CHAP. XVI.

Terre-à-terre towards the Right Hand.



Here you have a true deſcription of a horſe's movement Terre-à-terre, as I have expreſſed it. The line drawn towards the center ought always to be within the horſe's croupe.

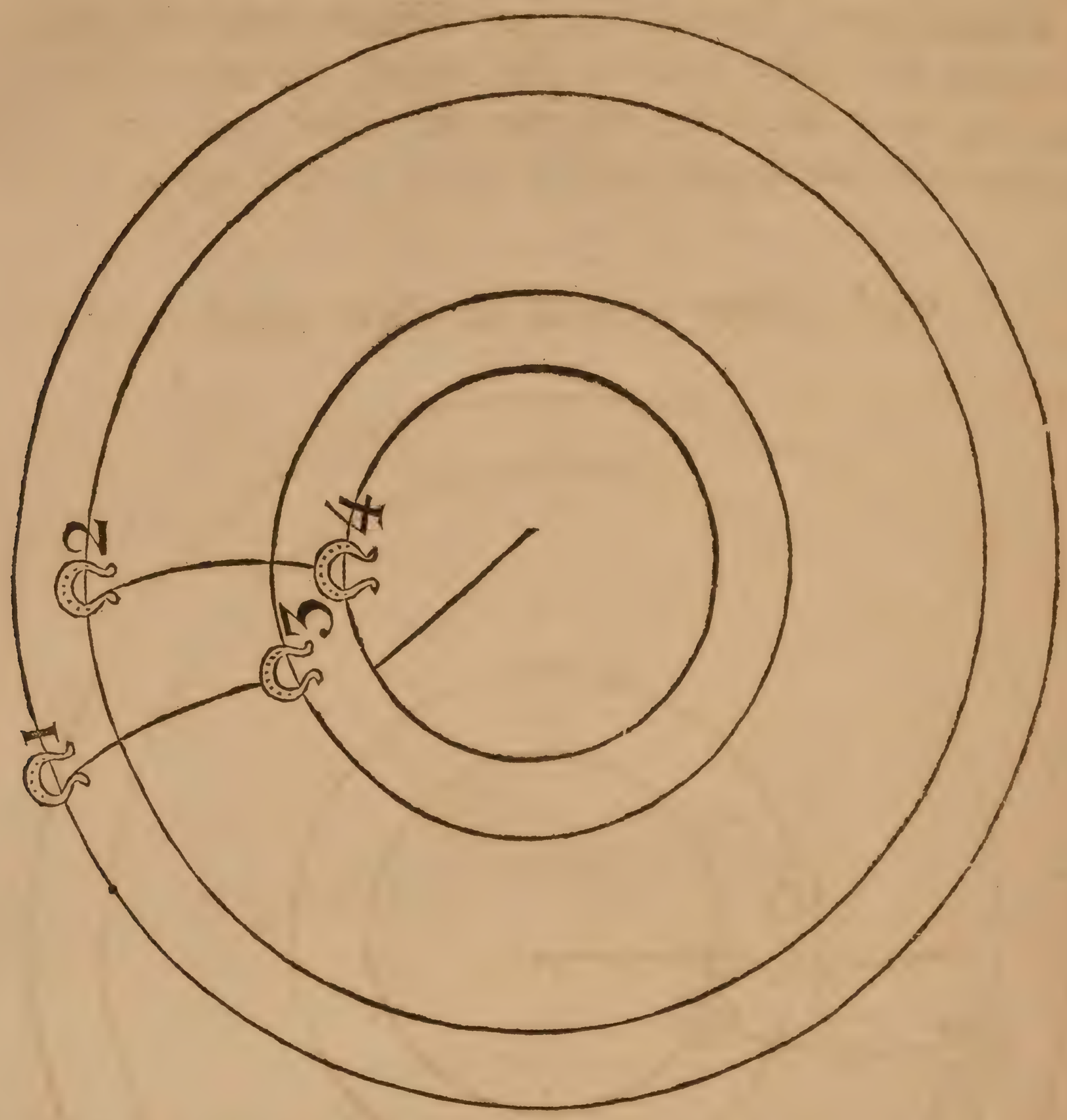
CHAP. XVII.

Terre-à-terre to the Left Hand.

NOW the rider ought to change his bridle, and take it in his right hand, drawing the reins of the caveſon with the left, having the nails of his hand upwards, and the little finger pointing toward the right ſhoulder, turning his face within the volte, and bringing his right ſhoulder within it likewiſe, helping the horſe with the contrary leg, which is the right. I gave you the reaſons for this in the former chapter, and therefore ſhall avoid troubling you with a repetition of them.

BOOK II.

Terre-à-terre towards the Left Hand.



The line drawn towards the center ſhews, that the pillar ought always to be within the horſe's croupe.

People may be ſurpriſed, that I don't make uſe of the *longe* or long rope about the pillar in this leſſon. To ſpeak truth, I have entirely baniſhed it my Manege, becauſe my only aim is to make a horſe obey the hand and heel. Thoſe who imagine that a horſe goes Terre-à-terre with the *longe* about a pillar, are miſtaken, ſince he is not then at all in the hand and heel, but obeys only the rope and *chambriere*, going quite by rote: without the rope he don't mind the hand, nor without the *chambriere* does he mind the heel: he can do but ſo, for the rope keeps him in, and the *chambriere* makes him go forwards. For which reaſon I never make uſe of the ſingle pillar, neither in the walk, trot, or gallop, nor in Terre-à-terre. The pillar, according to my method, only ſerves me for a mark, that I may diſtinguiſh the center, and mark the circle round it the better, whether it be large or ſmall. But as to the caveſon, I conſtantly uſe it both to horſes and colts, to thoſe half dreſſed or quite dreſſed, young or old; in ſhort, to all horſes; it gives them a right ply, and preſerves their mouths, ſo that, when I take it off, they go ſurpriſingly well with the bridle only. For by preſerving the mouth, they are ſo ſenſible upon the bars and to the curb, that you have them under command by the leaſt motion; whereas when you always make uſe of the bridle, it makes them hard-mouth'd; and nothing is more requiſite in the dreſſing of a horſe, than to keep his mouth and ſides as tender as poſſible, becauſe he goes only by the hand and heel. Beſides other advantages ariſing from the uſe of the caveſon, it preſerves the mouth, as I mentioned before; but the preſervation of his ſides depends wholly upon the

diſcretion

discretion of the rider. With regard to Curvettes and Demi-airs, altho' I don't make use of a rope about the pillar, I use the caveson after a new and odd method, as you shall see hereafter, which produces an admirable effect. This is the true method of dressing a horse Terre-à-terre. CHAP. XIX.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Method of putting a Horse between two Pillars after the old Fashion.

WHEN a horse knows to trot, stop, and gallop, and is in the least obedient to the hand and heel in his walk, and begins to move a little Terre-à-terre, I then put him between two pillars, and make him move his croupe from side to side with the switch; then I make him raise himself gently with the button of the reins down; afterwards I mount him, and oblige him to do the same when I am upon his back; and when I have once taught him to make two or three Curvettes, or rather Pesades, so that he bears the hand, I never use this after, for I have a new method, which you will find produces a wonderful effect. The pillars make a horse very impatient; you ought therefore to have yourself as much patience as possible; the moment he shews the least mark of obedience, you must put him into the stable, to endeavour to please him. Thus far as to the old method, which I shall soon leave for a much better, as you shall see hereafter.

CHAP. XIX.

An excellent Lesson for all Horses, as well those that are heavy upon the Hand as those that are light.

IF you follow my lessons, most of the horses you ride will be light upon your hand, and have a good *appuy*. The lesson I am going to recommend is this: You must put the head of your horse to the wall in the cover'd Manege, and walk him thus the length of the four walls, or, at least, of three: and to the right hand, draw the inward rein of the caveson, and help him with the outward leg, which is the left. Just the contrary helps must be for the left; for rein on one side and leg on the other always works a horse's croupe. I have mentioned before, that when a horse is upon a walk with his head to the wall, that the wall is a kind of center; so that his fore-part will be pressed, and his croupe at liberty; I say, when he is upon the walk, which is the movement of a trot: but when he goes Terre-à-terre with his head to the wall, his action is very different to that of a trot, which is cross-ways, in which the fore-part is pressed, and the croupe at liberty, when his head is to the wall or center; but in Terre-à-terre, which is the action of the gallop, the two legs on the same side advance together, and continue so; the near-leg leads, and the hind-leg on the same side immediately follows, let the horse go to either hand. So that in this action, the horse's head being to the wall, his croupe is pressed and his shoulders at liberty, although his head is to the wall, which is as a center: it is the action of a horse's legs Terre-à-terre that occasions this difference. The head of the horse being thus placed towards three or four of the walls,

BOOK II.

walls, any horſe may this way be brought to obey both the hand and the heel. Let him be to either hand, he muſt always be worked with leg and rein contrary. This leſſon has the ſame effect both for the Curvette and Peſade; but you ought at firſt, both for the Curvette and Peſade, to make him do three or four in one place; then make him advance, and make three or four more; by which means he will move at length freely in Curvettes ſide-ways, as well as Terre-à-terre, his head to the wall. I would have you know, that the doctrine is falſe, which concludes, that the hand commands a horſe from the muzzle to the ſhoulders, and the heel from the ſhoulders backwards; for the inward rein of the caveſon not only commands half the ſhoulders, but puts out likewiſe the hind-leg within the volte, ſo that that is govern'd by it too. Thus the caveſon-rein helps half the croupe, and the rider's outward leg helps the horſe's hind-leg of the ſame ſide, putting it in. You may perceive from hence, that the rein of the caveſon helps half the croupe, and the leg of the rider the other half. And thus I conclude this uſeful leſſon.

End of the Second Diviſion of LESSONS.

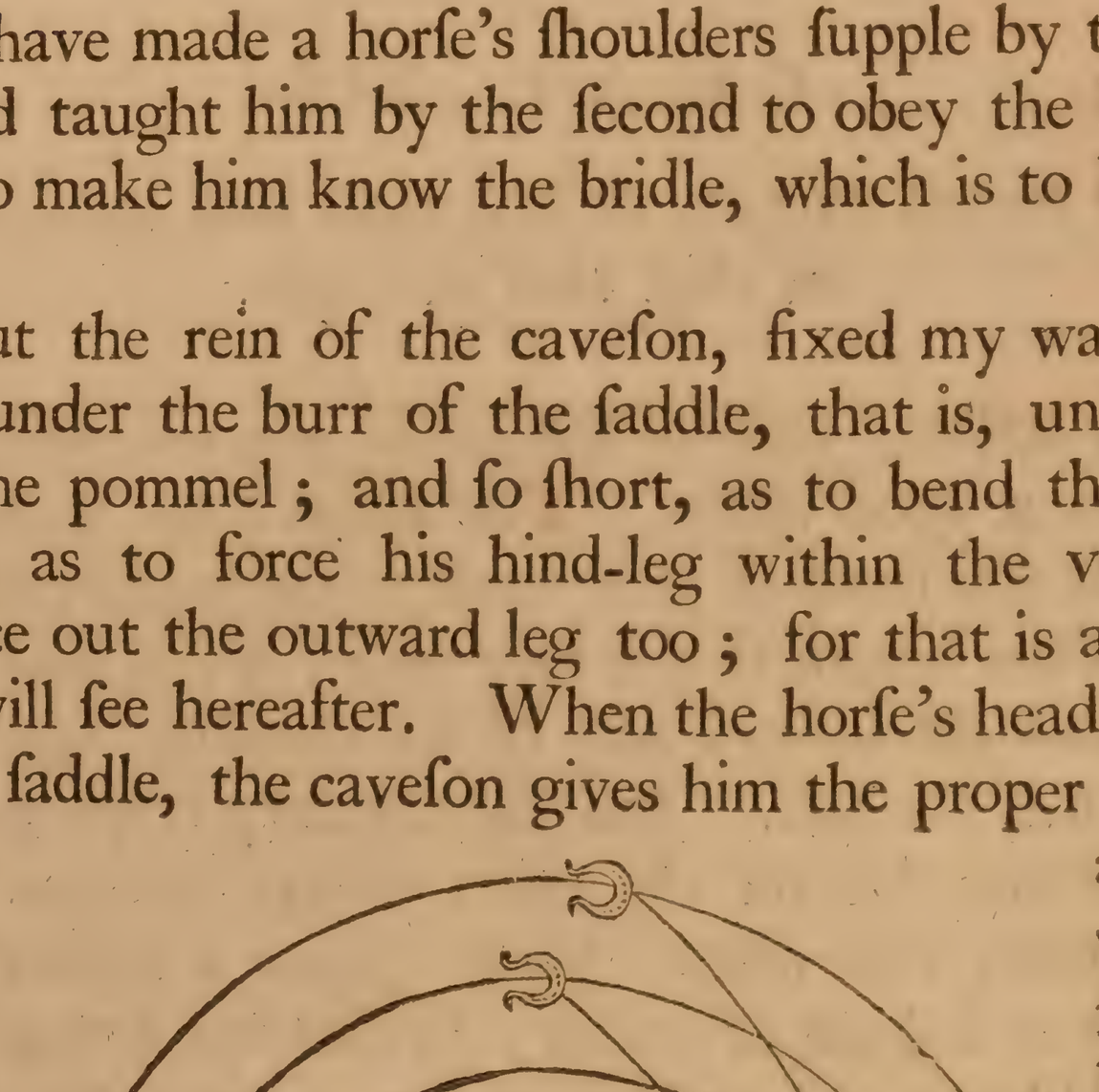
CHAP. XX.

The Third Diviſion of LESSONS, *Which is to ſhew how to make a Horſe obey the Bridle.*

How to make him obey the Bridle.

WHEN you have made a horſe's ſhoulders ſupple by the firſt diviſion of leſſons, and taught him by the ſecond to obey the heel, this third diviſion is intended to make him know the bridle, which is to be done in the following manner.

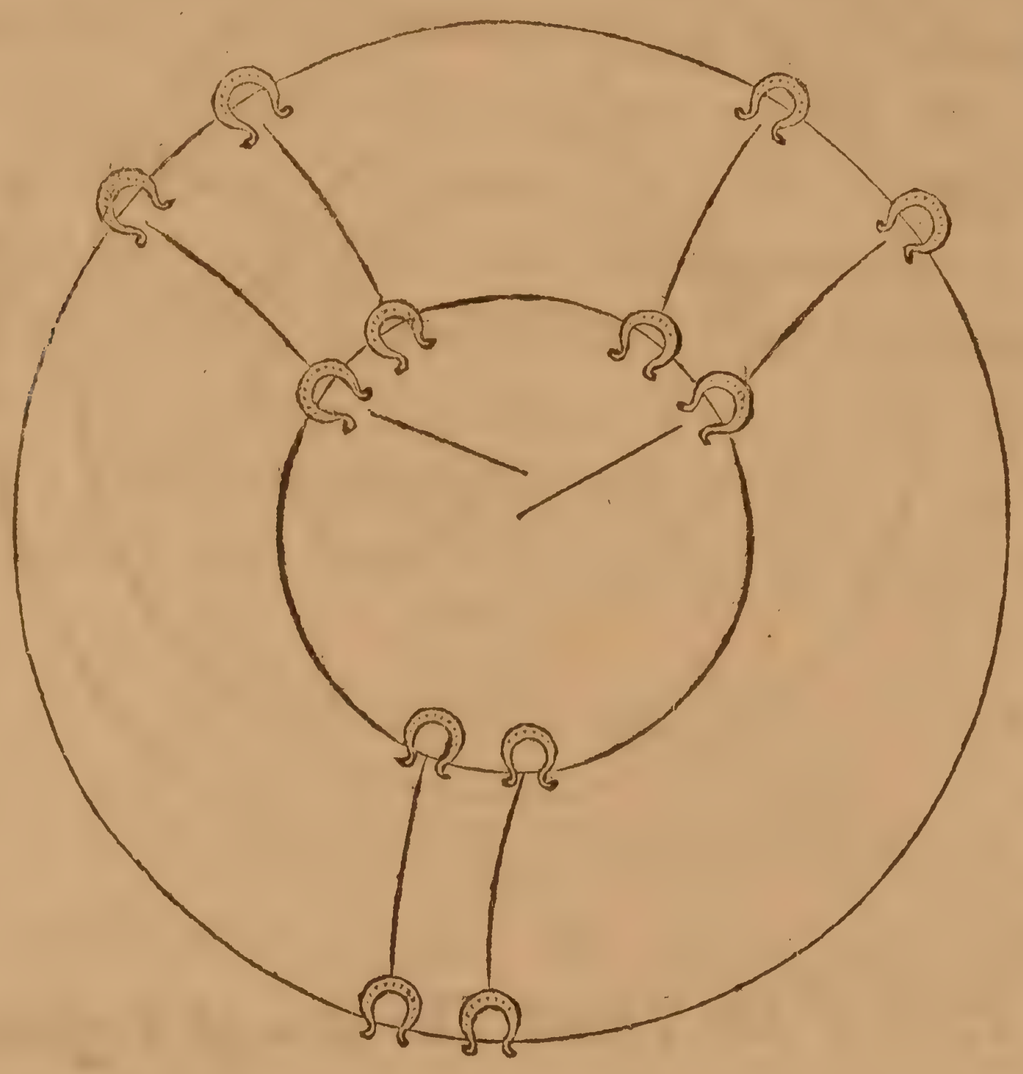
Let the rider put the rein of the caveſon, fixed my way, which he holds in his right hand under the burr of the ſaddle, that is, under his thigh, and faſten it well to the pommel; and ſo ſhort, as to bend the horſe's ſhoulders to ſuch a degree, as to force his hind-leg within the volte out, but not ſo much as to force out the outward leg too; for that is a ſoleciſm in horſemanſhip, as you will ſee hereafter. When the horſe's head is thus faſtened to the pommel of the ſaddle, the caveſon gives him the proper ply, and the rider ſhould work him with the bridle upon a large circle. When he goes to the right, you muſt place your hand without the volte a little towards the left ſhoulder, helping him at the ſame time with the leg within, which is leg and rein of a ſide,



and that always works both the ſhoulders, and not his croupe. This leſſon is the ſame as the firſt, excepting only, that in this you work more with the bridle. This is the figure both for the right and left hand.

For

For the left, you muſt faſten the left rein of the caveſon to the pommel of the ſaddle. The rein and leg on the ſame ſide, work always the ſhoulders, and not in the leaſt the croupe. CHAP. XXI.



A horſe deſcribes only two circles in a walk to the right hand, when his croup is to the center.

A horſe deſcribes only two circles in a walk to the left hand, when his croup is to the center.

A horſe deſcribes two circles, when his head is to the center, and his croupe out.

When one paſſages a horſe after this manner upon a walk, the rein of the caveſon ought to be faſtened according to the ſide on which he is to go. If he is to go to the right, you muſt turn your bridle-hand toward the left, on the outſide of the neck of the horſe, the nails of your hand turned upwards towards your left ſhoulder, which pulls the inward rein of the bridle, for reaſons I have given you before, helping him at the ſame time with the contrary leg, which will work his croupe and the half of his ſhoulders. For the left hand, the rein of the caveſon being fixed to the pommel of the ſaddle, you muſt turn your bridle-hand towards the outſide of the horſe's neck, which is the right ſide, having the nails of your hand turned upwards to the right ſhoulder, by which means you work the inward rein of the bridle, helping him at the ſame time with your out-leg, that is, leg and rein contrary, which always work the croupe. Thus a horſe ought to be work'd in his walk, the rein fixed to the pommel of the ſaddle, with the croupe either in or out.

CHAP. XXI.

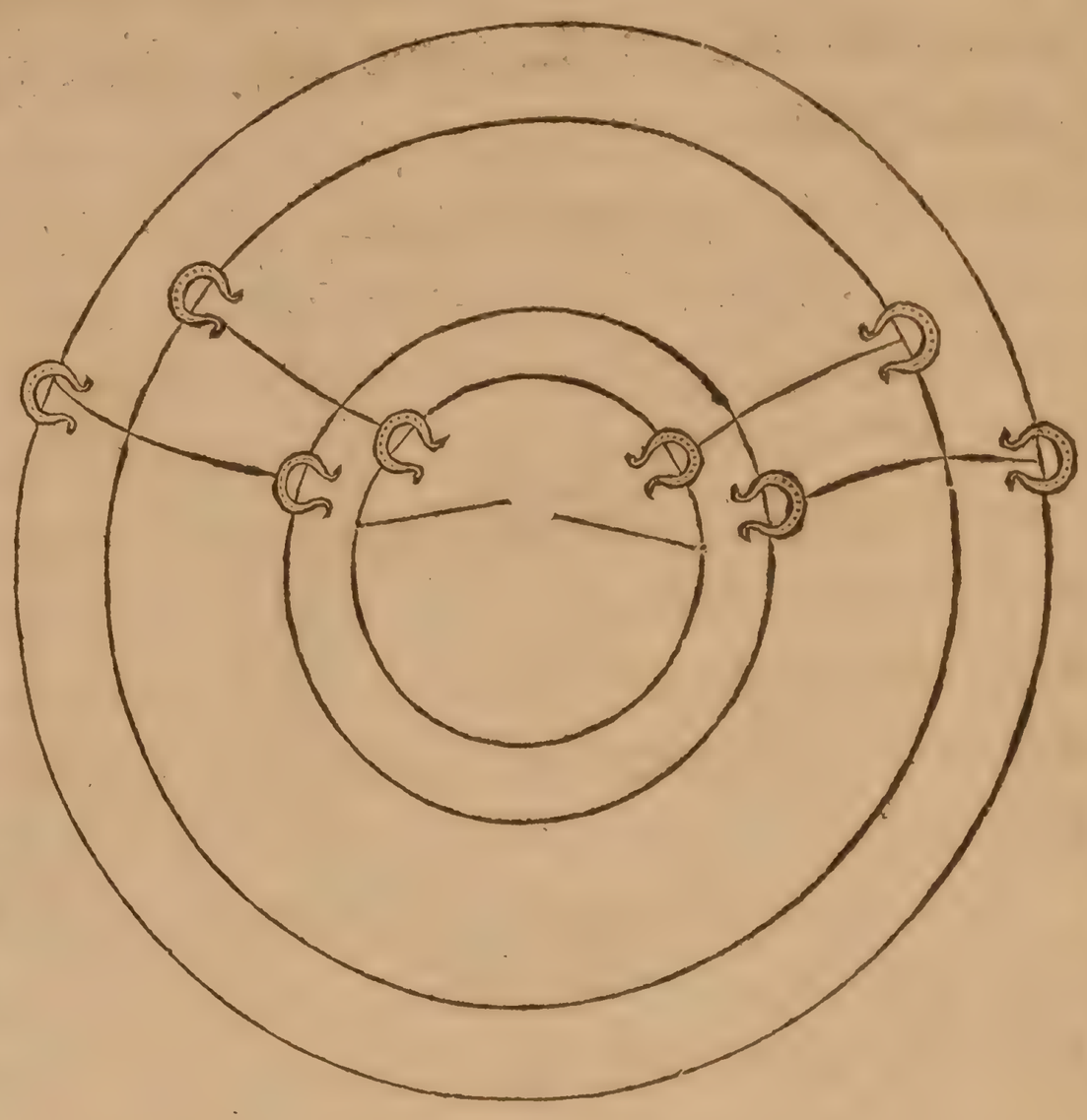
For Terre-à-terre *to the Right Hand, the Caveſon being faſten'd to the Pommel of the Saddle, and the Bridle in the Left Hand.*

THE right rein of the caveſon being fixed to the pommel of the ſaddle, you muſt put the horſe's croupe within the volte, having the pillar on the inſide of it, with the left hand turned towards the outſide of the horſe's neck, which draws the inward rein, and makes it work in the manner I have deſcribed before. At the ſame time you work the horſe thus with the hand, you muſt help him with the contrary leg, which is that without the volte, or the left. Here I give you the figure for Terre-à-terre both for the right and left hand.

BOOK II.

The inward rein of the caveſon fix'd to the pommel of the ſaddle is wrong for Terre-à-terre.

For the left hand, the left rein being faſten'd to the pommel of the ſaddle, in order to give the horſe a good ply, place your bridle-hand on the right ſide of the horſe's neck without the volte, having the



nails of your hand turn'd upwards towards the right ſhoulder, helping him at the ſame time with the contrary leg. As to any farther obſervations, I refer you to what I have ſaid before, which you ought to ſtudy well, leſt I ſhould offend you by many repetitions.

End of the Third Diviſion of Leſſons.

CHAP. XXII.

The fourth Diviſion of Leſſons.

To work a Horſe with falſe Reins.

THE ſame reins of the caveſon you uſed before, will ſerve you for falſe ones, and muſt be faſtened in the ſame manner; excepting only, that you muſt put them through the banquet of the bridle, and bring them back to your hand.

In my firſt diviſion of leſſons I ſhewed you how to ſupple a horſe's ſhoulders with the caveſon my way, which is very efficacious, tho' the taſk is difficult.

In the ſecond, I have ſhewed you how to work a horſe's croupe with the half of his ſhoulders when he goes Terre-à-terre, and to obey both the hand and heel.

In the third, you have faſtened the reins of the caveſon to the pommel of the ſaddle, and have begun to work a little more upon the barrs and reſting-place of the curb, ſince you had nothing in your hand but the bridle, and the reins of the caveſon were faſtened to help the horſe's ply.

Now in this fourth diviſion of leſſons you have the falſe reins to help the *appuy* upon the barrs, but they make the curb looſe, and thereby eaſe the place where it ſhould reſt, ſo that it don't work at all; for the more the falſe reins are drawn, the looſer is the curb, tho' the barrs are preſſed.

The advantage ariſing from theſe falſe reins, is, that they are ſerviceable to all kinds of horſes; they help the *appuy* of thoſe that want it; they *appuy* their barrs more freely upon the bit, having no apprehenſion of the curb; they are uſeful beſides to thoſe that have too much: Provided you work them with their heads to a wall, you may put them then ſo much upon the haunches, as to make them light upon the hand; and when they are upon the haunches, they are much lighter and more at their eaſe, by not being pinched by the curb.

After

After the laſt diviſion of my leſſons, I dare venture to ſay, there is none better, or more efficacious in the working of a horſe than this; for it gives him the ply, and that by the barrs, makes him obey the inward rein of the bridle, and anſwers our intention; therefore this leſſon is excellent, was it only upon that account. The horſe ſhould be worked in the ſame manner with falſe reins as he is with the caveſon, and with the ſame helps, both as to ſhoulders and croupe, aiding him with your leg in the ſame manner; give him the ſame leſſons upon walk, trot, gallop, and Terre-à-terre, faſtening them to the pommel of the ſaddle, as thoſe of the caveſon. You ſhould get by heart your firſt leſſons, and therefore I ſhall not trouble you with repetitions. CHAP. XXIII

End of the fourth Diviſion of Leſſons.

CHAP. XXIII.

The fifth Diviſion of Leſſons.

To work a Horſe with the Bit only, the Reins ſeparated in both Hands.

IF you work the ſhoulders of the horſe with the two reins of the bridle held ſeparate in each hand, you ought to uſe the inward rein, and the leg on the ſame ſide, which work upon both ſhoulders, and not upon the croupe. You may ride him thus to both hands upon walk, trot, or gallop, either in large circles, or in his own length; but this works only the ſhoulders. If you deſign to work the croupe, either head or croupe to the pillar or wall, it muſt e leg and rein contrary. If the horſe is to the right, draw the inward rein, with the nails of your hand upwards, and your little finger to the left ſhoulder, helping the horſe at the ſame time with the contrary leg, as I ſaid before. This ought to be done upon a walk, which is the action of the trot. If you go to the left, you muſt draw the left rein, the nails upward towards the right ſhoulder, and help the horſe with the contrary leg. When you would go Terre-à-terre, you muſt always pull the inward rein towards your oppoſite ſhoulder, put that ſhoulder in, and look into the volte. He ſhould be put ſometimes upon a gentle gallop, with his croupe in, working conſtantly with the inward rein and the oppoſite leg, as I ſaid before. When he goes upon a gentle gallop, make him take two or three times of Terre-à-terre, and put him again upon his gentle gallop. This ſhould be done either with the reins of the caveſon fixed to the pommel of the ſaddle, or when you hold them in your hand. When you are upon a gentle gallop, the helps you give him both with hand and heel ought to be moderate, but ſtronger when you make him go two or three cadences Terre-à-terre, and gentle again when you put him to the gallop. This is an excellent leſſon; for the gentle gallop pleaſes the horſe, and the times of Terre-à-terre make him obey the hand and heel; and thus he is made perfectly obedient to both. It is an excellent leſſon to make a horſe go Terre-à-terre with his head to three walls, the two reins parted, one in each hand, working him at the ſame time with the inward rein and the oppoſite leg; by it any horſe may be brought to go perfectly well, and nothing reclaims like it a vicious one. You may work him in the ſame manner upon his Demi-voltes, with the reins parted, and by it you will be able to judge abſolutely whether he has been worked right upon his firſt leſſons, or not.

End of the fifth Diviſion of Leſſons.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

The ſixth Diviſion of Leſſons.

To work a Horſe with the Reins of the Bridle only in the Left Hand, which is the Perfection of Horſemanſhip; for any Horſe that obeys that and the Heel, may be reckoned compleatly dreſſed.

THE rider is to be ſeated according to my former directions in a preceding chapter upon that. Whether a horſe walks, trots or gallops in large circles, the rider's hand ought to be a little without the volte, that he may work the inward rein; and his leg on the ſame ſide ought conſtantly to work the horſe's ſhoulders. If upon a walk you work the horſe's head to the pillar, and the croupe out, leg and rein contrary, you narrow him before and enlarge him behind; yet his croupe will be work'd notwithſtanding, for leg and rein contrary work always the croupe, which is at liberty, as it is farther from the center. Remember that I am ſpeaking of the walk, which is the action of the trot. In like manner if you put the head to the wall, the croupe is at liberty, and the fore-part preſſed, becauſe the wall is as the center; and what is neareſt the center muſt always be moſt preſſed, and what is the fartheſt from it the moſt at liberty; I ſay upon a walk, which is as the trot, for you will ſee that it is very different in other actions. Suppoſe now that we put a horſe's croupe upon a walk to the center, his hind-part will then be preſſed, and his fore-part at liberty, let him go to which hand you pleaſe. And becauſe his croupe is to the center, I ſuppoſe him ſtill upon a walk, the helps muſt be leg and rein contrary, by which means both his haunches will be worked, and only the half of his ſhoulders. When he goes to the right, the nails of the rider's bridle-hand ought to be turned upwards, his little finger to the left ſhoulder; and to the left, turn'd upwards to the right ſhoulder, helping always with the contrary leg. You muſt uſe the ſame helps when he goes in his own length. To work a horſe well upon his walk, is the foundation of all; for when he is upon a gentle walk, he is more patient, and ready to comprehend what one would teach him; beſides, his memory is ſo help'd by it, that he is not ſo apt to forget. If a horſe is perfectly obedient in the walk, that is to ſay, if he obeys the hand and heel, I can make him do all that his ſtrength will allow. Take care to remember, that you make your horſe in every thing he does, unleſs it be when you correct him for a fault, I ſay in every thing he does, both upon walk and trot, gallop, terre-à-terre, demi-voltes, or whatever elſe it is, to be obedient to the hand and heel, and upon his haunches, and to go forwards a little in every thing he does, though but a little, not only becauſe it makes him appear more graceful, but alſo becauſe it gives him ſtrength, and makes him go with truth and ſafety; otherwiſe he would be in danger of falling. Moreover, going backwards makes him ſeem reſty; for which reaſon he ought always to advance, unleſs when you rein him back. It is ungraceful to ſee a horſe go backwards in capriols, and looks like reſtineſs. Theſe are the helps for a horſe upon the walk, both reins of the bridle in the left hand.

CHAP. XXV.

CHAP. XXV.

To work a Horſe Terre-à-terre, with the Bridle only in the Left Hand.

AS the walk is the action of the trot, which is with the horſe's legs acroſs, ſo is Terre-à-terre the action of the gallop, in which both legs on the ſame ſide move; ſo that in a trot, that part neareſt the center is always moſt preſſed, and the other moſt at liberty, whether it be the ſhoulders or the croupe. But the action of Terre-à-terre is very different, being that of a gallop, in which both legs on the ſame ſide continue to advance, and you work with the inward rein and the contrary leg. Therefore he muſt be helped here as in the gallop, the horſe always having his croupe preſſed, and his ſhoulders at liberty, whether the one or the other be to the pillar. So that you may percieve, that being either nearer or farther from the center, his ſhoulders are neither more preſſed, nor more at liberty, nor does it make any alteration in his croupe; for in the trot, one works one way, and in the gallop, or Terre-à-terre quite another, as I mentioned before. But you muſt remember, that this muſt be always done by the inward rein and the oppoſite leg; for leg and rein of a ſide is quite another thing, ſince they work both ſhoulders, and not at all the croupe. So much for this in general.

I muſt now acquaint you of an old abſurd way, which is even practiſed at this time, relating to the bridle-hand; but what is moſt ſurpriſing, the very philoſophers in that art teach it in their writings. I'll explain to you, wherein their error conſiſts. When a horſe goes to the right, they turn the hand on the ſame ſide within his neck, by which they put both his ſhoulders in, and conſequently his croupe out, ſpurring him at the ſame time to keep it in, and thus they give him two contrary aids at one and the ſame time, which is impoſſible. For this reaſon I invented the method of working the inward rein, as you may perceive in all my leſſons, which is the moſt excellent invention that can be to make a horſe go true, and can't be done by any other method, and is certainly the quinteſſence of horſemanſhip for almoſt every thing, Terre-à-terre, and moſt Airs.

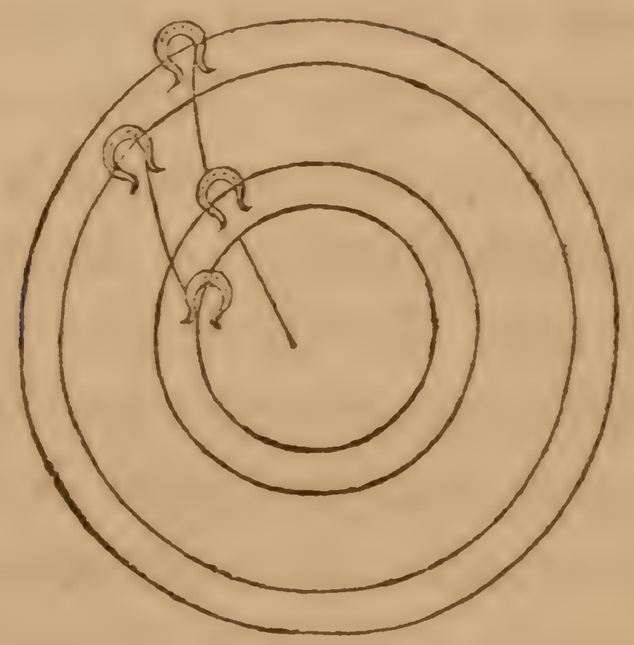
To work a Horſe Terre-à-terre when the Bridle is held only in the Left Hand.

The action of a horſe's legs Terre-à-terre is a gallop in time, which is term'd *Terre-à-terre relevé*. The rider ought to be ſeated upon his twiſt, his legs perpendicular down. To the right, he ſhould put the bridle on the outſide of the horſe's neck, which is to the left, turning the inſide of his hand upwards as much as poſſible, with his little finger as much above his thumb as he can, pointing to the left ſhoulder, and help the horſe with the leg out of the volte. By aiding him in this manner acroſs, with the rein within, and the leg without, his croupe is always worked, ſince by this means his hind-legs are put together; the drawing the inward rein puts out the inward hind-leg, and the rider's outward leg puts in the other hind-leg, ſo that they go under his belly, which puts him upon his haunches. By this true method, both the hind-legs are work'd, and only the half of his ſhoulders preſſes his hind-legs, leaving his fore-part at liberty to embrace the

BOOK II.

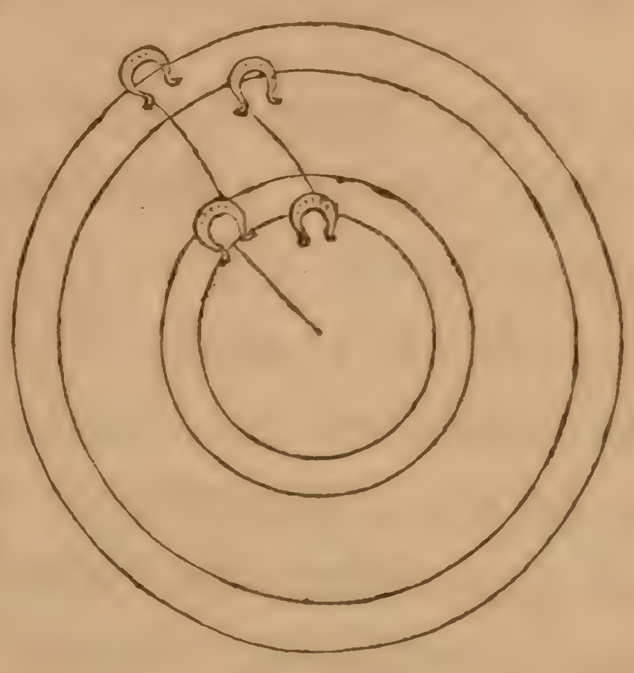
volte the better; for ſhould both the ſhoulders come in, his haunch or leg without the volte would be out, which would be falſe. By this method a horſe deſcribes four circles with his legs, as he ought to do when he goes Terre-à-terre; that is to ſay, his fore-leg within the volte deſcribes the largeſt, the other fore-leg the ſecond, the hind-leg within the volte the third, and the other the fourth or ſmalleſt circle. The legs of a horſe being of equal length, he muſt of neceſſity be upon his haunches, when his hind-legs are in the line of nature, that is to ſay, within the line of the fore ones. For the ſame reaſon, when you draw the rein within the volte, and that the horſe is bent to be like a ſemicircle, the leg within the volte will be the longeſt, which is as it ought to be for him to advance the hind-leg on the ſame ſide; and by drawing the rein within the volte, as I ſaid before, the hind-leg within the volte is forced out, which gives it more liberty of following the fore-leg within the volte; and this is as it ſhould be. The rider's helping with his outward leg conſtrains the leg of that ſide, ſubjects it, and conſequently puts it behind the other hind-leg, which is entirely right. You ſee the neceſſity of a horſe's always avoiding the pillar or center with his hind-leg within the volte, which makes him move with half his ſhoulders firſt, which is as it ſhould be. You muſt remark here, that the outſide of the volte is open, and that you have no other way to ſhut it but with the heel: if the horſe obeys it, it is ſhut; if he does not, it is open. I'll ſhew you in its proper place how to ſhut it.

Terre-à-terre to the Right Hand.



The line drawn towards the pillar ſhews in what manner a horſe's hind-leg ought to avoid the pillar.

Terre-à-terre to the Left Hand.



Here the bridle-hand ought to be on the contrary ſide, that is to ſay, on the right, with the nails of the rider's hand turned upwards, and his little finger pointing towards the left ſhoulder, having his face turned into the volte, and helping the horſe with his contrary leg, which is the right: I gave you my reaſons for it in the preceding chapter, and therefore ſhall avoid troubling you with a repetition. This is the figure for Terre-à-terre on the left hand.

Fig. 21. The line drawn towards the pillar ſhews in what manner the horſe's hind-leg ſhould avoid it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

For Paſſades along the Wall with the Bridle only, and many other Inſtructions.

YOU muſt begin firſt upon a walk, then do it upon a trot, then upon a gallop, and afterwards full ſpeed, and make the demivolte with the ſame exactneſs as you did it in Terre-à-terre, only the volte here ſhould not be more than the horſe's length.

When the wall is on his left, he ought when he gallops, in order to prepare him for the demivolte, on the right hand, to be help'd in the following manner: You muſt draw the rein oppoſite to the wall, as I have taught you before, or ſtreighten it a little, in order to force his hind-leg out on the ſame ſide, and put the half of his ſhoulders in, that he may upon his gentle gallop advance his inward fore-leg, which is the leg fartheſt from the wall, and that the hind-leg of the ſame ſide may follow. Thus he will be in a proper poſture to make the demivolte Terre-à-terre; and if you draw the inward rein a little ſtronger at the ſame time, helping him with the oppoſite leg, he will make his volte as true as if he was fix'd in a frame; that is to ſay, that neither his ſhoulders nor croupe will be either too much in or too much out. But as ſoon as he has cloſed his demivolte to the right hand, the right rein muſt be left looſe, and the left drawn, as the right rein was before, that he may be ready to make the demivolte to the left hand, ſince at that time he ſhould change his legs, and alter his poſture, by advancing his near leg, and making the other on the ſame ſide follow it; by this means he will take the demivolte as he ought. The rein and leg ought to be changed in this manner upon each Paſſade. Juſt before your horſe makes the demivolte, I would adviſe you to ſtop him upon your hand, leaning back a little, ſo that he may make two or three *falcades* before he turns, or makes the demivolte, which will fix him more upon his haunches, and enable him to perform his demivoltes the better; beſides, it will give him an additional grace. If the Paſſades are done at full ſpeed, which is what the French call *Paſſades furieuſes*, the ſame method ought to be obſerved, only the rider ought to have his legs cloſer to the horſe. Nothing more ſtrongly proves a horſe to be thoroughly dreſſed, than Paſſades, ſince nothing can make a horſe perfect but the hands and the heels, and he obeys both in Paſſades. He flies the heel upon ſtrait lines, and obeys the hand in going ſlower and turning; the heels too in his demivoltes, and again the hand in ſtopping, which is all that can be required. I muſt hint to you, that when you go in Paſſades in the country, or in any open place, you are confined to nothing (as horſemen ſay) but may make your demivolte on which hand you pleaſe. They are in the right, ſince you are at liberty to begin on which hand you pleaſe, as there is no wall to confine you; but when you have once begun, you ought to make the demivolte upon that leg which advances in a direct line, and on the ſame ſide, otherwiſe your horſe will croſs his legs, be confuſed, and go falſe. So that you may begin on which ſide you pleaſe, but then you are afterwards confin'd to keep to that ſide, tho' in an open plain, as if there was a wall. Thus much for Paſſades: as to thoſe called *relevé*, they are eaſily done if the horſe goes in curvettes.

When

BOOK II.

When the croupe of a horſe is towards the center, you cannot work too much with the rein and oppoſite leg, as I ſhew'd before, ſince they throw out the hind-leg on the ſide of the volte, and give the ſhoulders liberty to come and go firſt, as they ought; inſomuch that the inward hind-leg is only in the line of nature, or in the line of the outward fore-leg; if it be ſo only one inch, or half inch, it is ſufficient. Thus he will go with ſpirit and eaſe, as if he deſpiſed the ground.

You cannot work the ſhoulders of a horſe too much, provided his outward hind-leg is in the line of the fore-leg on the ſame ſide; for example, you may perceive this by working a horſe in the quarter or demi-voltes; for though you draw the inward rein to work the ſhoulders, his hind-leg remains pretty near in the ſame place. You ſhould always take care to make a horſe advance, be it never ſo little, though not more than a ſtraw's breath. If he offers to riſe, or retain himſelf, looſe the reins of the bridle a little, and ſpur him to make him advance. Remember, that an eaſy hand is one of the principal aids we have; for it puts a horſe upon his haunches, when he finds nothing elſe to lean upon; beſides, it pleaſes him, and prevents his being reſty.

Obſerve always to alter your leſſons, although they have a tendency to the ſame end, otherwiſe a horſe will take ſuch a habit of it that he will go quite by rote, and not mind at all the hand and heel; ſo that when you imagine you have perform'd wonders, you are nothing advanced.

I make frequent uſe of this leſſon, to make a horſe obedient to the hand and heel, and find it a very good one. I make him go ſideways to one hand, and then forward a little; then ſideways to the other hand, and forward a little; and thus ſideways from hand to hand; which is an excellent method, ſince by this, a horſe expects the hand and heel, ſubmits himſelf to them, and don't go by rote. But this leſſon requires room, otherwiſe the horſe will be impatient, and knowing too well what he is to do, go by rote, eſpecially if you continue it long. It is the ſame in all other leſſons, and therefore they ought to be changed often; obſerving always, not to ſtop a horſe twice in the ſame place; for he may remember it, and ſtop there before company, to the diſgrace of the rider. Avoid therefore every thing that looks like going by rote, and make your horſe think of nothing but obeying the hand and heel.

I have invented another leſſon, which is this: When my horſe is ſtrait, I make him advance; if he is to the right, I preſs his ſhoulders as much out as I can with the inward rein of the bridle, and give him the contrary leg, in order to put his croupe as far as I can to the right, and oblige him to anſwer the hand and heel. Being thus ſideways, I make him advance a little upon his walk; I work him to the other hand in the ſame manner; and thus continue to change from one hand to the other as long as the ground permits. This leſſon is good to make a horſe anſwer both the hand and heel.

I invented this leſſon to work the croupe upon the quarter voltes, which is, when to the right he makes a ſtrait line; I draw the contrary rein, which is the outward one of the bridle, giving him the contrary leg, which forces his croupe out upon that quarter to the left hand, and puts him ſtrait upon the ſecond line, as if he went to the right. And I go on ſo to take the other quarter for the left, which works his croupe. The ſame to the other hand; though I am going to the left, I work his croupe for the right; for

for by this means, the croupe is worked upon the quarters, and the ſhoulders aſſured near the center, according to the other old way, which is a very good one, in which one works within the lines, making the ſhoulders come round, and keeping the haunches or croupe at the ſame time. CHAP. XXVI.

A horſe that does not go well upon his haunches, can never do well in the Manege, ſo that our whole ſtudy is to put him upon them; but I would have you underſtand, when a horſe may properly be ſaid to be upon his haunches, and when not. Suppoſe a horſe to be almoſt ſitting upon his croupe, he is not upon his haunches notwithſtanding, if his hind-legs are diſtant from the lines of nature (which is to have them much aſunder,) altho' he was almoſt upon his croupe. But to be upon his haunches, his hind-legs ought to be in their natural poſition, with the haunch-bone pointing directly forward, and his hind-legs under his belly, bending his hocks as much as poſſible; and this is the juſt ſituation of a horſe upon his haunches. But we ought to conſider the natural form and ſhape of a horſe, that we may work him according to nature. You may obſerve in all my leſſons, that I tell you how the legs go, and thoſe who are unacquainted with that, are entirely ignorant and work in the dark. Here is then the form, in which nature has made a horſe's legs: his fore-legs are made like thoſe of a man, having his knee bending forward; and his hind-legs like a man's arm, having the ſinews of his ham bending backwards, which is diametrically oppoſite to the former. If the hind-legs of a horſe bent in the ſame manner as thoſe before, he would walk upright like a man; but his hind-legs bending contrary, they reſemble the arm of a man, and his fore-legs bend as ours, which makes him go upon all four; and there is no other reaſon for beaſts going upon all four, with their bellies to the ground. Horſes then ought to be worked according to their make, and that form which nature has given them.

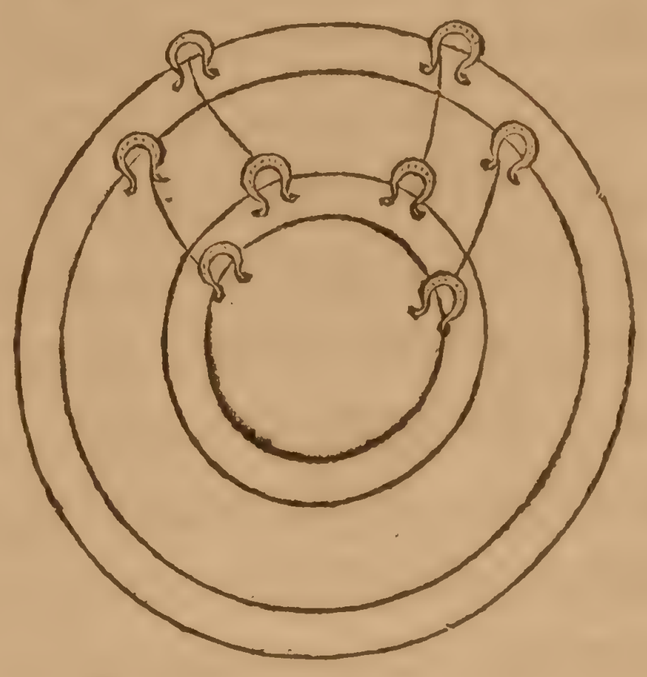
You may perhaps ſay, that there is nothing in changing a horſe from one hand to the other; ſince, by this method, he arrives to the utmoſt perfection in obeying both the hand and the heel, becauſe he can change when you pleaſe. This is true, but you ought notwithſtanding to know what to do, otherwiſe you may chance to fall. Do then thus: changing one *piſte* (as it is call'd) upon a large circle to the right, put your bridle a little to the contrary ſide, aſſiſting your horſe gently at the ſame time with the leg within the volte, that he may have the greater liberty for ſhifting his ſhoulders; his croupe muſt not come too much in, leſt it ſhould make him *entier*. Every time you change, whether it be within or without the circle, make him go forwards, helping him with rein and leg contrary, feeling him a little more than uſual both in hand and heel. The time a horſe takes in changing is Terre-à-terre, and ſometimes that of the Demi-volte, according as his manner of changing is. After this quarter or demi-volte, he ſhould be put to his gallop as before, and do it as I told you. He ſhould be worked thus to both hands.

To change upon the Voltes Terre-à-terre.

You muſt work the horſe Terre-à-terre, as I taught you before, both with hand and heels; and before you change make him go in a leſſer circle, helping his ſhoulders ſomewhat more, which will put him more aſlaunt, and will fix his croupe the better to make his change. When he is in this poſture, make him go forwards, and at the ſame time change your hand and heel, and you will do well in changing to draw the inward rein of the bridle at the ſame time.

BOOK II.

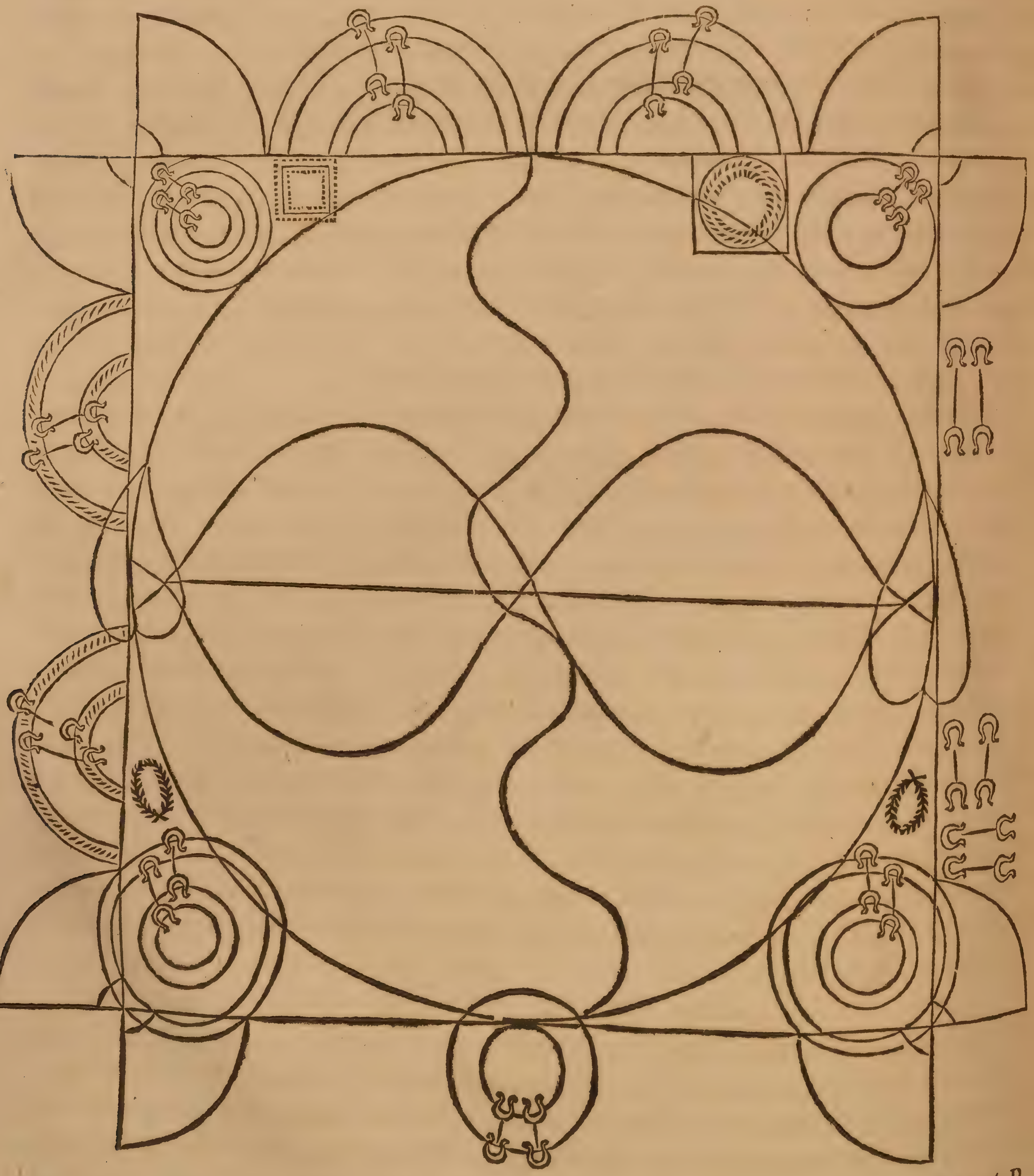
In Terre-à-terre Relevé a Horſe ought to go according to this Figure.



The meaſure of the ground in Terre-à-terre is to allow ſomewhat more than a horſe's length; but you may take more or leſs compaſs, if you pleaſe.

The ſame aids muſt be uſed in Terre-à-terre determiné, and the horſe's poſture the ſame, excepting that Terre-à-terre determiné is lower, being much like the Carriere, only that the Carriere is not upon the volte.

I give you here a univerſal map of horſemanſhip, containing the whole variety of the Manege, *viz.* the Gallop, Changes of all kinds within or without the circle, going upon Quarters to both hands, working the Shoulders or the Croupe either within or without, Demivoltes, Curvettes upon the voltes, or ſtrait forwards; to Serpentine, or to go in Caprioles, the horſe's head to the wall, going ſideways in an Oval, or in Quarters; in ſhort, I have omitted nothing.



CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

CHAP. XXVII.

Three Lessons to work, and I may say to perfectly finish a Horse for the Manege.

THE caveson my way held in the rider's hand gives the true ply to the horse; and there is nothing like it, for it bends him from nose to tail. When he has been compleatly worked in this manner, and is very supple, there is still something in the bridle or bit, with which he is not well acquainted. For which reason I would advise you to fix the caveson my way to the pommel of the saddle, as I taught you before, and take the bridle-reins separate in both hands, and help him (as I have told you before) with the inward rein and outward leg, which will make him know the bridle, whilst the caveson gives his body the ply it should have.

After this, I would advise you to make use of false reins, and fasten them to the banquet of the bridle, as you did the caveson before. This works the barrs, but leaves the curb loose, so that he is under less apprehension of the bridle, and his *appuy* is helped; and when you come to work with the bridle, and consequently with the curb, the bridle will make him light upon the hand. Thus the false reins give an *appuy*, and at the same time makes a horse light in hand; so that it is good for those that have too much, as well as those that have too little, and they give the ply just as the caveson does, excepting that the caveson works upon the nose, and the false reins upon the barrs, which makes his mouth sensible, as it ought to be, and on the same side of the barrs as the bridle would do; so that when he is rode with the bridle only, and that he has the help of the curb, he goes vastly well.

But take notice here, that when the false reins are fastened to the banquet of the bit, they are two hands breadth nearer the rider than the caveson, which is upon his nose, and for that reason have less effect and less power, though the barrs are more sensible than the nose, but the horse's ply won't be so great, as you have not so much command.

But if you have suppled your horse, and given him ply sufficient with the caveson, and afterwards with the false reins; the false reins will continue to keep his body supple, and will work vastly well upon his barrs to use him to the bridle only; separate your reins in your hands, and work always with the inward rein, and you will find him very supple. This way of working is to make him sensible to the curb, which is finishing your work as to the hand. Observe here, that as the caveson has more power when you pull, than any thing else, being upon the horse's nose, and the fartheſt from you; and the false reins have less, being nearer by two hands breadth, as they are fastened to the banquet of the bridle: so now working with the bit only, you bend him less, for this is still two hands breadth nearer than the false reins; for the caveson is upon the nose, the false reins fastened to the banquet of the bit, and the bridle-reins to the end of the branches, which makes them less efficacious, as they are nearer the rider.

This way of working a horse is the quintessence of horsemanship, since by these three different degrees, first the caveson, then the false reins, and afterwards the bridle, you make a horse so perfect, that it is wonderful, provided they

BOOK II.

they are regularly uſed, and by a maſterly hand, otherwiſe neither this, or aught elſe can do any thing in this noble art.

The helps of the hand, of the thighs, of the calfs of the legs, pinching with the ſpurs, in ſhort, all ſorts of aids ought to be more gentle upon a walk when one paſſages a horſe, than when one makes him go in his air; or elſe, if there is no difference, there is nothing left to make him go in his air. The gentle Paſſage requires gentle aids, and ſtronger Airs require ſtronger aids, which is agreeable to reaſon.

CHAP. XXVIII.

For Terre-a-terre.

THE figure of Terre-à-terre ſhews, that the horſe's croupe is preſſed, and his ſhoulders at liberty triangularly and circularly. He is moſt preſſed there, where his legs are confined to the narroweſt compaſs, and conſequently that part is more ſubjected and more worked. He deſcribes four circles with his legs, as is evident from the figure, the action of them being the ſame as when he is upon the gallop. Therefore, whether a horſe's head or his croupe is to the pillar in Terre-à-terre, his fore-part will be always at liberty, and his croupe confined; ſo that the center makes no alteration, but only the action of his legs.

When he goes to the right, the bridle ſhould be held upon the contrary ſide of the horſe's neck, the nails of your hand upwards pointing to the left ſhoulder, the left ſhoulder in, turning your body to the ſame ſide (the horſe's croupe being within) this makes him go with freedom the ſhoulders firſt: rein and leg contrary work the croupe, and let the ſhoulders go large, ſo that the horſe is bent as in a vice. The bridle-hand ought to help him to go forwards, by ſlackening the reins, and you muſt keep as regular as if he was in a frame.

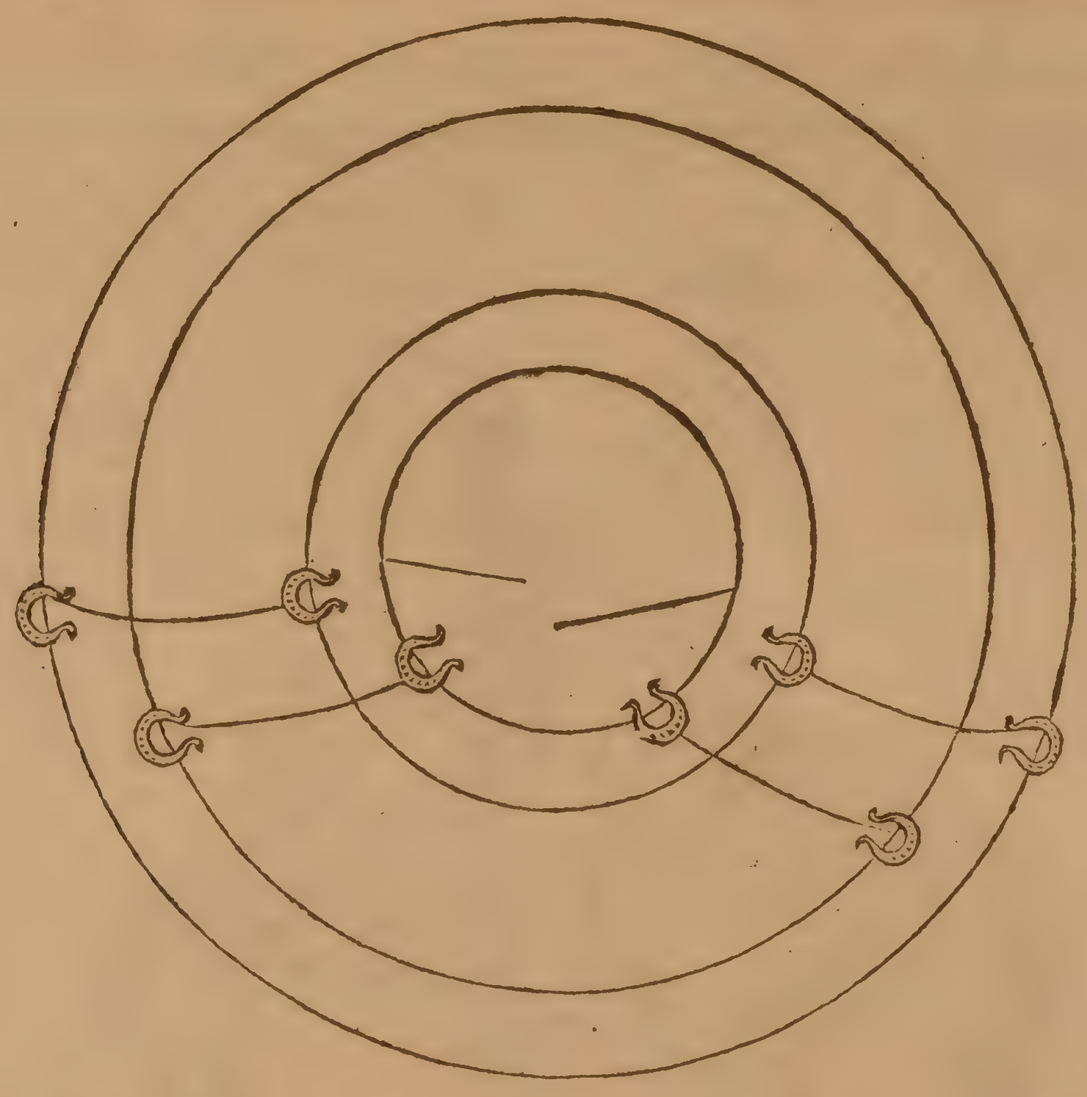
For Terre-a-terre again.

Since drawing the inward rein brings the half of a horſe's ſhoulders within the volte, therefore it muſt conſequently throw his haunch on the ſame ſide out, and keeps it off from the pillar or center. This turn of the horſe's body makes his legs towards the volte, the more extended, to go firſt. Thus he has his croupe ſubjected, and his ſhoulders at large, is at liberty within the volte, and preſſed without; ſo that his outward legs may be ſaid to be kept back by the inward that are at liberty, rather than that they begin any action of themſelves.

So Terre-à-terre is being half at liberty on one ſide, and half preſſed on the other; that part of him within the volte is at liberty, the other is confined, and ſo his legs keep their four circles; thoſe that are at liberty advance, and thoſe that are confined follow. Here I give you the figure both for the right and left hand.

Some

CHAP. XXVIII.



Some horſemen have had the vanity to imagine, that a horſe may be managed upon the firſt mounting him, or in the ſpace of a quarter of an hour. Theſe gentlemen will certainly think moſt of theſe leſſons of mine very tedious, and of little conſequence.

But they ought to underſtand and conſider, that it requires more paper to write theſe leſſons, and more time to read them, than to put them in practice: ſince they are ſo very methodical, and ſo wonderfully efficacious, being the truth of horſemanſhip, that I may venture to ſay, that a raw horſe of five years old, of a proper diſpoſition to undergo the fatigue of the Manege, will be perfectly dreſſed in leſs than three months, provided he is under the care of an expert horſeman. This is not only my opinion, but my certain knowledge, which is the acquiſition of a long experience. For ſince I have invented this new method, I have dreſſed under me myſelf, and under my *ecuyer* Captain MAZIN, very many horſes in very little time; and I have never perceived nor ſeen that Captain MAZIN, by uſing this method, ever failed with any horſes of any ſort, both the docile and thoſe that had a good diſpoſition for it, and the vicious of all kinds; the weak, the ſtrong, thoſe of moderate ſtrength, of all humours, all natures, and of all different diſpoſitions; Hungarian horſes, mares, great large horſes, middle-ſized ones, little ones, poneys, horſes of all countries, Spaniards, Polanders, Barbs, Turks, Neapolitans, Danes, all ſorts of Flanders horſes, and horſes of mix'd breeds that he has dreſſed are almoſt without number; he never failed with any, unleſs they fell ſick, lame, or died in his hands.

This I dare affirm from experience, and therefore recommend theſe leſſons to your ſerious peruſal. Underſtand them properly, make uſe of them, and you will reap a pleaſure in the practice, and all the advantage a good horſeman can require.

End of the ſixth Diviſion of Leſſons, and of the Second Book.

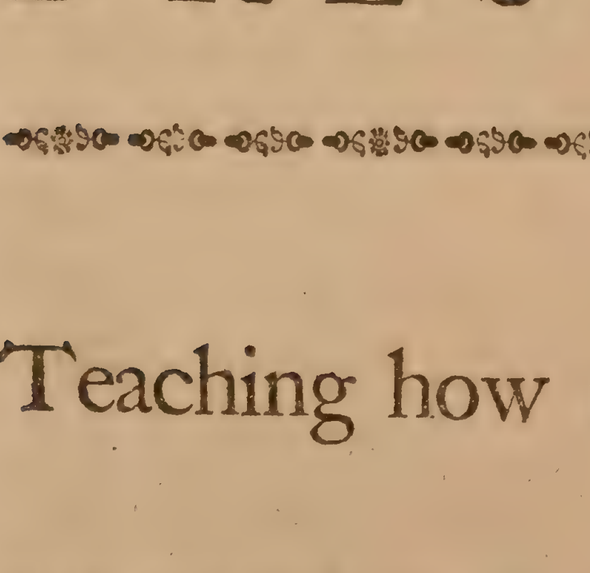
R. Parr Sculp.

THE NEW METHOD OF DRESSING HORSES.

BOOK III.

Teaching how to Dreſs a Horſe in all ſorts of AIRS, by a New Method.

CHAP. I. *Of the ſeveral Sorts of Airs.*



YOU muſt in all Airs follow the ſtrength, ſpirit, and diſpoſition of the horſe, and do nothing againſt nature; for art is but to ſet nature in order, and nothing elſe: but to make a horſe Gallop and Change, and to go Terre-à-terre, is for the moſt part forced; and in Paſſadoes the like; for, if a horſe be impatient, he will hardly go well in Paſſadoes.

No other airs are to be forced, but every horſe is to chooſe his own air, unto which nature hath moſt fitted him, which you may eaſily ſee, when he is tied ſhort to the ſingle pillar my way.

For

CHAP. I.

For Curvets, a horſe ought to have a great deal of patience; and the air of Curvets gives a horſe patience with diſcreet riding, as they ſay. But I have ſeldom ſeen that diſcreet riding; I doubt there is a miſtake in it, which is this: Firſt the horſe hath patience, and then that horſe goes in Curvets; but ſeldom impatient horſes are made patient by Curvets: ſo ſeeing moſt horſes that go well in Curvets to have patience, they think Curvets give them patience, when it is patience that gives them Curvets. But there is no rule without an exception, yet I doubt I am in the right; for though ſome young horſes may by chance go in Curvets, yet I aſſure you, for the moſt part, horſes muſt have a great deal of time, with the cuſtom of often repetitions; to be in years, and to have gray hairs in their beard, before they will be ſettled, and firm'd, to go certainly in Curvets both forwards and upon their voltes; Therefore it is an error in thoſe that think they can force Curvets, if the horſe's inclination be not to go in that air; for I have known many horſes, that all the force in the world would never make go in Curvets, their diſpoſition being againſt it. Curvets is an air built only of art; for if the horſe be not perfectly in the hand and the heels, and upon the haunches, he will never go in Curvets: yet I muſt tell you, this new way of mine will make horſes go in Curvets, which by no other way would have been brought to it, and it ſeldom or never fails me.

For Leaping-horſes, there are four ſeveral airs, which are Croupades, Balotades, Capriols, and a Step and a Leap. The height of theſe may be all alike, but not the manner; though the horſe that goes the longeſt time muſt needs go the higheſt.

Croupades is a leap where the horſe pulls up his hinder legs, as if he drew or pull'd them up into his body.

Balotades is a leap where the horſe offers to ſtrike out with his hinder legs, but doth not, and makes only an offer or half ſtrokes; ſhewing only the ſhoes of his hinder legs, but doth not ſtrike, only makes an offer, and no more.

Capriols is a leap, that when the horſe is at the full height of his leap he yerks, or ſtrikes out his hinder legs, as near and as even together, and as far out as ever he can ſtretch them, which the French call *nouër l'aiguilette*, which is, to tie the point.

A Step and a Leap is as it were three airs; the Step Terre-à-terre, the raiſing of him a Curvet, and then a Leap. Theſe airs can never be forced to go well in them, in ſpite of their poinſons, but what nature ordains them; for they are called well-diſpoſed horſes.

What belongs to Leaping-horſes (according to the old opinion) are theſe things: A horſe of huge and vaſt ſtrength, an excellent mouth, perfect good feet; in which laſt they have not ſaid amiſs, for good feet are very requiſite, elſe the horſe dares never light on them for fear of hurting them (no more than a man that hath the gout dares leap) and ſo will never riſe.

I could wiſh a good mouth (which is a good *appuy*) neither too hard, nor too ſoft, but to ſuffer a good *appuy* upon the barrs, and ſo to ſuffer the curb, which is to be underſtood a good mouth: yet I muſt tell you, the rareſt leaping-horſe that ever I ſaw, or rid, went not at all upon the curb, but only upon the barrs of his mouth, which I do not commend; but it is better to have him leap ſo, being ſo rare a horſe, than to be ſo over-curious as not to have him leap at all, becauſe he went not upon the curb. That

BOOK III.

That they muſt be very ſtrong horſes to be leaping-horſes, is a very great error; for it is not the ſtrongeſt horſes that are fitteſt for the delight of the Manege, and eſpecially not for leaping-horſes; for I have ſeen many ſtrong horſes, that muſt be galloped very long before you could abate the ſtrength of their chines; and all that while they would do nothing but yerk, and fetch diſorder'd counter-times of falſe leaps, and the beſt horſemen in the world could never make them leaping-horſes: ſo it is not ſtrong, but well-diſpoſed horſes; for the beſt leaping-horſes that ever I knew, were the weakeſt horſes I have ſeen.

Take one of the guard, the ſtrongeſt fellow that is, and I will bring a little fellow that ſhall out-leap him many a foot; yet that ſtrong fellow would cruſh that little fellow to death in his arms: ſo 'tis not ſtrength, but diſpoſition fits horſes for leaping. But ſome will ſay, that a little man's ſtrength is above his weight, and the great man's weight is above his ſtrength; but that is not ſo; for the great man's ſtrength ſhall be more above his weight, than the little man's ſtrength above his, and yet the little man ſhall out-leap him. Nay, two little men of equal ſtrength, the one ſhall leap excellently, and the other not; and more, a weaker little man ſhall out-leap the ſtronger; and ſometimes a weak ſlender ſlim fellow will out-leap a knit ſtrong fellow; ſo that it is nothing but diſpoſition, which nature gives, and not art. Sometimes a ſtrong great fellow will out-leap a little man, but that is ſeldom, becauſe their ſpirits are more dilated, aſunder, and diffuſed, than in little men. The like I will aſſure you in horſes, as I have told you of men; there may be a ſtrong horſe diſpoſed for leaping, and that no doubt is an excellent horſe; but for the moſt part they are but weak horſes that are diſpoſed for leaping. Sometimes a horſe finds himſelf ſo pincht with curvets upon the haunches, being weak, that he finds eaſe in leaping.

Thus you ſee that leaping-horſes are diſpoſed by nature, and not art, being full of ſpirit, and light; ſo that a horſeman hath nothing to do in making leaping-horſes, but only to give them the time, which is all the art ought to be uſed to a leaping-horſe; and he that thinks to ſhew more art in a leaping-horſe, will but ſhew his ignorance and folly.

A Step and a Leap is an air, in which horſes commonly go when they have not a good *appuy*; for the Step puts him upon the hand, and gives him a riſe to leap, like one that runs before he leaps, and ſo may leap higher than he that goes every time a leap. Thus I have ſhewed you theſe Airs, Curvets, Croupades, Balotades, Capriols, and a Step and a Leap, which nature muſt do more than art: Two Steps, and three Steps and a Leap are not comely, and are indeed rather a Gallop Galliard, than can be called an Air.

The firſt Diviſion of Leſſons.

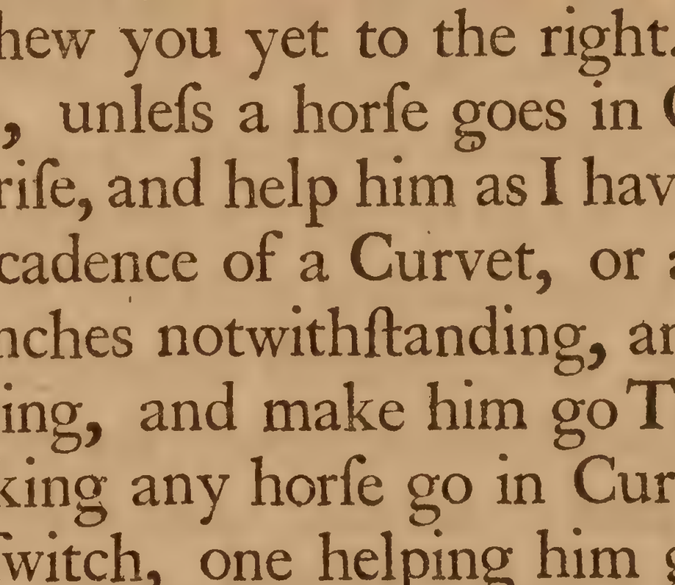
A new Method of Horſemanſhip to teach Horſes all kinds of Airs round a Pillar, wherein they are taught to go perfectly in Curvets without any body upon their Backs, de ferme à ferme, *which is, in one Place; upon the Voltes, and ſideways upon the Voltes, which is the moſt excellent and uſeful Invention to make a Horſe go regularly in all ſorts of Airs, that ever was found out, to fix him upon his Haunches, and make him obedient to the Hand and Heel. I adviſe you therefore carefully to follow theſe Directions, for more can't be taught a Horſe.*

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The new Method of the Pillar for all Airs; and firſt, for the Right Hand.

THE pillar ought to have two rings on each ſide, fixed according to the uſual height; the horſe ſhould be bridled and ſaddled without any body upon his back, and the button of the bridle ſlip'd down; then the right rein of the caveſon is to be faſtened very ſhort (but it would be better was it held by a groom, for ſo a horſe may make as many voltes as you pleaſe) and take the other rein in your hand. Then the rider ſhould take a little *poinſon* in his hand, which is a ſhort ſtick with an iron point at the end of it, and ſtand on the ſide oppoſite to the ſhort rein; another rider ought to be placed on either ſide, which you pleaſe, with a ſwitch in his hand, to make the horſe riſe. When one has made him riſe, the other ought at the ſame time to prick him gently in the ſpurring-place with the *poinſon*, at the very inſtant he begins to riſe. Thus he ſhould make the croupe of the horſe move from him towards the pillar on the ſide where the rein is faſtened, for ſo the ſhort rein has the greater effect, and puts the horſe in the true poſture to bend the half of his ſhoulders, which makes him obey the hand, and the rider with his *poinſon* makes him obey the ſpurs. So that if the horſe yields to it, which he will, and ought to do in a ſhort time, he will not only go perfectly in Curvets forwards, but alſo upon the voltes, the firſt time you try him; which is ſomething extraordinary, and was never practiſed before. For as to the pillar the old way, it only makes a horſe advance, whereas this makes him go upon the voltes, tho' in the ſame place; for the ſhort rein on the right ſide, and the *poinſon* on the other, forces him to go in Curvets to the right hand upon the voltes, as you will learn hereafter. I ſhall ſhew you in its proper place the left rein faſten'd ſhort, when a horſe is to go to the left hand; but have ſomething more to ſhew you yet to the right. Some may perhaps ſay, To what purpoſe is all this, unleſs a horſe goes in Curvets? This is an abſurd queſtion. Only make him riſe, and help him as I have directed before, and altho' he never takes the proper cadence of a Curvet, or any other air, this method will put him upon his haunches notwithſtanding, and make him obey the hand and heel, which is every thing, and make him go Terre-à-terre perfectly. This method ſeldom fails of making any horſe go in Curvets, when he is tied thus, making him riſe with the ſwitch, one helping him gently at the ſame time on the contrary ſide with the *poinſon* inſtead of ſpurs, and another behind the horſe with a *chambriere* to animate him, this way you will make him go to perfection. If the *poinſon* is too ſharp, turn the end of the ſtick, and touch him with it in the ſpurring place, or with the handle of another ſwitch; for ſharp ſpurs ſometimes do more harm than good. Thus you give a right bent to the body of the horſe, and make his legs go true. This is the moſt eaſy and effectual method for airs. But let us go on with our right caveſon rein faſten'd to the pillar, which is for Curvets in one place *de ferme à ferme* to the right, as is ſhewn by this figure. The rein being thus fix'd ſhort, the horſe cannot eaſily riſe; therefore, to find eaſe, he puts himſelf upon the haunches.



S

CHAP.

BOOK III.

CHAP. III.

For the Voltes to the Right Hand, the Horſe as he was before with the Right Rein of the Caveſon faſtened ſhort to the Pillar.

I FIRST make the horſe go backward as far as the ſhort rein will permit, placing a horſeman with a *poinſon* in his hand on the outſide of the volte, who is to help him in caſe of neceſſity; or rather, let him go before, and be placed as if he held him by the long rein of the caveſon; another ſhould follow him with a *chambriere* on the outſide the volte, whilſt a third touches him with a ſwitch upon the breaſt, to make him riſe upon his voltes; but this perſon ought to be within the volte. He who is to help him with the *chambriere* walks circularly forward, but rather before the horſe, as I have mentioned already; and the perſon who touches him before with the ſwitch ought to go circularly backward, if he is within the volte. You may perceive that a horſe thus performs almoſt a volte in Curvets upon his air, as far as the ſhort rein will permit him to turn, which is almoſt an entire volte. All this time that you are working with the right rein, the pillar is to be within the volte for the right hand. This ſhort rein works mightily the horſe's ſhoulders, and leaves his croupe at liberty, that he may make his volte perfect; and it alſo pulls his ſhoulders to that degree, as to make him go in a round, or, as it is commonly expreſs'd, of one *piſte*. But the horſe deſcribes four circles with his four feet; his fore-foot within the volte deſcribes the ſecond circle, the other fore-foot the third; the hind-foot within the volte deſcribes the leaſt, ſince it is neareſt the center; and the other hind-leg without the volte deſcribes the largeſt, being the fartheſt from it. The action of a horſe's legs in Curvets preſſes his fore-legs, and leaves the others at liberty, for which reaſon the fore-legs will be within the line of the hind ones: the fore-leg within the volte is a little before that on the outſide of it, and the hind-leg without the volte is a little before the other that is within it, otherwiſe he could not go in Curvets, ſo that all his four feet are off the ground at the ſame time, as in a little leap. A horſe being thus faſtened with the ſhort rein of the caveſon, his fore-part is ſo much confined, that he muſt neceſſarily throw out his croupe, otherwiſe he could not turn, and conſequently the action is as I have deſcribed it. This is an exceeding good invention, ſince it ſo far conſtrains his fore-part as to force him into this air whether he will or not, provided he is faſtened at a proper length, ſo that he can neither ſpring forwards, nor get from off his haunches.

CHAP. IV.

To work a Horſe in Curvets backwards upon the Voltes to the Right Hand, with the Rein of the Caveſon faſten'd ſhort as it was before.

SUppoſe at preſent, that a horſe has been upon the voltes to the right hand as much as the fixed rein will permit, you muſt then allow him a little time to take breath; then the rider muſt raiſe him with his ſwitch, following him round, and looking him a little in the face. Whilſt one makes him riſe with the ſwitch, another ought to help him a little firmer with the *poinſon*, moving circularly by his ſide. There is no occaſion for the third with the *chambriere*, ſince a horſe can not move backwards and forwards at the ſame time; but ſhould he go back too faſt, he muſt be kept up with the *chambriere*, and by this means he will go backwards perfectly in Curvets upon the voltes, which is ſomething uncommon, eſpecially when he has no body upon his back. You may make him go forwards and backwards in this manner, as much as you pleaſe; for when he has made the rein too ſtrait to which he is faſtened, by going back as far as he can, you may make him advance upon his voltes to untwiſt the rein, and when he is as far advanced as he can, you muſt make him go backwards to ſlacken it again; and thus you may work him as much as you pleaſe.

CHAP. V.

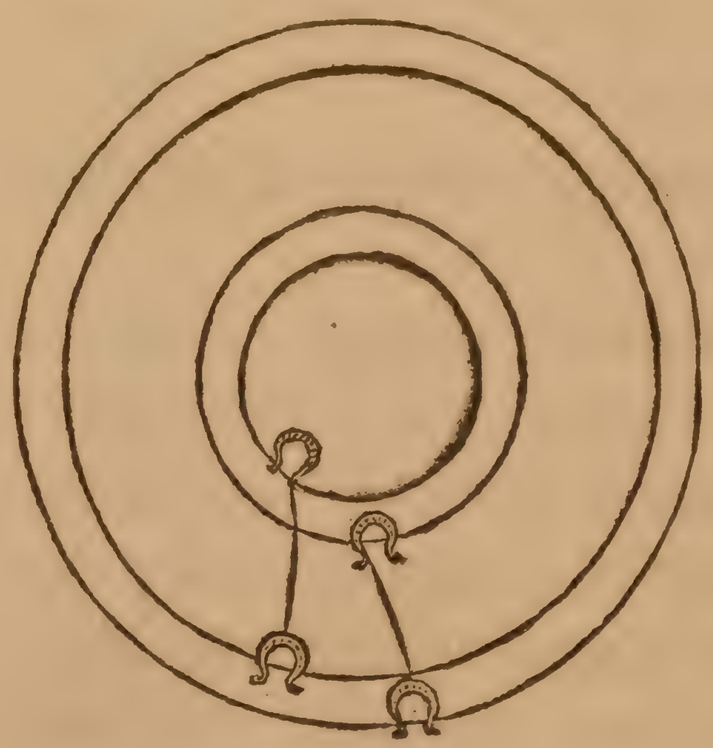
To work a Horſe ſideways with the Right Rein faſtened ſhort as it was before.

AS the pillar has been hitherto placed within the volte for the right hand, when a horſe was to go forward, and was likewiſe the ſame when he went backwards, which always worked him to the right hand, the rein being faſtened in the ſame manner as it was at firſt; ſo, at preſent, to work him ſideways, his head muſt be placed within the pillar, which will work him to the left. Going thus ſideways, the right rein being faſtened ſhort, helps the horſe on the outſide, which fixes his croupe the better, as his head is to the pillar. The rider muſt raiſe him with his ſwitch before, and help him upon his ſide with the hand-end of another. If the horſe goes too faſt, the perſon who holds the *poinſon* muſt be with the long rein in his hand on the contrary ſide, to help him only in caſe of neceſſity, his preſence alone being ſufficient to prevent his going too faſt, by which means the horſe will keep a juſt and exact time. The right rein faſtened in this manner to the pillar, works to the right *de ferme à ferme* (in one place) in Curvets, as you have ſeen before in chap. 2. The right rein ſtill in the ſame manner faſtened, works a horſe in Curvets upon the voltes to the right hand, as I have ſhewed before in chap. 3. Moreover, the ſame rein of the caveſon, as it was at firſt, works the horſe upon the voltes backwards, as you have ſeen in the ſame chapter. The rein of the caveſon thus, works a horſe ſideways upon the voltes, but to the left hand, and all the former were to the right, becauſe the pillar was on the inſide of the horſe, and his croupe was in: but now that he goes ſideways, the pillar or center is on his outſide, and his croupe is out, and diſtant from it. The right rein of the caveſon being tied ſhort to the pillar, the fore-part of the

BOOK III.

the horſe is neareſt the center or pillar. Tho' the action of the Curvet confines the fore-part of a horſe, and leaves his croupe at liberty; nevertheleſs his hind-legs are within the lines of nature. He deſcribes four circles with his feet. The fore-foot within the volte deſcribes the leaſt, the other fore-foot the ſecond; the hind-leg within the volte the third, and the other hind-leg without it the largeſt. When a horſe's head is to the pillar in Curvets to the left, and the pillar without the horſe's head, his legs are off from the ground at the ſame time and acroſs. The hind-legs ought to follow the fore-ones exactly, neither more within nor more without; but the fore-legs are within the lines of the hind ones, becauſe they are nearer together. The pillar or center is without the horſe's head, when you work his croupe out, which makes his two fore-legs deſcribe the ſmalleſt circles, and the hind-legs the largeſt; the fore-leg within the volte deſcribes the leaſt of the two ſmaller circles, and the other fore-leg the ſecond, the hind-leg within the volte the third, and the other hind-leg the largeſt of the two greater. Therefore a horſe deſcribes four circles when he has his croupe without and to the left, and remains at the pillar with the right rein of the caveſon faſtened as at firſt. What can be more required for Curvets upon the ſame ſpot of ground, than to make him go forward, backward, and ſideways upon the voltes? I am of opinion, that nothing can be added to it; moreover, all this is performed about a pillar without any body upon the horſe's back: here is the figure.

Sideways to the left, with the horſe's head towards



the pillar, altho' the right rein is faſtened.

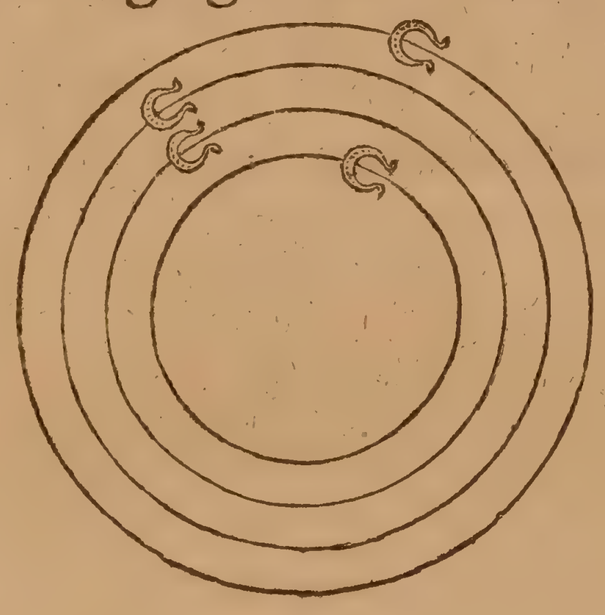
CHAP. VI.

The new Method of the Pillar for Airs to the Left Hand.

THE pillar ought to have two rings on each ſide fixed at the uſual height, and the horſe bridled and ſaddled without any body upon his back, and the button of the reins down: then faſten the left rein of the caveſon very ſhort, holding the other in your hand. The rider ought to have a little *poinſon* in his hand, which is a ſhort ſtick with an iron point at one end of it, and place himſelf on the oppoſite ſide to the ſhort rein, and another ſhould be placed on which ſide you pleaſe, with a ſwitch in his hand to make the horſe riſe: when one has made him riſe, the other ought at the ſame time to prick him gently with the *poinſon* in the ſpurring-place, at the very inſtant he begins to riſe, to make the croupe of the horſe go from him towards the pillar on that ſide where the rein is faſtened, becauſe ſo the ſhort rein works the more, and puts the horſe in a proper poſture to bend the half of his ſhoulders, which makes him obedient to the hand, and he with the *poinſon* makes him obey the

the ſpurs. So that if the horſe obeys, which he ought and muſt in a ſhort time, he will not only go perfectly in Curvets forwards, but alſo upon voltes, the firſt time you try him, which was never done before. For the pillar the old way only makes him advance, but this makes him go upon the voltes, tho' in the ſame place; for the ſhort rein on the left ſide, and the *poinſon* on the other, make him curvet to the left hand upon the voltes. He is certainly worked upon the voltes by this method, as you ſhall ſee hereafter; but we have not yet done with the left hand. Some may perhaps ſay, To what purpoſe is all this, unleſs a horſe goes in Curvets? One that aſks this queſtion ſhews his ignorance. Only make him riſe, and help him as I have directed before, and altho' he never takes the proper cadence of a Curvet, or any other air, it will put him upon his haunches notwithſtanding, and make him obey the hand and heel, which is all we want, and will make him go Terre-à-terre perfectly. This method ſeldom fails of making any horſe go in Curvets, when he is faſtened thus with a ſhort rein on the left ſide, making him riſe with the ſwitch, another perſon helping him gently at the ſame time on the contrary ſide with the *poinſon* inſtead of ſpurs, and a third behind the horſe with the *chambriere* to make him advance, this cannot fail making him go to perfection. CHAP. VII.

If the *poinſon* is too ſharp, turn the other end of it, and touch him with it in the ſpurring-place, or with the hand-end of another ſwitch; for ſharp ſpurs do much harm in a Manege. Thus you give a true ply to the body of the horſe, which makes his legs go true. But we muſt go on ſtill with the left rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pillar, which is for the left hand, as the figure here demonſtrates. One may work him on both ſides with one ſwitch, only one after the other, or with two, one on each ſide, or help him with one under the belly, to put him upon his haunches, and the other to help him before on which ſide you pleaſe.



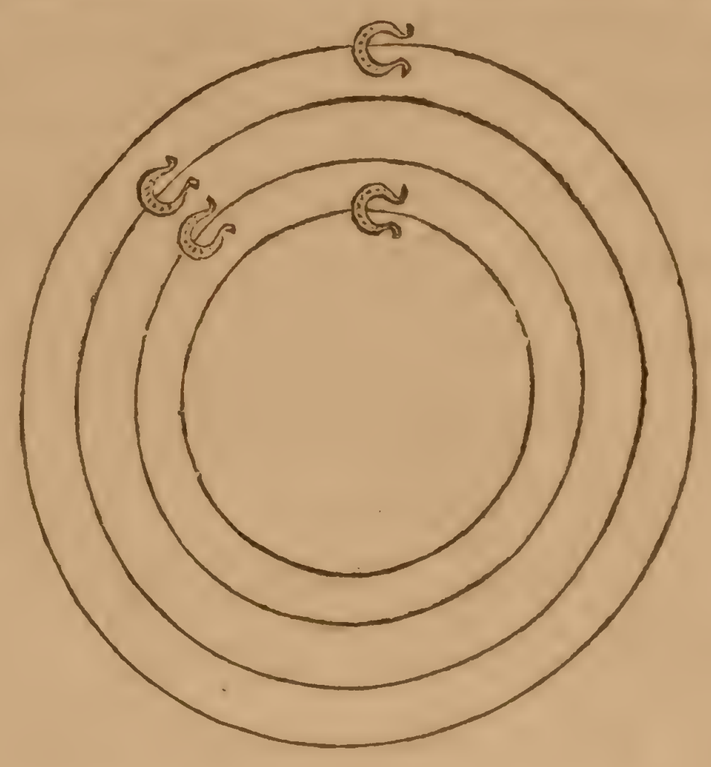
CHAP. VII.

For the Voltes to the Left Hand, the Horſe being faſtened to the Pillar with the left Rein, as he was before.

I FIRST make the horſe go backward as far as the ſhort rein will permit, placing a horſeman with a *poinſon* in his hand on the outſide of the volte, who helps only in caſe of neceſſity; or, being rather before him, he is as if he held him by the rein that is not faſtened; another ſhould follow him behind with the *chambriere* on the outſide the volte, whilſt a third aids him with a ſwitch upon the breaſt, to make him riſe upon the volte; but this perſon ought to be placed within it. He who has the *chambriere* walks circularly forward, and he who holds the *poinſon* and the long rein of the caveſon ſhould be over-againſt the ſpur-place, and move forward with the horſe, but rather before him, as if he led him, as I have ſaid before; and he that helps him with the ſwitch ſhould walk circularly backward, if he is placed within the volte. Thus you ſee the horſe makes a perfect volte in Curvets upon his air, and as far as the ſhort rein will permit him to turn, which is almoſt an entire volte.

BOOK III.

volte. All this time that you are working with the left rein, the pillar ought to be within the horſe, to work him to the left.

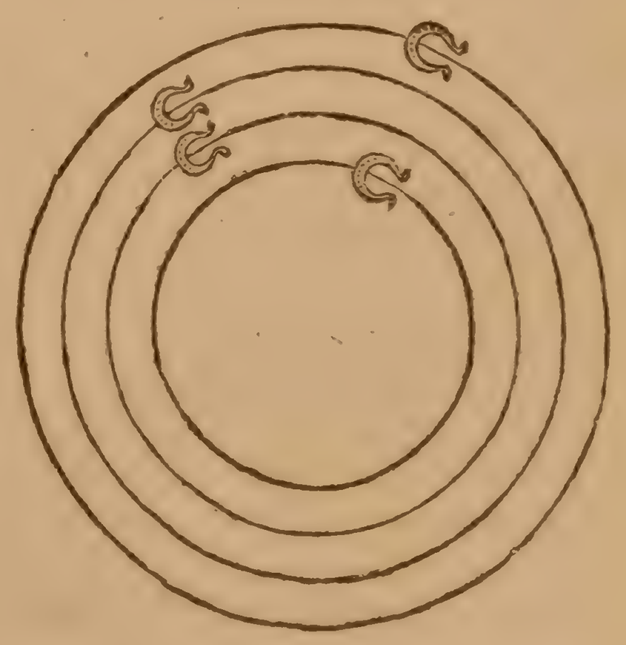


This ſhort rein bends mightily a horſe's ſhoulders, and leaves his croupe at liberty, that he may make the volte true.

CHAP. VIII.

To work a Horſe in Curvets upon the voltes backwards to the Left Hand, the Rein of the Caveſon being tied ſhort as it was before without any Alteration.

LET us now ſuppoſe a horſe to have gone upon the voltes to the left hand, as far as the ſhort rein would permit; let him repoſe for ſome time, then let the rider make him riſe with his ſwitch, and follow him round, looking him a little in the face; and whilſt one makes him riſe, let another help him a little ſtronger with the *poinſon*, walking ſideways in a circle. He who has the *chambriere*, ſince a horſe can not go backward and forward at the ſame time, ought not to help him unleſs he goes too faſt back. Thus he will go backwards perfectly in Curvets upon the voltes, which is ſomething uncommon, eſpecially as he has no body upon his back. You may make him go backwards and forwards in this manner, as much as you pleaſe; for when he has drawn the rein ſtrait to which he is faſtened, and can go no farther, you may make him advance upon the voltes to ſlacken the rein; and



when he is as far advanced as he can, you may make him go backward again to ſlacken it; and thus you may work him as much as you pleaſe.

CHAP. IX.

To work a Horſe ſideways, the Rein being faſtened ſhort as it was before.

THE pillar has been placed within the horſe or the volte on the left hand in one place; when the horſe goes either forwards or backwards upon the voltes, the pillar is ſtill always within it to the left hand, and the rein faſtened as it was before. Now going ſideways, the horſe's head ought to be within the pillar, and conſequently the pillar will be on the outſide of the horſe, which will work him to the right hand. When he goes thus ſideways, the ſhort rein being faſtened on the left ſide, aids the horſe without the volte, which confines his croupe the more, ſince his head is to the pillar. The rider here muſt make his horſe riſe before with his ſwitch, and touch him with the hand-end of another upon his ſide or in the ſpurring-place. Should the horſe go

go too faſt, he who has the *poinſon* ought to be on the contrary ſide, holding the looſe rein of the caveſon in his hand, not to aid him but in caſe of neceſſity; for his preſence alone is ſufficient to prevent his going too faſt, ſo that he will take a true and equal time. By this method a horſe will go perfectly ſideways upon the voltes to the right hand, becauſe the pillar is on his outſide, and his head in or to the center. Thus by fixing the left rein of the caveſon to the pillar, it works him to the right hand in Curvets *de ferme à ferme*, in one place, as you may ſee before in the ſixth chapter of airs. The left rein works in Curvets upon the voltes to the left hand, as appears in the ſeventh chapter. The left rein of the caveſon remaining thus faſtened as it was at firſt, works the horſe backwards upon the voltes, as you may ſee in chapter the eighth. The ſame rein of the caveſon works him ſideways upon the voltes, but for the right hand, whilſt all the former were for the left, as the pillar was then placed within the horſe's croupe, and his croupe in: now that the horſe goes ſideways, the pillar or center is without, and his croupe likewiſe out, and at a diſtance from it, therefore his feet are from the ground at the ſame time. The horſe's hind-legs that are out ought to follow the fore-legs that are in, neither more in nor more out; the fore-legs however are within the lines of the hind ones, ſince they go narrower. The pillar or center is without the head of the horſe when you work the croupe out, for which reaſon his fore-legs deſcribe the ſmalleſt circles, and thoſe behind the largeſt. The fore-leg within the volte deſcribes the leaſt of the two ſmaller, and the other fore-leg the largeſt of them. The hind-leg within the volte deſcribes the leaſt of the larger circles, and the other without the volte the greateſt. Therefore a horſe deſcribes four circles when his croupe is out for the right hand, and he remains faſtened to the pillar with the left rein of the caveſon. When you have uſed the *poinſon* a little time only, you will have no farther occaſion for it; two ſwitches, one in each hand, will be ſufficient, helping him with one upon the cheſt and the other under his belly, to put him upon his haunches. I recommend this method of mine, of the ſingle pillar, as the very quinteſſence of horſemanſhip, to dreſs horſes in all kinds of airs, and to make them obey both the hand and heel; I would therefore adviſe you to ſtudy it well, for I am ſure you will be pleaſed with the effect you will find from it.

CHAP. IX.

This is my method of working a horſe at the ſingle pillar without any body upon his back. What more can be deſired in Curvets, than to make a horſe go forwards, backwards, and ſideways upon the voltes? unleſs you would have a horſe fly, or dance upon a rope. All this is about the pillar without any one upon the horſe's back. A horſe going ſideways with the left rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pillar is deſcribed in the following figure.

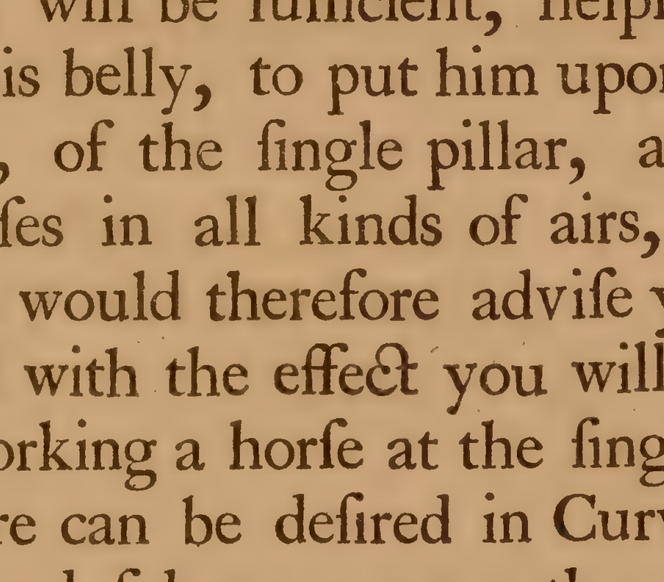


Fig. 24.

Sideways to the right hand, becauſe the rein of the caveſon is tied ſhort on the left.

CHAP.

BOOK III.

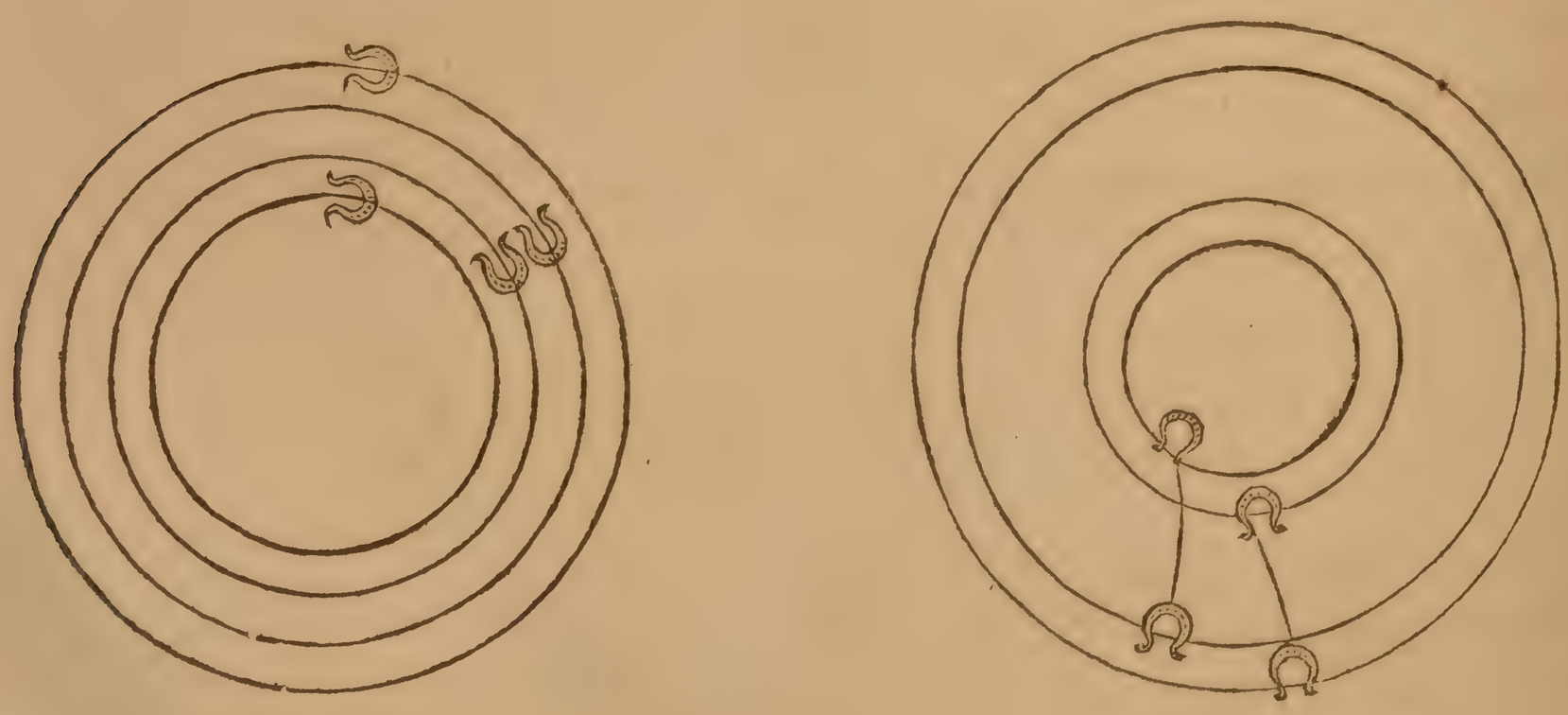
CHAP. X.

To faſten the Horſe to the Pillar with the right Rein ſhort, holding the long one in Hand. He ſhould now be mounted.

YOU muſt firſt make the horſe go in his air *de ferme à ferme*, helping him gently with your hand, drawing the inward rein a little, as I have ſhewed you before, which is by placing your bridle-hand on the outſide of the horſe's neck, being ſeated as I have told you, and aiding him with the leg within the volte, which ought to be a little bent at the knee, that the help may be with the thigh, and oblige him to be upon his haunches. You ſhould put your breaſt out, leaning your body a little forwards, that the horſe's croupe may have the greater liberty. You may put him upon the voltes in the ſame manner, and with the ſame helps; excepting, that upon the voltes forwards you muſt aid him gently with the leg within it, otherwiſe he cannot advance, and the ſhort rein would be too much ſtrained; this puts the horſe's croupe a little out, eaſes the rein, and gives him liberty to go in a circle, which works the ſhoulders. When he goes backwards upon the voltes, you muſt pull him back with your hand, turning it upwards, but always towards your body, leaning a little back at each time, your legs ſomewhat backwarder than upon any other action, helping him with your leg without the volte, which will preſs him back, and ſlacken the ſhort rein. This method of making a horſe go backward works his croupe more than his ſhoulders, provided you help him with your hand and body at each time. You muſt thus gain upon him gradually, till he has made a compleat volte backward, looking a little out of the volte, and your left ſhoulder a little out.

When a horſe goes ſideways, the rein of the caveſon ought to be on the outſide, to confine the croupe more; but then the right rein is for the left hand. The bridle-hand here ſhould be on the outſide, that it may draw the inward rein, helping him gently with the hand to ſupport him, and with the outward leg, ſhould there be occaſion. Thus the horſe will go under you *de ferme à ferme* (which is, in one place) upon his voltes, forward and backward to the right hand, and ſideways to the left, the right rein of the caveſon being faſtened ſhort as it was at firſt.

Fig. 25.



CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

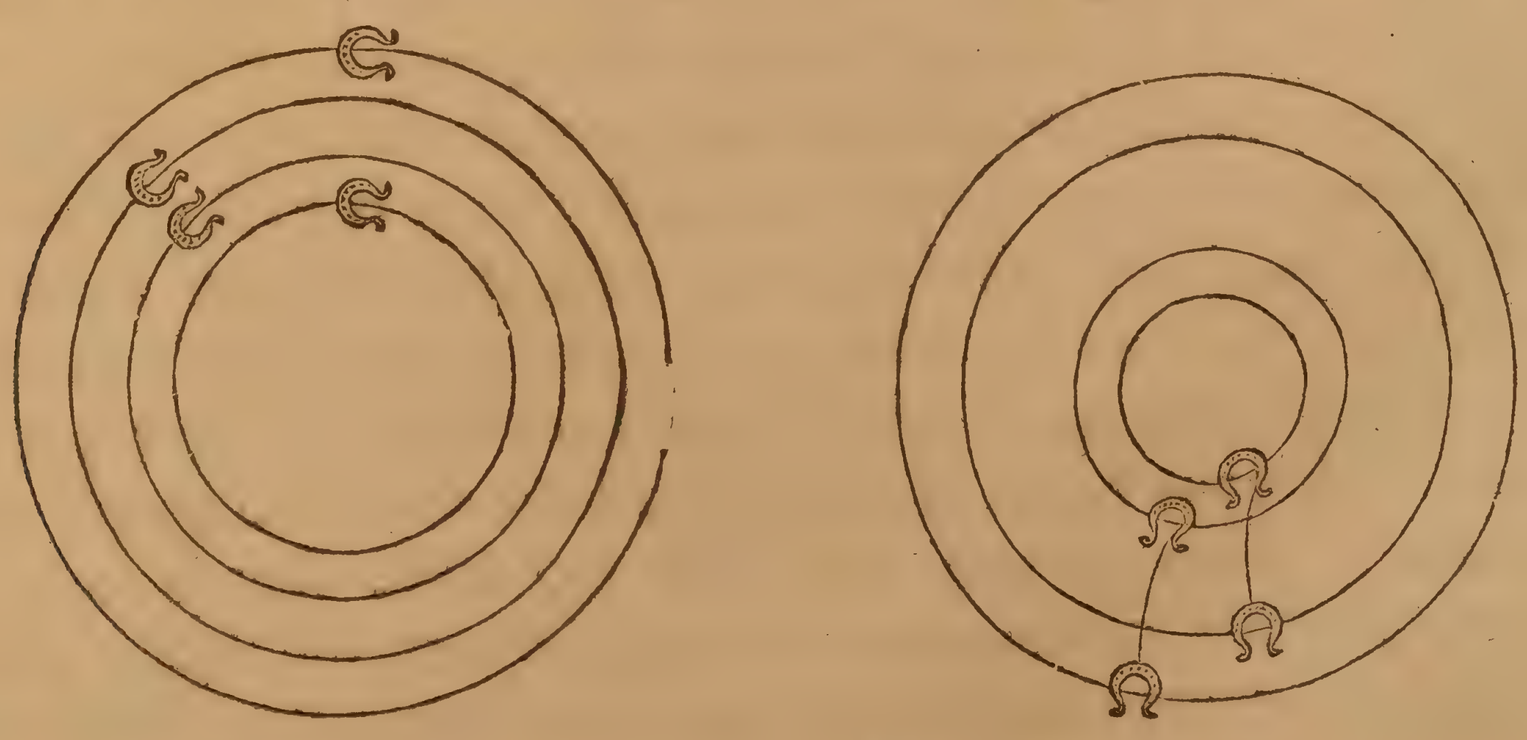
CHAP. XI.

The Method of faſtening a Horſe ſhort to the Pillar with the left Rein, holding the long Rein in your Hand; and in this Caſe he ought to be mounted.

YOU muſt firſt make your horſe go in his air *de ferme à ferme*, helping him gently with your hand, drawing the inward rein a little, as I have ſhewed you before, which is, by placing your bridle-hand on the outſide of the horſe's neck, being ſeated as I have told you, and aiding him with the leg within the volte; but your legs ought to be a little bent at the knee, that the aid may be with the thighs, and force him to be upon his haunches. You ſhould put your breaſt out, leaning your body a little forwards, that the horſe's croupe may have the greater liberty. You may put him upon the voltes both forward and backward in the ſame manner, and with the ſame aids; excepting, that when he goes forwards upon the voltes, you muſt help him gently with the leg within the volte, otherwiſe he cannot advance, and the rein would be too much ſtrained; but thus you ſlacken the rein, and make it eaſier for the horſe to go in a circle. By putting thus the croupe of the horſe a little out, you work his ſhoulders.

When he goes backwards upon the voltes, you muſt pull him back with your hand, turning it upwards, but always towards your body, leaning a little back at each time, your legs a little backwarder than upon any other action, aſſiſting him with your leg without the volte, which will preſs him back and ſlacken the ſhort rein. This method of making a horſe go backward works his croupe more than his ſhoulders, provided you help him with your hand and with your body a little at each time. You thus gain upon him gradually, till he has made a compleat volte backward, looking a little out of the volte, and your left ſhoulder a little out.

When a horſe goes ſideways, the rein of the caveſon ought to be on the outſide, to confine the croupe the more, and the pillar without his head, but then it is for the right hand. The bridle-hand ſhould be on the outſide here, that it may draw the inward rein, helping him gently with the hand to ſupport him, and with the outward leg, ſhould there be occaſion. Thus the horſe will go under you *de ferme à ferme*, that is, in one place, upon his voltes forward and backward to the left hand, and ſideways to the right, the left rein of the caveſon being faſtened ſhort as it was at firſt.



BOOK III. This new invention of mine, of faſtening a horſe ſhort, is a true method for airs, ſince it puts him upon his haunches, and preſſes him before, which is as all airs ſhould be. So that, you ſee, this new way conſtrains and obliges a horſe to go according to nature, which is, to go with his fore-legs nearer together, and his hind ones farther apart, and his hind-legs are in the lines of nature notwithſtanding.

This method forces the ſhoulders to turn, (as it conſtrains them, and the hind-legs are the more at liberty) otherwiſe they could not advance in the airs. The hind-legs ſhould follow the fore-legs with the greateſt exactneſs. A horſe going circularly in this manner, faſtened ſhort with the rein of the caveſon, deſcribes four circles with his feet; the fore-leg within the volte deſcribes the ſecond, his fore-leg without the volte deſcribes the third, his hind-leg within the volte deſcribes the leaſt, as it is neareſt the center, and the hind-leg without the volte deſcribes the largeſt, being moſt diſtant from the center He muſt of neceſſity deſcribe theſe four circles in going round, becauſe he is narrower before than behind, and muſt conſequently have his two fore-feet upon the middle circles; and his two hind-legs, that are farther diſtant from each other, muſt neceſſarily be placed in this manner: the hind-leg within the volte ought to deſcribe the ſmalleſt circle, and the hind-leg without the volte the largeſt; becauſe his fore-legs are within the lines of his hind ones, and becauſe the horſe goes in a round.

So it is with my new method of faſtening a horſe with a ſhort rein to the pillar, when he goes either forward or backward, but not when he goes ſideways, as I have demonſtrated before. Whether the ſhoulders are to the center in going ſideways with the croupe out, or with the croupe next the center, going ſideways upon curvets, the fore-legs are always narrower than the others; becauſe the action of this air is naturally ſo, which we ought to continue ſo by art.

End of the firſt Diviſion of Leſſons, which is for the new Way of working a Horſe in his Airs about a Pillar.

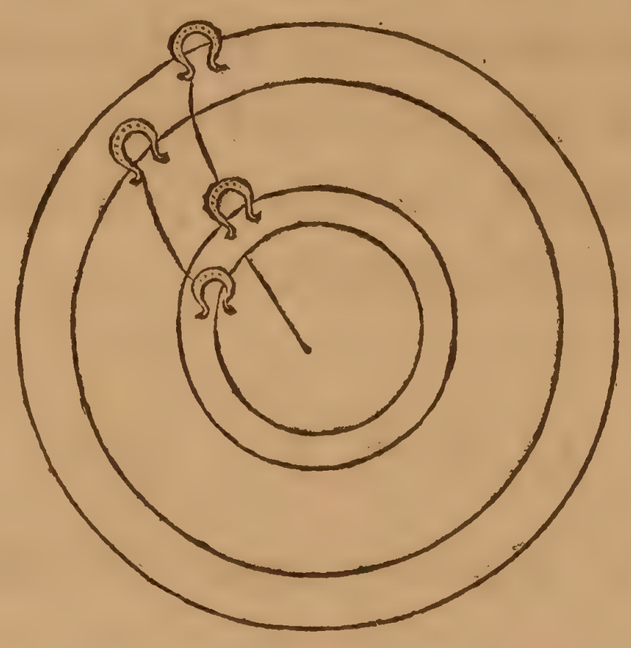
CHAP. XII.

The Second Diviſion of Leſſons, for CURVETS.

For Curvets upon the Voltes to the Right Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar.

FIRST faſten the right rein of the caveſon to the pommel of the ſaddle the way I ſhewed you before, but not too ſhort, only ſo as to give the true ply to the horſe; then help him with the rein within the volte, which is, by putting the bridle-hand on the outſide the neck; that is to ſay, draw the inward rein, which will bend half his ſhoulders, (*viz.* the ſhoulder within the volte) and ſtop it there; the fore-leg within the volte it puts a little before the other, and the hind-one on the ſame ſide a little backward; ſo that you ought only to help him with your hand, putting it a little on the contrary ſide, to draw the inward rein. Keep an eaſy ſeat, not too ſtiff; that is to ſay, you muſt bend your ham a little, and ſo your help will be with the thigh, and the horſe's air makes the aid of the thigh to be truer and better than any other aid you can

can give him. By helping him in this manner in Curvets, the horſe will go true with all his four legs in the air at the ſame time. CHAP. XIII.



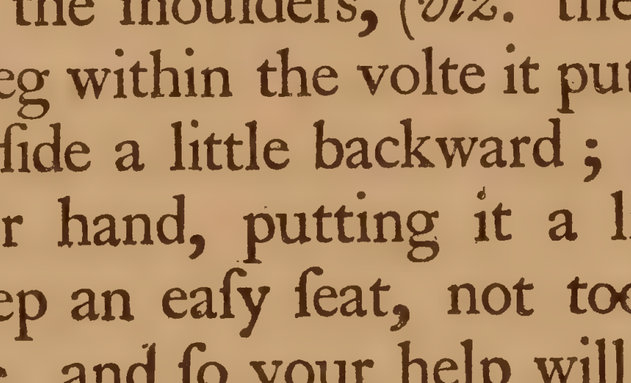
For Curvets to the right hand, with the croupe to the center, but the center within the croupe notwithſtanding.

CHAP. XIII.

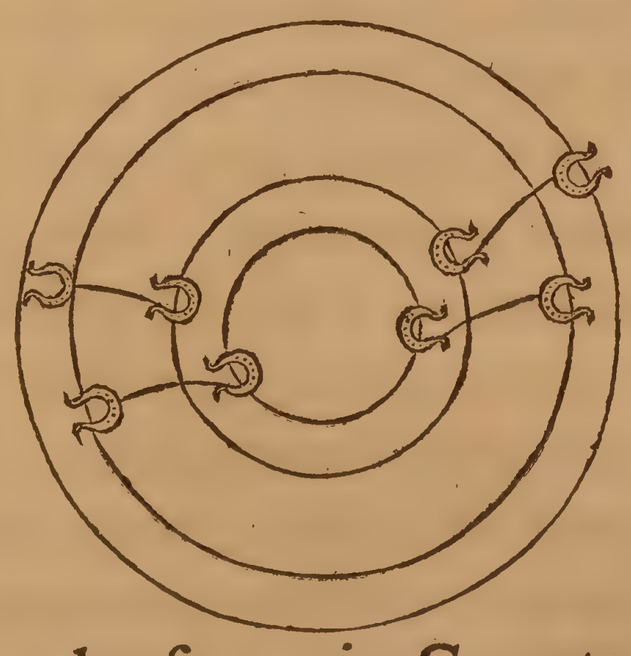
For Curvets upon the Voltes to the Left Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar.

FASTEN the left rein of the caveſon to the pommel of the ſaddle, the way I ſhewed you before, but not too ſhort, only ſo as to give the true ply to the horſe; then help him with the rein within the volte, which is, by putting the bridle-hand on the outſide the neck; that is to ſay, draw the inward rein, which will bend half the ſhoulders, (*viz.* the ſhoulder within the volte) and ſtop it there; the fore-leg within the volte it puts before the other, and puts the hind-leg on the ſame ſide a little backward; ſo that you ought only to help him a little with your hand, putting it a little on the contrary ſide to draw the inward rein. Keep an eaſy ſeat, not too ſtiff; that is to ſay, you muſt bend your ham a little, and ſo your help will be with the thigh, and the horſe's air makes the aid of the thigh to be truer and better than any other aid you can give.

By aiding him in this manner in Curvets, the horſe will go true with all his four legs in the air at the ſame time.



For Curvets to the left hand, with the croupe to the center, but the center within the croupe notwithſtanding.



This figure is both for Curvets to the right and left with the horſe's head to the pillar, and his croupe out. You ought always to draw the inward rein of the bridle to which ſide ſoever the horſe goes, by putting the bridle-hand on the outſide the volte, or the outſide of his neck, helping him gently with the leg without the volte.

The old way of making a horſe go in Curvets, two or three in the ſame place, then making him advance upon a walk, then curvetting, increaſing the

BOOK III.

the curvets, and diminiſhing the walk, till he has made an entire volte, is a mere trifle: for if you have worked him well at the pillar my new way, and have afterwards faſtened the inward rein of the caveſon to the pommel of the ſaddle, the horſe's croupe to the pillar; I ſay, you need do no more, for this alone will make him go perfectly in airs upon the voltes, with the greateſt eaſe and facility, without any thing elſe.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Aids for Curvets, and the Horſeman's Seat.

TO the right, the bridle ought to be held on the contrary ſide, the hand turned a little upwards, that you may hold him up each movement in right time; every horſe ſhould be let take his own. Your body ſhould be a little forward, that his croupe may have liberty to work, your legs even, a little bent in the ham, that you may help him with your thigh, which is the moſt gentle aid you can uſe: being thus ſeated, the horſe's own air will help him more than any help you can give him. It is very certain, that the ſlower the time is a horſe takes, the higher he will go; and if he does not go as quick as he can, he will preſerve his ſtrength and breath the better, and go truer and with more eaſe to himſelf. But ſome may perhaps object, that by leaning the body a little forward, it is impoſſible to put a horſe upon his haunches; ſince he is put upon his haunches by putting the body backwards, according to the writings of the moſt excellent maſters in the art; and in order to convince you of the truth of that doctrine by example, they ſay, that when you ſtop a horſe upon a walk, you put him upon his haunches by leaning backward, and the ſame in the trot, gallop, &c. ſay they, is undeniable; from whence they conclude, that nothing puts a horſe more upon his haunches than leaning the body backwards, and conſequently that leaning forwards muſt be falſe. This is their manner of reaſoning, but it is eaſily anſwer'd. I confeſs, that in ſtopping it is neceſſary the body ſhould go back, both in the walk, trot, gallop, or in the carriere, for the ſame reaſons they give, that the horſe may be upon his haunches; this certainly puts him upon them, and nothing does it more, nor ſo well, when you ſtop him. But herein lies their abſurdity; they would uſe the ſame helps to make a horſe advance, as to ſtop him; whereas it ought to be conſidered, that when he is ſtopped there is an end of his motion, and that will always ſtop him, but never make him advance. They have not capacity to conceive, that the fore part is confined in all ſorts of airs, and the croupe ought to be free, not only that he may advance, but may likewiſe have liberty of beating with truth the right time of his air; and for this there is no better way to give the croupe room to play, than to bend the body gently forward, as I ſhewed before. Moreover, the inclination of the body forward forces the legs a little backward, which is their proper place for all kinds of aids; the contrary brings them forwards, puts them out of their place, and the rider upon his buttocks, when he ought to be upon his twiſt; now leaning forward puts him there. I would not be thought to mean that he ſhould bend his back, but on the contrary, his breaſt ought to be thruſt out, and his belly drawn in; and it ſhould be a gene-

ral

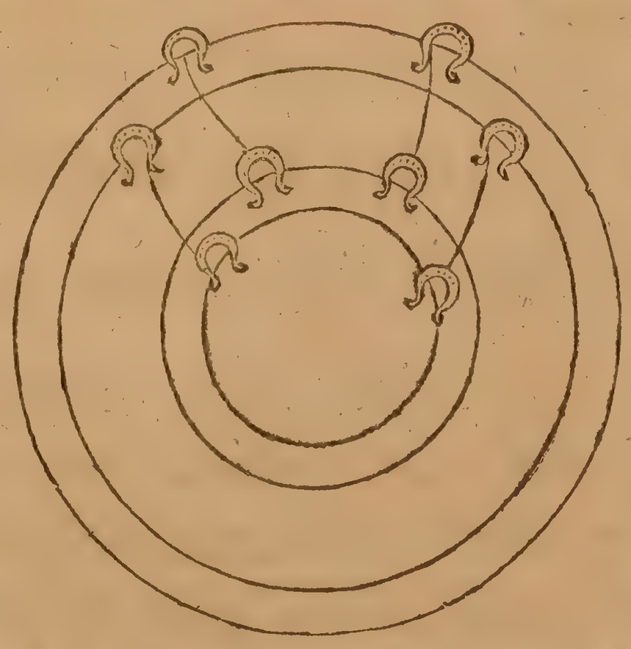
ral ply of the body from head to foot, but ſo little, that the lookers on ſhould hardly perceive it. This has not been a little ſtudy'd and conſider'd, and there is more in it than to gallop from St. Alban's to London, or to make a horſe trample with a ſnaffle and martingal the old Engliſh way. Thoſe too are miſtaken vaſtly, who think themſelves great maſters, becauſe they have learned to ride a month or two, and have not been thrown. To ride a horſe with the bridle only, the ſeat ſhould be as I directed before; to the right hand, the bridle ought to be on the contrary ſide, which is to the left, the nails turn'd upwards to the left ſhoulder, holding the hand high, turning the face a little into the volte, putting the left ſhoulder in, bending the legs a little in the ham, that the helps may be with the thighs, which is the gentleſt aid of all. To the left, the bridle muſt be on the contrary ſide, which is the right, the nails of the hand turned upwards to the right ſhoulder, the hand high, and firm or eaſy, as occaſion requires; the hand muſt be held ſo to command the inward rein, the rider muſt look into the volte, putting his right ſhoulder a little in, and be ſeated as I directed before, with his hams a little bent, that he may help the horſe with his thigh, which is the moſt gentle aid he can give. CHAP. XV.

CHAP. XV.

To change in Curvets upon the Voltes.

TO the right, the croupe to the pillar, and the pillar within the croupe, the bridle being on the ſide without the volte, which is the left, you muſt help the horſe with your hand each time, the nails of it turned upwards toward the left ſhoulder, and more or leſs according as there is occaſion, holding your legs even, your hams a little bent, that the aid may be with your thigh, which is the gentleſt can be given, looking a little into the volte, and bringing your left ſhoulder likewiſe in.

When a horſe is thus going in curvets to the right, you muſt help with the right leg, and change your hand at the ſame time to the right ſide beyond the neck of the horſe, making him advance a little; and ſo he will change perfectly without breaking his time. We are now curvetting to the left, the hand on the right ſide without the horſe's neck, that the right rein may be drawn. If you would change him again, you muſt help him with the leg within the volte, which is now the left, and change your hand at the ſame time to the left ſide without the neck of the horſe, making him advance



a little; ſo he makes his changes regularly, without breaking time. One may change in this manner as often as one pleaſes. The figure here ſhews it.

The changes near a wall are thus: when one goes in Curvets, the left ſide to the wall, the hand ought always to be towards the wall, that you may draw the rein, which is to be within the demi-volte. And when you would change, you muſt help the horſe with your leg from the wall, and at the ſame time put your hand a little towards it, which puts his croupe a little out, and brings his fore-part in, and ſo he changes regularly without breaking his time. The wall

BOOK. III. wall is at preſent on the right ſide, the bridle-hand towards it, and the horſe ſtill in curvets; when you change you muſt aid him with your leg from the wall, and with your hand, putting it at the ſame time a little to the wall, which puts his croupe ſomething out, and gives more liberty to his fore-part to turn, and ſo he won't break one time of his air. This way one may change him as often as one pleaſes.

CHAP. XVI.

Some more excellent Obſervations for Curvets.

THE action of the curvet is a little leap, in which, when a horſe raiſes his fore-legs, his hind ones fall, and all his four legs then are in the air at the ſame time; and when as his fore-legs fall, thoſe behind riſe, all his four legs will be likewiſe then in the air, and he touches the ground with his fore-feet firſt, and afterwards with the others.

The horſe is only upon two legs at a time, firſt upon thoſe before, and afterwards upon thoſe behind; and altho' two move upwards and two downwards, nevertheleſs they are all four in the air at the ſame time, thoſe behind immediately following thoſe before. He has his fore-legs nearer each other, becauſe they are more confined; and his croupe is larger, becauſe his hind legs are more at liberty; ſo that his fore-legs are within the lines of the others, and his hind-legs are in the lines of nature notwithſtanding, and therefore he deſcribes four circles with his four legs, as I ſaid before.

If you make him advance a little, you will perceive that his fore-part gets ground, and his croupe follows in the manner I have deſcribed; as he lowers his fore-part, he gains a little ground, and when he riſes, his hind-legs follow, to keep what his fore-legs have got; but then the action from the ground is done briſkly, and he ſtays a little in the air. The horſe that is the longeſt time up, that is, that goes the ſloweſt, ought to go the higheſt.

He reſembles a ſhip moved by the waves, or two buckets let down into a well, the one is coming up whilſt the other is going down; in the motion of the two buckets, they are both diſtant from the water at the ſame time, when one is coming up and the other is going down; it is exactly the ſame with a horſe's curvets, and no otherwiſe, altho' he goes low, which is properly a *Curvete rabattuë*.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the proper Helps in Curvets upon the Voltes.

TO the right hand, the rider being ſeated upon his twiſt with his breaſt out and his belly in, which he ought to draw a little back each time, and lean his body gently forwards, to give room to the horſe's croupe to play, his bridle-hand ſhould be on the outſide of the volte, turning the nails of it up to the left ſhoulder, putting that ſhoulder in, by which the horſe's croupe is thrown out a little when he raiſes him; and eaſe it afterwards, that his fore-part may have liberty to advance, and his croupe to follow when he raiſes him again. The inward rein of the bridle muſt be pulled, that the horſe may look into the volte, and that his ſhoulders may be worked.

The

The horſe going thus, his croupe to the pillar, and the pillar within, the croupe will be a little out, which few people can perceive. This is the very quinteſſence of curvets upon the voltes, in which the ſhoulders are worked, and the croupe very little; wherein many are miſtaken, who imagine that the croupe only is, and not the ſhoulders. CHAP. XVIII.

In curvets upon the voltes to the left, the bridle ought to be held on the outſide the horſe's neck, with the nails turned upwards towards the right ſhoulder, and the ſame ſhoulder ought to be in, putting the oppoſite leg a little nearer the horſe, and backwarder, though but very little, than that within. Working thus at the ſame time with leg and rein contrary, the ſhoulders and croupe will be both worked, which is right, ſince the croupe is to the pillar, and a little out, but ſo little that many don't ſee it, for the reaſons I gave you before for the right hand, where the pillar is within the croupe.

CHAP. XVIII.

To work a horſe in Curvets backwards upon the Voltes.

THE pillar being on the right ſide, to the right you muſt advance your breaſt and pull in your belly, your bridle-hand on the contrary ſide, putting it very much out and back at each time, and helping him at the ſame time with the oppoſite leg. This is to make him go in a circle; but all the aids muſt be given in the right time. The rein and contrary leg here works the horſe's croupe, and his ſhoulders are at liberty.

For Curvets upon the Voltes to the Left Hand.

The pillar ought to be on the left ſide for the left hand, the nails of the bridle-hand upwards, to the right ſhoulder, putting your left a little in, and helping with the contrary leg. All theſe aids ought to be given in time; for there is difficulty in ſubjecting the croupe ſo as to go backwards in a circle. By leg and rein contrary, the horſe's croupe is worked, and his ſhoulders are at liberty.

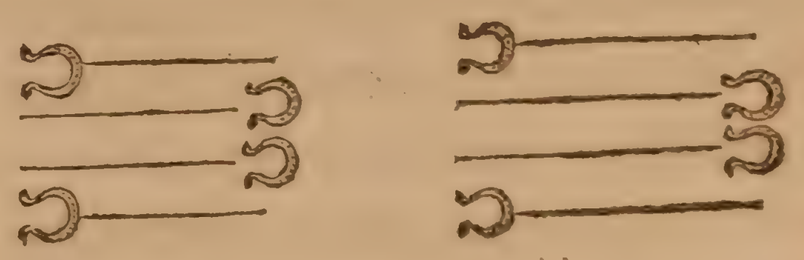
CHAP. XIX.

To work in Curvets along a Wall, the Wall on the Left Side.

THE wall being on the left ſide, and the bridle hand on the contrary ſide of the horſe's neck from the wall, you muſt turn the nails of your hand towards the left ſhoulder, that you may keep the inward rein tight, which is fartheſt from the wall, putting your left ſhoulder a little in, and your right leg ſomething nearer the horſe's ſide, ſhould there be occaſion for it, and not otherwiſe; for ſo the horſe ought to take the demi-volte to the right hand. But the aids ought not to be ſo ſtrong as upon the voltes, an inclination is enough, ſince he goes directly forwards and to the right; you ought to put your breaſt out and draw your belly in, which makes your body advance, to give liberty to the horſe's croupe to do ſo. He begins upon his fore-part, and his croupe follows. His fore-legs gain ground, and his hind-legs keep it; his fore-legs make room for thoſe behind, as they follow immediately. He makes four ſtrait lines forwards in curvets. His fore-legs are confined,

and

BOOK III. and his hind-legs at liberty; his fore-legs are within the lines of thoſe behind, as this figure ſhews.



CHAP. XX.

To make a Horſe go backwards in Curvets by a Wall in a ſtrait Line, the wall on the Left Side.

THE left ſide of the horſe being to the wall, I have already told you, that in going ſtrait it was only an inclination towards it, tho' he goes forward, to prepare him for the demi-volte to the right hand; ſo that the ſame helps ought to be given, as for the right hand upon the voltes, but gently and eaſy, becauſe he goes in a ſtrait line. But here the left ſide being ſtill to the wall, you are to make him go in curvets backwards, not forgetting that the left ſide of the horſe to the wall, when he advances, is for your right hand; and continuing the ſame poſture, the left ſide towards the wall, in going backwards in curvets, is for the left hand. When he advances to the right, you help him with the rein from the wall, and the leg on the ſame ſide, confining his ſhoulders, and giving liberty to his croupe, keeping his croupe likewiſe towards the wall, putting your breaſt out, and keeping your belly in, which gives the croupe room to play.

But now when you make him to go backwards in curvets, it is to the left hand, and therefore the helps are to be theſe; you muſt draw the rein next the wall, which you do by putting the bridle on the right ſide of his neck, the nails of your hand turned upwards to your right ſhoulder, your left ſhoulder a little in, and your oppoſite leg a little backward, that you may conſtrain the croupe and give liberty to the ſhoulders, aiding him in time with your hand at each motion, your right leg cloſe to his body, and a little back. He ſhould be pulled back when he riſes, and the hand eaſed as he comes down, that his croupe may have room to go backward; for the horſe gains ground with his croupe, and his fore-part follows to keep it; if he did not make room for his fore-legs to follow, he could move but in the ſame place. You muſt put your body forward, and your breaſt out, with your belly a little in. As to the old method of leaning the body back, it is very wrong, ſince it is giving a horſe the ſame helps to go backwards, which are to make him advance. Certainly, if I draw ſomething towards me, I lean back, and if I puſh any thing from me I lean forward. Theſe aids are to make him keep the line of the wall, with his croupe towards it, and it is the true method of making a horſe go backward in curvets along a wall, preſſing his croupe and giving liberty to his ſhoulders. So you ſee, that what is for the right hand forwards is for the left hand backwards, and that all the aids are changed; for example, when you go forward, the rein and leg on the ſame ſide are to confine the ſhoulders, and give liberty to the croupe; and when you go backward, the rein and contrary leg are to confine the croupe and give liberty to the ſhoulders. Beſides, in going forwards your left ſhoulder, which is oppoſite to the rein you work, is brought in to preſs the ſhoulders; but in going

backward

backwards, the rein and ſhoulder on the ſame ſide are brought in to work the croupe. Thus you have the truth of Curvets backwards, your left ſide to the wall; and a horſe cannot keep the line of the wall any other way; for he cannot go through the wall, and therefore goes backward as if he went to the left. The caſe is different round the pillar, for there he advances to the right, and goes backwards to the right, as there is no wall to confine him: the aids backwards are the ſame, excepting that he goes in a circle. CHAP. XXIII.

CHAP. XXI.

To make a Horſe go ſtrait forwards in Curvets by a Wall, the Right Side to the Wall.

THE horſe here is to be helped with the inward rein, the rider having his bridle-hand towards the wall, on the right ſide the neck, with the nails of his hand turned upwards towards the right ſhoulder, aiding him with the leg on the ſame ſide, his breaſt out, and his leg in. So his ſhoulders are worked, and his croupe is at liberty, which is only an inclination to the left hand, in preparing him for his Demivolte.

CHAP. XXII.

To make a Horſe go backwards in a ſtrait Line by a Wall inCurvets, the Right Side ſtill to the Wall.

WHEN your left ſhoulder was to the wall, it was for the right hand in going forwards, and for the left in going backwards: therefore your right ſhoulder to the wall is for the left hand forward, and for the right backward. The aids are theſe: The horſe ſhould be helped with the rein next the wall, putting your bridle-hand on the left ſide his neck, the nails turned upwards towards the left ſhoulder, putting that ſhoulder a little back each time, and helping him with the contrary leg (for leg and rein contrary work the croupe) the breaſt and body ought to advance a little, helping him back with the hand every time he riſes. When you raiſe him, the curb will be a little looſe, and when he comes down it will be a little tighter; ſo that all horſes are light upon the hand when they are upon their haunches. If your left ſide is to the wall, for the Demivolte you ought to help him more ſtrongly on the right, both with the rein and your leg on the ſame ſide, which is the leg from the wall in Curvets: but if your right ſide is to the wall, for the Demivolte help him ſtronger on the left ſide, both with the rein and leg on the ſame ſide, which is that from the wall in Curvets.

End of the Second Diviſion of Leſſons for CURVETS.

The Third Diviſion of Leſſons, which is to dreſs a Horſe for CAPRIOLES, BALOTADES, GROUPADES, *and* DEMI-AIRS.

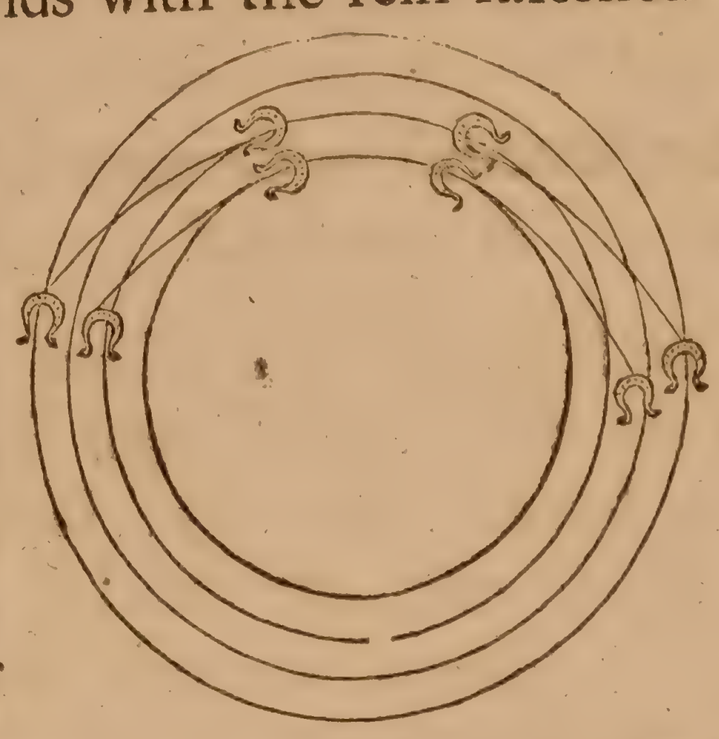
CHAP. XXIII.

For Caprioles.

A HORSE muſt be worked at the pillar my new way for Caprioles. Firſt, the rein of the caveſon ought to be faſtened ſhort, and then he muſt be helped with two ſwitches, one upon his fore-part, the other upon his croupe, in

BOOK III.

in right time, ſtanding on which ſide one pleaſes. This will make him go ſurpriſingly true, as well in the ſame place *ferme à ferme*, as upon the voltes, and with an aſtoniſhing eaſe and facility. One may make him go either ſideways or backwards; but a horſe is not graceful in leaping backwards. For the left, you need only faſten the left rein of the caveſon ſhort to the pillar, and work him as you did for the right before. When he is perfect, the button of the reins down, without any body upon his back, you may ride him to both hands with the rein faſtened to the pillar, but then it muſt be a little longer. When you firſt mount him, you muſt uſe him gently, and not work him too much at a time, for all new things ſurpriſe a horſe very much. In a ſhort time you will find the wonderful effects of the pillar, my new way, for Caprioles *ferme à ferme*, forwards, ſideways, and backwards upon the voltes, if you pleaſe; therefore I adviſe you to practiſe this new method of the pillar in all kinds of airs.



The above Figure is for Caprioles to the Right and Left Hand.

CHAP. XXIV.

To dreſs a Horſe for the Balotade.

A Balotade is a leap that is taught in the ſame manner as the Capriole, and differs only in this; a horſe in the Capriole ſtrikes out equally with both hind-legs at the ſame time, when he is at the height of his leap; in a Balotade he only ſtrikes half out, and makes only an offer; for in effect he does not ſtrike at all, the ſhoes of his hind-feet are only ſeen, and this is called a Balotade. The ſingle pillar will make him perfect in it, as I have ſhewn you in the Caprioles.

CHAP. XXV.

To dreſs a Horſe for the Groupade.

THE Groupade is a leap which is taught in the ſame manner as the Capriole, and differs from the Capriole and Balotade only in this, that he does not ſtrike out as in the Caprioles, nor does he offer to ſtrike, ſhewing the ſhoes of his hind-feet, as in the Balotade, but draws up his hind-legs as if he drew them to his belly.

With regard to the height of theſe three airs, it is the ſame, and differ only in the poſture of the hind-legs, as I ſhewed before: the method of teaching them is the ſame. Nature ſhews you this diverſity in the hind-legs of a horſe better than art, being more diſpoſed by her to one than another. My new way of the pillar will do for this, as I ſaid of the Caprioles.

CHAP. XXVI.

To dreſs a Horſe for a Step and a Leap.

THIS air is taught in the ſame manner as the other airs in leaping horſes. I muſt only ſay, that a horſe naturally takes this air of his own accord, for he is never taught it. Firſt, if he has not ſound feet, he won't always leap; ſecondly,

ſecondly, if he has not a good *appuy*, and a very good mouth, but is too light upon the hand, he is more proper for a Step and a Leap, than to leap continually, ſince the Step ſtrengthens his mouth, and gives him *appuy*. Beſides, if his reins are weak, he is fitter for it; the Step helps him to leap higher, as a man that runs before he leaps, leaps higher than one who takes a ſtanding leap; it is the ſame with a horſe in a Step and a Leap. A horſe in this air does three different actions, viz. *Terre-à-terre*, a *Curvet*, and a *Leap:* the Step reſembles *Terre-à-terre*, his riſing before, a Curvet, and then a Leap follows.

With reſpect to two *Steps* and a Leap, and three *Steps* and a Leap, it is the ſame thing, as it is only adding one or two *Steps* more; but this air is old and out of faſhion, and in reality very ridiculous.

The gallop *galliard* is worſe, for a horſe leaps when he ought to gallop. A gallop *galliard* is only proper for thoſe who have not the art to make a horſe leap true. A horſe with ſtrong reins and fed with good oats, when you prick him after a little reſt, if he gallops, will leap if you hold him up with your hand, and help him a little with your legs; but this is by accident, and becauſe he has reſt, though ignorant riders attribute it to their own dexterity, by idle impertinent talk, and to what dexterity God knows; it conſiſts more in words than in horſemanſhip, and deceives only the ignorant. This gallop *galliard* is fitter for a groom to brag on, than a horſeman; I leave it therefore to theſe tatlers and their ignorance. This is all as to the Step and the Leap: I ſhall only add, that my new method of the pillar will bring it to perfection, as I have ſhown in the Caprioles and other airs.

CHAP. XXVII.

The proper Helps for a leaping Horſe, either forwards or upon the Volies, in Caprioles, Groupades, Balotades, &c. and how the Rider is to be ſeated.

THE rider being placed in the middle of the ſaddle, his breaſt out and his legs ſtrait, as if they were upon the ground, and well fixed upon his ſtirrups, he ought to raiſe his horſe, and as ſoon as he has done that, help him with the ſwitch in the following manner, holding the point of it behind; give him one ſtroke only upon the croupe in right time, helping with the outward rein of the bridle, which, when a horſe goes along a wall, is always the rein next to it, and is eaſily done by keeping the hand a little from the wall, placing it on the other ſide the horſe's neck, the nails turned upwards, to whichever hand he goes. If you are in an open field, and no wall near, you may make uſe of whichever outward rein you pleaſe. I call that *which outward rein you pleaſe*, that gives liberty to his croupe on either hand, conceiving the wall to be placed on either ſide: from hence it is no falſe way of reaſoning to ſay, that you may help him with which outward rein you pleaſe: according to this truth in horſemanſhip, I call it which rein you pleaſe, becauſe it puts out both haunches, either on one ſide or the other, when one works with one of the reins in this manner. Thus the croupe is a little out, that it may have liberty to play, as it ought to do in Caprioles; for how otherways can the croupe be at liberty? and if it is not, it is impoſſible to raiſe it.

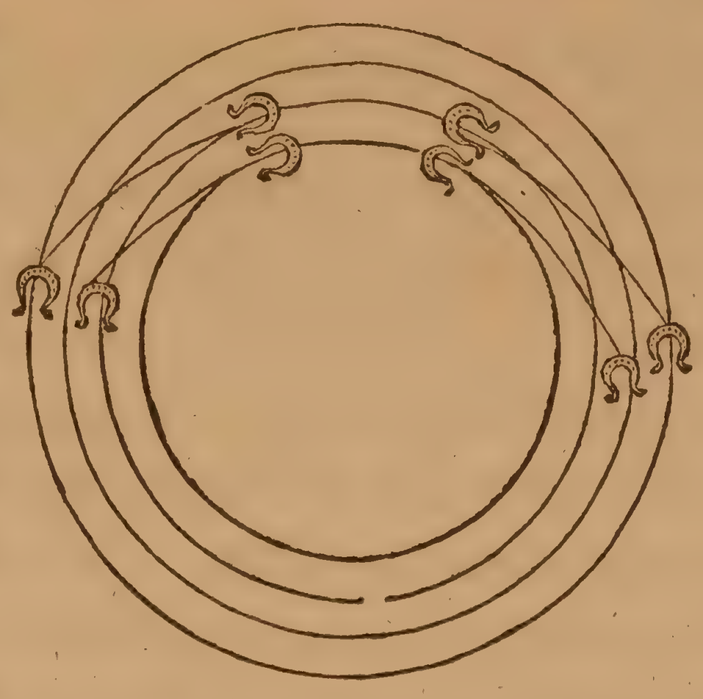
BOOK III.

At the ſame time you raiſe the horſe, and help with your ſwitch as I mentioned before, you muſt ſit firm upon your ſaddle with your thighs and knees, but muſt be eaſy from the knees to the ſtirrups: for if your legs were ſtiff from the knee downwards, and in the hams, you would rather make the horſe fling himſelf forward than make a regular leap; therefore you muſt keep a firm ſeat with your thighs and knees, and be free and eaſy from the hams to the ſtirrups, your toes pointing a little downwards, which relaxes the muſcles of the leg and the hams, and the bent of the ham makes the legs eaſy, as they ought to be in all kinds of airs, and whenever a horſe leaps; and that you may ſupport him in the air with your hand, you muſt help him gently with the calf of your leg, but ſo as not to be perceived by the ſpectators. And in reality, if you ſit in the poſture I have deſcribed, the bare motion of the horſe will make your legs help him; the bending the ham gives the aid with the thigh. Should it be neceſſary to pinch him with the ſpurs, the bent of the ham puts them ſo much the nearer to him; and that motion ought to be very little, and performed with ſecreſy, as if you did not help him at all.

Juſt when the horſe takes his leap, you muſt thruſt your breaſt very much forwards, which flings your ſhoulders back with ſtrength, and yet no body can perceive but that you ſit upright, and move but very little. You muſt not do as ſome that I have ſeen, who put their heads back almoſt to his croupe every time the horſe leaps, as if their reins were broke, or as if they had difficulty to keep in the ſaddle. You ſhould be careful to take the exact time, as you do the bound of a ball at tennis, giving juſt then the aids I have told you. When the horſe is at the height of his leap, you muſt ſtop him there a little, as if he was held in the air, which is called *ſoûtenir*.

You may help him with the ſwitch each leap, if you pleaſe, not over the ſhoulder, but over the bending of the arm that holds it, a little under the ſhoulder, your arm at a ſmall diſtance from your body, and a little bent at the elbow, and ſo the end of your ſwitch will fall directly upon the middle of the croupe; this aid is graceful for a leaping horſe. If he goes freely, and you find his croupe light, you may extend your right arm upwards at a ſmall diſtance from your body, waving your ſwitch up and down, which is graceful enough. But the beſt way is, to have the ſwitch under your hand, the point downwards, and help with it upon the croupe in exact time when he leaps, that is, when he raiſes himſelf. This aid ought not to be only a ſingle ſtroke, but a continual touching upon the horſe's croupe, till he riſes again from the ground; and do thus every time he riſes. This is the moſt certain and trueſt help, but is the leaſt graceful of any. As you help with the rein without the volte in Caprioles to the right hand, and bring the ſhoulder on the ſame ſide in, ſo the croupe and both the haunches will conſequently go a little out, which makes room for his croupe to play. He likewiſe deſcribes four compleat circles with his four legs, but different to thoſe in Terre-à-terre or Curvets; for here the fore-leg next the volte deſcribes the leaſt circle, the other fore-leg the ſecond; but the fore-leg without the volte is a little before that within it, becauſe the aid is with the outward rein; his hind-leg within the volte deſcribes the third circle, and his other hind-leg the largeſt; but the hind-leg without the volte is a little before that within it, and

and becauſe the help is with the rein without the volte. His legs ought to be in this manner, if they go right, and if you have ſuppled him to each hand, as you may ſee by the figure here, which is both for the right and left.



You muſt do the ſame for the left hand; it is only placing your bridle-hand within the volte on the inſide his neck, to work the outward rein; you muſt help ſomewhat more with the left leg, which is that within the volte, leaning a little more upon that ſtirrup and do in every thing elſe as you did for the right hand, thruſting out your breaſt and putting your ſhoulders back; but the right ſhoulder ſhould come in when you are going to the left. CHAP. XXVIII.

I have now given you the very quinteſſence of the art of making horſes go in leaps either forward or upon the voltes, in Caprioles, Balotades and Groupades, which makes both the horſe and horſeman compleat. You ſhould remember to work him at the pillar. A Capriole is a gallop in the Air.

End of the Third Diviſion of Leſſons upon AIRS, *which is to Dreſs a Horſe in Caprioles, Balotades, Groupades, and Demi-Airs.*

The Fourth Diviſion of Leſſons, upon AIDS *or* HELPS.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Helps with the Bridle-Hand.

THE bridle-hand, contrary to the old maxims, ought never to be juſt over the neck of the horſe, in any of his actions; as for example, if you gallop along a wall, with the wall on the left hand, your hand ought to be on the outſide the horſe's neck towards the wall, the nails upwards, to draw the right rein, that is, the rein fartheſt from the wall, to prepare him for the demi-volte. The wall on the right ſide, you muſt put your hand a little without the horſe's neck on the ſame ſide, the nails upwards, that you may draw the rein which is the fartheſt from the wall, to prepare him for the demi-volte, ſtill helping him with the ſame rein, till he has finiſhed it, and then change.

If you go upon one *piſte*, as it is termed, upon large circles to the right hand, you muſt place your bridle-hand on the contrary ſide, which is the left, that you may work the rein within the volte. If you gallop upon one *piſte* to the left, you muſt place the bridle-hand on the contrary ſide, which is the right and without the volte, to work the rein within it.

If you go Terre-à-terre to the right hand, you muſt place the bridle-hand on the contrary ſide, which is the out and left ſide, the nails upwards, keeping it high towards the left ſhoulder. If you go Terre-à-terre to the left hand, your bridle-hand muſt be without the horſe's neck or volte, the nails upwards to the right ſhoulder, holding it higher or lower, as there is occaſion.

BOOK III.

The Helps with the Bridle for Caprioles, Balotades, and Groupades.

For leaps, the hand ſhould be held otherwiſe; for going along a wall, with your left ſide towards it, you muſt place your bridle-hand a little on the contrary ſide of his neck, which is the ſide from the wall, the nails of your hand turned to the right ſhoulder, holding it high to ſupport him: by this you pull the outward rein of the bridle to work his ſhoulders, which forces his croupe out, that it may have the more room to play. The aids for the hand will be here directly contrary to my foregoing inſtructions; for in thoſe, you work with the inward rein to ſubject the croupe, and here you work with the outward rein of the bridle, to give liberty to the croupe.

When a horſe goes to the right upon the voltes, or along a wall his left ſide to it, you muſt place your bridle-hand within the volte, the nails of your hand upwards to the right ſhoulder, to make ſure of the ſhoulders, and give room to his croupe to play. For it is moſt certain that the outward rein of the bridle forces his ſhoulders in, and conſequently his croupe out.

When you go to the left hand upon the voltes, you muſt place your bridle-hand within the volte, the nails of your hand upwards, to the left ſhoulder. Thus I have given you the true way of working with the bridle, and the reaſons why you do ſo, and how you are to uſe the inward rein, which till now was never known.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Helps of the Body.

YOU muſt ſit upon your twiſt, having your breaſt out and your belly in, your knees and thighs cloſe to the ſaddle, and your legs ſtrait down. Being ſeated in this manner, it follows from a man's natural make, that when the ham is bent the thigh grows bigger, which is the help of the thigh, and is the moſt gentle can be given, and the moſt proper in all airs, (not but it is ſometimes neceſſary to help him with the legs, tho' very rarely.) Bending the ham puts the thigh cloſe to the ſaddle, and throws the calf of the leg from it. The ſecond help is with the calf of the leg, and then the ham muſt be ſtiff, and cloſe to the horſe, by which the thigh is put from him; this aid being ſtronger than that with the thigh, it is properer for Terre-à-terre. The third help is pinching with the ſpurs, and is the ſtrongeſt; it is done thus: the legs being cloſe to the horſe, muſt be a little bent in the ham (this aid is proper in all airs) and being bent, the toes will be down, which will bring the ſpurs up, and the calves of the legs being a little farther from the horſe's ſides by bending the ham, the ſpurs will be nearer, and then pinch him gently with them, and in time. This is an excellent aid, and very proper in all airs; it is very good too in Terre-à-terre, and ought to be kept for the laſt, as it is the ſtrongeſt. It is not ſpurring; for ſpurring is not an aid, but a correction. Here I have given the three principal aids of the body; that of the thigh, calf of the leg, and the gentle pinching with the ſpurs.

I don't mention them, as others have done before, without teaching you in what manner they are to be uſed; if they intended to teach you, they did it wrong, not for want of good will, or that they meant to deceive you, (for I am convinced that many worthy gentlemen have wrote upon this ſubject) but

but it was certainly for want of knowing better. I have given you now the helps of the hand, the thigh, the calf of the leg, and the heel, and hope you will be able to put your letters together, that is, theſe aids, which muſt be by never giving any help with the hand, without adding one of the others in a greater or leſſer degree, as there is occaſion; but the gentler the better, both as to hand, thigh, calf of the leg, and heel; for a horſe generally goes better with gentle than with ſtrong helps: a ſtrong aid confounds and ſurpriſes a weak horſe, makes a ſtrong one go too much upon the reins, giving him a *contre-temps*, and makes him lean upon his fore-part, and be heavy upon the hand. Beſides, ſtrong aids make a horſe full of fire almoſt mad, and a dull one reſty and lifeleſs; therefore the moſt gentle aids are beſt for all horſes. CHAP. XXX.

The hand, thigh, leg, and heel ought always to go together; for example, ſuppoſe a man playing upon the lute, and he touches the ſtrings with his left hand, without touching the others with his right, he muſt make but a very indifferent harmony; but when both hands go together, and in right time, the muſick will be good. It is the ſame with reſpect to this excellent art; what you mark with your hand ſhould be touched at the ſame time either with your thigh, leg, or heel, or the muſick of your work will be bad. We are at preſent ſpeaking of muſick, and he that has not a muſical head can never be a good horſeman. A horſe well dreſſed moves as true, and keeps as regular time as any muſician can. Thus you have the aids of the hand, thigh, leg, and heel, ſeparately and together.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Helps with the Switch.

THE ſwitch is both uſeful and graceful, nevertheleſs I would not have it much uſed to any horſe whatſoever, unleſs it be to thoſe deſigned for pleaſure or for airs; for a ſoldier's horſe ought to go with the hand and heel only, ſince the rider is to have a ſword in his hand.

But if you would uſe it in working a ſoldier's horſe in the open field, you muſt to the right hand help with it in the following manner: Put your ſwitch acroſs to the left towards the eye of the bridle, or hold it up with the end of the bridle in the right hand, to whichever hand the horſe goes. It is graceful too to hold the ſwitch up without the end of the bridle. If you find that your horſe does not riſe ſufficiently, you muſt give him a ſtroke or two upon the neck or ſhoulders on either ſide, as there is occaſion. Theſe aids are likewiſe good in Terre-à-terre. If he does not put his croupe in enough, you muſt give him two or three ſtrokes over the bridle-arm upon the left ſide of the croupe, or upon the flank, to keep it in. But this I don't much like, nor do I think it graceful, and ſeems as if the horſe did not obey the heel. However, when a horſe goes Terre-à-terre to the left, nothing looks better than to hold the ſwitch down by the right thigh, your arm a little bent, ſo that it ſeems hollow from the body. This is an excellent aid. Theſe are the helps with the ſwitch in Terre-à-terre, or in riding a ſoldier's horſe.

The Helps with the Switch in Curvets and Demi-Airs.

The ſwitch ought rather to be ſhort than long, and your arm not ſo cloſe to the body as to appear ſtiff and confined; for it looks like affectation, which is

BOOK III.

is wrong in every thing: beſides, it has an aukward air; and a good horſeman ought to ſit in as eaſy a poſture as poſſible, doing nothing however inconſiſtent with the rules of riding. The ſwitch ought to be ſhort, and when the horſe goes in Curvets to the right, you muſt hold it acroſs the horſe's neck, the elbow high, but a little lower than the hand, ſometimes upon a level with it, keeping an exact time with grace, ſometimes touching his neck, and ſometimes only making as if you would, as occaſion requires. If he ſhould not riſe high enough, give him a ſtrong ſtroke or two upon the ſhoulders. This aid will ſerve for both hands, but beſt for the right.

When he goes to the left, you may help him upon the right ſhoulder, as before, keeping your horſe's time with grace, having your elbow bent, as when one takes a ball upon the bound at tennis.

If the horſe does not raiſe himſelf ſufficiently, you muſt give him a hard ſtroke or two upon the right ſhoulder, and then gently again as before. There is another help with the ſwitch, which is called *de tous temps*, and that is, helping him with it continually; all theſe aids are both for the voltes and the ſtrait line forwards. There is another that is very graceful, but it muſt be with a ſwitch ſomething longer than ordinary, that bends a good deal: hold your right hand up, the arm bent at the elbow, and move it backwards and forwards without keeping time as long as the horſe works. This aid ſerves upon the voltes forward, backward, and ſideways in Curvets like the former.

When a horſe goes along a wall, with his right ſide to it, if you ſtrike the wall gently with your ſwitch conſtantly and without time, with your elbow a little bent, it enlivens and animates the horſe, and nothing can be more graceful. Theſe are the aids with the ſwitch for Curvets.

The helps with the Switch in Groupades, Balotades, and Caprioles.

You muſt help the horſe with the ſwitch over the right arm, having it a little bent in the elbow, and the arm from the body, ſo that the point of the ſwitch may touch the middle of the croupe, taking care to do it in the right time of the leap, and as the horſe riſes. But the ſureſt aid is to turn it in your hand, holding the point behind, and help him with it in right time, and as he riſes.

If the horſe leaps freely, it is ſufficient to wave the ſwitch backwards and forwards, which is graceful enough.

The Rider that is on Foot may help the Horſe in this manner:

He may help him before to riſe with the ſwitch either upon his cheſt or ſhoulders, or upon the knees to make him bend his legs; though perhaps the bending of your knees will make him do it ſufficiently. This is for the fore-part.

He may help with the Switch upon the Croupe thus:

If the horſe is touched upon the middle of his croupe, it will make him put himſelf together, and draw his legs in without laſhing out: if you touch him upon the end of his croupe, he will laſh out with both legs; and if you ſtrike him on the outſide his hind-legs, a little above the hock, he will draw his legs under hs belly. Theſe three different aids with the ſwitch have theſe different effects.

The

The help at the ſingle pillar with two ſwitches the new way, one to raiſe him before, and the other to help him at the ſame time under the belly, works wonderfully to put a horſe upon the haunches. CHAP. XXXI.

The helps upon the hind-legs, whether within or without, are very ridiculous, and occaſion more confuſion than they do good; and ſo do all the others, excepting thoſe I have laid down for you to uſe.

The ſwitch is excellent to raiſe a horſe, to animate him, and make him keep his time. The voice is ſometimes good, but ought to be ſeldom uſed; not to be like the riders of ſome countries, that are always calling to their horſes like carters.

I have here made a kind of abridgment or repetition of what you ought abſolutely to remember; therefore take it in good part, without criticiſing upon it, ſince I have done it more for your ſakes than my own, for I myſelf knew all this before; don't therefore find fault with what I write for your ſervice. As to the new method I have here given you, I dare venture to ſay, that he that does not approve of it is like never to underſtand it. For my part, I addreſs it to the reaſonable part of mankind; and ſo have done.

CHAP. XXXI.

A new Invention for putting a Horſe upon his Haunches, which is the beſt in the World, for without it they will hardly be made to go well.

NATURE, that we ought to follow, has made a horſe's legs thus: His fore-legs are made like ours, the knees are before and the hams behind: his hind-legs are as our arms, the elbow behind, and the bending part before, and from the paſtern to the hoof it is the ſame; that is to ſay, the heels of the fore-feet are behind like ours, and the toes before as our toes; and the heels of the hind-feet are behind, and the toes before as our hands. Tho' the heels of a horſe's fore-feet are towards his hams, and the toes towards his knees; and the heels of his hind-feet towards his elbow, and the toes towards the hams, which is directly contrary; nevertheleſs his paſterns and feet make the bending of all four feet to be alike, which is by the contraction of the nerves.

So that to put a horſe upon his haunches, one ſhould raiſe the heels of the hind-feet, by having the ſhoes turned up at both heels a good deal more than uſual, which will oblige him to bend his hocks, as the heel will be higher than the toe of the foot. A gentle deſcent of ground will put him upon his haunches, as you may ſee in the ſtable, when a horſe is turned upon the ſnaffle, that part next the manger is higher than the other; and if you make him go there in curvets, ſo turned upon the ſnaffle, the croupe being higher than the fore-part, it puts him upon his haunches. Therefore by raiſing the hind-part of his foot, by turning up his ſhoes, higher than the toe, it anſwers the ſame end as the deſcent of ground, to place him upon his haunches. As in going up-hill you make the horſe's hind-legs ſtiff, by keeping them ſtretch'd backwards, which throws him off of his haunches; ſo in going down-hill you make him bend his legs at the hocks, placing them under his belly, which puts him upon his haunches. Theſe turn'd-up ſhoes produce the ſame effect as when a horſe goes down-hill. When a horſe goes down a hill his croupe is higher

BOOK III.

higher than his ſhoulders, which puts him mightily upon his haunches; and therefore theſe ſhoes, which raiſe him higher behind than before, ought to put him upon his haunches for the ſame reaſon.

It may be thought, that a horſe may hurt himſelf by treads with theſe ſhoes, but I have always made uſe of them without the leaſt accident; though with common ſhoes ſometimes horſes get treads, and it even happens to the fore-legs, where they are never uſed. My new method of faſtening one of the reins of the caveſon ſhort to the pillar puts a horſe very much upon his haunches, eſpecially when he goes de *ferme-à-ferme*, or upon the voltes backwards.

Helping a horſe with a ſwitch upon the cheſt, or upon the bridle, ſtriking him upwards with it, or ſometimes upon the noſe, tho' ſeldom, will put him upon his haunches. I approve moſt of aiding him upon the cheſt or upon the noſe, ſince theſe aids make him advance his cheſt, which he can never do without being upon his haunches; for when the cheſt advances, the croupe muſt of neceſſity be drawn in. Aiding a horſe upon the cheſt, noſe, or bridle, forces his cheſt out, and puts him upon his haunches; helping him upon the knees makes him ſo timorous that he withdraws his breaſt, and therefore it puts him off of his haunches; but aiding him upon the cheſt with one ſwitch, and with another under the belly, places him ſtrongly upon them; for one ſwitch makes him advance his cheſt, and places him upon his haunches, whilſt the other tickling him under the belly makes him draw in his haunches and hind-legs, ſo that both working together have the better effect. When you raiſe him too high, he ſupports himſelf upon the toes of his feet, to prevent his falling backward; and his heels not touching the ground, it makes his hocks ſtiff, and conſequently throws him off of his haunches: therefore thoſe who raiſe a horſe very high to place him upon his haunches are much in the wrong. And though a horſe puts his hind-legs under his belly, if he ſupports himſelf upon his heels with the fore-part of his foot from the ground, his hocks are always ſtiff, and he is not upon his haunches: therefore theſe ſhoes, for the reaſons I have given, make the whole weight of the croupe to fall equally upon the heel and fore-part of the foot, and conſequently upon the whole foot, which gives him ſtrength, and makes him bend his hocks as much as poſſible with eaſe and facility.

As to the fore-part of a horſe, you muſt take care in fitting him with a bitt, that he does not arm himſelf againſt it: for this not only makes him hard upon the hand, becauſe it touches his cheſt, and you have no room to pull him; but if he carries his head low and round, he muſt of neceſſity raiſe his croupe, which will put him off his haunches. You muſt therefore give him a gentle bitt, that he may not carry low, but in a good place. The branches of the bridle ought to be neither too ſtrong nor too weak, that is to ſay, they muſt ſlope towards you, but not fall quite back, that you may have room to pull the reins with advantage, and this poſture puts him upon his haunches; or otherwiſe you muſt work with your hand going to the right, as I ſhewed you before, keeping it up pointing to the left ſhoulder. And to the left, you muſt keep your hand up and to the right ſhoulder. If you go ſtrait forward, hold it forward and high near your ſtomach. By drawing your hand low to your body, you pull the horſe's head down, and put him off his haunches; therefore you ought rather to advance it towards his head, and ſo the branches will

will have leſs force, and won't be ſo tight, which will put him upon his haunches, which is the beſt aid. CHAP. XXXI.

I don't mean that you place your hand ſo much forwards, as to be almoſt upon the horſe's head; if it be only a little forward it is ſufficient; you muſt have his head up, as I ſaid before, that he may not harm himſelf againſt his bitt. If you hold the bridle up towards one of your ſhoulders (viz. towards the left when you go to the right, and towards the right when you go to the left) without leaning forwards, the branches of the bridle will have the more power, not only as a lever to keep him up, but likewiſe to put him upon his haunches. It is true, that he may be apt to go backwards.

It is a good way to put his head to the pillar, not only to walk him ſo, but likewiſe to raiſe him, provided you don't let him riſe too high. I have already ſhewed you how to make him riſe. Nothing makes a horſe go better Terre-à-terre, than to make him do it his head to the wall all round the covered Manege, and it will put him upon his haunches.

A ſlow gallop with the croupe in, puts him likewiſe upon his haunches, and ſo does Terre-à-terre.

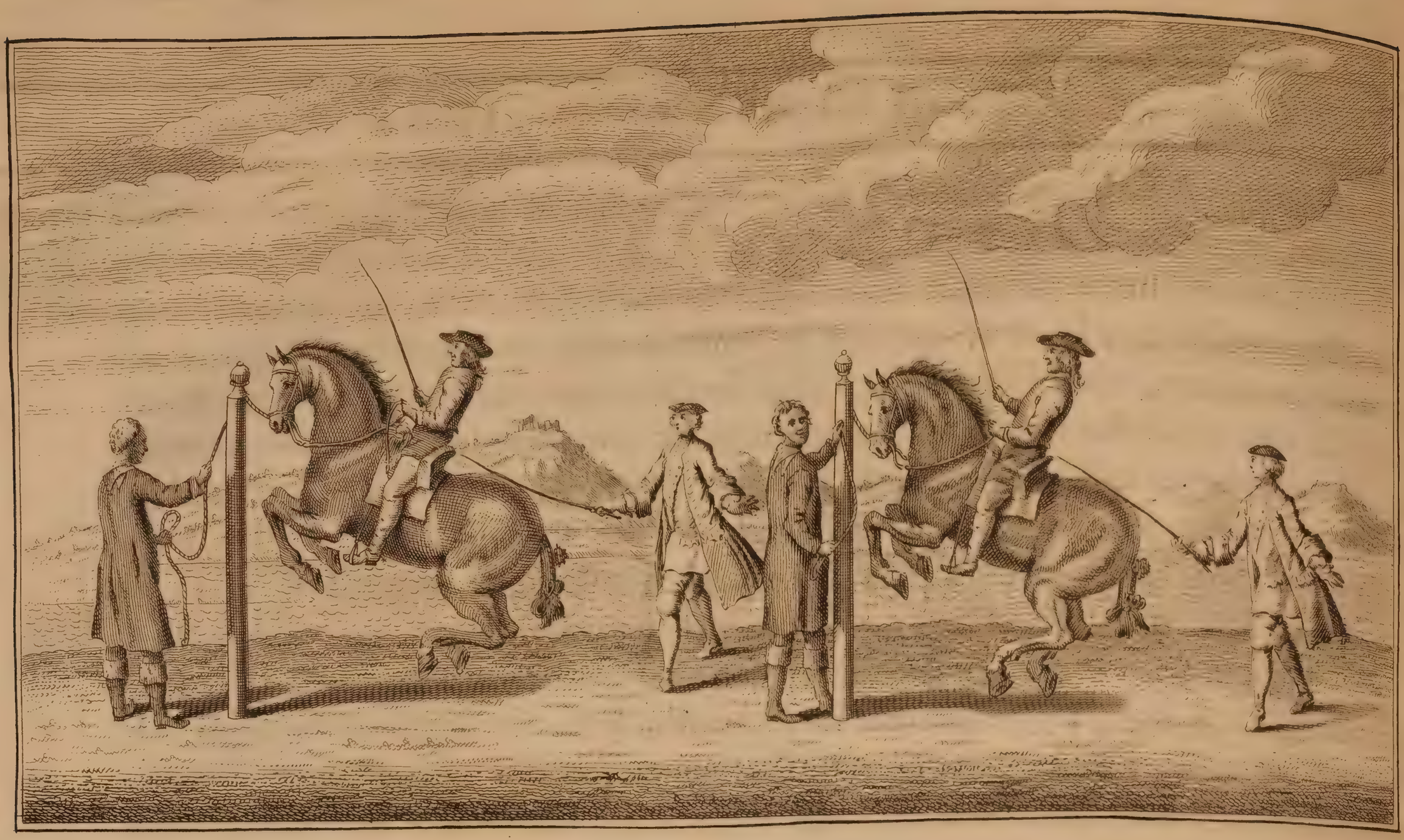
You muſt gallop him in one *piſte*, as it is termed, upon his haunches, your hand out, helping a little with your leg on the ſame ſide, to make him bend his ſhoulders: if you put his croupe too much out, you put him off his haunches. The *walk* or *paſſage*, which is the action of the trot, is the beſt of all to put him upon his haunches.

It is good, and in the beginning very neceſſary to ſtop a horſe, and make him go backwards, to put him upon his haunches; but they are both very diſagreeable to horſes. You may meet with leſſons enough of this ſort in old FREDERICK GRISON, and many other ſuch authors, who have wrote upon this ſubject.

All the leſſons I have ſhewed you, as plainly and clearly as poſſibly I could, are new inventions; and I can aſſure you, that you will find them true and excellent, to put a horſe upon his haunches, without which, none can go as they ought.

And therefore our only aim in this long, laborious, and painful work, is to put a horſe well upon his haunches, in order to have him well dreſſed, and compleat the art of the Manege. Receive it therefore in as good part as I communicate it heartily.

End of the Fourth Diviſion of Leſſons for AIRS, *and of the Third Book of the New Method of Dreſſing Horſes.*



THE NEW METHOD OF DRESSING HORSES.

BOOK IV.

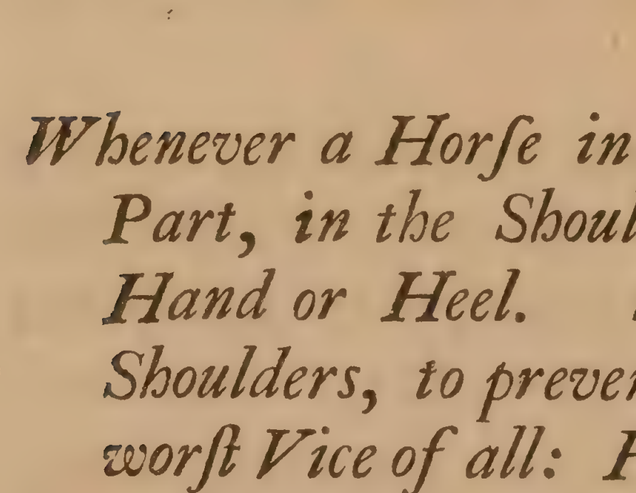
Which treats of all the Vices belonging to Horſes, and the ſureſt Ways to cure them.

The Firſt Diviſion of Leſſons.

Whenever a Horſe in working does wrong, it muſt be either in the fore or hind Part, in the Shoulders or the Croupe; he muſt be diſobedient either to the Hand or Heel. We ſhall therefore firſt treat of the Diſobedience of the Shoulders, to prevent his being entier, *which is to refuſe to turn, and is the worſt Vice of all: Here follows the Method therefore of making the Shoulders ſupple.*

CHAP. I.

Leſſon the Firſt, to work a Horſe's Shoulders.



A HORSE ſhould be walked, trotted, and galloped upon large circles at firſt, uſing the inward rein of the caveſon, and the leg on the ſame ſide, which to the right hand is the right rein and right leg. I have often told you, that rein and leg on the ſame ſide work a horſe's ſhoulders, but not the croupe; that they confine the fore-part, and leave the croupe at liberty, becauſe the ſhoulders are ſubjected, and the croupe not. This ſhould be upon large circles, to make it more eaſy to him.

In

CHAP. II.

In the ſecond leſſon to work the ſhoulders, you muſt walk the horſe in his own length, drawing the inward rein, and helping with the inward leg, which always work both the ſhoulders, ſo that the croupe is neceſſarily at liberty. This is an excellent leſſon to ſupple the ſhoulders. Horſes generally reſiſt what you would have them do, not from a natural ſimplicity, but with malice and ſubtilty. Very often when they find their croupe is to be put out, they endeavour to put it in. You ought therefore to draw the inward rein very ſtrong, giving him the inward ſpur at the ſame time, and very ſuddenly, which is rein and leg on the ſame ſide; but when he is to the right, it is the right rein and right leg: this makes the ſhoulders ſupple, and is a moſt excellent leſſon.

But if he ſtill continues to be ſtiff in the ſhoulders, and refuſes to turn to the right hand, put his head to the pillar to the left hand, and draw the outward rein, which is the right, helping with the leg on the ſame ſide. Tho' here the horſe goes to the left hand, nevertheleſs both his ſhoulders are worked to the right; for the leg and rein are uſed of the ſame ſide, which always works the ſhoulders. This is an excellent leſſon to ſupple the ſhoulders, tho' it is a falſe one; for the horſe goes to one hand, and looks to the other; he goes to the left hand, and his ſhoulders are worked to the right, and his legs go falſe; ſo that this ought to be uſed only when the other leſſons won't do. This is a good remedy to cure a horſe that refuſes to turn, but ought to be uſed no longer than till you have got the better of that vice.

There is another leſſon to ſupple the ſhoulders, which is this: Faſten the right rein of the caveſon my way to the pommel of the ſaddle on the right hand, and tye it ſo ſhort, as to bring his head as much in as poſſible, when there is no danger of his coming over; then work him with the leg on the ſame ſide, which is the right, (leg and rein thus always work the ſhoulders) and the croupe for the ſame reaſon is loſt. You may work him in this manner, in all the leſſons I have taught you.

If you work with falſe reins, you muſt work with the rein and leg on the ſame ſide, to work his ſhoulders.

If you work with the bridle reins, you muſt work with the rein and leg on the ſame ſide, to work the ſhoulders.

There is another way of working the ſhoulders, with the rein of the bridle: you muſt ſeparate your reins and hold one in each hand, and draw the inward rein towards your left ſhoulder going to the right, and advance the outward rein near the horſe's head, and bend it as much as poſſible within his neck, turning the nails of your left hand upwards, and putting your inward leg a little to him. This being done in time, and with force, will bend his ſhoulders, or make him ready to break his neck. But I rather recommend the other aids to ſupple the ſhoulders, as they are more gentle, and work with more eaſe to the horſe without injuring his mouth. The rein and the leg on the ſame ſide, whether the croupe is in or out, always work the ſhoulders and not the croupe, altho' it yields a little to the heel.

For the left hand, you ought always to work with rein and leg on the ſame ſide, and put the bridle in your right hand, and the caveſon in the left, and remember that your outward ſhoulder always works the horſe's ſhoulders. The left hand requires no farther explanation. Thus I have given you all the aids for ſuppling a horſe's ſhoulders to both hands, which is the principal thing.

End of the Firſt Diviſion of Leſſons for ſuppling the Shoulders.

The

BOOK IV. *The Second Diviſion of Leſſons, which is to correct a Horſe that does not obey the Heel.*

CHAP. II.

To make a Horſe obey the Heel.

AS rein and leg of a ſide work the ſhoulders of a horſe, ſo rein and leg contrary work the croupe. If you would put a horſe's croupe in, and he obſtinately thruſts it out, give him a good ſtroke or two with the ſpur on the outſide to keep it in.

If he refuſes to keep it in notwithſtanding this, and is obſtinately diſobedient to the ſpur, put his croupe in, by drawing the contrary rein to the way he is going, helping him with your leg on the ſame ſide, which is the outward, and this will make him comply tho' he be very vicious and obſtinate. Theſe aids ought not to be continued, but are to be uſed only in caſe of neceſſity, ſince they are falſe; therefore when you have done what you wanted, you muſt return to the true aids.

The rein of the caveſon, and the leg on the ſame ſide, whether the croupe be out or in, always work the ſhoulders, and only half the croupe; the ſhoulders always to the contrary ſide to which he goes, and the half of his croupe to the ſide he does go of. But if the croupe is in, the hind-leg within the volte is entirely loſt, and there is no help for it, ſo that it is to be feared that he will be *entier*, (that is, reſty) by putting his croupe too much in, becauſe he has there too much liberty. Therefore you muſt turn the bridle-hand, and aſſiſt him with it, working with the rein of the caveſon, and the leg on the ſame ſide, which preſſes his ſhoulders and fore-part, puts his croupe out, and will neceſſarily put him upon his ſhoulders, whether his croupe be in or out. When he goes in this manner upon the Paſſage, his legs move as true as when he is worked as he ought to be; but when he goes Terre-à-terre, or upon the Gallop, if he goes to the right, the fore-leg without the volte leads, which is falſe, and the hind-leg within the volte follows it, which is a Trot upon the ſwiftneſs of a Gallop, and makes him ready to fall; therefore I would adviſe you not to work him in this manner, but upon a walk, and not then neither but in caſe of neceſſity, that is, when a horſe's ſhoulders are ſo ſtiff that he will not turn, or that he obſtinately reſiſts the ſpur, and will not obey it. Then, I ſay, there is no better way than this, with rein and leg on the ſame ſide, not only to make the ſhoulders ſupple, but to make him obey the heel without violence. But this ought to be uſed like a medicince; when you have cured the diſtemper, it is neceſſary to return to the true method, for fear of accuſtoming him to go falſe and look out of the turn. You muſt always work him, where he ſeems to find the greateſt difficulty.

When you work with the rein and leg on the ſame ſide, the croupe to the pillar, the horſe has too much liberty within the volte, and there is no way to hinder it but by turning the hand in: but horſes are ſo cunning and artful in their diſobedience to the rider, that, when you work them with the rein and leg on the ſame ſide with the croupe to the pillar, they find their hind-leg within the volte at liberty; therefore, that they may reſiſt the rider, they put their croupe ſo much in, that they don't turn their ſhoulders, and are *entier*.

It

It is the ſame when you work with rein and leg contrary; for then they find their liberty without the volte, and defend themſelves againſt the rider, taking that advantage, and thruſt the croupe vigorouſly out. The more you ſpur them, the more obſtinately they reſiſt, and will often ſooner die than yield. In this caſe you muſt work with the leg and rein on the ſame ſide, and that will eaſily cure them. Thus you ſee the cunning and ſubtilty of horſes, as well as their vicious defence againſt the rider. But this aid ought not to be long uſed. CHAP. II.

Another Way of putting a Horſe's Croupe in, which is as good as the preceding one.

You muſt work with the rein within the volte, and the leg without in the following manner: If you go to the right, and find that your horſe's croupe does not come in enough, you muſt put the rein of the caveſon entirely croſs his neck towards the left hand, in order to put his croupe in; as much as you put his croupe in, ſo much almoſt do you force his fore-part to the left, which is right, ſince you put his croupe in. But ſo the inward rein of the caveſon works his outward haunch, which does not belong to it, as much as if you drew the outward rein; for only the inward haunch belongs to the inward rein. It works the outward haunch as much as if you drew the outward rein; ſo that the inward haunch is loſt to you as much as if you had drawn the outward rein, which is likewiſe falſe; for half his haunches go before his ſhoulders, and his legs go as wrong, the fore-leg within the volte leading, and the hind-leg without the volte following it, which is croſs-ways, and is the action of a Trot upon the ſwiftneſs of a Gallop, or Terre-à-terre. Beſides, you are placed wrong in the ſaddle, the right ſhoulder being forward to the right hand, when the left ſhould be ſo, and the whole ſeat falſe, thighs and legs, and all. But this way leg and rein contrary have as much effect in forcing the horſe's croupe in, as by working with the outward rein and the leg on the ſame ſide; it has even this advantage, that it makes the horſe look into the volte, which the other does not, for that makes him look very much out of it. In every thing elſe this is as falſe as the other, and therefore ought to be uſed only in caſes of neceſſity, as you do good medicines to cure a diſtemper, which are diſcontinued when the cure is compleated.

If one works a horſe upon a Walk in his own length, with his croupe very much in, he is mightily preſſed in that part, for tho' the ſhoulders go more ground than the croupe, the croupe is the moſt confined, and the ſhoulders moſt worked. There is no better leſſon than this, to ſubject a horſe's croupe. The rein and contrary leg, the horſe's head to the wall, either to the right or left; to the right hand you muſt draw the rein of the caveſon towards the left ſhoulder, or the falſe rein, if you uſe it, in the ſame manner; if you have only the bridle, you muſt place your bridle-hand on the left ſide the horſe's neck, that you may draw the inward rein, helping him with the contrary leg, which to the right hand is the left, putting your right ſhoulder in, for that helps greatly to work the horſe's croupe. This is an excellent leſſon.

Another Method of working a Horſe's Croupe.

To the right hand, put the horſe's head to the pillar, and the falſe rein, or rein of the caveſon within the volte, draw towards the left ſhoulder; or if you ride

BOOK IV.

ride with the bridle only, you muſt place your bridle-hand on the left ſide the horſe's neck, turning the nails of it up towards your left ſhoulder, helping him with the contrary leg, that is, the left, and putting your right ſhoulder in, which will put his croupe in. This ought not to be long uſed, only for a certain time, to make him obey the heel, ſince it is falſe. The pillar ought to be on the inſide, when you work a horſe's croupe with his head towards the pillar, which works the croupe, but he goes falſe.

All the ſame aids ſerve for the left hand, only changing the rein, the leg, and the ſhoulder. The horſe's head is to be to the pillar for the left hand, the pillar on the inſide, which works the croupe, but it is (as I ſaid before) falſe. Therefore you ought only to uſe this leſſon till you have brought him to obey the heel.

Thus I have given you all the ways of reducing a horſe, whether the fault be in the ſhoulders, or the croupe, before or behind, whether he reſiſts the hand or the heel: nothing more can be upon a circle.

CHAP. III.

How a Horſe's Croupe or Shoulders are to be worked occaſionally.

IF you go to the right, and draw the inward rein of the caveſon, or the falſe rein towards your left ſhoulder, helping with the contrary leg, either more or leſs as there is occaſion, your inward leg being very ſupple; if the horſe's ſhoulders don't come ſufficiently in, by putting your left ſhoulder in you will make his ſhoulders very pliant: for the caveſon rein, or falſe rein within the volte, only keeps back the hind leg within the volte, which gives the ſhoulders room to turn, and conſequently makes them more ſupple.

If you ride with the bridle only, going to the right, put the bridle-hand on the contrary ſide, or left, turning the nails of it upwards as much as you can, and bring your left ſhoulder in, which will work the horſe's ſhoulders and make them ſupple, for the ſame reaſons I gave you before, ſince it produces the ſame effect.

But if the ſhoulders of your horſe turn too much to the right, and his croupe goes out, which it will then neceſſarily do, you muſt draw the inward rein of the caveſon, or falſe rein, or rein of the bridle, as much as you can above the neck, towards the outſide of the volte, putting your right ſhoulder in as much as you poſſibly can, looking a little out of the volte, which works the croupe of a horſe, and thruſts his ſhoulders out, and therefore his croupe will conſequently come in. This will make him obey the heel, tho' it is falſe with reſpect to his movement, but at length will make him go as he ought, when he is brought to obey both the hand and the heel.

From hence it is evident, that the rider's ſhoulder works the croupe, or ſhoulders, and nothing elſe: for inſtance, when I work a horſe upon a Walk, if I don't find his ſhoulders ſupple, I put my contrary ſhoulder in, to work thoſe of the horſe; and if I find he does not obey the leg, I put my ſhoulder in, (that is, within the volte) in order to work his croupe, helping him all the time with the contrary leg more or leſs, as there is occaſion.

I work him in this manner in all his leſſons, according as I find he does or does not obey. This is the quinteſſence of working a horſe in the hands of an able

able man. He ſhould be worked in the ſame manner to the left hand, only changing the hand and the leg. CHAP. IV.

CHAP. IV.

To work a Horſe, the Croupe either in or out.

YOU muſt work him with rein and leg contrary; but you ought not to lean more upon the outſide, than the inſide of the volte, becauſe you would make the horſe lean ſo much on that ſide, that he would avoid the aid or ſpur on the other ſide; for when a horſe leans much on the outſide, his legs within the volte will be up, like the legs of a form or bench, ſo that they muſt of neceſſity be ſhorter than his legs without, which is wrong, ſince they ought to be the longeſt to lead the way.

A horſe therefore ought to go ſtrait, and if you find he leans, give him a good ſtroke or two with the ſpur within the volte, and that will redreſs him. The rider has no better way to keep him thus, than to ſit ſtrait in his ſaddle; for the horſe continually follows the action of the rider. It is impoſſible to ſit ſo ſtrait upon a circle, as when the horſe goes forwards; nevertheleſs, if you will ſit upon the circles as I have taught you, you will ſeem to ſit ſtrait.

To put a horſe's head to the wall is an excellent leſſon, not only to put him upon his haunches, and to make him light in the hand, but alſo to bring a light horſe to bear the hand, and to put him too upon his haunches. Nothing is better than to paſſage thus ſideways, or curvet ſideways, to raiſe him in one place in Peſades; or to make him go Terre-à-terre with his head to the wall, three ſides or all, or the whole of the covered manege, is an excellent leſſon, and makes a horſe more obedient and readier, than any thing elſe can.

You may ſee now how preſumptuous thoſe are, who only want to ſee a maſter ride a horſe once, to underſtand the art inſtantly, and ſteal from him all his ſcience. Without diſpute theſe people are very fond of themſelves, ſince they imagine that by ſeeing a horſeman once ride they can find out the myſteries and ſecrets belonging to this dextrous art. It is equally probable, that one who had never been taught to play upon the lute, ſhould only by ſeeing ſome great maſter of that inſtrument play once, play inſtantly as well as he: He may put the lute out of order indeed: but I leave ſuch people to their own opinions.

End of the Second Diviſion of Leſſons.

The Third Diviſion of Leſſons.

CHAP. V.

The abſurd Faults of ſome Horſemen, who by ſeeing imitate, and imagine they ride as I do.

TO faſten the rein of the caveſon my way, and the rein within the volte very ſhort to the pommel of the ſaddle, not only puts the horſe's inward hind-leg back, and brings the half of his ſhoulders in, which is right; but alſo being tyed very ſhort, it acts upon both ſhoulders, which is wrong. Therefore to put his outward hind-leg or haunch in, they ſpur him without the volte, which is the moſt ſtupid ignorance imaginable; for they would perform

BOOK IV.

perform impoſſibilities, and things contrary to nature, for ſo they would have him obey two contrary aids at the ſame time, which is impoſſible. That is to ſay, they throw the outward haunch out with the rein, and at the ſame time they would force the ſame haunch in with the ſpur, which are two contrary actions, and utterly impoſſible at the ſame time.

But let us ſee what happens by it to the poor horſe; why, he having more ſenſe than the rider, finds that the rider would make him perform what he cannot, and therefore rebells, and reſiſts the ſpur, and throws his croupe out in ſpite of ſpur or ſwitch, ſo that he is thereby made both malicious and reſty, committing all manner of extravagancies to hurt his rider.

Their next abſurdity is, that they draw the rein within the volte (when the croupe does not come in enough) ſo tight to the pommel of the ſaddle, that it throws the outward hind-leg out, and they ſpur him with the outward leg to force it in, which are (as I ſaid above) two contrary actions at the ſame time; ſo that if the horſe does not put his croupe out, but is of a heavy diſpoſition, as are the Flanders horſes, he puts his outward haunch in, by the violence of the ſpur.

But he commits here a greater fault with his inward hind-leg; for the poor horſe has no other way of relieving himſelf, but by bringing it before his ſhoulder, which is utterly falſe, and ſo forced, that it is ridiculous to ſee a horſe's head drawn againſt his ſhoulder, and his hind-leg within the volte before his ſhoulders, by the violent conſtraint he is put to. Theſe are abſurdities in horſemanſhip. Can one imagine, that a horſe can go thus againſt nature, having his ſhoulders thus drawn in and confined? and nevertheleſs they expect that his croupe ſhould go before his ſhoulders!

The third error is, for example, when they go to the right, and draw the rein within the volte, fearing leſt the outward haunch ſhould not go ſufficiently in, they put the ſhoulders with the left rein as much as they can to the left: it is very certain that it brings the outward leg in, and they imagine, that becauſe they draw the rein towards the inſide, that they put the hind-leg within the volte back, ſeeing me work in that manner, as they think; but they are therein much miſtaken. For, altho' the rein be drawn towards the inſide, putting his ſhoulders to the ſide contrary to that he is going to, it works his hind-leg without the volte as much as the common outward rein; and is ſo far from working the hind-leg within the volte, that it allows it as much liberty in every reſpect, as if they worked with the rein to the contrary way to which the horſe goes. The inward rein does juſt the ſame, when the horſe's ſhoulders are put on the ſide contrary to that to which he goes; the effects are alike, and his legs move as falſe, ſince it is the action of a Trot upon the ſwiftneſs of a Gallop, which is abſolutely wrong, and ought to be avoided.

Theſe are errors and miſtakes, which are daily commited by imitation and preſumption.

Theſe remedies may be uſed, particularly the laſt, but the other hardly ever. When the croupe is out, you may faſten the inward rein as ſhort as you pleaſe, for then he is at liberty, and not at all forced. This laſt aid is only a ſort of correction, when he refuſes to obey the heel, and not properly an aid, and ought only to be uſed as ſuch. Therefore we ſhall now return to the truth of the Manege.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

The Way I took to reduce a Horſe, that was extreamly Reſty.

A Horſe's reſtineſs, when it is in a high degree, does not conſiſt only in his refuſing to advance, but alſo in his oppoſition to the rider, in every thing he poſſibly can, and with the utmoſt malice: for if one would make him go forward, he will go back; and if one would have him turn to one hand, he will turn to the other. Thus he avoids and oppoſes whatever he is required to perform, and all is the effect of his ill-will to the rider, which makes him refuſe whatever he would have him do.

One muſt endeavour therefore to gain the horſe; for the perfection of a well-managed horſe conſiſts in his following the will of his rider, ſo that the will of both ſhall ſeem to be the ſame. He muſt be forc'd a little, but not long, becauſe force will make him worſe. I have never yet ſeen that force and paſſion have prevailed the leaſt upon a horſe: for the horſe having leſs underſtanding than his rider, his paſſion is ſo much the ſtronger, which makes him always get the better of the horſeman, and ſhews that violent methods will not do. For when the horſeman thinks himſelf victorious, he is deceiv'd, for we find that it is the horſe. Becauſe, when the horſeman has ſpurred the beaſt ſo much, that he has made him all over blood and ſweat, and put himſelf into a great heat and out of breath, ſtill ſo long as he torments the horſe, the horſe will reſiſt. He will run againſt a wall, lie down, bite, kick, and commit a thouſand ſuch like diſorders. But as ſoon as the rider ceaſes to beat and ſpur him, the horſe will leave off his tricks: and then the rider thinks himſelf conqueror, but is miſtaken, ſince he himſelf gave up the cauſe by ceaſing to beat and ſpur. The horſe therefore finding he has the better, is altogether maſter of the field.

If the rider begins again to beat and ſpur, the horſe will reſiſt again: it is not the beaſt then that is vanquiſhed, but the man, who is the greater brute of the two: the whip and the ſpur ſerve only to continue the quarrel even to death, as in a duel. The whole therefore is to make the horſeman and his horſe friends, and bring them to will the ſame thing.

If you can't gain your point therefore in one way, you muſt have recourſe to another: I mean, that if in this extremity the horſe will not agree with you, you muſt agree with him in the following manner. You would make your horſe advance, and he to defend himſelf againſt you runs back: at that inſtant pull him back with all your ſtrength. And if to oppoſe you he advances, immediately force him briſkly forwards. If you would turn to the right, and he endeavours to turn to the left, pull him round to the left as ſuddenly as poſſible: if you would turn him to the left, and he inſiſts on the right, turn him as ſmartly to the right as you are able. If you would have him go ſideways to one hand, and he inclines more to the other, immediately ſecond his inclination. If he would riſe, make him riſe two or three times. In a word, follow his inclinations in every thing, and change as often as he. When he perceives there can be no oppoſition, but that you always will the ſame thing as he, he will be amazed, he will breathe ſhort, ſnuff up his noſe, and won't know what to do next, as it happen'd with the horſe that I cured this way.

This, I ſay, is the method of curing a horſe that is deſperately reſtive: in other caſes, the common way is to reward your horſe when he does well, and puniſh

Book IV.

puniſh him when he does ill. But you ought to be laviſh of your rewards, and ſparing of your corrections, otherwiſe you will ſpoil your horſe. You ſhould pardon him a great many faults, as proceeding from ignorance: For how ſhould a horſe know what he has never been taught? Inſtruct him then by frequent repetitions. When you have taught him, if he maliciouſly rebells, correct him, but let it be ſeldom, and the correction ſhould not laſt long. If the horſe obeys ever ſo little, ſtop him, and make friends with him by ſome preſent recompence. If he riſes too high, do not fail to ſlacken your reins extremely, and as he comes down give him firmly both ſpurs when he is almoſt at the ground, and make him advance. This is what I had to ſay concerning a horſe exceſſively reſtive, and the common corrections.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Correction and Cure of ſeveral Vices.

AS to a horſe that thro' reſtiveneſs will not advance, that flings himſelf down, or in riſing throws himſelf back with two or three ſprings of his fore-legs when he is up, or that runs away, theſe are things that all the world is acquainted with. Spurs are ſaid only to make a horſe the more reſtive; but that the ſwitch will never cure him: For this reaſon ſpurs muſt be made uſe of till he is broke, and pretty ſmartly too. One ſhould firſt try the gentle ways, and if thoſe have no effect, we have no other remedy, none that are more certain than the ſpurs. But firſt walk, trot, and gallop him without any other aid than a ſlack bridle, and a moderate caveſon. If this has no effect, add the calf of the leg, and let your ſpurs be kept for the laſt extremity only. When he would lie down make uſe of the ſpur, and have ſomebody behind you with the *chambriere*. When a horſe is reſtive, it is not proper to ſtop him, or to put him upon his haunches, for fear of making him more ſo. But you muſt put him upon the ſhoulders as much as you can, to make him advance: for it is enough to cure one vice at a time; and when he is cured, you may eaſily put him afterwards upon the haunches. No horſe ever has this vice, if a good rider has had him at firſt. If he riſes too high before, it is good to ſtrike him hard on the legs with the ſwitch: but this ought to be done in right time, or it will do no manner of good.

If a horſe is given to throw himſelf back with his man (a very dangerous vice) it is a proof that he was very ill rode at firſt, and that they taught him to riſe before he could walk, trot, or gallop; which is a thing contrary to nature, and ridiculous. When a horſe riſes in this manner, he may in ſome ſenſe be called reſtive; becauſe, when he ought to advance, he riſes in order to avoid it. There are ſome jades ſo vicious, that they riſe on purpoſe to throw themſelves, and kill their man. The only way to cure them is to hold the bridle ſlack, and the caveſon ſo too, and to walk them a long while ſtrait forwards, and afterwards in large circles, that they may be inſenſible of their turning; for a horſe often plays his tricks only to avoid being turned. You muſt never ſtop him, but put him entirely upon his ſhoulders, which is contrary to his vice. By being worked thus upon the walk, trot, and gallop, without giving him any ſtop, he may be reclaimed. Every time that he would riſe, give him entirely the reins of the bridle, and alſo thoſe of the caveſon, till you find him half way down, and then give him the ſpurs to make him advance;

advance; for if you ſpur him when he is at the higheſt, he will throw himſelf over. You may thus eaſily conquer him by degrees, and afterwards you may put him upon the haunches. At firſt you ought to ſtop him gently, and by degrees; for a ſudden ſtop, without warning, is not good for any horſe; but it ought always to be done with two or three *falcades*, which is a ſliding gently upon the haunches at two or three times; it gives a grace to a horſe, and prepares him the better for his demi-volte. CHAP. VII.

One muſt not give a rough bit to a paſſionate run-away horſe, for that makes him worſe, and his mouth the harder. Such a horſe ſhould never be ſpur'd, in conformity to the old proverb: *A free horſe needs no ſpur*. The ſpur indeed but augments his vice, neither ſhould the bridle or caveſon be held hard: for the more you pull, the more he will pull in oppoſition. Even if he feels the hand, or the caveſon tho' but little, he will run to reſiſt it.

For this vice therefore, tho' it is contrary to what we call reſtineſs, you are to uſe the ſame aids, ſince they both proceed from a too hard hand; which in one hinders the horſe from advancing, for fear of hurting his mouth, or his noſe with the caveſon; and makes the other pull the harder, the harder you pull, to avoid and reſiſt the force. You ought therefore to ride them both with a ſlack and gentle hand, and an eaſy caveſon in all their paces, walk, trot, and gallop, without making any ſtop. For if in the beginning you would ſtop a run-away horſe, preſſing his mouth or noſe, he will endeavour immediately to run, finding you have a mind to hold him. Do not ſtop him therefore for a long time, and when you do let it be very gently, and by degrees, upon a ſlow walk, and win him in this manner. By which you may ſee, that it is an excellent thing to have a gentle hand (it is one of the greateſt ſecrets we have in managing a horſe) even ſo as ſometimes to let it be quite ſlack. But what for the generality I call a light or gentle hand, is at the ſame time as light as a feather, and yet firm, except in extraordinary caſes. The pillar with a long rein is ſometimes good for a run-away horſe, or for one that is heavy on the hand: For the pillar will hold him when one or more men can't, and with leſs danger to the rider, becauſe he can run but in a circle. Sometimes a horſe may be reſty, and refuſe to advance, becauſe ſomething hurts him; and the ſame thing may make another endeavour to run away. Thus much concerning theſe vices.

CHAP. VIII.

For a Horſe that is too light in the Hand, or which has not a good Appuy.

THIS may ſometimes proceed from the beard, on which the curb reſts, being too tender, or there not being room enough for it, or its being only cover'd with a very thin ſkin, or becauſe the bars are too tender, or becauſe the horſe's neck is not well placed, or that he has a throat like a cock, or has been ill rid before, or is not well fitted with a bit, or has been hurt by hard and rough ones. But all this may be remedied the following way.

You muſt firſt give him a good eaſy bit, that is, a canon or ſcatch *à la Pignatelle*, and branches *à la Connétable*, and a caveſon after my faſhion, and faſten the curb to the branches of the bit; for you muſt ride him ſome time without the curb, in order by degrees to give him the *appuy* upon the bars. But the bridle at the beginning ought to be very ſlack, and you ſhould work only with the caveſon till you have ſettled his head, and put it in a good place: when that

BOOK IV.

that is done you may uſe the curb, but it ought to be long and ſlack; and when he is accuſtomed to it, fix it in its proper place. The leſſons you give him ought to be either ſtrait forwards, or upon circles ſo large, that the horſe may not perceive he turns. Theſe leſſons ought to be in an open place, without limits, as a park, or an open field; for ſo he will get a better *appuy*. You ought never at firſt to force him to any thing, but work him upon a long trot, and trot him as much as you can upon the ſhoulders; which alſo will give him *appuy*. Do not ſtop him for ſome time, for that puts him upon his haunches; and when you do, let it be rather by gradually retarding by little and little, than a ſtop. When you gallop, let it be a ſhort gallop, for that gives *appuy*, provided it is gentle and without violence, and on the ſhoulders. Some uſe a martingal, but I do not approve of it; becauſe when it is taken away, the horſe is no better than before. When you have broke him, you may work him upon the haunches as you pleaſe.

But there is nothing to be done till a horſe's head is ſettled. It ought therefore to be the principal care, and the firſt work to fix that, or to give him a good mouth, or, which is the ſame thing, to put him in the hand; and this whether it be to a colt, a young horſe, a horſe of a middle age, or an old one; in ſhort, any one that is rode in a Manege: For without being in the hand he is good for nothing; and being once there, he is good for every thing, and it is the foundation of our art; and thus I finiſh this diſcourſe.

Another Diſcourſe concerning a Horſe that has not a good Appuy, *or is too light in the Hand.*

You ought to feel him more than with a full hand; and when you walk him, you ſhould have your hand yet a little firmer; if he pulls, you ought alſo to pull hard, and not by jerks: for when you pull he will do the ſame, and ſo give himſelf *appuy*. After you have uſed him thus upon a walk, do it upon the trot, and afterwards upon the gallop, never ſtoping him but very gently, and this you need not queſtion will give him *appuy*. If he is impatient, and ſeems diſguſted at the hand and at the heel, but eſpecially at the heel, he will be more ſo by confined and narrow leſſons, and quite furious upon his Airs, Curvets, and Terre-à-terre. Defer his airs therefore for ſome time, as well as the narrow leſſons of ſubjection, or thoſe which force the croupe either in or out. Work him only upon one *piſte* in large circles, making much uſe of your hand, but not at all of your legs or heels, for fear of offending and angering him.

If you work him only upon one *piſte* in large circles, it will make him forget his furious and choleric humour, and thoſe apprehenſions that he had before. When you find he is more patient and fit for the manege, try his obedience to the heel and to the hand; but let it be upon a ſlow walk, and without confinement, and by little and little, not obliging him for a long time to make an entire volte, nor putting at firſt more than one haunch into the volte.

As ſoon as ever he obeys, put him upon one *piſte*, and afterwards try him again. But be ſure to finiſh him upon one *piſte*, and large; keeping him quiet and eaſy, without fury or fear; making him always advance, whatever he does.

You need not doubt, but this leſſon will produce entirely the effects you deſire, whether it be to give him *appuy*, or to make him patient. Be very cautious likewiſe

wiſe not to correct him, tho' he ſhould incline to be choleric, and commit ſome fault. You ought to pardon him many, becauſe in deſpair he will commit thoſe faults to oppoſe you, and by that means become extremely enraged, from a dread of puniſhment. Pardon then and paſs them over in order to deceive him, and ſhow him how good you are; which will break him of them, when he finds you are not ill-natured. To keep a horſe in perpetual ſubjection and ſlavery, makes him either deſperately or ſtupidly reſty. Divert him therefore ſometimes, and give him liberty, riding him large upon one *piſte* in walk, trot, and gallop, finiſhing quietly, and you will find the good that will reſult from it. CHAP. IX.

I know nothing better to give a horſe *appuy*, than the falſe reins my way; for they work the bars, and eaſe the curb. A bit alſo without liberty, and of one piece, will give him *appuy*. This is what I had to ſay in this diſcourſe, about giving *appuy* to a horſe, and taking from him his furious and choleric apprehenſion.

CHAP. IX.

For a Horſe that is heavy on the Hand.

THIS proceeds ſometimes from a thick fleſhy neck, fleſhy ſhoulders, a thick fleſhy head, with a great deal of hair in the curb place; or from a thick ſkin in that part, or hard bars, or even ſometimes from the horſe's arming himſelf againſt the bridle, ſometimes from his obſtinacy in oppoſing the rider, in order to run away; and ſometimes a horſe is ſo heavy as to lean all his weight upon the bridle.

Yo may break him thus. Give him on an eaſy bit, as before directed, that fits him, with a caveſon after my manner, not forcing him either with the bridle or the caveſon. Trot him as ſhort as poſſible, becauſe the ſhort trot puts him upon his haunches; ſtop him often of a ſudden; make him go backwards; raiſe him before, walk him with his head againſt a wall; work him in a corner where two walls meet; ſtop him againſt a wall; work him with his croupe in, all which puts him upon his haunches. You may alſo gallop him upon the haunches. Never make him advance, or but very little at moſt, in his quarter and demi-voltes: And as you work other horſes forwards upon a line between the quarters of the volte, making the line ſo much the longer in proportion as they are light in hand; in like manner, a horſe that is heavy in hand, the line muſt be made more or leſs ſhort. You ſhould pull him back beſides in all the lines before the quarter, juſt as you make the others advance. Theſe are excellent leſſons to break him, and make him light in hand: but nothing puts a horſe ſo much upon his haunches, and conſequently makes him ſo light in hand, as my new method of the pillar.

If he has any imperfection in his legs, eſpecially in his fore-legs, or in his feet, his paſterns, his knees, his ſhoulders, &c. it is out of the rider's power to make him light in hand, and is properly the work of a farrier. For while he has any pain in thoſe parts, he will bear on the hand as upon a fifth foot, or as a cripple ſupports himſelf upon a ſtick. It is to relieve his pain, that a lame or weak horſe leans upon the hand. Nor is this all; for there is another imperfection of nature that admits of no remedy, and in which many horſemen are greatly deceived. They ſay, that a horſe that has a fine head well

BOOK IV.

well placed, a ſlender neck, and lean ſhoulders, is always light in hand; and, on the contrary, that a horſe with a large head, a thick neck, and fleſhy ſhoulders, is always heavy in hand. Now this is ſo far from being true, that I have ſeen more large-headed, thick-necked, fat-ſhoulder'd horſes, that have been light in hand, than I have of thoſe that are ſlender and fine-ſhaped; and I have ſeen horſes with a little head, a ſlender neck, and fine ſhoulders, that were heavy in hand: ſo that nothing can be known from this. But here lies the whole ſecret. If an ill-ſhaped heavy horſe has good reins, he will be light in hand; and the moſt fine-ſhaped delicate creature on earth, if he is weak in the reins, will be heavy in hand: ſo that the being light or heavy in hand depends only on the reins, and the goodneſs of the chine. If his reins are good, you may put a horſe upon the haunches, becauſe he is able to bear it; and a horſe upon the haunches is light in hand: but one whoſe reins are weak, cannot bear to be put upon the haunches, but will go upon the ſhoulders to relieve the pain he feels in his reins, which is what we mean by being heavy in hand. The more you contend with him, the more will he lean upon your hand, and your labour will be like waſhing a black Moor with ink.

CHAP. X.

For a Horſe that is heavy in Hand, who will obey neither the Hand nor the Heel, but is ſtiff in the Shoulders, and won't obey the Spurs.

THE main ſecret for a horſe that is heavy upon the hand, is for the rider to have a very light one; for when he finds nothing to bear upon with his mouth, he infallibly throws himſelf upon the haunches for his own ſecurity. Either before or behind he muſt ſupport himſelf, and finding nothing to lean on before, he bears his weight behind. Now being upon the haunches (as he neceſſarily muſt be in this caſe) it is impoſſible but he muſt be light in hand, becauſe no horſe can be rightly upon his haunches without being ſo. And he that ſaid that a horſe was not dreſſed, whoſe curb was not looſe, ſaid right; and it is equally true, that the curb never can play, when in its right place, except the horſe be upon the haunches. No horſe therefore is well dreſſed that is not light in hand; ſo that an eaſy and gentle bridle, but firm, is the chief ſecret to make a horſe light. Your caveſon ought alſo to be eaſy. The ſtopping him ſhort upon walk, trot, or gallop, will contribute much to the ſame purpoſe, becauſe it puts him upon the haunches. To make him riſe once or twice, and then go forwards, ſo that when you raiſe him his haunches come in, will for the ſame reaſon produce the ſame effect. But my method of the pillar, as it throws the horſe yet more upon the haunches, is ſtill more effectual to this purpoſe, and beſides always gives him the ply to the ſide he goes of. The horſe's head to the wall puts him upon the haunches; turning upon very little more ground than his own length, puts him very much upon them, and conſequently makes him light upon the hand, quarter, and demi-voltes: the croupe in does ſo too; ſo does the croupe quite in, his head to all the four walls, for it puts him extremely upon the haunches. If the ſhoulders are not ſupple, the caveſon, the rein, and the leg of the ſame ſide will render them ſo, and make the horſe obey the heel, as I have told you often. But this is phyſick only, and not diet; that is to ſay, when the croupe is within

within the pillar, or the head to the pillar the croupe out; and ſhould be uſed only in the laſt extremity of the vice; it eaſily produces its effect however, without any conſtraint. Theſe are the ways of making a horſe light in the hand and obedient to the heel, and of ſuppling his ſhoulders, when the common ones won't do. CHAP. XI.

CHAP. XI.

Containing certain Obſervations.

REmember that my method reduces a horſe without beating or ſpurring him, and only by the rules already laid down; becauſe it obliges him to go well, whether he will or no.

Make him always advance, in whatſoever he does; for he will often put his croupe out, and go backwards, as if he was reſty to the ſpur. Uſe gentle means before you come to extremity, in whatever leſſon you work him, and never take above half his ſtrength, nor ride him till he is weary, but a little at a time and often. Be always laviſh of your careſſes, and ſparing in your corrections. When you do correct him, let it be to ſome purpoſe, but only one ſtroke at a time, whether it be with the ſpur, the ſwitch, the voice, or the *chambriere*, and even that not often repeated.

You may careſs him as much and as often as you pleaſe; as by patting him gently with your hand; talking kindly to him; ſtroking him; flattering him; or ſometimes by uſing a certain particular tone of voice, that is common to cajole ſkittiſh and unruly horſes. You may alſo reward him now and then in ſummer-time with graſs, green corn, beautiful and odoriferous flowers, pleaſant herbs, and ſuch fruits as horſes love. In winter give him in a ſmall ſieve made on purpoſe, a few oats, wheat, clean barly, the fineſt bran or bread. You may alſo give him bread with your hand, or ſugar, or ſweetmeats, or a little honey to lick off a ſtick; apples, carrots, or turnips cut in pieces, are alſo proper rewards in winter, when he has done well, and may be eaten in a ſhort time. You may have a groom to rub him, while he takes breath between his voltes. But if your horſe has a good memory, and is full of ſpirits, this is better let alone: for after having been worked, he will imagine he is to begin again as ſoon as the groom has rubbed him. Uſe none of theſe things therefore with impatient horſes; nor think to cure their eagerneſs by reſtraint, which only makes them worſe. Horſes take great delight in ſmelling to perfumed gloves, and in hearing of muſick, which refreſhes them very much.

CHAP. XII.

When a Horſe is ſo ſtiff-necked that he will not look into the Volte, nor turn his Head, or his Neck; when he holds his Head or his Neck out of the Volte; and when my Caveſon, which I commonly uſe, is not ſufficient, you muſt then have recourſe to this Invention.

THE caveſon has a ring on each ſide, and another in the middle; for which reaſon, my way, I have two reins, which have a little ring at each end, and I put the end of the rein thro' the ring, and faſten it to the pommel. I draw down the reins cloſe to the ſaddle-bow under my thighs, and paſſing them thro' the rings of the caveſon, bring them back ſtrait to my hands.

It muſt be obſerv'd, that the three rings of the caveſon divide it into four parts, and that (working with the left rein, that is in the ring next to me) I have

BOOK IV.

I have only a quarter force in pulling, and the horſe has three quarters againſt me: ſo that an oſtinate ſtiff-necked horſe may eaſily be too ſtrong for me. I faſten the rein of the caveſon therefore as before, except that inſtead of putting it thro' the left ring, I put it thro' the right, tho' I work my horſe to the left: Thus have I three times the force of the horſe, which is too much for him. I would have you faſten inſtead of holding it, the rein that comes back to your hand to the pommel of the ſaddle, becauſe it has the greater force. This irreſiſtibly draws the outſide of his head, and makes him look into the volte with both eyes, whether he will or no, which is the only way in the world to make him ſupple. For what uſually makes a horſe ſo ſtiff is, that he looks out with the eye without the volte, which the left ring cannot bring in; but the right will, drawing of it to the left ſide, as I told you, and it entirely does the buſineſs, and makes him ſo ſupple that it is a pleaſure to ride him. What I have ſaid of the left hand, is equally the ſame for the right.

This, believe me, is the beſt way in the world to make a horſe ſupple, tho' he were as ſtiff-necked as a bull: for the whole art lies in making him look in with both eyes. I muſt not omit to tell you, that you will find it difficult to work both the reins of the caveſon, becauſe by their croſſing they hinder and ſtop one another, and don't eaſily ſlip thro' the rings. But to prevent this, you muſt have your rings very large, ſo that the reins may not be ſtopped by the caveſon, nor by one another. Tho' they ſtop a little in your hand, the groom will eaſily draw the rein you want, and faſten it to the pommel: or, you may make uſe only of one rein, and when you have worked your horſe enough on one ſide, put it on the other, and ſo you will never be hindered.

Uſe this as the beſt help I know, for all ſorts of horſes to make them ſupple, and look into the volte with both eyes, which is the higheſt perfection of the manege. It is better for Terre-à-terre than the Paſſage.

CHAP. XIII.

The three following Leſſons are very efficacious, and moſt excellent in Terre-à-terre and Curvets. I call theſe the Rule of Three, or the Golden Rule.

Firſt, to work Terre-à-terre with the Caveſon, as I have directed in the preceding Chapter.

I. THERE is no better way to make a horſe obedient, both to the hand and heel, and to put him upon the haunches, than to draw the inner rein of the caveſon very high towards the outward ſhoulder, bringing that ſhoulder in, and helping ſtrongly with the outer leg; to put him together, teach him to obey both hand and heel, and put him upon the haunches.

To work with the Bridle only, the Reins ſeparated and in both Hands.

II. When the reins are ſeparate and in both hands, draw the inner rein very high towards the contrary ſhoulder, to which hand ſo ever you go, and put that ſhoulder in, helping at the ſame time with the contrary leg. This puts him together, throws him upon the haunches, and makes him obey both hand and heel. There is no better leſſon than this.

To work a Horſe with the Bridle in the Left Hand only.

III. The reins of the bridle, which ought to be ſeparated by the little finger only, are in this poſition: To the right hand the inner rein is above the little finger,

finger, and to the left hand the inner rein is under the little finger. To the right hand therefore you muſt put the bridle on the left ſide of the horſe, in order to draw the inner rein: but you need not turn up the nails of your bridle-hand, only hold it firm and ſtrait, the knuckles of your fingers without the neck of the horſe; and continuing this poſture, put out the knuckles of your little finger in ſuch manner, that the thumb may ſink a little, in order to draw the inner and ſlacken the outer rein: for when the little finger joints turn out, they ſlacken the outer rein, which is under that finger, and tighten the inner rein, which is above it; and this is according to art. Beſides, the horſeman's ſhoulder may naturally come in, which is juſt and eaſy; and thus the inner rein is in the ſame line with your left or outer ſhoulder, which is the whole affair. CHAP. XIV.

You ought in Terre-à-terre to put your hand every time a little forwards; for if you keep it in the ſame place, or draw it towards you, you tighten the curb, and keep the horſe down, or upon his ſhoulders; but by putting your hand a little forwards, you looſe the curb, and neceſſarily put him upon the haunches. The elbow of the bridle-arm ought always to be much lower than the hand, in order to keep the horſe upon his haunches. It ought to be ſo in like manner, when the reins of the caveſon, the falſe reins, or the reins of the bridle are ſeparated and in both hands, or when they are in the left hand only.

It is quite otherwiſe to the left hand: for to the left you muſt pull the inner rein. You muſt therefore turn up the nails of your bridle-hand as much as poſſible towards your right ſhoulder, becauſe that rein lies under the little finger that works it. By turning up your hand in this manner, your inward rein comes into the ſame line as your right ſhoulder, which does the whole buſineſs. Bring your right ſhoulder a little in, becauſe that draws the inner rein, which lies under your little finger, and ſlackens the outer rein which is over that finger; in like manner as to the right hand you draw the inner rein that lies over that finger, and looſe the outer rein that lies under it.

In Terre-à-terre you muſt bring in the right ſhoulder a little for the left hand, and help with the outer leg. Here ends that moſt excellent leſſon, called the *Rule of Three*.

CHAP. XIV.

A very ſubtile and exact Rule to make a Horſe go Terre-à-Terre truly, or in Curvets, by which, when he fails, the true Cauſe may be known.

FIRST faſten the caveſon as I directed (the laſt way pleaſes me beſt;) then for the right hand, draw with that hand the rein of the caveſon, turning up the nails towards the left ſhoulder till they almoſt touch it; and ſo there will be an oblique line croſs the horſe's neck, from the right ſide of it to your left ſhoulder, which will give him the bent like a bow, or a ſemicircle; and the right rein of the caveſon, which is in your right hand, being drawn thus high towards your ſhoulder, is the middle or center of that ſemicircle made by the horſe: for if you meaſure from your hand to the horſe's noſe, and again from your hand to his croupe, you will find the diſtance equal; wherefore your hand is in the center of the ſemicircle.

If you faſten the rein to the pommel, it will be all one with regard to the line, only that the line perhaps will be a little ſhorter; for you ſee that the pommel

BOOK IV.

pommel is in the middle of the horſe, as the rein will be if you draw it towards your left ſhoulder, by which you only make the line longer. This rein being an oblique line from one ſide to the other, which here is from right to left, it is in the middle of the horſe: ſo that between your legs and thoſe of the horſe's, by an exact and mathematical menſuration, there is a plain, which plain you carry with you. Now while you keep this line, your horſe can never go amiſs; but the moment you change or break it, all goes wrong. Nor does this line put him in the ſemicircle only, but, like a balance, it alſo weighs up the hind-leg within the volte, putting it out to a certain degree; and helping with your outer leg, to put out his hind-leg within the volte, it ſerves to poiſe the ſaid hind-leg in an equal manner with the other.

Thus the horſe will go regularly as in a ſquare, becauſe he cannot err while you keep this line exact and equal. Juſt as the four legs of a horſe make four circles Terre-à-terre, of which circles the pillar is the center. Thus the body of the horſe, bent in a ſemicircle by drawing the inner rein towards the outer ſhoulder, and bringing the outer ſhoulder in, ſo that the hand and the ſhoulder meet in a point, the center of the ſemicircle, which ſemicircle of the horſe, and center of the hand and of the ſhoulder, move in the four circles of the horſe's feet, as the ſun moves in the ecliptic line acroſs the zodiack, or the planets in their proper ſpheres or circles. This is an excellent leſſon.

For the Left Hand.

Put the bridle in your right hand, and with your left draw the left rein of the caveſon, turning up your nails towards your right ſhoulder, and helping it with your outer, that is, your right leg. In the reſt follow the inſtructions given for the right hand, taking great care to keep the line.

As to the falſe reins, which are faſtened in my manner to the arches of the bit, you muſt help the horſe with them as with the rings of the caveſon, always keeping the line.

The bridle in the left hand only, works as well to the right as to the left, as I have ſhewn you in the laſt part of the rule of three, which is the quinteſſence of working with the bridle in the left hand only. There you will find, if you work well, that the inner rein (which is the oblique line) is thus kept exactly. If you preſerve this line with care, your horſe cannot go amiſs Terre-à-terre, for which this is an excellent leſſon.

It is for this reaſon that I wonder, when I ſee horſemen put their right ſhoulder in when they go to the right, and their left when they go to the left: I pronounce boldly of ſuch riders, that they have ſufficiently broke the line.

Thus when they go to the right, they turn their hand up in the old manner towards the inſide of the horſe's neck, which draws the outward rein; and when they go to the left, they turn up their hand to the inſide of the horſe's neck, which draws and works the outer rein; ſo that they always turn their hand to the ſide the horſe goes of, which is very ridiculous and abſurd, becauſe it deſignedly breaks the line. But I pardon them all theſe faults, and many others, ſaying with St. STEPHEN, when he prayed for his perſecutors, *Lord forgive them, for they know not what they do.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Another Poſture for a Horſeman in Curvets and Terre-à-terre.

THIS differs not from what I before told you in the chapter of a horſeman's ſeat, except that you muſt put your ſtomach out, hold your breaſt very ſtiff, and cloſe your thighs at every curvet, which helps the horſe with your fork, and puts your thighs forward, ſo that you cannot ſit upon them, and conſequently puts you upon your fork, and leaves a large ſpace between the end of the ſaddle and your thighs, as there ought to be. Beſides, thus your hand helps him up, which obliges him to be upon the haunches.

The ſame ſeat ſhould be kept Terre-à-terre, except that you muſt not help your horſe with your hand every time, as in Curvets. You have only to hold him up, in order to oblige him to be on the haunches.

CHAP. XVI.

To work a Horſe with the Head to the Pillar, to make him ſenſible to the Heel, and put him upon the Haunches.

THE caveſon my way makes the horſe look into the volte with both eyes, puts him upon the haunches, and works his ſhoulders.

To work the croupe: To put a horſe's head to the wall, but the croupe before the ſhoulders, to raiſe and ſtop him upon the hand, puts him upon the haunches, and works his croupe.

This way which here follows works the croupe more effectually. Faſten the caveſon to the pommel in my laſt manner: For example, for the left hand, faſten the rein of the caveſon in ſuch manner, as to make the horſe look into the volte with both eyes. Then put his head to the pillar to the left hand, and let the pillar be on the inſide of his head; becauſe that works the croupe, ſince it goes before the ſhoulders. When you find that the croupe is not ſupple enough, turn up the little finger of the left hand, with which you hold the bridle, towards the right ſhoulder, which draws the inward rein: give him at the ſame time a ſmart ſtroke with the right ſpur, bringing in your left ſhoulder, which is that within the volte.

This puts the ſhoulders ſo to the right, that the croupe muſt of neceſſity go to the left: and the croupe goes ſo to the left, that you cannot make him go far in this manner, becauſe the pillar hinders, till you pull him back, which ſhould be in a circle. Now by making him go backwards, you make him obey the heel, becauſe the croupe goes before the ſhoulders; and beſides, it puts him upon the haunches, and the more ſo, if you raiſe him ſometimes circularly in Peſades.

I have often told you before, that if you bring into the volte your inward ſhoulder, and put your hand much out, tho' it puts in the horſe's croupe, yet it makes him go as wrong with his legs as if you pulled the outward rein. You ought to underſtand this well; it means, that if your hand is without the volte, and beyond your body, then the horſe goes wrong, becauſe you have loſt your line: but while your hand is within your ſhoulder, tho' you put in the inner ſhoulder, yet the horſe will go right, in as much as you keep the line. This aid ought not to be uſed except in caſe of neceſſity, when the horſe diſobeys the heel.

BOOK IV.

CHAP. XVII.

To work a Horſe's Croupe to the left, the Croupe being to the Pillar.

THE caveſon ought to be fixed as before, and the reins of the bridle in the left hand. Now you go to the left, the pillar ſhould be on the outſide of the croupe, that it may go before the ſhoulders. Draw the bridle towards your right ſhoulder, turning up the little finger, and put in your ſhoulder within the volte, that is, your left.

If the horſe is not obedient enough to the heel, help him firm with your hand, in order to put his ſhoulders out, and at the ſame time give him a ſmart ſtroke with the right ſpur. This will neceſſarily put in his croupe, ſince his ſhoulders are without the volte, and his croupe put in at the ſame time. But the croupe will be ſo diſtant from the circle in which he ought to move, that you cannot bring it there again but by pulling him a little back.

His croupe being now within the pillar, you ought to put in your ſhoulder within the volte, as you did when he went backwards, in order to keep the circle when the head was without the pillar: you ought to do the ſame now, when his croupe is within the pillar, in order to ſubject it the more. Nothing will be falſe while you keep the line (that is, the bridle-hand) within your ſhoulder: but if you put it beyond your body, you will loſe the line, and the horſe will go wrong.

To raiſe him ſometimes in Peſades, the croupe within the pillar, and before the ſhoulders, puts him much upon the haunches. The diſobedience to the heel is in the outer haunch, which this leſſon works: You ſhould therefore continue it till you find the outer haunch very ſupple, and then return to the true method. Nothing in the world works the croupe and haunches like this; and you will find your advantage in it if you do it well. Uſe the ſame helps to the right hand, to ſubject the croupe and make him obey the heel.

CHAP. XVIII.

A Diſcourſe concerning the ſingle Pillar the old way, which is very falſe for Terre-à-terre.

I WILL ſhew you now the great error of him that firſt invented the pillar for Terre-à-terre, with the long rope or *longe*, and let you ſee that every oblique line does not work Terre-à-terre, but only mine, which is made in a croſs over the horſe's neck.

Let us take then, for example, the long rein to the pillar: They faſten one of the ends of this long rein or rope to the caveſon, and the other end to the pillar; or it is held by a groom, which makes an oblique line from the horſe to the pillar, and this indeed works the ſhoulders furiouſly, but no way affects the croupe, as my oblique line acroſs the neck does. This long cord beſides works the outer ſhoulder, which narrows the fore-part, and leaves the hind at large; and this in Terre-à-terre is a ſoleciſm. For I have told you often, that the fore-part Terre-à-terre ought to be large, and the croupe narrow. But the long rein and the pillar produce the contrary, and no way affect the croupe, as you will ſee by what follows. If the croupe is more at large than the fore-part, the horſe cannot go well Terre-à-terre; no more can he

he when the croupe is out. For this reaſon they ſpur to put the croupe right, whereas they are as wrong this way with it in, as out; for the croupe is as large now, as it was before; and being now within, the inward hind-leg goes before the ſhoulder on the ſame ſide, which is quite wrong, and as much ſo as when the croupe was out, and that the hind-leg without the volte went larger than the ſhoulder of the ſame ſide. So that the long rope round a pillar is a ſilly invention, and very falſe Terre-à-terre; becauſe it does not at all work the croupe, but keeps the ſhoulders narrow, which is juſt the reverſe of what ought to be. Thus, you ſee, that this extraordinary invention is good for nothing. CHAP. XIX.

CHAP. XIX.

A Diſcourſe concerning the two Pillars.

THE method of the two pillars is worth nothing; for it puts the horſe ſo off his bars and his curb, and ſo much upon the caveſon, that he will not go without pillars, as I have ſeen in many horſes. Neither is it good for Curvets, and it is yet worſe for Leaps: for it puts the horſe ſo upon the haunches, that his croupe has no liberty to play; and how ſhould he leap with the croupe confined? My way with one pillar gives all liberty to the croupe, and puts the horſe in the hand. You may alſo teach him to leap againſt a wall. As ſoon as he has made a leap, you muſt raiſe him immediately upon the hand, cauſing him to make a very high peſade, which puts him upon the haunches: for in all leaps a horſe ought to be in the hand. A nimble horſe will very ſoon learn this.

End of the Laſt Diviſion of Leſſons, and of the Fourth Book of the New Method of Dreſſing Horſes.

THE

THE

EPITOME of HORSEMANSHIP,

Which I desire may be not only read and studied, but learned by Heart; and it will give all the Advantage and Satisfaction that can be desired in this noble Art.

CHAP. I.

How to ride a Horse with Art. First, of the many Uses to be made of the inward Rein of the Caveson fastened to the Pommel of the Saddle.

IT is good for trotting and galloping a horse upon large circles, and *d'une piste*, upon smaller, or with the croupe rather out, working with the inward leg and inward caveson rein, and also with the inward rein of the bridle, sometimes with the outward rein of the bridle. This puts him upon his shoulders (because it draws his head down, and consequently makes him feel the bitt) brings in his outward shoulder, and narrows him before, and by the same means leaves his croupe large; it also works and supples the shoulders extreamly, but the croupe is then lost, because the horse is straitened within the volte, and at large without. A horse thus gallops as he ought, leading with the fore-leg within the volte, and his hind-leg of the same side following it, which is the true gallop. All these advantages come from the inward rein of the caveson fastened to the pommel my way, with these helps of the leg and rein of the same side, which makes the shoulders supple, and works them. This is the best lesson that can be for a young or ignorant horse.

Another Advantage of the inward Rein of the Caveson fastened my Way to the Pommel of the Saddle.

If you fasten it to the right, put your horse's head to the pillar, and go to the left, helping him in that posture with leg and rein of the same side, putting the croupe to the left. Tho' you go to the left, yet the horse's shoulders are made supple for the right. And if you fasten to the pommel the left rein of the caveson (putting the head to the pillar, and working with rein and leg of the same side) tho' you go to the right, and with the croupe out to the right, yet the shoulders of the horse are worked and made supple for the left. This lesson works well the shoulders, and makes him extreamly supple: but the croupe is lost, because one works with the rein and leg of the same side. It is done upon a walk.

CHAP. II.

The Rein of the Caveson being still fixed to the Pommel, to work the Shoulders and the Croupe together upon the Passage and Walk, with the Croupe or the Head to the Pillar; but in another Manner than before, for here the inward Rein and outward Leg are to be used.

WHEN the head of a horse is put to the pillar for the right hand, care must be taken that the pillar be without the head; and then the horse will never be *entier*, for his shoulders will always go before his croupe. This is the action of the trot, which is cross ways, and the horse is narrow and large every second movement for that reason. When he crosses the fore-leg without

without the volte over the fore-leg within it, his fore-part is narrow, and his croupe large, the hind-leg advancing a little. And when he croſſes his hind-leg without the volte over the other hind-leg within it, his croupe is narrow, and his fore-part large; ſo that every ſecond time he is large and narrow; and as he always bears upon that part that is narrow, one movement he is upon the ſhoulders, and another upon the haunches. That which is neareſt the center makes the leaſt circle, and therefore is moſt confined: the croupe then being out, it makes the largeſt circle, and is the moſt worked, in order to obey the heel. CHAP. III.

If you faſten the rein of the caveſon to the pommel to the left hand, the head to the pillar, care muſt be taken that the pillar be without the head, working with the leg and the contrary rein as before, and for the ſame reaſons. The head being to the pillar, and the fore-part leading, the fore-part is to the center, and the croupe goes from it. This is done upon a walk, and works the outward haunch, making it ſupple to the heel. The horſe with his head to the pillar makes only two circles, the narroweſt with his fore-feet, and the larger with his croupe.

CHAP. III.

To put the Croupe to the Pillar, and work upon a Walk with the Leg and the contrary Rein, which ſhould ſtill be faſtened to the Pommel of the Saddle.

THE croupe here being to the center, care muſt be taken that the pillar is within the croupe, that the horſe may not be *entier*, becauſe ſo the ſhoulders will always go before the croupe. Tho' the croupe is to the pillar, the fore-part leading tends towards the center, and the croupe flys it, working leg and rein contrary.

The Paſſage is croſswiſe, which is the reaſon that the horſe is large and narrow every ſecond movement. When he is large before, his croupe is narrow; and when his croupe is large, his fore-part is narrow. This works his ſhoulders and his hind-leg without the volte, which makes him obedient to the heel. His fore-part makes the largeſt circle, and is therefore worked the moſt; but his croupe is the moſt preſſed and ſubjected, becauſe it makes the narroweſt circle, which puts him upon the haunches. This is a moſt excellent leſſon, becauſe it prepares a horſe for Terre-à-terre. For when he has the fore-part narrow, the hind-leg within the volte advances, which is half Terre-à-terre; and when he has the croupe narrow, the fore-leg within the volte advances, which is alſo half Terre-à-terre. His legs therefore in one movement perform the action of Terre-à-terre before, and in the other do the ſame behind; that is to ſay, that every movement, either before or behind, they perform this action, becauſe it is the action of the trot, and acroſs. There is no better leſſon than this.

The inward rein of the caveſon, fixed faſt and tight to the pommel, brings in (upon the Paſſage, which is done upon a walk) the outward ſhoulder. Now walking being the action of the trot, when the horſe is narrow before, his head is within his fore-legs, but at the ſame time his hind-leg within the volte is before his head; and when he is narrow behind, his fore-leg within the volte is before his head, but at the ſame time his head is before his hind-leg within the volte. The head therefore is always before one leg, and one

CHAP. VI.

leg at the ſame time before the head; that is to ſay, the head and the leg are alternately foremoſt every ſecond movement; and that becauſe it is a trot, which is an action in form of a croſs.

The outward ſhoulder ought to be brought very much in, which is the beſt thing that can be upon a walk, the croupe in; and the horſe will be in the hand and heel; for being convex without, he muſt endure the heel, and obey it, becauſe he cannot avoid it, the inward rein keeping him there. No better leſſon can be than this. His fore-part is worked, and his croupe ſubjected. He makes but two circles with his four legs, when he paſſages the croupe to the pillar; the fore-part makes the largeſt, and the croupe the leaſt.

CHAP. IV.

To paſſage a Horſe in his own Length, the Rein ſtill faſtened to the Pommel of the Saddle.

TO paſſage a horſe in his own length upon a walk works his ſhoulders, becauſe his ſhoulders are in the largeſt circle; but preſſes his croupe, puts him upon the haunches, and fixes them, becauſe they are in the narroweſt circle. It works the outward haunch, and makes it obedient to the heel; and there is no better leſſon.

CHAP. V.

The Rein of the Caveſon ſhould be ſtill fixed to the Pommel, and the Head to the Wall, working with the Rein and the contrary Leg.

THE head of a horſe to the wall, may be either as if the head, or as if the croupe was to the pillar. It is as if the head were to the pillar when the croupe goes before the head, becauſe then the croupe is worked, and the ſhoulders are preſſed and ſubjected. When the ſhoulders go before the croupe, they are the moſt worked, and the croupe is preſſed and ſubjected, ſo that the horſe is upon his haunches. To which hand ſoever you go, always work the inward rein and the outward leg. The wall puts the horſe upon his haunches, for he is afraid of hurting his noſe.

Here the ſhoulders are before the croupe, which works the ſhoulders, and ſubjects the croupe.

Here the croupe is before the ſhoulders, whereby theſe are ſtraitened, and that worked.

CHAP. VI.

To faſten the inward Rein of the Caveſon to the Pommel, and work with the Rein and the Leg of the ſame ſide.

THIS is moſt excellent upon a ſhort trot, to put a horſe upon his haunches (advancing upon one *piſte*:) for the hind-legs of a horſe being made like our arms, they make him bend in the ham, by putting out his inward hind-leg, and therefore he is upon the haunches. There is no better leſſon for that purpoſe.

All the preceding leſſons, and different manners of working a horſe with the inward rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pommel, are moſt excellent. There are ſix of them, all done upon a walk.

To

To draw the inward rein of the caveſon low towards your thigh in the horſe's length, is an excellent leſſon to work him upon a walk, in order to prepare him for the *pirouette*, becauſe it works the ſhoulders, and the croupe is more fixed. But then I have no feeling of the horſe, and it ſeems as if we did not move together. CHAP. VII.

CHAP. VII.

A true Obſervation as to the Walk, the Trot, the Gallop upon one Piſte *in a Circle; the Paſſage, either the Head or the Croupe to the Pillar; Terre-à-terre, the Croupe to the Pillar, Curvets, Demi-Airs, the Head to the Pillar; Groupades, Balotades, and Caprioles upon Circles; or the Horſe's Head faſtened ſhort to the Pillar my way by the Rein of the Caveſon, in Curvets de Ferme-à-ferme, forwards or backwards, working with the Rein and Leg of the ſame Side, or Rein and Leg contrary: whereby it will be ſeen, that what part ſoever leads the Way, the ſame tends to the Center, and the other part of the Horſe avoids it. This Rule never fails, whether the Fore-part or the Croupe leads the Way, as will appear from Example.*

THE inward rein of the caveſon being faſtened to the pommel, working with the leg and rein of the ſame ſide, whether upon a trot or gallop, one *piſte*, the fore-part leads the way, and comes in, and conſequently tends towards the center, and the croupe avoids it.

The head to the pillar, working with leg and rein of the ſame ſide, the croupe leads the way, and therefore tends towards the center, and the fore-part flies it.

Working with rein and leg contrary (the head to the pillar and the pillar without the head) the fore-part leads the way, and tends towards the center, and the croupe flies from it to which hand ſoever you go.

The croupe towards the pillar, and the pillar within the croupe, the fore-part leads the way, and therefore tends towards the center, and the croupe avoids it. This is upon a walk or paſſage.

Terre-à-terre the fore-part leads the way, and therefore tends towards the center, and the croupe avoids it. So in *pirouettes* or in demivoltes upon Paſſades, which are only half *pirouettes*, the fore-part leads the way, and therefore tends to the center, and the croupe ſhuns it.

In like manner in Curvets, Demi-Airs, Groupades, Balotades, and Caprioles upon circles or voltes, the fore-part leads the way, and for that reaſon tends towards the center, and the croupe avoids it. Thus at the pillar my way, the caveſon faſtened ſhort to the pillar, the fore-part leads the way upon the circles, and for that reaſon tends towards the center, and the croupe avoids it And it is the ſame when a horſe goes back upon curvets, his croupe then leads the way, and conſequently tends towards the center, and the fore-part ſhuns it.

It is an infallible rule, whether one works well or ill, that the part which leads the way, tends towards the center. For example, it is working ill when Terre-à-terre one makes the croupe lead the way; yet the croupe then tends towards the center, and the fore-part avoids it: ſo that the rule is always true, let a horſe be ever ſo badly rode.

General

CHAP. VIII.

General Rules.

That which leads the way, whether it be the fore-part or the croupe, always tends towards the center, and the other part of the horſe avoids it. And it is a rule equally general and true, that whatever makes the largeſt circle, whether it be the fore-part or the croupe, is the moſt worked, becauſe it goes the farther and is at liberty, whether it tends towards or avoids the center; and that whatever makes the ſmalleſt circle, is the moſt ſubjected and preſſed. For the head to the pillar, and the pillar without the head, the horſe leads the way with the fore-part; and for that reaſon the fore-part tends to the center, and the croupe avoids it; tho' the croupe is moſt worked, becauſe it makes the largeſt circle, which occaſions the fore-part to be moſt ſubject, and the horſe to be upon it, that is, upon his ſhoulders.

Thus the horſe's croupe being towards the pillar, and the pillar within the croupe, the croupe being in, the fore-part leads the way, and therefore tends towards the center, which the croupe avoids: yet the fore-part is the moſt worked, becauſe it is in the largeſt circle, and the croupe moſt ſubjected and preſſed, becauſe it is in the narroweſt circle; and conſequently the horſe is upon the haunches. It is juſt the ſame when you work in his own length.

An Obſervation.

It is better to faſten the caveſon my way, to the girth, becauſe it draws down the horſe's head, and conſequently brings the outward ſhoulder more in, which is the beſt way on all accounts for ſuppling a horſe; but is wrong for Terre-à-terre and Curvets.

All theſe leſſons are perfect and moſt excellent, and are the right methods of working a horſe with truth in the manege. For what can one have more? ſince a horſe can commit no fault, but it muſt be in the fore or hind-part, by diſobeying either the hand or heel. Now you have here excellent leſſons to make either the ſhoulders or the croupe ſupple, to make the horſe obey the hand or the heel, and to make him obey both together; and one can have no more.

CHAP. VIII.

Which contains a true Obſervation for dreſſing Horſes.

THE horſe being, after man, the moſt noble of all animals (for he is as much ſuperior to all other creatures as man is to him, and therefore holds a ſort of middle place between man and the reſt of the creation) he is wiſe and ſubtile; for which reaſon man ought carefully to preſerve his empire over him, knowing how nearly that wiſdom and ſubtilty approaches his own. This may eaſily be ſeen in the following example. When a horſe is much preſſed, he finds out how to avoid it ſooner than any man can ſhew him; and this the rider ſhould have particular regard to in working him.

If he is upon the ſhoulders when you ſtop him, he hurts his noſe with the caveſon, and his mouth with the bridle. Now to avoid all this, he puts himſelf upon the haunches, and draws in his head, which prevents the hurting his noſe or mouth, and makes him do what the rider deſires.

If

If between the two pillars he preſſes forwards, the caveſon hurts his noſe; if he runs back, it hurts his jaws; if he goes from ſide to ſide, he is hurt there too: the horſe therefore having experienced all theſe inconveniences, keeps in the middle, and riſes to ſave himſelf from being hurt, which is juſt what the rider wants. CHAP. X.

In like manner, when the rein of the caveſon is tied ſhort my way to the pommel of the ſaddle, it bends and brings in his neck extreamly; which hurts him ſo much, that he finds himſelf eaſed in not preſſing upon the caveſon; conſequently he bends his neck farther in, which is what the rider deſires.

So the rein faſtened ſo ſhort to the pillar my way, that the horſe cannot eaſily riſe, becauſe it ſtill pulls him down, he is ſo ſubtile as to eaſe himſelf by going upon the haunches. This is indeed the only way he had to relieve himſelf, and juſt what the rider deſires.

Thus when you put the head of a horſe to a wall, he puts himſelf upon the haunches for fear of hurting his head againſt the wall, and to get farther from it. Now what the rider wants is, that he ſhould be upon the haunches.

In whatever action the horſe is upon the ſhoulders, if the rider hurts him with the caveſon or the bridle, he puts himſelf upon the haunches to get relief, and ſo complies with the rider's wiſh: for no horſe can be perfectly dreſſed till he is upon the haunches, and till the curb is looſe and plays. But the curb may be ſlack, and yet the horſe not upon the haunches: no horſe however is upon the haunches unleſs his curb be ſlack; for which reaſon the horſe ſhould do it to find eaſe, and ſhould not be forced to it by the rider.

CHAP. IX.

To make a Horſe obey the Heels.

WHEN a horſe is reſty, and will not go forward, he muſt be ſpurred till he will: he finds himſelf eaſed from the ſpur by obeying, and therefore will continue to obey. If he is obſtinate the firſt morning, he will ſubmit another day: you ſhould then pardon him many faults, and not be too ſevere, unleſs he commits thoſe faults maliciouſly. If ſo, you muſt ſpur him again, and if he won't obey the heel, you muſt continue ſpurring till he does, for he will obey at laſt to find eaſe.

So that thoſe are greatly deceived, and very ignorant, who think to make a horſe obey the heel without following this method: and by the leave of thoſe great philoſophers, who have writ of this matter, and are altogether miſtaken, this is not the way to make him more reſty. It is neither the ſwitch, the *chambriere*, the calf of the leg, nor gentle treatment, that will conquer a vicious jade: you might as well give him roſe-water and ſugar. But, to end all diſpute, I have this way conquered all the horſes I ever had. The medicine therefore is excellent, and proved ſo by experience.

CHAP. X.

To work the Croupe of a Horſe before his Head, or his Shoulders, upon a Circle, is extreamly wrong; unleſs upon the moſt urgent neceſſity. As for me, I would never have it practiſed.

WHEN a horſe's head is to the pillar, and the pillar on the inſide of his head, the croupe goes before the ſhoulders. It is the ſame when the croupe is to the pillar, if the pillar is on the outſide the croupe. Now this is wrong to all intents and purpoſes. For when his head is to the pillar, and both

CHAP. XI.

both his legs are within it, he cannot make a quarter-volte without being *entier*. The ſame may be ſaid when his croupe is to the pillar, and the pillar without his croupe; beſides that he turns from the ſide on which he ought to go, and trots circularly backwards, quite contrary to what he does when he advances; and, what is worſe, he is bent in a circle to the right hand, his ſhoulders go to the left againſt that circle, his croupe to the right, and in reality he keeps neither center nor circle, but loſes them both. It is juſt the ſame to the left hand.

Tho' it may be thought that this works the croupe, it is a great miſtake; the croupe ſhuns the rider indeed, not that it obeys the heel, but becauſe the rider puts it from him, by putting the head on the contrary ſide. To ſay the whole of the matter, this works neither ſhoulders nor croupe, but both are loſt, and keep neither circle nor center, and the horſe goes backwards upon a falſe trot.

It is contradictory then to all reaſon, for the croupe of a horſe to go before his ſhoulders, in any caſe whatſoever, unleſs in Curvets upon voltes backwards, and in Curvets upon a ſtrait line backwards; becauſe the action of the curvet differs much from the action of a walk, which is that of the trot, and performed croſs-wiſe.

But it may be aſked, why a horſe is not *entier* when he goes with the croupe before the ſhoulders in Terre-à-terre? which he may do. I anſwer, it is becauſe he has but one haunch before the ſhoulders, and ſo he may go, tho' it be wrong. But if he had both his hind-legs within the pillar, he could not go at all without being *entier*.

However it be, avoid putting the croupe, or half the croupe, before the ſhoulders, it being one of the wrongeſt things in the world, and the moſt dangerous that can be for a horſe. He ſhould be brought indeed to bear and obey the heel; but ſo he obeys neither the hand nor the heel, nor are his ſhoulders at all worked.

CHAP. XI.

The Perfection of Terre-à-terre.

YOU muſt firſt put your horſe ſide-ways, his head in the volte, and his croupe to the center, leaning on your outer ſtirrup, your leg quite cloſe to the horſe, and the toes of your inner foot a little turned out, ſo that your body may be a little oblique; turning your head up (not in) ſo that the inward eye looks on the ſhoulder of the ſame ſide, which puts that inward ſhoulder a little forwards, and keeps the outward ſhoulder back.

The reins of the bridle ought to be ſomewhat long, and drawn without the pommel towards the outward ſhoulder, in order that with the inward rein you may draw up the head of the horſe, to make him look into the volte. This preſſes the horſe without, gives liberty to his inward legs, (becauſe they lead the way) and puts him upon the haunches, ſo that he always advances; for the horſe always follows the action of the horſeman that rides him.

Thus he will obey both the hand and the heel, be upon the haunches, and go eaſily and freely, agreeably, and not contrary to nature. This is the perfection of Terre-à-terre, which is to ſtop the ſhoulders with the hand, and preſs the croupe.

The

The ſame aids muſt be uſed for the left, changing the body, the legs, and the hand. They will alſo do in Demi-voltes, Terre-à-terre, and upon a ſlow Gallop upon the voltes, the croupe in, and in Curvets. CHAP. XII.

OBSERVATION.

To paſſage a Horſe upon a Walk, the Croupe without or within, working with Leg and Rein contrary, namely, the inward Rein and the outward Leg.

YOU muſt always pull up the horſe's head, to preſs him without the volte, and give him liberty within, which makes him always advance: his inward legs lead the way to prepare him for Terre-à-terre, which puts him upon the haunches, ſo that he is light in the hand.

When a horſe is preſſed within the volte, he muſt of courſe (when he is rode with the bridle only) look out and carry his head out, for his own eaſe; and when he is preſſed without the volte, he muſt neceſſarily look in and carry his head in, for the ſame reaſon. This is as it ſhould be, and the contrary to it wrong.

All that I have taught before is very good; but there is only one truth, which is this, and in its full extent ſo perfect for the Paſſage, Terre-à-terre, or Curvets, that one need have recourſe to nothing elſe.

I repeat very often what ſhould be done in Terre-à-Terre, that my inſtructions may be punctually obſerved.

If a horſe brings his ſhoulders too much in, in Terre-à-terre, he puts his croupe too much out; and the way to remedy this is to ſtop his ſhoulders, and preſs his croupe.

If he does not bring his ſhoulders enough in, he puts his croupe in too much; the way to help this is to bring in his inner ſhoulder, and aid him with both legs, but a little more within than without: for the ſhoulders ſhould always go before the croupe, which is the truth.

To change Terre-à-terre.

You muſt bring the ſhoulders of the horſe a little into the volte, to ſtop the croupe, and afterwards change, ſhifting the hand and the leg, and working always with the inner rein.

The ſame aids that are uſed Terre-à-terre, ſhould be uſed in demi-voltes Terre-à-terre; they are one thing, and differ only in being a half inſtead of a whole volte.

To change upon the Gallop à la Soldade.

Whether it be within or without the volte, whether it be a demi-volte or a quarter-volte, ſtill it muſt be a part of Terre-à-terre. You muſt always therefore aid the horſe with the inner rein and the outer leg: but whilſt you gallop, you muſt work with the inward rein and inward leg.

CHAP. XII.

The Conveniences and Inconveniences of the Caveſon-Rein tied ſhort my Way to the Pommel of the Saddle.

THE caveſon-rein tied ſhort, my way, to the pommel of the ſaddle, is to give the horſe *appuy*, fix him in the hand, and ſettle his head, drawing it down.

It is alſo excellent for a horſe that is too heavy in hand; for the caveſon-rein tied tight to the pommel of the ſaddle, always within the volte, hinders him from bearing

CHAP. XII.

bearing too much on the bridle, which makes him very light, and fixes him in the hand.

The caveſon-rein tied ſhort to the pommel, is alſo excellent to ſupple the ſhoulders, which is the beſt thing that can be done.

Thus the caveſon gives *appuy* to a horſe that has none, takes it from him that has too much, and makes the ſhoulders extreamly ſupple, which is a great matter.

It alſo makes a horſe gallop with his legs right, ſo that he goes more eaſily afterwards Terre-à-terre: for it lengthens the legs within the volte, and ſhortens thoſe without, which is as they ſhould be.

The caveſon-rein therefore is good to work the ſhoulders of a horſe in every reſpect; and the croupe is loſt in working with the rein and the leg on the ſame ſide: it is alſo good in working with the rein and leg contrary, in almoſt all leſſons. This is the advantage you receive from the inner rein of the caveſon tied ſhort to the pommel of the ſaddle.

The Inconvenience in Terre-à-terre from the inner Caveſon-Rein tied to the Pommel of the Saddle.

The inner rein of the caveſon tied to the pommel of the ſaddle brings in the outward ſhoulder of the horſe very much, whereas Terre-à-terre the inner ſhoulder ought to be brought in. By drawing in the outward ſhoulder you narrow the horſe's fore-part, which neceſſarily makes the croupe large; but in Terre-à-terre the ſhoulders ſhould be large, and the croupe narrow.

If after you have brought in the outward ſhoulder, you put in the croupe, it goes before the ſhoulders; whereas Terre-à-terre the ſhoulders ought to go before the croupe.

Bringing in the outward ſhoulder, and putting in the croupe too, you make the horſe go backwards; whereas Terre-à-terre he ought to advance the ſhoulders firſt.

When you thus narrow the fore-part, and the croupe is in, the fore-part is within the lines of the hind-legs; whereas Terre-à-terre the hind-legs ought to be within the lines of thoſe before.

When you thus narrow the fore-part, and the croupe is in, the croupe leads the way, and the fore-part follows it; whereas Terre-à-terre the fore-part ought to lead the way, and the croupe to follow it.

When you thus narrow the fore-part, and the croupe is in, the horſe is preſſed within the volte, and at full liberty without it; whereas Terre-à-terre he ought to be preſſed without, and at liberty within, that he may the better embrace the volte. When the croupe goes before the ſhoulders, the horſe is as if he was reſty, and ſhuns the ſpur, becauſe he goes backwards. When the ſhoulders lead the croupe, and the horſe advances, he goes with freedom and alacrity, as if he deſpiſed the ground; but when the croupe leads the ſhoulders, every thing is wrong. Beſides, he acquires an ill cuſtom; for when one rides him with the bridle only, his croupe foremoſt, he looks without the volte, becauſe he cannot look within it: but when the ſhoulders go foremoſt, he looks within the volte as he ought to do, becauſe he cannot look without.

But, what is the worſt of all, when the croupe goes before the ſhoulders, the legs go croſs, which is the action of a trot upon the ſwiftneſs of a gallop; whereas Terre-à-terre the two legs within the volte ought to lead the way, which

which is a true gallop: for Terre-à-terre is nothing but a gallop in time. When you work a horſe with the bridle only, you muſt help with the inward rein; for if you uſe the outward, the horſe will go as wrong as with the rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pommel of the ſaddle, becauſe it narrows him as much before; and if you aid him with the outward leg, his croupe is as much before his ſhoulders. CHAP. XV.

Obſerve, that to faſten the caveſon-rein my way to the pommel of the ſaddle, within the volte, is the moſt excellent thing in the world for Terre-à-terre, if you preſs the horſe upon the legs without the volte: for the rein is wrong when the horſe is preſſed within the volte.

Note alſo, that the lower a horſe goes before, if he is preſſed without the volte, the more he will go upon his haunches.

CHAP. XIII.

For the Piroüete.

THE action of a horſe's legs in the Piroüette is very ſtrange; for by working violently with the outward rein of the bridle, you ſtreighten the fore-part, and put the croupe more in the way of being help'd with the outward leg. Now this is the action of the legs in the Piroüette to the right: when he lifts his two fore-legs, he lifts at the ſame time the hind-leg without the volte; ſo that he has three legs in the air at once, and ſupports himſelf only upon the hind-leg within the volte.

When he ſets his three legs down, his outward ſhoulder coming very quick in, he moves at the ſame time (almoſt in one and the ſame place) the hind-leg within the volte to keep the circle. At the ſame time, I ſay, that his three legs come to the ground, his hind-leg within the volte moves, to follow the circle, but moves as it were on the ſame place; ſo that this inward hind-leg touches the center: for tho' it moves, it moves almoſt always on one ſpot, and only turns round. When the horſe's head grows giddy, and he cannot continue this motion any longer for fear of falling, he puts forward his hind-leg within the volte to ſtop himſelf. Theſe are exactly the aids and movements of a horſe's legs in the Pirouette; otherwiſe he could not go ſo faſt as he ought.

CHAP. XIV.

For Paſſades.

DEMI-VOLTES upon Paſſades are only Demi-Piroüettes, and require the ſame aids; except that in Paſſades, upon a ſlow or full gallop, the horſe ought to make two or three falcades, or ſlides upon the haunches, before he turns.

The way to teach him, is to gallop him gently ſtrait forwards and ſtop him: after a little ſtop, you muſt turn him upon a walk, then gallop him again, ſtop him, and turn him as before. This will make him go perfectly well upon Paſſades.

CHAP. XV.

For Curvets.

THIS is the ſame thing, and conſequently has the ſame aids as Terre-à-terre; only you muſt ſupport the horſe a little more on the hand, ſo that he may advance very little, and he will be ſo much the more upon the haunches. You muſt help with the inward rein and outward leg, and the inward

CHAP. XVI.

ward leg ought not to be quite ſo cloſe to him as the outward; it muſt not be ſtiff, and the toes of it ſhould turn a little out, but the toes of both feet ſhould be down, that the hams may be more pliant. The aids ſhould be delicate, and not ſo violent as in Terre-à-terre.

It is true, that the horſe's fore-legs are near together, and within the lines of his hind-legs, which are more aſunder; but at the ſame time it is alſo true, that the hind-legs are within the lines of the ſhoulders, which makes the horſe to be upon the haunches.

For Curvets along a Wall.

The left ſide of a horſe being againſt a wall, in Curvets forwards, you muſt help with the rein that is fartheſt from the wall, and put the left ſhoulder a little in, without giving him any aid with your legs. In Curvets backwards, you muſt help him with the rein that is next to the wall.

The right ſide to the wall, in Curvets forwards, you muſt aid the horſe with the rein from the wall; in Curvets backwards, with the rein neareſt the wall.

By obſerving all theſe rules the croſs will be eaſily made, it being done with theſe four aids, forwards, backwards, to the near ſide, and to the off ſide.

In the Saraband you muſt work with the outward ſhoulder and rein, but not at all with the legs.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the different Helps of the inward Rein of the Caveſon (or falſe Rein) in the Rider's Hand.

THERE are three different helps with the inward rein of the caveſon in the hand of the rider: the firſt draws the outward ſhoulder; the ſecond draws in the inward ſhoulder; and the third is to ſtop the ſhoulders.

In all theſe three different aids you muſt bring in your own outward ſhoulder.

OBSERVATIONS.

The leg and the rein of the ſame ſide work the ſhoulders, and the croupe is loſt. The leg and rein contrary, with the head to the pillar, and the pillar without the head, works the croupe, and preſſes the ſhoulders.

The croupe towards the pillar, and the pillar within the croupe works the ſhoulders, preſſes the croupe, and puts the horſe upon his haunches. It is juſt the ſame in his own length, and it puts him likewiſe upon his haunches; ſo does the head to the wall, and alſo the working with the rein and the leg on the ſame ſide upon a ſhort trot; the ſtopping a horſe, the making him go backwards, the raiſing him before, provided it is not too high, the ſlow gallop upon circles, and Terre-à-terre.

But a ſingle pillar my way, in Curvets, puts him extremely upon the haunches. Now to put a horſe upon the haunches is the quinteſſence of our art; for when he is there, he may do whatever your deſire of him, if he is obedient and has ſtrength enough.

When a horſe goes by rote, you are to take notice that he does ſo by the eye only. For it is not the hand or the heel that he minds, but the pillar, the wall, or the notice he takes of the particular place where you give him his

leſſons. For this reaſon he who does not ride always in the ſame place, and who has neither pillar nor wall, finds his horſe the moſt obedient to the hand and the heel. CHAP. XVII.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the uſe of the two Reins of the Bridle.

YOU muſt work with the outward rein of the bridle in the Piroüette, becauſe the fore-part of the horſe is confined, and the croupe at liberty. You muſt alſo work with the outward rein of the bridle in Demi-Airs, upon Paſſades along a wall; becauſe the fore-part is confined, and the croupe at liberty, this being but a Demi-Piroüette. In like manner you muſt work with the outward rein of the bridle in Curvets backwards, in a ſtrait line; becauſe the fore-part is ſtill confined and the croupe at liberty, ſo that the croupe leads the way in Curvets backwards. And by the ſame rule you muſt work with the outward rein of the bridle in all Leaps, Groupades, Balotades, and Caprioles forwards, or upon circles; becauſe the fore-part is confined and the croupe at liberty, otherwiſe the horſe could not leap. So much for the outward rein of the bridle.

As to the inward rein of the bridle, you muſt work with that in Terre-à-terre; becauſe the croupe is then confined and the ſhoulders are at liberty. For the very ſame reaſon you muſt work in like manner with the inward rein in Demivoltes, Terre-à-terre, and in Curvets upon voltes, the croupe being then confined, and the ſhoulders at liberty.

Curvets forwards likewiſe require the inward rein of the bridle to be worked; becauſe the croupe is ſtreightened, and the fore-part at large, to advance, as it leads the way. Upon the Trot, upon the Gallop, in Paſſaging, work ſtill with the inward rein; with which we have now done.

The caveſon my way ſubjects the head of the horſe more or leſs, according to the place to which it is fixed. When the rein is faſtened to the pommel, the head is leſs ſubjected; when it is faſtened to the girths, more, in proportion as the line is ſo much lower.

Concerning BITTS.

THE leſſons I give you concerning bitts ſhall be very ſhort, though there are many books already extant, and many riders now living, who think themſelves compleat maſters of this ſubject, and very wiſe in their great variety of bitts: Theſe people however, both authors and riders, appear to know little of the matter, in the judgment of men of experience; in as much as they imagine that a piece of iron in the mouth of a horſe can make him knowing. As well might they fondly believe, that a book in the hand of a boy would teach him to read the firſt time before he has been ſhewn his letters; or that ſpurs upon the heels of an ignorant fellow would be alone ſufficient to make him a good horſeman.

There is ſome art however in fitting a horſe with a proper bridle; according as the ply of his neck is long or ſhort, in giving him a large or ſmall mouth-piece, a large or narrow liberty, the eye ſhort or long, ſtrait or bent: the branches are either ſhorter or longer, ſtronger or weaker; mouth and liberty wider or narrower: the eye longer or ſhorter, ſtraiter or more bending;

ing; the hooks according to the juſt meaſure of the bitt; the curb equal, and conſiſting of three good round SS's, with one ring where it is fixed to the eye upon the far ſide, and two rings or mallions, whereby it is curbed or fixed upon the near ſide; the cheeks of the bitt handſomly furniſh'd with boſſes, not too big, and either rich or plain, according to your fancy; not two rows of little chains tied to the bitt within his mouth, but only one at the moſt.

But above all, this rule is chiefly to be obſerved, to put as little iron in your horſe's mouth as poſſibly you can. If his tongue be very big, the liberty muſt be the wider; if little, the liberty the leſs; but you muſt take heed that the *appuy*, or reſting-place of the bitt, be never made too near the liberty, for it would gall him: but the reſting-place muſt be where it ought, which is about a finger's breadth from the liberty upon each ſide of it; and the bitt muſt reſt upon the bars a finger's breadth above the tuſhes. Thoſe branches are weakeſt, whoſe extremities, when the reins are ſlackt, come neareſt to the horſe's neck; and thoſe ſtrongeſt, which go moſt forwards from his neck; and good reaſon for it, becauſe you have the greater pull.

If a horſe hold his head too much up and out, then they make uſe of ſhorter branches and ſtronger, to pull his head down and in, wherein they are pretty right. And ſo if a horſe hold his head too low, and bringeth it in ſo round that he arms himſelf againſt the bitt, which is to reſt the branches upon his breaſt, ſo that you have no farther pull or command of him at all; and becauſe this vice is contrary to holding up his head and out, for which they uſed ſhort branches and ſtronger to bring it in, they therefore think they ſhould make uſe of long and weak branches to pull it up; for they reaſon thus, that if a ſtrong branch pulled him down, then a weak branch will pull up his head: wherein they are mightily deceived, for when a horſe arms himſelf againſt the bitt, as it is certain that long branches will come ſooner to his breaſt than ſhort ones; ſo it is as certain, that weak branches will come ſooner to his breaſt than thoſe which are ſtrong. But, it ſeems, this they do not very exactly conſider, otherwiſe they would ſoon be ſenſible of their error.

For to a horſe that arms himſelf againſt the bitt, you muſt have not only a ſhort branch that will not ſo ſoon touch his breaſt, but alſo a ſtrong branch to keep it yet farther from his breaſt. The hooks of the curb ought likewiſe to be made a little longer, and ſo juſtly turned, as not to offend or hurt the ſides of his cheeks; and if the curb doth not lie in its right place, two little iron rings faſtened cloſe to the top of the hooks, to keep them ſteady and fixed, is the beſt remedy. I uſed it many years before I ſaw it in Mr. PLUVINEL's book; all other devices in bitts or curbs being inſignificant and to little purpoſe.

Now the bitts following are generally the beſt for all horſes whatſoever, *viz.* 1. A plain or ſimple *Canon*, with branches *a la Conneſtable*: 2. A plain *Scatch* with branches *à la Conneſtable*: 3. A *Canon à la Pignatel*, which is a bitt with a gentle falling and moving up and down, and the *liberty* ſo low as not to hurt the roof of the horſe's mouth, which is the beſt bitt certainly for all horſes which have any thing of a big tongue, which I am ſure they do not like to have preſſed; and therefore I recommend that *liberty* above all things in bitts, with the branches *à la Conneſtable*: 4. A *Scatch* with the liberty *à la Pignatel*, which I like better than a *Canon*, becauſe it don't fill a horſe's mouth ſo much.

much. 5. To discharge a horse's lips, I would have *Olives* with the liberty *à la Pignatel*; those *Olives* extending not so far upon every side of the mouth, as to the extremities of them, and having little rings at the ends of them, to give liberty to his lips, and discharge them. 6. I would have also *Melons* to discharge the lips, which are very good, and do it in the same manner as the *Olives* above mentioned. But indeed I would have, in all, but two sorts of bitts, which are, first, the *Canon à la Pignatel*, and, secondly, the *Olives à la Pignatel*, to discharge his lips if need be, but the branches always *à la Conestable.*

Thus you have the truth of bitts brought into a narrow compass: There is little virtue in them to bring a horse to understanding, on which a man must work, and that is his reason, by the favour of the Logicians distinction of reasonable and unreasonable creatures; for were they as good horsemen as scholars, they would have made another distinction. Well then, you see it is not a piece of iron can make a horse knowing, for if it were, the bitt-makers would be the best horsemen: no, it is the art of appropriated lessons, fitting every horse according to his nature, disposition, and strength; punishing and with good lessons rectifying his vices; rewarding him, and preserving him in his horse-virtues, which will make him a just and ready horse; and not the trusting to an ignorant piece of iron called a *bitt:* for I will undertake to make a perfect horse with a caveson without a bitt, better than any man shall with his bitt without a caveson; so highly is the caveson, when rightly used, to be esteemed. I dressed a *Barb* at *Antwerp* with a caveson without a bitt, and he went perfectly well; and that is the true art, and not the ignorance and folly of a strange-figured bitt.

The famous *Pignatel* at *Naples*, never used but simple bitts, which made the ignorant wonder how he could dress horses so perfectly with so few kinds of bitts; but he freely told them, *It was their ignorance made them wonder at his art:* and likewise that great master of his art, Monsieur DE PLUVINEL, said the same.

The caveson ought to be full, and not too rough. It should be lined with leather, single or double, to make it more easy. It rarely happens by my method that a horse wrys his head, sucks up his bitt, or puts his tongue over it. The liberty *à la Pignatel* hinders the tongue from going over; and while you work with the caveson in this good method, slacking often the bridle, you avoid the others.

If he puts out his tongue, and will not leave off that custom, cut it with a sharp round iron, made in the form of the end of his tongue. Let the iron be hot, and laying the tongue on a thin piece of board, you may cut it and stop the blood at the same time. But in fact, if you work according to the method of this book, such extremities will not be necessary, because the horse will fall into none of these vices.

For my part, I always advise lenity and patience with good lessons; never to offend your horse, if you can avoid it; never to ride him, or to exact from him above half so much as he can bear. By this means you will not only preserve him, but make him take pleasure in all that he does: he will even love you, and the exercise you give him; whereas otherwise he will hate you, find the manage irksome, and loth to come to it. It is your business to make

both your perſon and the manage as agreeable to him as poſſible, by working him a little at a time, being bountiful in your careſſes and recompences, and very ſparing in your corrections, and without paſſion when you inflict them. So much concerning bitts and the caveſon.

I take it to be a great vice, when a horſe does not go as well to one hand as to the other; and I have ſeen very few that do ſo: but if you punctually follow my method, your horſes will go to perfection, and as well to one hand as the other, ſo that you will never ſee any difference.

One thing more I have to ſay; it is, that there is no horſe in the world that can obey the heel, if he has not a good *appuy*, a good mouth, and his head ſteady.

Obſerve alſo, that nothing is more ungraceful than to ſee a horſe ſhake his tail in every action. This vice is generally helped by faſtening a rein to his tail and then to the girths to keep it ſteady: but if the rein breaks, he ſhakes his tail as much as ever. Now the moſt infallible way to cure this, is to cut the great nerve that is under his tail, about the middle of it, which operation never does the horſe the leaſt prejudice.

I DO not here implore your pardon, but your juſtice, and that juſtice rather to yourſelves than to me. Thoſe things which to you, perhaps, ſeem not very conciſe, but too prolix, might if ſhorter have ſtill left you in darkneſs: whereas you have now a full ſunſhine to look on you with the ſplendor of the knowledge of Horſemanſhip; ſo that you have no occaſion to grope in obſcurity, ſince you have ſo clear a light to conduct you in the right way. This art does not conſiſt only in ſtudy and mental contemplation, but in bodily practice likewiſe. You ought to be well informed that the art of Horſemanſhip cannot be collected together in a proverb, or a ſhort aphoriſm, or reduced to a ſyllogiſm, or brought into as little compaſs as the poeſy of a ring; nor can there be one univerſal leſſon, as many deſire in this art, any more than a univerſal medicine for all diſtempers, or an ointment for all wounds. It is true indeed, that ſome dream of a univerſal medicine, which they call the Philoſopher's Stone; but this, I fear, is dreaming only.

For my part, I am very ſure there is nothing univerſal in Horſemanſhip, nor in any thing elſe that I know. If this work pleaſes you, I ſhall be thoroughly well ſatisfied; if not, I ſhall be content in my own mind; becauſe I know certainly that it is very good, and better than any thing that you have had before of the kind.

CONCLUSION,

CONCLUSION,

TO THE

READER.

Noble Horſemen,

I Have loved, practiſed, and ſtudied this art of Horſemanſhip from my youth upwards, and employed in it a great deal of time with pleaſure: for there is no exerciſe ſo good, nor is any attended with more honour and dignity, than that of Riding; provided a perſon rides with addreſs, which he cannot do unleſs he is well verſed in the art. Without it, nothing ſeems ſo ridiculous, ſo aukward, ſo irregular, as a man on horſeback. His members appear to be diſlocated, becauſe they are out of their natural ſituation; and his poſture uneaſy, becauſe it is conſtrained; whereas a good rider ſits in his natural place, and his poſture is eaſy, becauſe free and unconſtrained. It is in Horſemanſhip as in other things: regularity is beautiful, while diſtortion and compulſion muſt be without grace. There is an elegance moreover in Horſemanſhip, which looks as if it was natural, tho' it proceeds from art. Thus, tho' a perfect horſeman rides with art, it ſeems rather natural than acquired by practice; and he makes his horſe appear as if nature had produced ſuch a creature for no other end, but to be conducted, governed, and rid by man. What is more, a good horſeman rides as one may ſay with harmony; for his horſe being of the ſame mind with himſelf, moves in ſuch exact manner, ſteps ſo equally, and keeps ſuch juſt time; turns, piroüettes, riſes ſo equally, ſo eaſily, ſo lightly, that it is very agreeable to ſee, as well as a very profitable ſcience to learn. For whoever is not a perfect horſeman, can never ride either with grace or ſafety; and no man can be perfect in this art, unleſs he learns it at the Manege; becauſe that gives him a true and ſure ſeat, a firm hand, a heel that moves in juſt time, a free poſture, and a powerful command, that conſtrains his horſe. Without all this one cannot be a good horſeman, nor ride a horſe boldly, either for pleaſure, or in war; neither pleaſingly to others, nor with ſatisfaction to one's ſelf. I deſire therefore, my noble reader, that you would well underſtand my leſſons; which, I dare aſſure you, contain the truth and perfection of the Manege. I do not hereby cenſure others; but your induſtry and practice will ſhow you the difference between their method and mine. Endeavour to collect all the advantages from my inſtructions, and as much pleaſure. as I wiſh you.

FINIS.

ADDITIONS.

After this Work of mine was all printed, ſome very neceſſary Leſſons came to my Mind, which I give you here in Form of Appendix, or Additions, and particularly recommend them to your Study. They treat of the Actions of a Horſe's Legs; for without a perfect Knowledge of theſe, it is impoſſible for any Man to dreſs a Horſe well, unleſs by mere Chance.

I have before ſaid that the gallop is a leap forwards, in this manner: When the horſe brings down his fore-legs, before they touch the ground, he moves his hind-legs; ſo that the fore-leg which leads the way, on which ſide ſoever it be, is always followed by the hind-leg of the ſame ſide; this is the true gallop forwards in a ſtrait line. But it muſt be remarked, that tho' the horſe goes directly ſtrait forwards, the legs that lead the way are more preſſed than the two others; and that thoſe which are leaſt preſſed are moſt at liberty, and conſequently come firſt to the ground. For example, a horſe leads the way with the right-leg before, which is followed by the hind-leg of the ſame ſide; and the left-leg before being at liberty, he ſets it firſt to the ground: He then puſhes forwards, and leads the way with his right-leg behind; and the left-leg being at liberty, he ſets it firſt to the ground; ſo that he advances his right-leg behind, which leads the way. Thus the horſe keeps four perfect times (equal to one, two, three, four) with his four legs; that is to ſay the near leg before makes the firſt movement, and comes firſt to the ground; the other fore-leg on the off-ſide, which is confined, and leads the way, makes the ſecond movement; the left hind-leg, which is not confined, moves in the third place; and the right hind-leg, which is confined, in the fourth place; ſo that his legs fall exactly in order, one, two, three, four; thoſe which lead the way being moſt confined, and the others moſt at liberty. This is the true gallop ſtrait forwards.

The Gallop of a Horſe in a Circle.

IF a horſe gallops to the right, the inner rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pommel and the croupe in, he is preſſed within the volte, ſo that his legs within lead the way, and thoſe without are at liberty, and come firſt to the ground, as I before ſaid, and the horſe leans a little upon the inſide. Thus he moves, and keeps the time of one, two, three, four. Obſerve here well, that the whole conſiſts in the outward haunch; for the horſe being preſſed within the voltes, is confined on that ſide, and at liberty without, narrow before and large behind, as the gallop ought to be. But he is more upon his ſhoulders than upon his haunches, becauſe the outward haunch is put out by the liberty it has, which is occaſioned by the preſſure within the volte. This is the true gallop, but not the true Terre-à-terre; for the horſe is always upon the movement of one, two, three, four, with his fore and hind-legs, which very much ſupples his ſhoulders: But

But if any man thinks in this manner to make him go Terre-à-terre, he is deceived; for it is only a ſwift gallop, preſſed upon the ſhoulders, becauſe the horſe is narrow before and large behind, the outward haunch being out; this, I ſay, is the true gallop, but not the true Terre-à-terre, as I ſhall ſhow preſently. It is right in Piroüettes, becauſe Piroüettes are nothing but a gallop in the horſe's own length, in which he is preſſed within the volte, and his outward haunch conſequently muſt be a little out. This gallop is alſo good in Demi-voltes upon Paſſades, ſince theſe Demi-voltes are only Demi-piroüettes. It is juſt the ſame to the left hand.

For Terre-à-terre upon Voltes.

THE inward rein of the caveſon being faſtened to the pommel of the ſaddle, for the right hand, you muſt as much as poſſible put in the outward haunch, in order to make the horſe bear on the outſide of the volte, to preſs his outward legs and put his inward at liberty; ſo that the inward legs are before the outward, and come to the ground in that manner. The action of Terre-à-terre therefore is directly contrary to that of the gallop: for the gallop is one, two, three, four, the haunch a little without, which will not do for Terre-à-terre; whereas when the outward haunch of the horſe is put in, and preſſed without the volte, he goes Terre-à-terre, but he cannot gallop; for the movement of Terre-à-terre conſiſts only of two times, as one, two, *pa*, *ta*, which is the ſame movement as in Curvets, but quicker, the fore-legs meeting at the ſame time in the firſt movement, and the hind-legs meeting in the ſecond movement; only the legs within the volte are a little before the others, notwithſtanding which the two fore-legs come to the ground at once in the firſt time, as the two hind-legs do in the ſecond time; juſt as in Curvets, where the croupe falls when the ſhoulders riſe, and the ſhoulders fall when the croupe riſes. The Curvet is a leap upwards, and Terre-à-terre is a leap forwards, preſſed and near the ground. This is the true Terre-a-terre; and thus you ſee that the outward haunch does the whole: when that is preſſed Terre-à-terre, the horſe is preſſed on the outſide; and when the outward haunch is put out a little, the horſe is preſſed within the volte, which is for the Gallop. This method of Terre-à-terre is excellent upon Demi-voltes by the wall; for theſe Demi-voltes are nothing but Terre-à-terre, as the Demi-voltes upon the Paſſades are nothing but Demi-piroüettes, which is only a Gallop in the horſe's length.

The following are the aids to make a horſe go Terre-à-terre. To which hand ſoever you go, you muſt help with the inward rein the hand without the volte, in order to draw the inward rein as much as you can towards the horſe's neck, helping him with the outward leg, by bearing hard upon the ſtirrup, turning out a little the toes of the inward leg, and making it ſhorter, by at leaſt a handful, than the outward; the outward ſhoulder ſhould be lower than the inward, and the face turned a little into the volte. This will make him go perfectly well Terre-à-terre, becauſe his croupe is narrow and his fore part large, ſo that he muſt be upon the haunches; beſides, being narrow behind and large before, he the better embraces the volte, and the hind-leg within the volte can never go before the ſhoulders. It

It is ſo neceſſary to underſtand theſe things, that I would wiſh to have them ſtudied; for without them, nothing can be done but by mere hazard.

I muſt here inform you of one thing; which is, that even when a horſe goes on a Hand-gallop, his hind-legs advance beyond the place that the fore-legs had quitted: but when he runs full ſpeed, his hind-legs advance beyond the ſaid place a great deal more. But, tho' this be true of the gallop, in Terre-à-terre the hind-legs never go beyond the place the fore-legs left.

The following Remark with regard to the Bridle-Hand is of Importance.

THE horſe's neck is between the two reins of the bridle, which both meet in the rider's hand. When a horſe is upon his voltes, if one works or pulls the rein within the volte, this rein preſſes the outſide of the horſe, I mean his outward legs, eſpecially the outward hind one, and that puts in the outward haunch, and ſo throws the horſe upon his haunches. It muſt be noted, that when the outward haunch is thus put in, the hind-leg within the volte goes towards it, and the fore-leg within is in a manner pulled from the other fore-leg, which narrows the croupe, and enlarges the fore-part to embrace the volte ſo much the better, the hind-legs being within the lines of the fore. This is excellent for Terre-à-terre, Curvets, and Demi-airs: but a horſe cannot gallop in this manner.

If one works or pulls the outward rein of the bridle, it preſſes the horſe within the volte, his outward haunch being at liberty; he is more preſſed before than behind, and therefore is upon the ſhoulders, the fore-part being narrow, and the croupe large. Obſerve, that when a horſe is preſſed within the volte, the hind-leg within the volte is confined, and the hind-leg without the volte goes from it, and the fore-leg without the volte at the ſame time is brought near the other fore-leg, which narrows the fore-part and enlarges the croupe. This is wrong Terre-à-terre (becauſe he cannot go Terre-à-terre in this poſture) but very excellent in the Gallop.

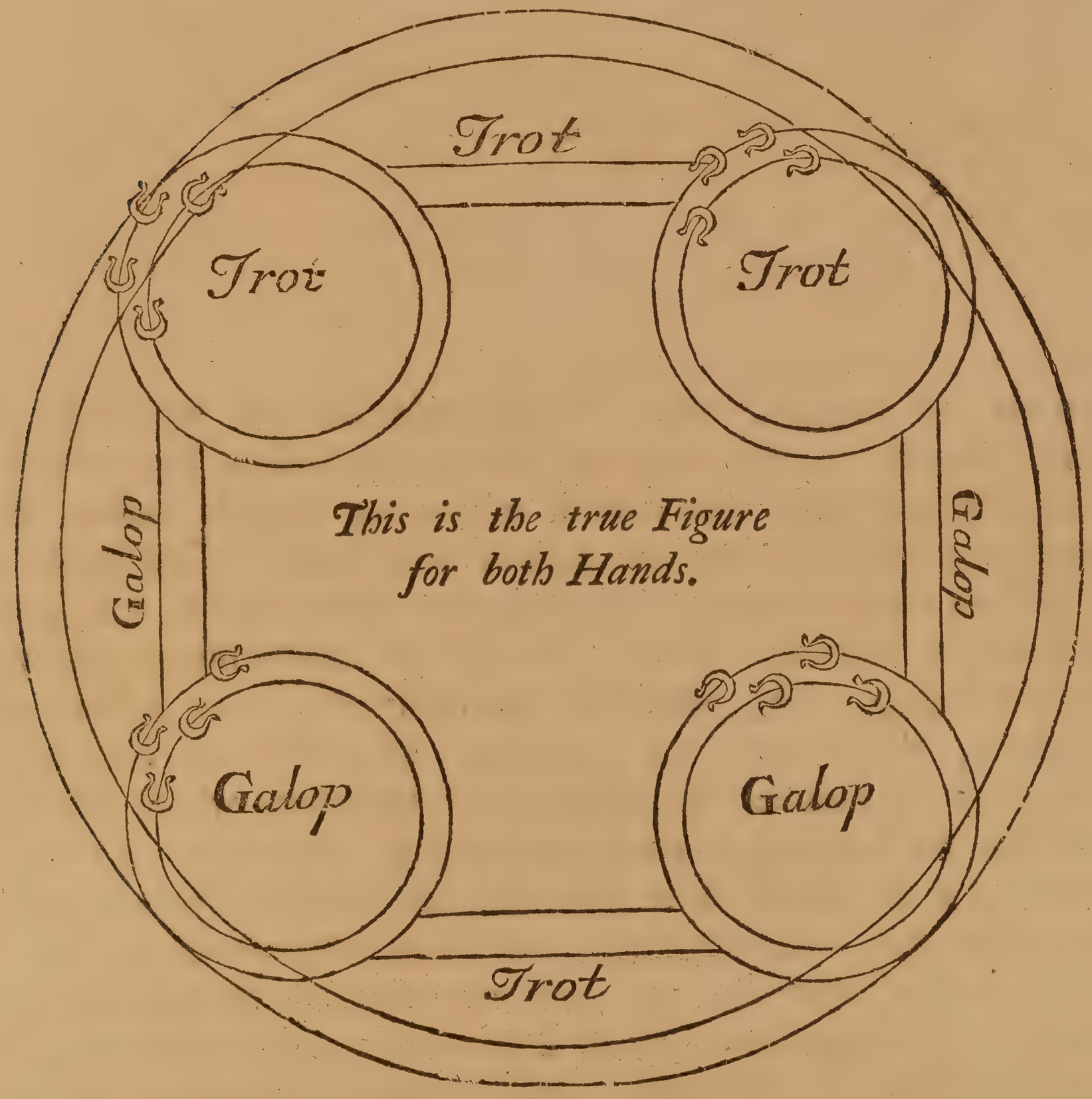
Without knowing this, no man can dreſs a horſe perfectly. When a horſe has not a good *appuy*, or is not ſupple in the ſhoulders, you muſt preſs him within the volte, and that will cure him of both thoſe vices; if a horſe has too much *appuy*, and does not put himſelf upon the haunches, you muſt preſs him without the volte, which will cure him of both theſe. There is yet a third thing that will make him obey the heel, becauſe he cannot avoid it; which is, to faſten the caveſon in my manner to the pommel of the ſaddle. By this way you may dreſs all ſorts of horſes in the utmoſt perfection, if you know how to practiſe it; a thing that is very eaſy in the hands of a maſter.

The following Leſſons ſhould be obſerved, as the moſt excellent in the World.

IT is proper to gallop a horſe *d'une piſte* a turn or two very narrow, and, when he does not expect it, make him advance upon a ſtrait line: then make another narrow volte, and advance him in a right line: then

then make a third volte *d'une piſte*, and advance him ſuddenly; and after that a fourth; continuing this method as long as it ſhall be found neceſſary. Afterwards make a large circle, which may include them all. You ſhould ride him in this manner firſt on the trot, and when you find him ſo light that he begins to gallop of himſelf, proceed to gallop him according to the ſame method. There is nothing that ſo much helps the ſhoulders of a horſe, or ſettles him better in the hand, or makes him more freely obey the heel, and which is; in effect, better for all manner of purpoſes: But you muſt take care to have the inner rein of the caveſon faſtened to the pommel in my manner.

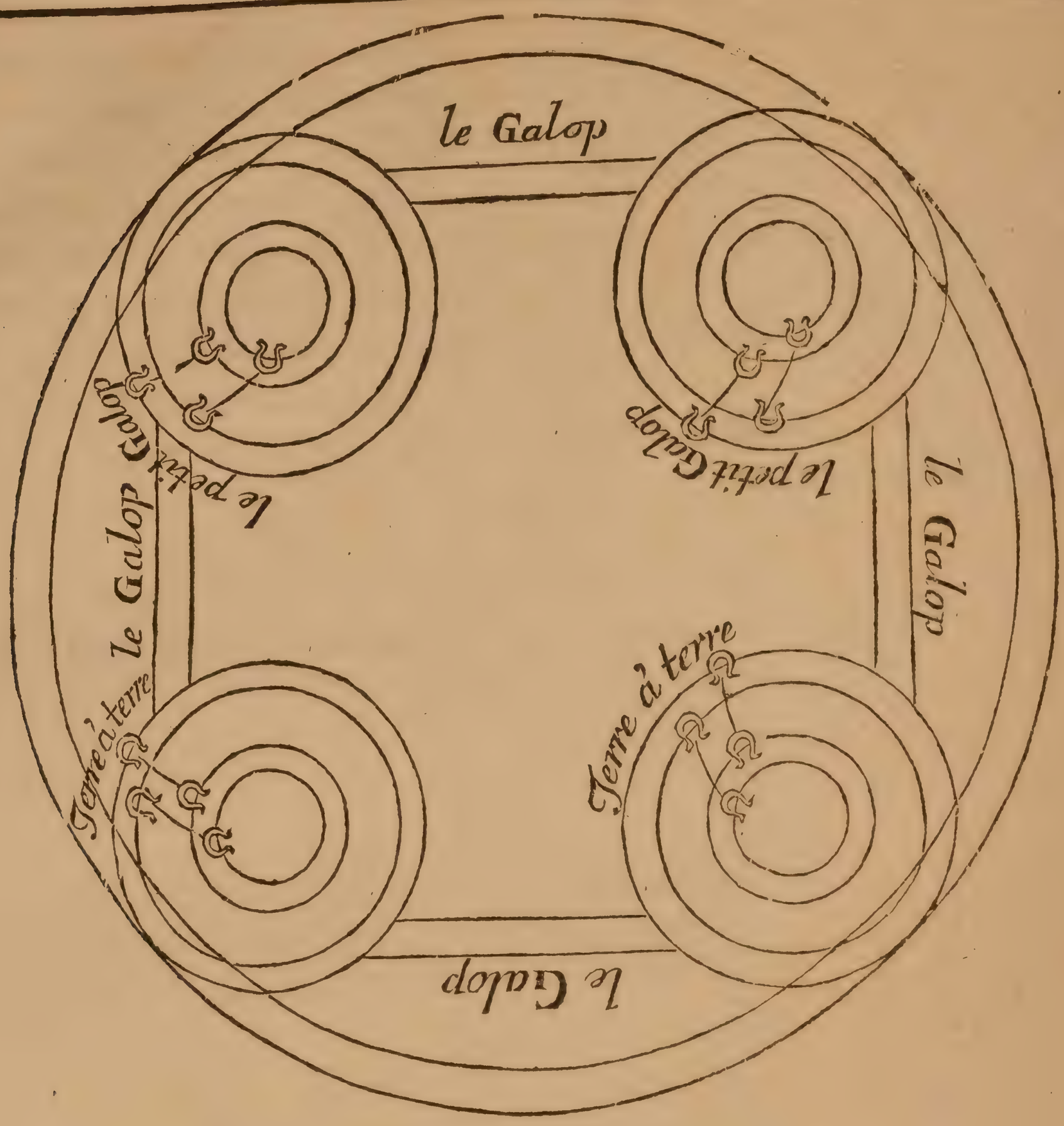
The beſt of all Leſſons to make a Horſe attend to, and obey, both Hand and Heel.



This leſſon is as good as the other, and differs from it only in that the horſe muſt go upon the Hand-gallop, or Terre-à-terre, the croupe in in each circle, and afterwards upon a ſtrait line. The caveſon muſt be faſtened, as before, to the pommel.

This leſſon is excellent to put a horſe in the hand, and upon his haunches; to make him obey either hand or heel, to make him free and without heſitation, which heſitation is often a kind of reſtiveneſs, to remedy which nothing better than this can be found.

It



It is proper to remark, that all the rules of our art tend only to make a horſe ſubject to the ſenſe of feeling (which is the only ſenſe we ought to work upon) and that conſiſts in nothing but the feeling the hand and the heels, or having a ſenſible mouth and ſides. You muſt not let him work by the ſenſe of ſeeing, which is the uſe the pillar will give him; nor by the ſenſe of hearing, which the uſe of particular noiſes will do; but by that of feeling only, which is our only aim, and relates only to thoſe two places, the mouth and the ſides. It is by the ſight only that a horſe is taught a number of tricks and ſubtleties, which the ignorant admire; it can do nothing however in teaching a horſe to go well in the Manege. There is ſo much to be done by the ſenſe of feeling, and which requires ſo much art, wit, judgment, and long experience of the ſeveral diſpoſitions of horſes, that all men are not formed by nature to make good horſemen. One may much more eaſily teach a dog to dance, or even a horſe, by practiſing on his ſight. But I chuſe to let the ignorant ſpeak and think what they will, ſince their folly does not affect me, and ſince this noble art receives no real prejudice from their contemptible ignorance, or their impertinent railleries.

Remarks.

IT is impoſſible to dreſs a horſe before he obeys his rider, and by that obedience acknowledges him to be his maſter; that is, he muſt firſt fear him, and from this fear love muſt proceed, and ſo he muſt obey. For it is fear creates obedience in all creatures, in man as well as in beaſt, great

Great pains then muſt be taken to make a horſe fear his rider, that ſo he may obey out of ſelf-love, to avoid puniſhment. A horſe's love is not ſo ſafe to be truſted to, becauſe it depends on his own will; whereas his fear depends on the will of the rider, and that is being a dreſſed horſe. But when the rider depends on the will of the horſe, it is the horſe that manages the rider. Love then is of no uſe; fear does all: For which reaſon the rider muſt make himſelf feared, as the fundamental part of dreſſing a horſe. Fear commands obedience, and the practice of obedience makes a horſe well dreſſed. Believe me, for I tell it you as a friend, it is truth.

Of the Spur.

NOTHING has ſo much effect as the ſpur, in making a horſe fear his rider. Sharp ſpurs are better for correction than for aids. You muſt give the ſpur therefore for all vices, of what kind ſoever (all other corrections are ridiculous;) but then you muſt do it at the very inſtant the fault is committed, and properly: For if you do it out of ſeaſon, or for trifles, you will entirely ſpoil the horſe; otherwiſe, as I ſaid, the ſpurs are the only remedy for all vices, when you uſe them ſo that he knows for what, and is warned thereby to avoid the ſame fault.

The Aid of the Spur, called Pinching.

PINCHING with the ſpur is a moſt excellent aid. Aids are to be underſtood to go before the fault, in order to prevent it. This pinching is good in all airs, and better than for Terre-à-terre (becauſe it raiſes a horſe more than it makes him advance) tho' it may be made uſe of in both.

Another Aid with the Spur.

THERE is another aid of the ſpur, which we call an aid, becauſe it is not ſo violent as a correction (and that makes it an aid only) nor ſo ſevere as pinching, but preſerves the medium between both. It is thus done: When the horſe is upon the Hand-gallop, the croupe in, or upon Terre-à-terre, if he does not enough obey the leg that touches, or is very near him, you muſt move the leg as if you would give him the ſpur, but touch him with it very gently, only juſt to make him perceive it. This is the moſt delicate thing that is done with the ſpur; it makes him obey and advance, which is excellent Terre-à-terre, or on the Hand-gallop, with the croupe in; but the pinching is better in airs, for the reaſon before alledged.

If a horſe underſtands the correction and the two aids of the ſpurs, and is very ſenſible to them, you may be ſure that he will go without wanting them after ſome time; for he will be ſo ſenſible, that he will go freely, and obey voluntarily for the calf of the leg only. As for the aid of the thighs, it is but a ridiculous imagination. For, to ſpeak properly, there are no other aids but thoſe of the ſpurs and the calf of the leg, to which horſes can be any ways ſenſible. This is all I have to ſay of the ſpurs.

Of faſtening the inner Rein of the Caveſon to the Pommel of the Saddle.

THIS is the moſt excellent thing in the world for the dreſſing of all ſorts of horſes, of whatever age or diſpoſition they may be. When the croupe of a horſe is put in, and he is ſubject to bring in his ſhoulders, he

he is in the condition of a well-dreſſed horſe: For you have nothing to do but ſtop his fore-part with the inner rein of the bridle, and he will go well in all airs, and *à la Soldade*. To make the ſhoulders of a horſe ſupple is the whole affair, and this cannot be over-done; for I aſſure you that horſes are a ſtiff-necked generation. A horſe well ſuppled will beſides never be *entier*, a vice about which a great number of authors have blotted ſo much paper.

For a Reſty Horſe.

THE beſt remedy is to pull him back. If this fails, a good ſpur will certainly perſuade him: for that is the only argument.

For a Horſe that runs away.

I Have ſaid before, that you ought to treat a horſe with all the mildneſs imaginable; but that was to prevent his running away. If he does run away, and you are in an open field, the beſt method is to ſpur him ſmartly and continually on both ſides, till he voluntarily ſlackens his pace, and then to ſtop him. Serve him in this manner every time he begins again to run, and it will certainly cure him. If you are in a narrow place, the pillar with a rein will do the buſineſs, becauſe he can only run round.

Of the Imperfections of a Horſe's Mouth.

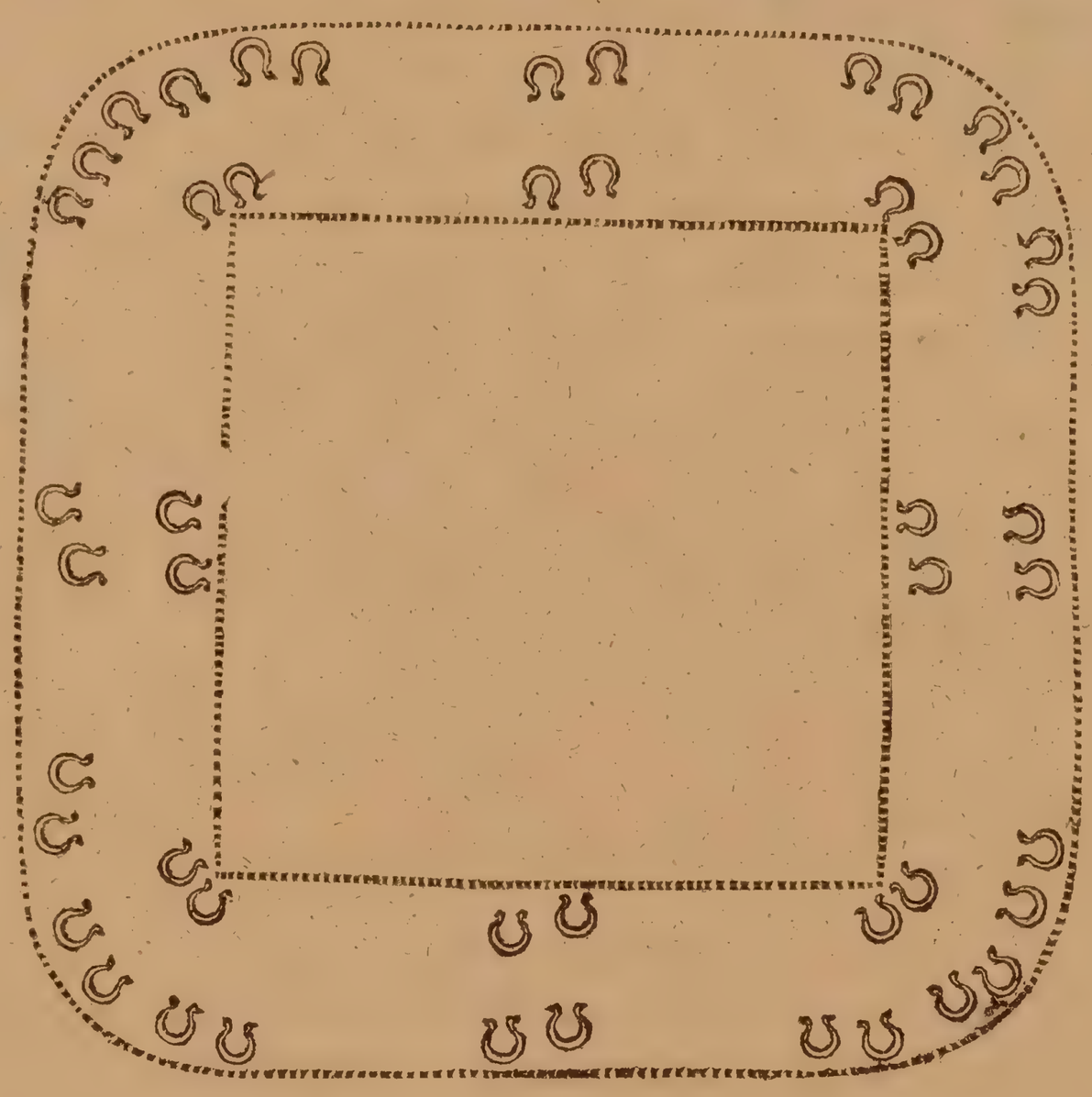
ALL our great writers, both ancient and modern, and the greateſt maſters who have treated of Horſemanſhip, think themſelves obliged to ſpeak of the vices and imperfections of a horſe's mouth. For example, when he draws up his tongue; when he puts his tongue over the bit; when he doubles his tongue round the bit; when he lets his tongue hang out of his mouth, either before or on one ſide. Our great doctors in Horſemanſhip, I ſay, have laboured much againſt all and every one of theſe vices, preſcribing many curious inventions, bits and engines for the mouth, and points for the curb; ſo that the remedy is worſe than the diſeaſe, and ſpoils a horſe. The truth, in few words, is, that I ſhould wiſh a horſe to have none of theſe faults; but if he has them, they are of no diſadvantage to him; for with all theſe defects his *appuy* will be as good as without them; his head as firm and ſure; his bars and the place of his curb as ſenſible as if he had none of them all: For the bridle reſts and works upon the bars, and the curb is in its uſual place, and where it ought to be, notwithſtanding the tongue. Be there a tongue or no tongue, or let that tongue hang where it will, it no ways affects the goodneſs of the *appuy*. We are now convinced then how vain and needleſs thoſe curioſities are, with which our great maſters have amuſed themſelves and their readers, and, what is worſe, have tormented the poor horſes to no purpoſe.

For Terre-à-terre.

YOU muſt aid a horſe with the inward rein and the outward leg, in order to preſs him without the volte, and make him bear upon his outward legs; that is, to put his outward haunch as much in as you can, tho' lookers-on perceive nothing of the matter. The horſe does not make

make a circle, and therefore there can be no center; but he makes a perfect quadrangle and a quarter-volte at each corner to come to the other line of this quadrangle; which is Terre-à-Terre in perfection. He muſt be light in hand, becauſe he is much upon the haunches; and he is much upon the haunches becauſe his outward haunch is put very much in; and thus all the croupe is put in upon a ſtrait line, according to this figure.

A horſe cannot go upon a perfect circle, unleſs he puts his outward haunch a little out; for which reaſon this quadrangle is the true figure of Terre-à-terre.



This may be eaſily ſeen when the head of the horſe is to the wall, and he changes his line at an angle of it, or where the two walls meet.

Curvets upon Voltes.

THIS is another action; for here the horſe muſt go ſideways, the croupe a little out. The aids ſhould be with the inward rein and the outward leg. When you firſt begin him upon this leſſon, you muſt aid him with the inward leg, in order to keep his croupe out; for horſes uſually put the croupe too much in. If a horſe makes five or ſix curvets forwards upon a ſtrait line, and performs them well, you may without danger put him to curvets upon his voltes, which is no more than to turn a ſtrait line into a circle; a thing that may be done without conjuration. If the horſe preſſes a little upon the hand, ſo that you feel him, he will go perfectly well. I have yet one more thing to remind you of, which is, that in caſe he advances you cannot raiſe him too high, becauſe he is then truly in the hand and the heels: But if you raiſe him high, and he does not advance, it is a Peſade and not a Curvet; for I deny that Ferme-à-ferme is the foundation of all Airs, or that it is good for any thing. This is the true method of making horſes go in Curvets, and better than all the pillars in the world.

In Paſſades.

YOU muſt work with the outward rein, which is that next the wall, in order to keep his head from the wall, and his croupe to it. Upon the demi-voltes you muſt aid him with the ſame rein, and the leg of the ſame ſide, to keep his croupe near the wall. If one was to do otherwiſe, the horſe would loſe the line of the wall, his croupe being from it; which would not only be falſe,

falſe, but very ungraceful beſides. For the outward rein in Paſſades narrows the fore-part, and enlarges the croupe; preſſes the one, and gives liberty to the other. Terre-à-terre the inner rein enlarges the fore-part and narrows the croupe, gives liberty to the former and ſubjects the latter. Thoſe are much deceived then who think the ſame aids that are for Terre-à-terre, will do alſo for Paſſades. I have before given you many reaſons, to ſhew why we work a horſe ſo much to put him upon the ſhoulders; but there is one more to add. It is, that the croupe or haunches of a horſe carry nothing but his tail, which is very light; but his haunches have a much greater load, namely, his head and his neck: It is for this reaſon we put him upon the haunches, to counterpoiſe, and to eaſe his ſhoulders, and make him light in hand. Be not diſcouraged when a horſe oppoſes you, for it is a ſign of ſtrength, vigour, and ſpirits: Now a horſe that has all theſe muſt be well dreſſed, if he is under a good hand, and learned heels; whereas a horſe that never reſiſts, ſhews his weakneſs, and his want of courage and ſpirits, and it is a very difficult thing for art to ſupply what nature is defective in. To ſpeak the truth, I have never known any horſe that did not very much withſtand the rider before he was compleatly dreſſed, and that too for a long time. Till he goes freely, he can't be brought to the perfection of the Manage, tho' he may ſometimes do right againſt his will. There is in reality no horſe that does not reſiſt at firſt, and that will not endeavour, almoſt thro' the whole courſe of his dreſſing, to follow his own inclinations, rather than thoſe of the rider. What is more, ſubjection is not agreeable to a horſe, nor to any other creature that I know; not even to men, who obey only becauſe they cannot help it. It is only the habit of obeying that brings a horſe to be dreſſed: But he will try all poſſible ways to avoid ſubjection, and it is not till he has no more ſtratagems to have recourſe to, that he gives up the diſpute: ſo that, in fact, you are not much obliged to him for his complaiſance. If the wiſeſt man in the world were put into the ſhape of a horſe, and retained his ſuperior underſtanding, he could not invent more cunning ways (I queſtion if ſo many) to oppoſe his rider, than a horſe does: Whence I conclude, that a horſe muſt know his rider to be his maſter, that is, muſt be afraid of him, and then he will obey him, which is what we call a dreſſed horſe.

The End of the Additions.

AN

INDEX

TO

VOL. I.

Which contains the Duke of *Newcaſtle's* New Method of dreſſing Horſes.

A.

ACTION of a Horſeman, the true, 29. *Additions*, or Appendix, 134, & *ſeq. Advancing*, a Horſe ſhould be taught it in all his Leſſons, 62.

Aids, for the Curvets, and the Horſeman's Seat, 82, for Curvets upon Voltes, 84, for a leaping Horſe in all the Airs, 89. Leſſons upon them, 91. With the Bridle-hand, ib. 92. Of the Body, 92, with the Switch, 93. The ſame will not do for Terre-à-Terre as for Paſſades, 142.

Airs, Trotting and Stopping the foundation of them all, 40. The ſeveral Sorts of them, 68, 69. Not to be forced, 68. An Obſervation concerning them all, 121.

Amble, Action of the Legs in it, 31.

Appuy, or Support upon the Bars, 53, 65, 69. To correct a Horſe that has not a good one, 107.

Aſtrological Remarks, Vanity of them, 23.

B.

Back, to correct a Horſe that is apt to throw himſelf back, 106.

Balotades, 16, 17. Airs of a leaping Horſe, 69. Defined, ib. to dreſs a Horſe for them, 88.

Barbary Horſe, or Barb, 21. good for a Stallion, 23.

Bit, to work a Horſe with the Bit only, 57. Leſſon concerning the Bit 129, &c. For a Horſe that arms himſelf againſt it, 130.

Body, Aid with it, 92.

Boy, Compariſon between teaching a Boy to read, or play upon the Lute, and the Dreſſing of a Horſe, 11.

Breaking a Colt, the Method of it, 27, 28.

Bridle, the beſt Sort of, 26. How to make a Horſe obey it, 54. Directions concerning it, 129, 130.

Bridle-hand, Aid with it, 91. An important Remark concerning it, 136.

C.

Caprioles, 16, 17, 33. Airs of a leaping Horſe, 69. Defin'd, *ib.* Leſſon for them, 87.

Caveſon, Reins of, how to faſten, 35. Uſes to be made of it's inner Reins, 118. Conveniences and Inconveniences of it, 125, 126. Its different Aids, 128.

Center, of a Horſe, how to find, 33.

Chambriere, or Scourge, 52.

Change, to change upon the Voltes, Terre-à-Terre, 63. In Curvets, 83. To change Terre-à-Terre, 125. Upon the Gallop à la Soldade, *ib.*

Conetable, Branches à la, 28, 307, 330, 133.

Colour of a Horſe, whether any thing to be learned from it with regard to his Goodneſs, 19, 20.

Colt, when to take him from his Dam, and how to manage him afterward, 25, 26, 27. Leſſon to make him trot to the right, 36, to the left, 37.

Covering of Mares, Time and Method of doing it, 23, 24.

Correction of a Horſe, in what manner to be given, 331.

Croupades, 88, & *ſeq.* Airs of a leaping Horſe, 89. Defin'd, *ib.* See Groupade.

Croupe, of a Horſe, not his Center, 33. Method of working it to the right Hand, 41. to the left Hand, 42. Of working it upon a Walk, *ib.* Croupe out, to the right Hand, 44. to the left Hand, 45. A method of putting the Croupe in, 101. Another, of working it, 102. How to work that and the Shoulder occaſionally, *ibid.* To work it either in or out, 103. More concerning the working it, 119, 123, 125.

Curvets, 16, 17. What Horſe is fit for them, 69. Backward upon Voltes, 73. to the left Hand, 76. The Perfection of them, 77. Upon Voltes to the right Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar, 80. to the left Hand, the Croupe to the Pillar, 81. To change

change in them, 83. Other excellent Observations for, 84, 85. By a Wall, the various Kinds of them, 85, 86, 87. What, and the Aids of them, 127. Along a Wall, 128. Upon Voltes, 141.

D.

Demi-Airs, Rules concerning them, 16, 17. 33, 121.
Demi-Voltes, upon Paſſades, what, 121, 127. And their Aids, 127.
Dreſſing of a Horſe, in what time it may be performed, 15. If tractable, in three Months, 18. A true Obſervation concerning it, 122.

E.

Entier, when a Horſe is ſaid to be ſo, 36.
Epitome of Horſemanſhip, 118, & *ſeq.*

F.

Falcades, 61. A Definition of that Movement, 107.
Ferme. De Ferme a Ferme, 71, 73, 78, 79, &c.
Flanders Horſe, 21.

G.

Gallop, Action of the Legs in it, 31. The Foundation of Terre-à-Terre, 32. When and in what manner to be performed to the right, 38. to the left, 39. Galliard, an Account of it, 89.
Genets, Spaniſh, 21.
Golden Rule, or Rule of Three, what the Author calls ſo, 112.
Gourmette, or Curb, 28.
Griſon, Frederick, an Author on Horſemanſhip, 97.
Groupades, 33. Airs of a leaping Horſe, 69. To dreſs a Horſe for them, 88.

H.

Hand and Heel, Leſſons to make a Horſe obedient to, 62.
Haunches, when a Horſe goes well upon them, 63. A new Invention for putting him upon them, 95, 96. More concerning it, 115.
Heavy on the Hand, what Horſes are ſo, 22. Leſſon for them, 53. How to correct them, 109, 110.
Heel, Leſſons to make a Horſe obey it, 62. 100. More to the ſame purpoſe, 115, 123.
Helps, the ſame as Aids, which ſee.
Horſe, muſt be gradually dreſs'd, 11. Whether he acts from Principles of Reaſon, 12. His Reaſoning compared with Man's, *ib.* Why degraded by Scholars, 13. Knows as much of our Paſſions as we do of his, *ib.* Why one who goes a Travelling-pace well may not perform the Airs, 16. Different ones to be differently employ'd, 17. Different Kinds of, 21. His natural Movements, 30, 31. Should be corrected and rewarded, and how, 111. Always withſtands the Rider till he is compleatly dreſſed, 142. See Dreſſing, Colour, Marks, Shape.
Horſemanſhip, what is the principal Art of it, 22. An Epitome of it, 118, & *ſeq.*
Horſeman, his true Seat and neceſſary Actions, 29, 30. Aids for him, 82. Upon a leaping Horſe, 89, 90. A Poſture for him in Terre-à-Terre, 115.
Horſemen, the abſurd Faults of ſome, who imagined they rode like the Author, 103.

I.

Indians, uſe Language but little, and why, 12.

L.

Leaping Horſes, their ſeveral Airs, 69. Need not be very ſtrong, 70. but diſpoſed to it by Nature, *ib.* Aids for them, 89.
Left Hand, to make a Horſe trot to it, 37. See Trot, Gallop, Walk, Terre-à-Terre.
Legs, the Action of a Horſe's Legs in a Gallop, 134. In a circular Gallop, *ib.* In Terre-à-Terre upon Voltes, 135.
Leſſons, for making the Shoulders of a Horſe free and ſupple; the firſt Diviſion of, 35, &c. The ſecond Diviſion of, 41, &c. The third Diviſion of, 54, &c. The fourth Diviſion of, 56. The fifth Diviſion of, 57. The ſixth Diviſion of, 58. Three Leſſons to finiſh a Horſe for the Manage, 65. Leſſons for Airs, the firſt Diviſion of, 70, &c. The ſecond, for Curvets, 80, &c. The third, for Caprioles, Balotades, Groupades, and Demi-Airs, 87, &c. The fourth, upon Aids or Helps, 91. Leſſons upon the Vices of Horſes, the firſt Diviſion; to ſupple the Shoulders, 98, &c. The ſecond, to correct a Horſe that does not obey the Heel, 100. The third, upon the Faults

Faults of ſome Horſemen, 103, 104. The moſt excellent Leſſons in the World, 136. &c.
Light on the Hand, 53. How to correct a Horſe that is too much ſo, 107, 108, 109.
Lodge, for a Colt, 25, 26.
Longe, or long Rope, 52.

M.

Man, more expected of the Horſe than of him, 16.
Manag'd Horſes, a Defence of them, 14.
Manage, what Horſes are fit for it, 22.
Mares, for Breeding, how to chuſe, and in what manner to manage them, 23, 24.
Marks of a Horſe, whether any Thing to be learned from them, 19, 20.
Maſters, may ruin or improve a Horſe, 17. Reproof to ſuch as continually beat and abuſe their Scholars, 18.
Mazin, captain, the Duke's Character of him, 28, 67.
Moon, no matter in what State ſhe is when a Mare is covered, 23.
Movements of a Horſe, in all his natural Paces, 30, &c. Artificial, 32, &c.
Mouth of a Horſe, its Imperfections, 140.

N.

Neapolitan Horſe, 21. Mares good for breeding, 23.
Northern Horſes, 22.
Nouër, l'Aiguilette, or tie the point, 69.

P.

Pacing, ought to be excluded the Manage, 32.
Paſſades, 17. Along the Wall with the Bridle only, 61. Paſſades furieuſes, *ib.* an impatient Horſe unfit for Paſſades, 68. What, and their Aids, 127. How to work in them, 141.
Paſſage, upon a Walk, 43, for the left Hand, 44. See Walk.
Pignatelli, a Scatch or Canon à la Pignatelli, 107, 130, 131.
Pillar, the Center, 42, for all Airs, 71. &c. For Airs to the left Hand, 74. To faſten a Horſe to it, 78, 79, &c. To work a Horſe with his Head to it, 115. Of the ſingle Pillar the old Way, 116.
Pillars, the two, Method of putting a Horſe between them, 53. A Diſcourſe of them, 117.
Pinching, or Aid of the Spur, 139.
Pirouettes, Rule concerning them, 121. What they are, and their Aids, 127.
Piſte, or Circle, ſingle and double, 34, 97. More concerning it, 108, 109.
Pommel, of the Saddle, various ways of working a Horſe with the Rein faſten'd to it, 118, &c. and the Manner of faſtening to it, 139.
Poinſon, what it means, 71, 73, 74, &c.

R.

Reader, the Author's Addreſs to him by way of Concluſion, 133.
Reins, of the Caveſon, 35. To work a Horſe with falſe ones, 56. To work a Horſe with the Reins in the left Hand only, 58. Inner Rein of the Caveſon, the uſe to be made of it, 118. Reins of the Bridle, uſe to be made of the two, 129.
Relevé, Meaning of that Term, 49.
Reſty Horſe, the Author's Way of reducing one, 105, 106. To be kept back, 140.
Reward, how to give one to a Horſe, 111.
Ride. How to ride with Art, 118.
Rider, on foot, how he may help the Horſe, 94.
Right-Hand, how to make a raw Horſe trot to it, 35. See Trot, Gallop, Walk, Terre-à-Terre.
Rule of three, or golden Rule, 112. A very exact one for Terre-à-Terre, 113. General Rules, 122.
Run-away Horſe, what Bit he muſt have, and how he muſt be corrected, 107, 140.
Running, a ſwift Gallop, 31.

S.

Saddle, the beſt Sort of, 26.
Scholar, in the Manage, in what manner to be treated, 18, 19.
Scholaſtic Perſons, know nothing of Horſes, 13.
Sciences, Difference of Perſons ſkilled in them, 16.
Seat of a Horſeman, the true, 30. Aids for it, 82. On a leaping Horſe, 89.
Shape of a Horſe, what to be obſerved concerning it, eſpecially with regard to foreign ones, 21.
Shoulders of a Horſe, Leſſons for making them ſupple and eaſy, 35. &c. They cannot be worked too much, 62. Other Leſſons for working them, 98. For working them occaſionally, 102, 118, 123.

Side-ways, how to work a Horſe, 73, 76.
Spaniſh Horſe, 21, and Mare, good for Breeding, 23.
Spur, the beſt ſort of, 26. Concerning it, 139. Aid of it, *ib.*
Stallion, what kind of Horſe is fitteſt for one, and how he ought to be uſed, 23, 24.
Step, and Leap, an Air of a leaping Horſe, 69. Defin'd, *ib.* 70. To dreſs a Horſe for it, 88.
Stephen, St. his Prayer applied bythe Author, 114.
Stiff, in the Shoulders, how to correct a Horſe that is ſo, 110, 111.
Stirrup, the beſt ſort of, 26.
Stopping a Horſe, the Method of performing it, 39.
Switch, Aids with it, 93. In Groupades, *&c.* 94.

T.

Tail, ungraceful to ſee a Horſe continually ſhake it, 132.
Terre-à-Terre, 16, 17, 31, 32. A new and correct Method of teaching it, 48. Towards the right Hand, 51. Towards the left Hand, 52. To make a Horſe obey the Bridle in it, 55. With the Bridle only in the left Hand, 59. Terre-à-Terre relevé, *ib.* To the right, 60. To the left, *ib.* How a Horſe ſhould go in it, 64. Other Leſſons for Terre-à-Terre, 66, 67. To work Terre-à-Terre with the Caveſon, 112. With the Bridle only, the Hands ſeparated, *ib.* With the Bridle in the left Hand only, *ib.* An exact Rule to make a Horſe go it truly, 113, to the left Hand, 114. Another Poſture for it, 115. The Perfection of it, 124, 125, 126. Upon Voltes, the Action of a Horſe's Legs in it, 135. More concerning it, 140.
Travelling-pace, 16, 17.
Trot, Action of the Legs in it, 30. To the Right, 36, to the Left, 37.
Turkiſh-Horſe, 21.

V.

Vices, of Horſes, the ſeveral Sorts of, and how to cure them, 98, *&c.* 106. *&c.*
Volte, Piſte, or Circle, 34.
Voltes, Terre-à-Terre, to change upon, 63. To the right Hand, with the right Rein faſtened cloſe to the Pillar, 72. In Curvets backwards, the Rein as before, 73. To the left Hand, the Rein as before, 75. How to correct a Horſe that will not look into the Volte, 111.

W.

Walk, upon the right Hand in the Horſe's Length, 40, 46. Upon the Left in the ſame Leſſons, 41, 47. Proper to put a Horſe upon the Haunches, 97. A Way of working a Horſe upon it, 119. Walk at full Length, 120. Obſervation on it, 121. See alſo, 125.
Wall, Curvets by a Wall on the left Side, 85. In a ſtrait Line, 86. The right Side to the Wall, 87. Backwards by it, *ib.*
Wrong Leg before, what is meant by that Expreſſion, 32.

FINIS.

A

GENERAL SYSTEM

OF

HORSEMANSHIP

In all it's BRANCHES:

CONTAINING,

I. Directions for the Choice of *Stallions* and *Mares*, and for Weaning and Managing of Foals, until they come to a proper Maturity for Service, ſuitable to the Uſes they are deſign'd for.

II. The Manner of Keeping, Soiling, Training, and Exerciſing *Race-Horſes*, and Preparing them for the Courſe: Alſo Inſtructions for the Choice and Management of *Hunters*; and a Supplemental Diſcourſe concerning *Hounds*.

III. *The Perfect Knowledge of Horſes*; being a ſuccinct Account of their various Diſorders, both internal and external, and their good and bad Qualities; ſhewing the Seat, Cauſe, and Symptoms of all Diſeaſes; with proper Recipes, and Methods of Cure, whether by manual Operation or otherwiſe; the like not hitherto extant in any Book of Farriery whatſoever in the *Engliſh* Tongue. Tranſlated from the *French* Edition, publiſhed at the *Hague*, under the Inſpection of the learned Dr. *Boerhaave*, by *Gaſper de Saunier*, Riding-Maſter and Director to the Academy of *Leyden*; with the Addition of all his Father's Recipes and Remarks, who was forty Years Inſpector-General of *Lewis* the XIVth's Great Stable.

IV. The *Oſteology* and *Myology* of a Horſe: Or, an Anatomical Deſcription of all the Bones and Muſcles, that compoſe that moſt noble and uſeful Animal; pointing out their various Uſes and Affections, and accounting for many other Particulars in the Oeconomy of a Horſe, that are not generally known. Illuſtrated with near thirty Copper-plates, in which the Seats of all Diſeaſes are not only exactly deſcribed, but with ſeveral new Inſtruments requiſite in the Cure of them moſt accurately deſcribed. And to give a more perfect Idea of the different Subjects, all the Anatomical Prints, repreſenting the Muſcles, Bones, *&c.* are wrought off in their proper Colours.

To which is added,

A large COLLECTION of RECIPES,

Communicated by ſeveral Perſons of Experience and Diſtinction:

TOGETHER WITH

TWO COMPLETE INDEXES,

The one of DISEASES, the other of MEDICINES.

ALSO

A DICTIONARY, explaining all the Technical Terms that belong to the Stud, the Stable, the Manage, Farriery, or whatever relates to HORSES.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

Printed for *J. Brindley*, Bookſeller to His Royal Highneſs the PRINCE OF WALES, in *New Bond-ſtreet*.

M.DCC.XLIII.

TO

DR. MEAD.

SIR,

THrough the great Progreſs that has of late Years been made in *Comparative Anatomy*, there is known to be ſo great a Similitude of Parts in every Species of Animals, that no Body can wonder to ſee me dedicate a Treatiſe of *the Diſeaſes of Horſes* to him who is the greateſt Judge of the Diſeaſes of Mankind.

I ſhould not however have ventur'd to make thus free with *your Name*, if the Favours with which you have honour'd me, and the *following Work*, had not encouraged me to make this Addreſs.

All the Advantages requiſite to a thorough Skill in his Profeſſion, ſeem to have been united in my Author, Monſieur *de Saunier*. With a Genius turn'd for Studying the *Nature of Horſes*, he had a very large Stock of

of his Father's Experience to ſet out upon; to which he added as much of his own, before he pretended to commit his Sentiments to *Writing*.

This Treatiſe then is founded not upon any *Theory*, either received or invented, but upon certain *Knowledge* and repeated *Experiments*; and perhaps it is the *firſt* Book of the Kind that was ever written in this Manner.

The great Pains he took to get over all the *fooliſh Prejudices* of the Farriers, his Predeceſſors, and Cotemporaries; the Frankneſs with which he owns *how far* he was ſometimes guided by them, and how many *Trials* he found requiſite to make him intirely ſhake them off, are Qualities hardly to be found in any *other Writer* upon *Farriery*.

Every Improvement in *Natural Knowledge* muſt give Pleaſure to Gentlemen of your *Taſte* and *Sagacity*; and therefore as the Great *Boerhaave* ſhew'd a peculiar Regard for Monſieur *de Saunier*, ſo it is to be hoped one as Great will countenance his *Engliſh* Editor, who is,

SIR,

Your moſt obedient,

and moſt obliged,

Humble Servant,

JOHN BRINDLEY.

CONTENTS.

Chap. i. *OF making a proper choice of Stallions and Breeding-Mares, according to the ſeveral Uſes they are deſigned for* — Page 1
Chap. ii. *The manner of Soiling Horſes* — 2
Chap. iii. *The manner of weaning and ordering Colts* — ibid.
A ſhort Diſcourſe of Hunting-Horſes — 3
Obſervations and Inſtructions concerning Hounds — 4

The Perfect Knowledge of a Horſe.

Chap. i. *To know the Age of a Horſe* — 5
Chap. ii. *Of the Barbs* — 6
Chap. iii. *Of the Lampas* — 7
Chap. iv. *Of Giggs upon the Lips* — ibid.
Chap. v. *Of Gag-Teeth* — ibid.
Chap. vi. *A Blow on the Eye* — 8
Chap. vii. *How to know a Moon-eyed Horſe* — ibid.
Chap. viii. *The manner of treating a Moon-eyed Horſe* — ibid.
Chap. ix. *How to unnerve a Horſe* — 9
Chap. x. *A Remedy for a Web in the Eye* — ibid.
For a Horſe that has a diſordered Sight — ibid.
Pills to purge the Brain of a Horſe that has Sore-Eyes — ibid.
A Powder to diſſipate a Web — 10
Chap. ii. *A Remedy for Wounds in the Eyes* — ibid.
Chap. xii. *Of a Whitlow in the Eye* — 11
Chap. xiii. *Of the Strangles* — ibid.
The Baſtard Strangles — 12
Morfoundering — ibid.
Stranguillion — 13
Contagious Head-Evil — ibid.
Chap. xiv. *Of the Glanders* — 15
To know the Glanders of the Glands — ibid
The Glanders from the Spine or Back-bone Marrow — ibid.
Chap. xv. *Of the different Kinds of Farcies* — 16
Chap. xvi. *Of the Mange, Itch, or Scab* — 20
Chap. xvii. *Of the Old-Reds* — 21
Chap. xviii. *Tetters or Ring-Worms* — 22
Chap. xix. *Of the Foundering of Horſes* — ibid.
Chap. xx. *Of Melted Greaſe* — 24
Chap. xxi. *The Stag-Evil* — 25
Chap. xxii. *The Vives* — 26
Chap. xxiii. *Of the Gripes or Colick* — ibid.
Chap. xxiv. *Of the Vertigo or Spaniſh Evil* — ibid.
Chap. xxv. *Remedy for Numbneſs of the Senſes, which reſembles a Vertigo* — 29
Chap. xxvi. *Of the Fever, or Fiery-Evil* — 30
Chap. xxvii. *Of the Faſhions* — 31
Chap. xxviii. *Of Incontinence of Urine* — 32
Chap. xxix. *Of the Anticor, or Anticow* — 33
Chap. xxx. *Of a Purſive, or Broken-winded-Horſe* — 34
Chap. xxvii. * *Heaving of the Flank* — * 33
* Chap. xxviii. *Of Cheſt Foundering* — * 34
* Chap. xxix. *Worms in Horſes* — 35
* Chap. xxx. *Swelling of the Teſticles* — ibid.
Chap. xxxi. *Remedies againſt the Gangreen* — 36
Chap. xxxii. *A Remedy for the Bite of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal* — 37
Chap. xxxiii. *How to purge a Horſe gently and fatten him* — 38
Chap. xxxiv. *For a Horſe whoſe Tongue is cut with the Bridle or Halter* — 39
Chap. xxxv. *The beſt way of cutting a Horſe's Tail* — 40
Chap. xxxvi. *The manner of gelding a Horſe well, and treating him during the Cure* — ibid.
Chap. xxxvii *Hurts on the Withers, or Wither wrung* — 49
Chap. xxxviii. *Navel Galls* — 42
Chap. xxxix. *Of Impoſtumations in the Withers* — ibid.
Chap. xl. *Faintneſs for want of Nouriſhment* — 43

Chap.

* *

CONTENTS.

	Page
Chap. xli. *Of the Pole-Evil*	ibid.
Chap. xlii. *Of a Shoulder-ſlip or Shoulder-wrench*	ibid.
Chap. xliii. *Of the Spunge*	46
Chap. xliv. *Stiff Legs*	47
Chap. xlv. *Of an Ox-Kneed-Horſe*	ibid.
Chap. xlvi. *Of the three Kinds of Splints*	ibid.
Chap. xlvii. *Of the three Kinds of Offelets*	49
Chap. xlviii. *Wind-Galls*	
Chap. xlix. *How to give a Horſe the Fire*	51
Chap. l. *The Mallenders*	52
Chap. li. *Bow-Legs*	54
Chap. lii. *Tottering-Legs*	ibid.
Chap. liii. *A Horſe that Forges*	ibid.
Chap. liv. *A Blow on the Nerve*	ibid.
Chap. lv. *A Blow between the Fetlock and the Heel*	56
Chap. lvi. *A Simple Javart, or Core in the Paſtern*	57
Chap. lvii. *For a Prick in a Horſe's Foot*	59
Chap. lviii. *A Halter Caſt*	ibid.
Chap. lix. *Scratches or Chops*	ibid.
Chap. lx. *Mules*	60
Chap. xli. *Maltlongs*	ibid.
Chap. xlii. *Of a Cloven or Ox-foot*	61
Chap. xliii. *Of a Seyme*	ibid.
Chap. xliv. *Of a Bleyme*	62
Chap. xlv. *New Frogs or Fruſhes*	63
Chap. xlvi. *Incaſtellated or Narrow-heels*	64
Chap. xlvii. *Incaſtellated Feet*	ibid.
Chap. xlviii. *A Numbneſs or Stunning of the Hoof*	66
Chap. xlix. *For a Horſe that is Tender-Soled*	ibid.
Chap. lxx. *Of the Cepelet*	68
Chap. lxxi. *Of the Eſperon or Spur*	ibid.
Chap. lxxii. *Relaxed or Extended Nerves*	ibid.
Chap. lxxiii. *Diſorders in the Haunch*	69
Chap. lxxiv. *A Falſe-Step*	ibid.
Chap. lxxv. *Of the Comb or Crown Scab*	70
Chap. lxxvi. *Watery Sores on the Legs*	71
Chap. lxxvii. *A Remedy for Warts*	72
Chap. lxxviii. *Fleſhy Frogs*	ibid.
Chap. lxxix. *Full, or clogged-up Feet*	73
Chap. lxxx. *Circled Feet*	ibid.
Chap. lxxxi. *Battered Soles*	ibid.
Chap. lxxxii. *The Spone-Spavin*	74
Chap. lxxxiii. *Spavins, or Blood-Spavins*	ibid.
Chap. lxxxiv. *Varices*	76
Chap. lxxxv. *Veſſigon*	ibid.
Chap. lxxxvi. *The Curb*	77
Chap. lxxxvii. *Contains general Remedies*	78
A Treatiſe of the Stud.	86
Inſtructions for Commiſſioners who go to buy Horſes in foreign Countries	88
To preſerve and reſtore a Stable infected by the different Maladies of Horſes	89
The Anatomical Deſcription of the Bones and Muſcles of a Horſe	90
Explications of the Bones of the Head	92
Explication of the Muſcles of a Horſe's Body	93
Of the Muſcles, their Number to each Part, and their Offices	107
Explanation of the References that point out the Muſcles in the Plate	111
A Supplement conſiſting of choice Receipts for moſt Diſtempers to which Horſes are incident	113
Repreſentation of the Jugular Veins	123
Figures repreſenting the Moulds for cutting large Ears and other Inſtruments	ibid.
Deſcriptions of the different Sorts of Shoes, &c.	124
A Table of the Remedies, &c.	127
Indexes to Volume II.	132

a

1. Shews the barbs that hinder a Horse from drinking.
2. Where to make the Operation for the Anticor.
3. 4. Seat of the Ring Bones.
5. Seat of the Crown-scab.
6. The Pincer.
7. The Middle Tooth.
8. The Corner Tooth.
9. The Tusk.

b.

1. Where the Leg trembles after hard Labour.
2. Mark of a Horse that stumbles or falls on his knees.
3. Circled Feet.
4. Blisters on the Lips.

1. Seat of the Vives.
2. How to cauterize decay'd Legs.
3. To know the Strangles.
4. To know the Glanders.
5. To know a chest foundered Horse.
6. How to cauterize the hind Legs.
7. When a Horse is hurt in y^e^ Kidneys.
8. When hurt in the Withers.
9. a Curb.

d.

1. The Operation — for — pursy Horses.
2. Elbow of the Hough.
3. Shackle Vein.
4. Close Heel'd.
5. Pastern Joynt.
6. Horny Hoof.
7. Chaps in the Heel.
8. Hoof bound.
9. Sole of the Foot.
10. Rats tail on the Legs.
11. Tufts.
12. Elephantick Scurf.

1. Seat of the Bone Spavin.
2. Seat of the Ring-bones.
3. Knubs and Warts.
4. To know the true or bastard Strangles by the Nose.
5. How to make a Horse carry his Ears well.
6. Boreing ye Shoulder with Artual Cautery.
7. Operation for Lameness in ye Round bone.
8. A Quitter Bone.

f

1. Haw in the Eye.
2. Where to bleed Horses.
3. Splents.
4. Sinew Sprain.
5. Outward or inward Seime.

6. To know when a Horse has the Anticor, or Palpitation of Heart.
7. A Simple Molette.
8. Blood Spavin.

9. Nervous Molette behind.
10. Dry Spavins.
11. Wind Gall.
12. String Halt.
23. Excresencies on the Sides.
14. Operation on the Artery for Sore Eyes.
15. Bandage for y^e Stifle.
16. To Seton y^e Shoulder.

g

1. Fluxions in the Eyes, that make a Horse weep.
2. Strains in the Fetlock.
3. Bonvell Gal'd.
4. A Horse that strikes himself in y^e Joint
5. In the Back Sinew.
6. A Sprain in the Joint between the Fetlock & Hoof.
7. A Tardon.
8. To Fire the Ham or Hough.
9. A Curve surrounding the Ham.
10. Wind Galls.
11. A Pearl or Web on the Eye.
12. Bandage for a Dislocated Shoulder
13. The Pole Evil.

h

1.7. Seat of the Lampas.
2.5. A Horse that Knuckles Over.
3. A Sand Crack.
4. Crown Scab.
6. Where to bleed for the Shoulder-slip or Shoulder-Wrench.

i

1. Operation for the Vertigo, or Staggers.
2. A Seton to draw Humors from the Eyes.
3. A Wen.
4. Operation for a Chest founder.
5. Cloven or Ox Feet.

A GENERAL SYSTEM OF HORSEMANSHIP In all its BRANCHES.

VOL. II.

CHAP. I.

Of making a proper Choice of Stallions and Breeding Mares, according to the ſeveral Uſes they are deſign'd for.

MONG the many Authors who have wrote on this Subject, Sir *William Hope* miſtakes as to the *Spaniſh* Horſe. No Body at preſent makes uſe of them, and they have never been known to get any thing good in *England:* But the *Arabians* or *Barbs* are much the beſt; tho' of late Years our Breed is ſpoiled in *England* in all ſorts of Horſes, by beginning to make uſe of them too early. By this Means we never know the Goodneſs of a Horſe, while ſome People attribute to an Infirmity, either in the Horſe, or the Mare, the Fault which is only in themſelves. For by putting them to Running, Hunting, Travelling the Road, Drawing, or any Kind of Labour, before they come to be turn'd of four Years Old, we run the Hazard of ſpoiling them; and then they ſhould be very gently uſed till they are turned of five, and ſtill but moderately till after Six, which will make them prove more laſting and hardy. CHAP. I.

But

CHAP. I, II, III.

But we have of late Years run too much into the *Barb* and *Arabian* kind; for, tho' in a great many Studs they have brought them to a Size tall enough, they want Subſtance to carry Weight; which is now the Cauſe ſo much complained of in *England*. We are alſo apt to breed out of too old Mares, as well as cover with too old Horſes; whereas I would adviſe always to put an old Horſe to a young Mare, and never cover an old Mare but with a young Horſe. For an old Horſe and an old Mare very often bring weakly Colts, ſuch as are ſubject to Humours and other Infirmities, as weak Eyes, Spavins, and Ring-bones, *&c.* eſpecially if the Sire or Dam has had the like Infirmities, by reaſon of their being hard ſtrained in their youthful Days. If a fine, freſh, young Horſe, that has Size and Strength, got by an *Arabian* or *Barb*, was put into training at four Years old, and kept until five Years old, and then tried whether he can run or not, provided he had been all along in careful Hands, and not hurried in his Exerciſe, but brought on gradually, he would certainly beget better Colts than his Sire. He muſt have been, however, out of a ſound, healthful, young, freſh Mare.

I would not have a young Horſe, that is deſigned for a Stallion, ever to have any Phyſick; for that only impairs Nature, and makes their Colts weakly. There ought to be the ſame regard as to the Mares; for it is a general Rule, that the firſt Colt of a hard ſtrained Mare proves weakly; they wanting a natural Soil to bring their Body into good or regular Habit. For ſoiling them ſome time before, carries the Dregs of the Phyſick off, and brings their Bodies to be cool and temperate. It is a general Obſervation, that putting a Horſe and Mare together, that have been both at hard Meat a conſiderable Time, may be liable to produe a dwindling Colt. One thing more ought to be obſerved, which is too often practiſed; that a Mare that brings good Colts, is apt to be put to Horſe every Year; which muſt certainly weaken much her Off-ſpring; for if you cover a Mare every Year, you are obliged to take your Colt off early, otherwiſe you weaken the Mare, and likewiſe the Colt within her, which is greatly prejudicial to both; whereas if you cover a Mare but every other Year, you may then let the Colt ſuck till the latter End of *February*, which is more nouriſhing to it at that Age, than any Feed that can be given it.

CHAP. II.

The Manner of Soiling Horſes.

THERE are different Manners of Soiling in different Places; but theſe are the moſt approved of, eſpecially in the North of *England*, *viz.*

In the Spring, as ſoon as you can have freſh Graſs, give him a little of it two or three Times a Day, in order to keep his Body cool; whereby he won't want ſo much Water as they uſually do in the Time of Covering, which when given too plentifully often cauſes broken Wind.

I by no Means approve of phyſicking a Stallion, only towards the latter End of *January*. If neceſſary, in *Auguſt*, take a little Blood from him, and if ſubject to Humours, give him walking Exerciſe to take them off.

As to breeding Mares, there is little Direction to be given, only let them have a Hovel to ſhelter themſelves from the Inclemency of the Weather; and when there is a Scarcity of Graſs, give them good Hay, and if of a tender Conſtitution, a little Corn.

N. B. *Always chuſe your Paddocks or Paſtures in an upland dry Ground.*

CHAP. III.

The Manner of weaning and ordering Colts.

WHEN you take your Colt from the Mare, put him into a Stable (not too warm); put a Halter upon him, and learn him by Degrees, and gentle Methods, to walk in after you. Stroak him with your Hand in the Stable; uſe him to be rubbed and clapt all over, every Day. Taking up his Legs, with your Hand pat his Feet, that by ſo doing he may be leſs ſhy when he comes to be ſhod. This muſt be practiſed till ſuch time as he comes to be broke.

A ſhort Diſcourſe of Hunting Horses.

THERE are already extant ſo many Books concerning Sports, and every common Huntſman is ſo well acquainted with the general Rules of his Profeſſions, that it is needleſs to expatiate here, upon a Subject univerſally known: I ſhall therefore touch chiefly upon ſuch Particulars as are the Effect of Experience only, and not hitherto made public, as they were communicated to me by ſome of the oldeſt and beſt Sportſmen.

The Qualities of a good Hunter have a near Affinity with thoſe required in a Running Horſe; only in the Choice of a Hunter, you are to look for Strength more than in a Running Horſe; the Fatigue of the former being often equally violent, and uſually of longer Continuance than that of the latter. In a Word, the Buſineſs of the Courſe is limited and regular, that of the Chace altogether uncertain, and ſubject to Chances, or the Rider's Diſpoſition.

In the Beginning give your Hunter moderate Exerciſe, till he has got Meat in his Belly.

He need not be kept, like the other, to an exact Regimen of Diet: Any clean Food is fit for him, and he may eat what Quantity he pleaſes.

After an hard Chace, walk your Horſe till he is quite cold; then take a Drachm of Saffron, pounded, half an Ounce of *Venice* or *London* Treacle, and a Spoonful of Honey. Diſſolve them together in Beer over a gentle Fire, and give for a Draught.

The Cordial Balls, made according to the Preſcription in this Work, are alſo excellent on the ſame Occaſion. They likewiſe may be diſſolved in Beer, and given in the ſame Manner. A ſmall Ball is better than a large one in this Caſe, when the Stomach of the Horſe is empty.

When your Horſe is in the Stable, let him be well dreſs'd, and his Feet waſh'd with warm Water; then give him a little ſcalded Bran, with ſome Beans in it.

Other good things, that may either of them be given after a Chace, are, an Ounce of Crocus Metallorum, mix'd with his Bran, or given in Corn; or only a Handful of Hempſeed mix'd with a common Feed. Either of theſe, in caſe of the Failure of Appetite, will be very likely to reſtore it.

When you uſe the Crocus Metallorum, let the Corn be moiſtened; otherwiſe the Crocus will fall to the Bottom of the Manger, or be liable to be blown away by the Horſe's Breath.

When a Hunting Horſe has occaſion to be purged, he ſhould have three ſucceſſive Doſes, which may be thus prepared.

Take Succotrine Aloes, one Ounce and a quarter; Jalap Root, two Drachms; Ginger grated, one Drachm; Balſam of Sulphur, one Drachm; Chemical Oil of Anniſeed, two Drachms: Make the whole up with Syrup of Buckthorn into a Ball.

This, upon a Medium, is ſufficient for one Doſe; but the Quantity may be leſſen'd or increaſed according to the Strength of the Horſe, or other Circumſtances.

Tie up your Horſe's Head an Hour before you give him his Purge, and let him ſtand two Hours after without Food. Give him warm Water in working. If the above Purge ſhould not be ſtrong enough, let ſome Additions be made, according to the Strength of your Horſe, for his ſecond and third Doſe. Make this as ſtiff as poſſible, that it may not ſo ſoon diſſolve in the Stomach, and thereby have a better Effect.

After Purging, exerciſe your Hunter moderately, as you do your Running Horſe, in order to increaſe his Wind.

When you deſign to engage in a hard Hunting-Match, ſuch as the Stag, Buck, or Fox, let your Horſe be thoroughly prepared the preceding Day.

In other Particulars, the Hunting Horſe comes under the ſame Regulations as have already been given in this Work.

Obſervations and Inſtructions concerning Hounds.

THough Dogs are not ſtrictly a proper Subject in a Book of Horſemanſhip; yet, as I can ſay a few Things concerning them upon the Authority of Mr. *Thomas Johnſon*, (Huntſman to his Grace the Duke of *Richmond*, and one of the Keepers of the New Foreſt in *Hampſhire)* I ſhall inſert them here for the Uſe of the Curious.

It is proper always to breed out of freſh Hounds, and to croſs their Strain continually, that they may never be too near a-kin.

A Dog that is any way croſs ſhap'd ſhould have a Bitch as contrary as poſſible. Thus, for Example, if a Dog be too long in the Fork, chuſe a ſhort Bitch to mend the Breed. But the fineſt Shape in the World ſhould never induce you to breed from a Dog, unleſs he has at the ſame time a very good Noſe, an open Noſtril, and is well winded.

Other Qualifications, requiſite in a Dog to breed from, are his having a good Back and Forehand; his being ſhort-jointed, round, and well footed: In a Word, his being ſtout, and of a bold Appearance. The contrary Qualities to any of theſe ſhould make you reject a Dog for this Purpoſe.

After Hounds have been upon a Chace, and when they can have two or three Days Reſt, Flowers of Sulphur and Crocus Metallorum are excellent in their Meat. Two Pounds of the Sulphur, and four Ounces of the Crocus, is ſufficient for 40 Couple of Hounds. Too much Crocus is unſafe, a ſingle Pound being enough to make 50 Couple bring up their Meat.

As to purging of Hounds, it ſhould be always done four Times a Year, and oftner upon extraordinary Occaſions.

The Purge ſhould conſiſt of Syrup of Buckthorn, Cream of Tartar, *Epſom* Salts, and Sweet Oil, all mix'd together with their Meat. Let the Quantities of each be proportioned to the Number of Dogs, and the Nature of their Caſe.

Every three Hours after the Purge is given, let them have a little other Meat very thin, and made warm, to work it off.

It is indeed the beſt Way, on all Occaſions, to make the Meat thin; and the leaneſt Dogs ſhould be let in to it firſt, that they may grow in Fleſh.

Hounds of all Sorts may be fed and purged in the ſame Manner, and therefore there is no Occaſion for any Diſtinction on that Subject.

To prevent Madneſs in a Hound, it is proper, towards the latter End of *May*, to boil about four Pounds of Liverwort in a Copper of *Mange*, or Dogs Meat; but let no Fleſh be boiled in it. This Quantity is ſufficient for 20 Couple of Hounds, about the Changing of the *Midſummer* Moon, when they are more ſubject to grow mad than at any other Time of the Year; which perhaps may be attributed to the Overflowing of the Blood. It is always neceſſary, in ſuch Caſes, to bleed before you give them the above Preſcription.

For a Dog that is poiſon'd take ſeven Grains of Emetic Tartar, and five or ſix Grains of Reſin of Jalap; which mix up with *Venice* Treacle.

This Medicine is of quick Operation, and works immediately by Vomit or Stool.

Give your Dog ſome Liquid immediately after taking it, to waſh his Mouth, and prevent its naufeating his Stomach, which might occaſion him to fling it up before it has the Effect.

If the Mange ſhould get among your Hounds, give them Flowers of Sulphur in Milk every Morning for one Week, and then bleed in the Neck. Afterwards take Tobacco Stalks three Pounds; ſteep them in four Quarts of Chamber-lye three or four Days; then ſqueeze them dry, and take half a Pound of Flowers of Sulphur, and as much Bole Armoniac, which put in a Pot, and let them boil half an Hour; then add Oil of Turpentine, and Train Oil, of each a Pint; boil the Whole over a ſlow Fire for five Minutes, and pour off into a Pot for Uſe. You apply it by tying a Rag to a Stick, and rubbing the Mangy-part. It is a never-failing Cure.

Theſe Remarks, though few in Number, and very ſhort, will be found of great Value to all Huntſmen, and Gentlemen who love the Sport. It is not the Number of Inſtructions, but their Propriety, and the Confirmation of long Experience, that does all in the Treatment either of Horſes or Hounds.

THE

THE PERFECT KNOWLEDGE OF HORSES.

CHAP. I.

To know the Age of a Horſe.

A HORSE that is fit for Work ſhould have forty Teeth; twenty four Grinders, which teach us nothing; and ſixteen others, which all have their Names, and diſcover his Age. CHAP. I.

As Mares have uſually no Tuſks, their Teeth are only thirty ſix. Thoſe that have Tuſks are eſteemed barren; fit for Service, but not for the Stud: For, being warmer than others, they ſeldom have any Foals; except in a temperate Country, and ſome other Seaſon than the Month of *May*; which however is the Time of getting them covered.

A Colt is foaled without Teeth. In a few Days he puts out four, which are called *Pincers*, or *Nippers*. Soon after appear the four *Separaters*, next to the *Pincers*. It is ſometimes three or four Months before the next, called *Corner-Teeth*, puſh forth. Theſe twelve *Colt*'s *Teeth*, in the Front of the Mouth, continue without Alteration till the Colt is two Years, or two Years and a half old: Which makes it difficult, without great Care, to avoid being impoſed on, during that Interval, if the Seller finds it for his Intereſt to make the Colt paſs for either younger or older than he really is. The only Rule you have then to judge by, is his Coat, and the Hairs of his Mane and Tail. A Colt of one Year has a ſupple rough Coat, reſembling that of a Water-Spaniel, and the Hair of his Mane and Tail feel like Flax, and hang like a Rope untwiſted; whereas a Colt of two Years has a flat Coat, and ſtrait Hairs, like a grown Horſe.

At about two Years and a half old, ſometimes ſooner, ſometimes later, according as he has been fed, a Horſe begins to change his Teeth. Soft Nouriſhment, as Graſs in particular, will forward, and a firm Diet in the Stable will retard his Change. The *Pincers*, which come the firſt, are alſo the firſt that fall; ſo that at three Years he has four Horſe's, and eight Colt's Teeth, which are eaſily known apart, the former being larger, flatter, and yellower than the other, and ſtreaked from the End quite into the Gums. Theſe four Horſe *Pincers* have in the middle of their Extremities a black Hole, very deep; whereas thoſe of the Colt are round and white. When the Horſe is coming four Years old, he loſes his four *Separaters*, or middle Teeth, and puts forth four others, which follow the ſame Rule as the *Pincers*. He has now eight Horſe's Teeth, and four Colt's. At five Years old he ſheds the four *Corner*, which are his laſt *Colt*'s *Teeth*, and is called a Horſe. During this Year alſo his four *Tuſks* (which are chiefly peculiar to Horſes) come behind the others, the lower ones often four Months before the upper: But, whatever may be vulgarly thought, a Horſe that has the two lower Tuſks, if he has not the upper, may be judged to be under five Years old, unleſs the other Teeth ſhew the contrary: For ſome Horſes, that live to be very old, never have any upper Tuſks at all. The two lower Tuſks are one of the moſt certain Rules that a Horſe is coming five Years old, notwithſtanding his Colt's Teeth may not be all gone.

It often happens that your Jockeys and Breeders, to make their Colts ſeem five Years old when they are but four, pull out their laſt Colt's Teeth: But if all the Colt's Teeth are gone, and no Tuſks appear, you may be certain this Trick has been played. Another Artifice they uſe, is to beat the Bars every Day with a wooden Mallet, in the Place where the Tuſks are to appear, in order to make them ſeem hard, as if the Tuſks were juſt ready to cut.

When a Horſe is coming ſix Years old, the two lower *Pincers* fill up, and, inſtead of the Holes above-mentioned, ſhew only a black Spot. Between ſix and ſeven, the two Middle Teeth

CHAP. II.

Teeth fill up in the ſame Manner, and between ſeven and eight, the Corner Teeth do the like; after which it is ſaid to be impoſſible to know certainly the Age of a Horſe, he having no longer any Mark in his Mouth. You can indeed only have recourſe to the Tuſks, and the Situation of the Teeth, of which I ſhall now ſpeak.

For the Tuſks, you muſt with your Finger feel the Inſide of them, from the Point quite to the Gum. If the Tuſk be pointed, flat, and has two little Channels within-ſide, you may be certain the Horſe is not old, and at the utmoſt only coming ten. Between eleven and twelve the two Channels are reduced to one, which after twelve is quite gone, and the Tuſks are as round within, as they are without. You have no Guide then but the Situation of the Teeth. The longeſt Teeth are not always a Sign of the greateſt Age, but their hanging over and puſhing forwards; as their meeting perpendicularly is a certain Token of Youth.

To come to the Explication of the Plates: Some, while they ſee certain little Holes in the middle of the Teeth, as in the firſt, third, and fourth Figure, where they are ſmall in the middle, and ſomething leſs in the corner Tooth, imagine that ſuch Horſes are but in their ſeventh Year, without Regard to the Situation the Teeth take as they grow old. When Horſes are young, their Teeth meet perpendicularly, as in the firſt Figure; but grow longer and puſh forwards with Age, as in the following Figures. Beſides, the Mouth of a young Horſe is very fleſhy within, in the Palate, and his Lips are firm and hard. On the contrary, the Inſide of an old Horſe's Mouth is lean both above and below, and ſeems to have only the Skin upon the Bones: The Lips are ſoft, and eaſy to turn up with the Hand.

All Horſes are not marked in the ſame manner, but ſome naturally and others artificially. The natural Mark is called *Begue*; and ſome ignorant Perſons imagine ſuch Horſes are marked all their Lives, becauſe for many Years they find a little Hole, or a kind of Void in the middle of the *Separaters* and *corner Teeth*: But when the Tuſks are grown round, as well within as without, and the Teeth point forwards, there is room to conjecture, in proportion as they advance from Year to Year, what the Horſe's Age may be, without regarding the Cavity above-mentioned.

The artifical Manner is made uſe of by the Jews and Jockeys, who mark their Horſes, after the Age of being known, to make them appear only ſix or ſeven Years old. They do it in this manner: They throw down the Horſe, to have him more at Command, and with a Steel-Graver, like what is uſed for Ivory, hollow the middle Teeth a little, and the corner ones ſomewhat more; then fill the Holes with a little Roſin, Pitch, Sulphur, or ſome Grains of Wheat, which they burn in with a Bit of hot Wire, made in proportion to the Hole. This Operation they repeat from time to time, *till* they give the Hole a laſting Black, in imitation of Nature. But, in ſpite of all they can do, the hot Iron makes a little yellowiſh Circle round theſe Holes, like what it would leave upon Ivory. They have another Trick therefore, to prevent Detection; which is, to make the Horſe foam from time to time, after having rubbed his Mouth, Lips, and Gums, with Salt, and the Crumb of Bread dried and powdered with Salt. This Foam hides the Circle made by the Iron.

Another thing they cannot do, is to counterfeit young Tuſks, it being out of their power to make thoſe two Crannies above-mentioned, which are given by Nature. With Files they may make them ſharper or flatter, but then they take away the ſhining natural Enamel: So that one may always know, by theſe Tuſks, Horſes that are paſt ſeven, till they come to twelve or thirteen.

Having thus taught how to know a Horſe's Age, it is proper to deſcribe his Defects, and the Maladies he is ſubject to. I begin with the Defects of the Mouth, which may deſtroy a Horſe without any Diſtemper, eſpecially if a Man is oblig'd to continue his Journey, when the Horſe cannot eat nor drink without Pain.

CHAP. II.

Of the Barbs.

IF your Horſe does not drink, look under his Tongue, and ſee if he has not two fleſhy Excreſcence on the Under-Palate, like little Bladders. It ſeems to be a mere Trifle; but theſe however will hinder a Horſe from drinking as uſual; and as he does not drink freely, he eats the leſs, and languiſhes from Day to Day, perhaps, without any one's taking Notice of it. When you have diſcovered the Diſeaſe, the Remedy is very eaſy. You are only to open

open the Horſe's Mouth, with a ſort of Iron that all Farriers have, or ought to have, called a Colt's Foot, and then cut off the two Bladders with a Pair of Sciſſars. Some waſh their Mouths, after having blooded them with the Horn, as the meaneſt Farrier knows how, and then rub it well with Juice of Garlick, Salt, and Vinegar. This may do good, and can do no harm; but the main Work is to cut off the *Barbs*, as above directed. CHAP. III, IV, V.

CHAP. III.

Of Gag-Teeth.

THIS is known by opening the Mouth of a Horſe, and looking at his Upper-Palate, to ſee if the Fleſh comes down below the inner Teeth. This gives him Pain in eating his Oats, and even his Hay when it is too harſh; tho' he can very well manage Bran, Graſs, or kind Hay. The Remedy is as eaſy as that for the *Barbs*: It is only putting the Colt's Foot into his Mouth, and burning him with a hot Iron, taking of a Bit off Fleſh about as big as a Bean, which muſt be done delicately near the Teeth. Give him afterwards, for two or three Days, ſcalded Bran inſtead of Oats, and then he will come to his Feeding as uſual.

CHAP. IV.

Of Giggs upon the Lips.

WHEN you have looked in the Horſe's Mouth, without finding any of the two Diſorders above, you muſt turn up his Lips, both upper and under, and perhaps you may find ſeveral ſmall Elevations, like little white Bliſters, which make the Inſide of the Lips uneven. This Defect may even be felt with the Finger, and is what hinders Horſes from eating as uſual. To cure it, you muſt take the End of a good Iron Nail, beat thin and made ſharp, and ſcarify the Lips within-ſide both above and below, as directed hereafter.

Let as little Blood as poſſible come out of the Scarification. Bleed him afterwards with the Horn in the midſt of the Upper-Palate, between the two Tuſks and the corner Teeth; but carefully avoid entering a Cavity over-againſt the Corners, becauſe thro' that you may bleed him to Death. If thro' the Unſkilfulneſs of the Operator, a Horſe be pricked in this Place, immediately take a Nut-ſhell, or any thing elſe of the ſame Figure, with a little Bit of Spunge, or Lint, or fine Tow, enough to fill the Shell near half; and having wetted it, and rolled it in powdered Red-Lead, put it in the Shell, and apply it to the Orifice, binding it on with a Bandage over the Noſe. If it ſtay on two Hours, the Blood is ſtenched.

To return to the Bleeding. When it is ſkilfully performed, without any Accident attending, and the Horſe has been ſcarfied, waſh his Mouth with Juice of Garlick, Salt, and Vinegar, rubbing it well with a Rag faſtened to the End of a Stick. Some Hours after give him a Maſh of ſcalded Bran, and afterwards feed him as uſual. The three Defects above-mentioned, ſeldom happen to any but young Horſes, whoſe Mouths are fleſhy.

CHAP. V.

Of Gag-Teeth.

THIS Defect happens rarely to young Horſes, and is to be diſcovered by putting the Colt's Foot into their Mouths, and looking at the large Grinders, which in this Caſe appear unequal, and in eating catch hold of the Inſide of the Cheeks, cauſing great Pain, and making them ſometimes refuſe their Food. You may obſerve alſo as the Horſe eats, that ſmall Pellets of chew'd Hay will ſlip out between the Teeth and Cheeks, into the Manger, or upon the Ground. The only Cure is to make the Teeth even, which may be done an eaſier Way than the Farriers commonly take, who ſtrike off the Parts that ſtick out with a Mallet and Chiſſel, and endanger the looſening of all the Teeth, beſides wounding, or even killing the Horſe, in Caſe the Hand ſhould ſlip. This is indeed the ſhorteſt Way; but mine is much the ſafeſt. It is only to take a good Steel File, not too coarſe, about two Fingers broad, and one thick, which is the ſame Size as the Farriers uſe to raſp the Hoof, after ſhoeing; put it in the Horſe's Mouth, between the great Grinders, ſometimes on one ſide, ſometimes on the other; which will oblige him to chew upon it, and by that Means wear off himſelf all the Inequalities, and make the Teeth even. After which he will eat better, and his Food will afford him more Nutriment.

If

CHAP. VI, VII, VIII. If any Horse should be found who refuses his Food, and yet it is not sick, nor has any of the above-mentioned Defects, examine well his Manger, his Rack, the Pail he drinks out of, and every Place about him: For the least Nastiness or Stink turns a Horse's Stomach, there not being a more cleanly Animal under the Sun. We now proceed to other Accidents, and especially those of the Eyes.

CHAP. VI.

A Blow on the Eye.

IF a Horse receives a Blow only on the Eye-lid, and the vitrous Humour be not hurt, the Cure is very easy. When his Eye appears swelled and inflamed from any such Accident, take Armenian Bole, powder it fine, and dilute it with White-Wine Vinegar and the Whites of Eggs to a pappy Consistence; use it five or six Times a Day till the Cure is effected, and then with warm Water clear away all the remaining Filth, which will enable him to open his Eye. But if the vitrous Humour has been hurt, after the foregoing Remedy apply the following.

Take Rose and Plantain-Water of each 4 *Ounces*; *Tutty in fine Powder* 2 *Drams*; *use it with a Feather.* Introduce it gently, opening the Eyelids, that you may come at the Speck. If the Whiteness be great, take 4 Drams of *Tutty* instead of two. You may apply it five or six times a Day.

CHAP. VII.

How to know Moon-eyed Horses.

A Moon-eyed Horse is known by his weeping, and keeping his Eyes almost shut at the Beginning of the Distemper. As the Moon changes he gradually recovers his Sight; and in a Fortnight or three Weeks sees as well as before. Your Dealers, when they have such a Horse to sell at the time of his weeping, always tell you that he has got a Bit of Straw or Hay in his Eye, or that he has received some Blow. They also take great Care to wipe away the Humour, to prevent its being seen. But a Man should trust only himself in buying of Horses, and above all be very exact in examining the Eyes. In this he must have regard to the Time and Place where he makes the Examination. Bad Eyes may appear good in Winter, when the Snow is upon the Ground; and often good ones appear bad, according to the Position of the Horse. Never examine a Horse's Sight by the side of a white Wall, where the Dealers will chuse to shew one that is Moon-eyed. The surest Way is to take him just at the Stable-Door, when only his Head peeps out, and all his Body is still within; or to examine him in a dark Stable, with a Candle. If the White of the Eye appears reddish at bottom, or the Colour of a withered Leaf, I would not advise you to purchase that Horse.

A Moon-eyed or lunatic Horse has always one Eye bigger than the other, and above his Lids you may discover Wrinkles or Circles.

If he has been attacked but twice or three times with this Disorder, there are some hopes of a Cure, by pursuing the following Directions. At least you have a Chance to save one Eye, and prevent the Deformity of the other. If you take him at his being first affected, both Eyes will become as good as ever. This Distemper proceeds from different Causes, which every one is not acquainted with.

When young Colts have eat too much Oats, or other Grain, they are apt to strain the Vessels which feed the Eye. Others have the Eyes diseased by being rid and fatigued too young; and others owe it to the Soil where they were brought up. Fat, humid, or marshy Ground, which breeds a very juicy Grass, may cause the Head to swell with Humours, and weaken the Sight. Grey, Isabel, Whitish, are Flea-bitten Horses, or more subject than others to these Disorders. Not that any Colour is exempt from it, or that any Pasture may not produce it.

CHAP. VII.

The Manner of treating a Moon-eyed Horse.

PUT him first to a Bran Diet, and give hive no Oats during the whole Course. Make an Incision along the Vein that passes from the Temple to the Corner of the Eye, and a little above it. Having opened the Skin with a delicate Hand, take a small *wild Goat's Horn*, and an Incision-Knife, and divide all the Flesh from the Artery without cutting it. As you go

go on, paſs the Goat's Horn underneath; and then with a Needle and ſtrong double Silk, well waxed, make a Ligature on the upper ſide of the Artery; then open the Vein long-ways, without cutting it, and let it bleed for ſome time. When you have drawn away Blood enough, which will be in a Quarter of an Hour, paſs the Goat's Horn again under the Artery, and in the ſame manner make another Ligature next to the Eye. Then cut the Artery between the two Ligatures, clip off the Silk pretty cloſe to the Knots, and fill up the Wound with a Quartern of Butter, mixed with about an Ounce of Salt. Do the ſame on the other ſide the Head. Dreſs the Wounds afterwards twice a Day, for about a Week; and then continue to foment them three times a Day with hot Wine, ſweetened with fine Sugar, till the Cure is compleated. This Operation is properly called Cutting the Temporal Arteries, and not Tying-up the Veins, as it has hitherto been ignorantly named by the Farriers and Grooms, who know no Difference between an Artery and a Vein. CHAP. IX, X.

Some perform it in an another Manner, by running a hot Wire a-croſs; but this Way is not always ſucceſsful, and the other is moſt proper for thoſe who have not a very nice Hand. A Month after this Operation, the Horſe muſt be unnerved, as deſcribed in Fig. IV. N°. II. The Wounds here muſt be dreſſed with Salt Butter, as before: And obſerve to uſe no Waters nor Powders to Moon-Eyes, becauſe the Diſeaſe is within the Eye, and not upon the Cornea.

CHAP. IX.

How to to unnerve a Horſe.

MAKE your Inciſions four Fingers breadth below the Eyes, and you will find a Sort of Muſcle on both ſides the upper Part of the Noſe, deſcending along the Front. Make a third Inciſion at the End of the Noſe, above the Noſtrils, where the two Muſcles join in the Middle, and are not bigger than a Gooſe-Quill; whereas above, at the other Inciſions, they are ſeverally as big as one's Thumb. You muſt draw them both out with the Goat's Horn thro' the lower Wound. A Horſe that has not been lunatic above one or two Moons, will certainly recover his Sight after this laſt Operation, ſuppoſing the whole be well performed: Nay, ſometimes after three or four Moons, a Horſe has been perfectly cured. But in this there is Danger, and the Operations ought not to be deferred longer than the firſt or ſecond Moon. They are not expenſive, and depend only on the Addreſs of the Operator.

CHAP. X.

A Remedy for a Web in the Eye.

TAKE of the Herbs, Celandine, Ground-Ivy, Night-Shade, of each two Handfuls; Scolopendra, or Spleen-Wort, one Handful; beat them all together in a Marble Mortar, and preſs out their Juice thro' a Linnen Cloth. Dip a ſoft Feather in this Liquor, and put it into the Horſe's Eye, three or four Times a Day. When you perceive the Web diſſipate, you may take a little Roſe and Plantain Water, in proportion to your Quantity of Juice, and uſe it every Day. If the Web be old and obſtinate, add a little common Salt, and Verjuice, and you will ſeldom fail of Succeſs.

For a Horſe that has a diſordered Sight.

Take Spring or Rain-Water, and Roſe-Water, of each an equal Quantity; filter the former thro' a whited brown Paper; raſp in a little *Caſtile* Soap, and double-refined Sugar; beat up the whole together till the Sugar and Soap are diſſolved: Then let it ſettle, and afterwards filter it again thro' another Paper. Uſe this with a ſoft Feather three or four times a Day, till the Eyes become clear.

Pills to purge the Brain of a Horſe that has ſore Eyes.

Take *Agaric*, *Succotrine Aloes*, *Senna Leaves*, *Turbith Root*, *Gentian*, and *Ginger*, of each three Drams; all in Powder; and with unſalted Butter, or Syrup of *Buckthorn*, make it into a ſufficient Number of Balls, to be rolled in Liquorice Powder, for one Doſe. Give after it a few Glaſſes of Wine, to make him ſwallow it the better. He ſhould faſt ſix Hours before and after taking this Doſe.

CHAP. XI.

A Powder to diſſipate a Web.

Take of Garden *Thyme*, and *Serpillum* or *Wild-Thyme*, one Ounce; dry one or both of theſe in the Shade, and make a fine Powder, which uſe with a fine Feather to the Horſe's Eye three or four times a Day.

Remember never to blow any Powder into a Horſe's Eye.

Another Remedy for the ſame Purpoſe, or for other ſore Eyes.

Take *Celandine Juice*, 2 *Ounces*; *White Sugar Candy*, 1 *Ounce*; *White Vitriol*, *Florentine Orrice Root* powder'd, each half an *Ounce*. Put the Juice and Powders into a Pint of Plantain or Spring Water, beat it all well together, till the Water is in a Froth; then let it ſettle all Night, and filter it thro' whited brown Paper, to uſe with a Feather.

Another Powder may be made with Bits of Chryſtal, or Glaſs, beat very fine, with an equal Quantity of Sugar-Candy; ſift it well, and uſe it either for a Web, or any other Spot on the Eye.

The following is very good.

Take *Ground-Ivy*, four Handfuls; *Common Salt*, *Sugar Candy*, *White Copperas* calcin'd, each 1 *Ounce*; ſix new laid Eggs, boiled hard, and the Yolks to be taken away; after which beat Shells and all well together in a Marble Mortar with a Pint of white Wine. Let it infuſe twelve Hours, and filter it thro' Paper for Uſe.

Another Powder.

Take common *Slate*, Calcined *Snail-Shells*, *Kalt* or *Salt-Wort*, each 2 *Ounces*: Powder all theſe, and ſift them thro' a fine Lawn Sieve. Uſe this as before deſcribed, and continue it till the Cure is finiſh'd.

CHAP. XI.

A Remedy for Wounds in the Eyes.

TAKE *Armenian Bole pulverized*, mix it well with the Whites of Eggs, and beat up the whole with White-Wine Vinegar, till it is of the Conſiſtence of Child's Pap: Anoint round the Eye with this three or four times a Day, till the Inflammation abates. If any Speck then remain, uſe the following Water.

Take *Roſe Water*, *Plantain* and *Carduus Water*, each 2 *Ounces*; Powder of *Tutty*, *Sugar Candy*, *Cyprus Vitriol*, each 1 *Dram*; mix all together, and when it has ſtood long enough for the Water to be clear, filter it thro' Paper, and uſe it to the Eye with a Feather.

This is an excellent Eye-Water, in all Diſorders of the Eye where is a Flow of Blood or Humours.

Another Eye-Water.

Before you undertake the Cure, examine carefully from whence the Web or Pearl proceeds; there being two Sorts of them; the firſt natural, the other accidental, and occaſion'd by ſome Blow. As this latter muſt be the moſt recent, ſo it is the eaſieſt to cure. In your Examination of the Eye therefore, upon the Diſcovery of a White Spot, if this Spot be ſtreaked with Red, either in the Middle or towards the Edge, you may boldly conclude that the Horſe has been ſtruck, and may be eaſily cured, uſing only the Remedies already and hereafter preſcribed.

If it be a natural Web, you muſt engage with the Humours that feed it: For which purpoſe nothing more is neceſſary than the *Lapis Mirabilis* (the Compoſition of which we ſhall give at the End of the Book) powdered fine. Mix an Ounce of this with 8 Ounces of *Plantain* and *Roſe-Waters*, each in equal Quantities, and beat up the Whole together till it become as white as Milk. Put ſome of this in the Eye with a Feather three or four times a Day, ſhaking the Bottle every time. If the Web be very obſtinate, increaſe the Quantity of *Lapis Mirabilis*; and in Proportion as the Web decreaſes, fill up the Bottle with *Plantain* and *Roſe-Water*, to make it weaker; for by keeping the Compoſition ſtill as ſtrong as at the beginning, the Remeday may be made worſe than the Diſeaſe.

In a Web that proceeds from Nature, you muſt deprive your Horſe of Oats all the time of the Cure, and give him only ſcalded Bran, or Barley bruiſed in a Mill, to refreſh him; and in order to turn the Humours, make him from time to time take the following Draught.

Take

Take *Agarick* powdered, *Powder* of *Liquorice*, each 1 *Ounce*; *Sal-Prunel*, half an *Ounce*. Mix all theſe together in a Quart of ſmall Gruel, and give it in a Horn, four Hours after eating any thing. He muſt afterwards faſt four Hours more. If you are diſtant from any Town, and can get no *Roſe* or *Plantain-Water*, uſe ſkimmed Milk or Whey in the room of it; or, for want of that, Spring or River Water. CHAP. XII, XIII.

Another very good and eaſy-made Water for the Eyes.

Take one Dram of either *Cyprus* or *White Vitriol* in Powder; diſſolve it in half a Pint of very clear Water; fling this Mixture into a large red-hot Copper-kettle not tinn'd, and let it remain in it three Days; then filter the Water for Uſe.

I hope the Reader will pardon my ſetting down ſo many different Remedies, ſince I do it only for his Advantage. A Man is not always near an Apothecary, nor in a proper Country to find the neceſſary Plants: I therefore refer him to thoſe which are eaſieſt come at. No one can blame me for being ſomewhat extenſive upon the Accidents of the Eye, as nothing in the Knowledge of a Horſe can be of more Importance than his Sight.

All Accidents in the Eyes of Horſes are not of the ſame Nature, but ſome are much eaſier to cure than others. Some are made ſore by being over-heated, and others by Pains in the Head. In the Army, at the Piquet, Horſes are often hurt by ſtanding with their Heads expoſed to the Mid-day Sun. Others by feeding on Corn too young, before their Jaws were ſtrong enough to grind it, have ſwelled, with the very Pains they have taken, the Arteries that carry the Blood to all the Extremities of the Body, eſpecially to the Head and Eyes; which cauſes too great an Abundance of Humours, clogs the Sight, and at laſt occaſions Defluxions or ſore Eyes. Some again have this Diſeaſe by Inheritance, derived from the Father or Mother. Every one therefore who would raiſe a Breed of Horſes, or form a Stud, ſhould take care that both the Stallions and Mares have good Eyes, eſpecially the former.

There is one Thing more which a Buyer ſhould be guarded againſt. A Dealer who has a handſome Horſe, but with a Dragon in the Eye, in order to ſell him for a Stallion, will put that Eye entirely out, and pretend that he loſt it by Accident; becauſe a Horſe that has loſt an Eye by Accident is as good for a Stallion as another.

The beſt and ſhorteſt Way for watery Eyes, or Eyes that are inclined to be Moon-ſtruck, is to bathe them ſeveral times a Day, above and below, with freſh clean Water, eſpecially over the Lids; making uſe of a large Spunge. If this does not leſſen the Inflammation, add to it a ſixth part of White-Wine Vinegar, and uſe it with Patience; for nothing can be better for Humours and Inflammations. If theſe Defluxions come often, the Horſe is in great danger of becoming Lunatic; to prevent which, cut the temporary Artery, as before directed.

CHAP. XII.

A Whitlow in the Eye.

WHAT I call by this Name is a fleſhy Excreſcence, that proceeds from the Corner of the Eye, and covers a Part of the Pupil. It is in Shape almoſt like the Beard of an Oyſter; and, tho' ſeemingly not a Matter of great Conſequence, if ſuffered to grow, it draws away a Part of the Nouriſhment of the Eye, and ſometimes occaſions a total Privation of Sight.

In order to a Cure, tie up the Horſe that he cannot ſtir, and then dextrouſly ſlide a Piece of Gold or Silver under the Excreſence: Then with a large Needle, threaded with ſtrong Silk, go thro' the middle of it, in order to draw it up; and ſo cut it off with Sciſſars. It is uſually about as big as a Silver Penny. You have nothing to do after the Operation, but to waſh the Eyes three or four times a Day with cold Spring Water.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Strangles.

WE proceed from the Eyes to the other Diſtempers incident to Horſes, beginning with the Strangles. But, before we define it, the Reader ſhould be informed that Horſes run at the Noſe in eight different Diſeaſes. Few People diſtinguiſh theſe, and only ſay in general that a Horſe has the Strangles or Glanders. Five of theſe eight Sorts are curable, and three incurable; for want of knowing which, many run into unneceſſary Expences, when they had better knock the Horſe on the Head. Even of the five curable Sorts many Horſes die, in ſpite

CHAP. XIII.

spite of the best Remedies, when they are in an ill State of Body, and the Disease is violent. The first or true Strangles may be compared to the Small-Pox; a critical Distemper, of which many Persons die, tho' under the Hands of the best Physicians. The second is the Bastard Strangles; the third is called Morfoundering; the fourth, the Strangullion; the fifth, the contagious Head-Evil.

In this the Strangles differ from the Small-Pox, that tho' many antient Persons escape the latter, there is no young Horse but is subject to have the former, either perfectly or imperfectly. It usually appears at about 3, 4, or 5 Years old; but after 5 it ought not to be called the Strangles, as I shall shew in the Sequel.

How to know the Strangles.

The only Sign is a large Swelling between the two nether Jaw-bones, which discharges a white Matter. The larger the Swelling, the more easy the Cure; but in severe cold Weather, when the Pores are shut, more Care is required than at another Time. The Horse must then be kept warm in the Stable, and suffered to drink only warm Water mixed with a little Flour or Bran. Keep him from Oats, and feed him with Bran and boiling Water, the Fumes of which will bring down the Matter, and you need not fear his burning his Nose. But in Summer or Spring, when this Distemper commonly appears, good Pasture alone is almost sufficient to effect a Cure.

You may use the following Ointment, to ripen the Swelling under the Jaws.

Take *Ointment* of *Roses*, *Ointment* of *Marshmallows*, *Ointment* of *Poplar Buds*, *Virgin Honey*, of each 4 *Ounces*; *Basilicum*, 8 *Ounces*. Melt them all together over a slow Fire; stir the Composition while it cools, and then, having rubbed the Part well, tie over it the hairy Side of a Lamb-Skin or Hare-Skin. When the Swelling breaks, put into it a Stopple of Tow covered well with *Basilicum*, or for want of that with fresh Lard, and fasten the Dressing on with more Tow. Continue this till a Cure is effected; for when the Impostume is broke, all Danger is over.

If your Horse loses his Stomach, give him such a Cordial Draught as the following, *viz.* Two Ounces of good *Treacle*, half an Ounce of powdered *Rhubarb*, and the same Quantity of *Salt Prunel*, dissolved in a Bottle of Wine; but let him fast 4 or 5 Hours before and after taking it.

The Bastard Strangles.

This appears sometimes like, and sometimes different from the true Strangles. In the former Case, treat it as you do that; but when it comes in the Foot, the Leg, the Ham, the Hanch, the Shoulder, the Breast, or the Eye, you must proceed otherwise. Without Care it may corrupt the Pupil of the Eye, as the Small-Pox does in Men. This Distemper proves that the Horse did not throw off his true Strangles, but that some foul Humours are still left behind. It may come at 4, 5, 6, or even at 7 Years of Age. You may know when a Horse is not clear by his continual Languor at Work, and seeming perpetually weary without any visible Ailment.

When you perceive virulent Swellings in any of the Parts before-mentioned, rub them with the same Ointments that you used in the true Strangles. If you cannot get any of those Drugs, take clean Barley or Oats, or, for want of those, Rye-Flour; boil it in Milk to a thick Pap; add Lamp-Oil at Discretion; and then with Tow apply it to the Tumour, every Day fresh, and as hot as the Horse can bear it, making him drink, from time to time, some such Draught as the following.

Take *Venice-Treacle*, 3 *Ounces*; *Assa Fœtida*, 1 *Ounce*. Mix it with a Pint of Wine for a Draught.

Morfoundering.

Morfoundering appears by a Running at the Nose, much like the Strangles; but the Swelling under the Jaws is less. If by the above-mentioned Medicines you can make the Glands swell, you gain much Ground; and yet more when you bring them to a Discharge. Neglect nothing therefore at the Beginning of this Distemper, which may prove of dangerous Consequence; for if those Glands continue in the same Situation, and grow to one of the lower Jaw-bones, you have Reason to apprehend an incurable Glanders; whereas if you can soften the Glands, and make them fit to open, you may depend on a Cure, by only proceeding as in the Strangles.

This

CHAP. XIII.

The Stranguillion.

This is an extraordinary Diſtemper, and which, without inſtant Relief, will ſtrangle a Horſe, by preſſing on the firſt Knot of the Throat, and preventing Reſpiration. It is known by a green Matter iſſuing from the Noſe, and many ignorant People take it for the Glanders. The Horſe that has it muſt either die, or be cured in a Fortnight, or at moſt in three Weeks. All the Glands round the lower Jaw, quite to the Corner of the Eye, are ſo ſwelled that a Horſe cannot turn his Head, nor even ſtoop it towards his Breaſt. When you know the Diſtemper by theſe Symptoms, rub the Swelling firſt with the ſame Ointment preſcribed for the Strangles, adding a little Oil of Bays; or, for want of that, with the Pap there directed, wrapping up the Part with the Skin of a Lamb or Hare. As a Horſe in this Diſtemper ſwallows with Difficulty, take 5 or 6 dry Biſcuits, or for want of them hard Cruſts of Bread; pound them in a Mortar, and boil them in about three Quarts of ſtrong Beer, to the Conſiſtence of Child's Pap; then add half an Ounce of *Cinanmon*, and two Ounces of *Liquorice*, both in Powder: Mix them well, and give the Horſe of this, Morning and Evening, in the Form of a Draught.

If the Horſe has a Difficulty of Reſpiration, bleed him well, which will give great Relief; but if the Paſſage and the Throat continue obſtructed, take a Bull's Pizzle, and after having cut off the Hair, and beat the Point with a Hammer, to make it pliant, rub it over with Honey of Roſes, and thruſt it tenderly down the Throat, moving it eaſily backwards and forwards two or three times. After this, make him take the Pap, giving a little at a time in the Horn, and ſlackening his Cord between whiles, that he may ſtoop his Head and breathe. As a Horſe is exceſſively weak in this Diſtemper, there ſhould be a Man on each ſide of him, to ſupport him; and let one of them ſtroke his Throat, while the other ſtrikes upon his Flanks, to facilitate his ſwallowing. Cordial Powders are very good in theſe Diſeaſes, given from two to three Ounces in a Bottle of Wine. For want of thoſe Powders, you may uſe Venice Treacle, and Confection of Hyacinth in the ſame Quantity.

The contagious Head-Evil.

This Diſeaſe is called contagious, becauſe it is eaſily communicated from one Horſe to another, even without coming near. Sometimes it ſpreads fifteen or twenty Miles round, and ſeizes almoſt every Horſe, which makes it aſcribed to an ill Air. The Glands are ſwelled only below the nether Jaw; but ſwell to a prodigious Size, and the Matter which runs from the Noſe is almoſt all yellow; whereas in the *Stranguillion* it is green. Many Horſes burſt with this Evil, in ſpite of all the Care that can be taken, eſpecially when it is not looked after at the Beginning.

Give them at firſt plenty of Cordials, Morning and Evening, to enable them to throw off the peccant Matter by the Noſe. Take alſo two Gooſe-Quills; rub the ſoft Part of the Feathers with Oil of Bays, and tie to the hard Ends a ſmall String; then thruſt up the Feathers into the Noſtrils, one into each, as far as they will go, and faſten the String to the Noſe-Band of the Halter; turning the Horſe ſo that the Matter may not drop into the Manger. Repeat this three or four times a Day, half an Hour at each time. All Care muſt be taken to bring the Swelling to a Head, and if it ripens of itſelf, the Cure will be ſoon effected. If neither the Ointment nor the Pap preſcribed for the Strangles are found ſufficient, roaſt two large Lilly Roots in hot Embers, and apply them as hot as the Horſe can bear, putting over them ſome Ointment and Tow, and keeping it on with a Bandage, or Skin as before. If after all, the Impoſthume will not break in ſeven or eight Days, open it with a red-hot Iron, about as big as the End of one's Finger. Blood, mingled with the Matter that comes out, proves the Swelling to be ripe. Tho' no Pain follows, introduce every Day a Tent of Tow and Baſilicum, till the Bleeding ceaſes; obſerving always to keep the Wound very warm. Feed the Horſe with ſcalded Bran, as in the former Caſes, and let him drink nothing cold. If no Blood comes from the Abſceſs, it will be to no Purpoſe to put any thing into the Wound; but continue only to rub it with the Ointment above. If the Horſe has loſt his Stomach, adminiſter Cordials from time to time, in order to ſtrengthen his Appetite.

Cordials

CHAP. XIII.

Cordials for Horſes that are ſick, and have loſt their Stomachs.

Take *Venice Treacle*, 1 Ounce and a half; *Rhubarb*, *Angelica Root*, *Salt Prunel*, each half an Ounce; mix all together in a Bottle of Wine for a Draught. If you cannot get theſe Drugs, give four Ounces daily of the Cordial Powders, and keep the Horſe warm.

Another Medicine for the Strangles.

Take *Sage* and *Lavender*, a Handful of each, pounded well in a Mortar; add two Handfuls of Wheat Flour, and boil the Whole in a ſufficient Quantity of Vinegar. Put it afterwards in a Pot, and apply it as hot as poſſible to the Glands under the nether Jaw, twice every Day, keeping the Horſe very warm in the Stable, and making him drink Water whitened with a little Flour, and with about a Quartern of Honey mixed in each Pail. Leave his Draught every Time an Hour or two before him, and when you take it from him, throw away the Remainder, and waſh the Pail well, leſt the Taſte ſhould affect any thing elſe.

The ſimple Strangles may be cured by the following Remedy.

Take thirty Grains of black *Pepper-Corns*, and infuſe them upon warm Embers, without boiling, the Space of twenty-four Hours, in ten or twelve Ounces of White-Wine; then take out the Pepper, and make the Horſe drink the Infuſion: Repeat this every Day, and, tho' a ſimple Remedy, it will be of great Effect.

For a Horſe that runs with the Strangles.

Take a Handful of *Chervil*, boil it in Water with two Ounces of Oil of Bays, and let it cool in the Pot: Mix the Water and the Oil, and ſtir in the two Ounces of *Agrippa's Ointment*. With this Compoſition rub under the Horſe's Jaws, the Hair being ſhaved off, and cover the Part with a Lamb or Hare-Skin, to bring the Swelling to a Head; becauſe when it is opened your Horſe is half cured. Sometimes the Matter is curdled, ſo that the Glands will appear hard, when they are fit to open: To know when it is ripe therefore, obſerve when the Hairs begin to fall off, which is a ſure Sign that you may perform the Operation. If any Gland is yet unripe, put a Tent of Tow and Baſilicum into the Orifice; and to forward the Cure, uſe a Tent with a Digeſtive, made of four Parts Turpentine, and one Part of Yolks of Eggs, beat up together. Adminiſter daily Venice Treacle and Cordial Powders, an Ounce of each, mixed in a Bottle of Wine: But if the Horſe has loſt his Stomach, uſe the following. Take *powdered Sugar*, or *Liquorice Powder*, *Cinnamon*, and *Nutmeg*, with half an Ounce of *Aſſa Fœtida*; mix them with Honey, to a Maſs as big as one's Fiſt; and tie the whole up in a Linnen Cloth, that the Horſe may hold it in his Mouth. Bring the Strings from both Ends of the Cloth, over the Horſe's Head. Some People put a Bit of Wood into the Cloth; but I diſapprove that Method; tho' indeed more Care is required without the Wood than with it. This Bag, which is good for many Diſorders that take away a Horſe's Appetite, ſhould be put in the Mouth four or five times every Day, and kept there a full Hour at a time.

For a Horſe that has a Running at the Noſe, without being glandery.

Take the Herb which the *French* call *Racile*, and *Ground Ivy*, an equal Quantity of each; chop them and bruiſe them in a Mortar: Make them into ſix Pills with freſh Butter, each as big as a Nut, which roll up in *Liquorice Powder*, and give them one after another. Then mount your Horſe, and trot and gallop him a little, till he ſweats, and throws out more than uſual by his Noſe and Mouth. Ride him to the Water without letting him drink, and a Quarter of an Hour after trot him a little more. Then put him into the Stable, and cover him well. Give him this Exerciſe ſix times in ten Days, and a ſhort time after you will ſee him quite well.

A Remedy for a morfoundered Horſe.

Take two young *Puppies*, and boil them in two Gallons of White-Wine, with an Ounce of *Pepper*, an Ounce of *Ginger*, and four Ounces of Sugar, till the Wine is reduced to about half the Quantity; ſtrain it well, and give it the Horſe at four times, which will ſerve Morning and Night, two Days. The Horſe muſt faſt two or three Hours before and after taking it;

it; and immediately after he has taken each Doſe, walk him an Hour. If the Horſe continues bad, repeat the ſame Thing once or twice. CHAP. XIV.

CHAP. XIV.

The Glanders.

OF the three Sorts of incurable Runnings at the Noſe, the worſt to a young Horſe is the Glanders from the Glands, as is manifeſt from the Experience of all who have writ of Farriery. In a Courſe of fifty Years I have tried all the known Experiments, which I have added to thoſe of my Father, during a Life of eighty Years ſpent in the Army and the King's Stables: But all Remedies have been ineffectual for this Diſeaſe. The ſhorteſt way therefore is to kill the Horſes that have it, to prevent their infecting others. A Saddle, a Bridle, a Covering that has been upon them, may communicate the Infection; and it is a great Happineſs when it falls out otherwiſe. The Place where they have been, ſix Months after, may do the ſame. When a Stable has been infected, it is not ſufficient to change the Rack, the Manger, the Pillars, the Bars; to ſcrape and white-waſh the Walls; but you muſt take up the Pavement, and at leaſt half a Foot of Earth under it, and put freſh Earth and Stones in the Room.

How to know the Glanders of the Glands.

When a Horſe has a Running at the Noſe, either on the one Side or the other, feel if he has any flat Glands faſtened to the nether Jaw, which give him Pain, when you preſs them; obſerve if the Matter he diſcharges be yellow and ſtinking, or if it ſticks at the Bottom of the Noſtril; for theſe are all bad Signs, and a Running at one Noſtril is worſe than at both. Many throw down ſuch a Horſe, to take away his Glands, by cutting the Skin under his nether Jaw, either with a Razor, or an Inciſion-Knife. The Operation is not difficult, and I have been ſo weak as to perform it above fifty Times, not one of which ſucceeded; nor have I heard any Man who had tried it ſay otherwiſe than my ſelf. For ſome time after the Operation indeed, the Horſe often throws out no more Matter; but this is only till the Wound is healed, and then he becomes as bad as ever. New Glands will ariſe, and I have cut them off three times ſucceſſively, all to the ſame Purpoſe. It is in vain, therefore, to think of a Remedy for the Glanders.

I own that ſome morfoundered Horſes have been glanderous, and that it is often difficult to diſtinguiſh Morfoundering from the Glanders: Hence many who have cured the former, pretend they have cured the latter. But, in a Word, if you cannot, by good Remedies, ripen the Gland in a Month or ſix Weeks, it is needleſs to be at any more Expence.

The Glanders from the Spine, or Back-Bone Marrow.

This is equally contagious with the former; from which it differs, in that the Matter ejected is green and ſtinking. Some Horſes in this Diſtemper have no Glands; others, one only under the nether Jaw, and that not growing to the Bones. They eat and drink as if they were well; yet gradually waſte away, their Coats growing rough, in ſpite of all the Care that can be taken of them. If the Running continues a Month or ſix Weeks, the Gland remaining hard, as at firſt, give over all Thoughts of a Cure; and the ſame Direction may be obſerved in what follows.

The cancerous Glanders.

When a Horſe ejects a yellow Matter mixed with Blood, which proceeds from the Tendons at the upper Part of the Noſtrils, this Matter, whether any Glands appear or not, iſſues from ulcerated Lungs. The very Corroſiveneſs of the Pus breeds the Ulcers that yield the Blood. If the Lungs are not attacked, the Cancers may be healed by proper Medicines applied with a Feather: But when the Lungs are ſeized there is no Cure. It is not with Horſes as with Men, whoſe Lives in this Condition may be prolonged by a proper Regimen: But a Horſe is good for nothing when his Work is done, and therefore it is a needleſs Expence to keep him alive.

A Medicine for all Horſes who have a Running at the Noſe.

Take half a Pound, 6 Ounces, or a Quartern of *Black Soap*, in Proportion to the Strength of the Horſe; dilute it in a Pint of hot Water; then add to it as much Wine, and give it

CHAP. XV.

it for a Draught. Repeat this nine Days, observing that the Horse fasts five or six Hours before and after taking it.

Give him his Food on the Ground, in a very clean Place, in order to make him lower his Head; which will enable him to throw off the Matter more easily. Give him Remedies from time to time, to purge his Blood.

Another Medicine for the same Purpose.

Take *Cloves*, *Ginger*, *Grains of Paradise*, *Liver of Antimony*, and *White Hellebore*, each 1 Drachm: All powder'd, and mixt with a Pint of Vinegar. Add the Yolks of four fresh Eggs. Beat all well together, and give it your Horse. Throw a little of it, at last, up each Nostril, and continue this Prescription eight or ten Days. Keep him warm, and give him warm Water to drink every Morning and Evening, having first dissolved in it a Bit of leavened Dough, as big as an Egg. If he refuses to drink because of the Leaven, keep him a-dry till he alters his Mind.

A Perfume for Glandery Horses, that have a Running at the Nose.

Take *Olibanum*, *Mastick*, *Storax Calamit*, *Nettle Seed*, *Agarick*, *Juniper*, and *Bay Berries*, each one Ounce. Having powdered and mixed all these Drugs, take a large Sack, open at both Ends, and put one End over the Horse's Head, and the other over a Chafing-dish of live Charcoal: Then by little and little sprinkle an Ounce of the Powder upon the Coals, that the Horse may receive the Smoak. Continue this ten or twelve Days, as the Case requires.

There is another Disease that comes under the nether Jaw, which is a Sort of Gland that does not run, but which gradually wears out a Horse notwithstanding, and takes away his Stomach. For this take *Wormwood*, *Smallage*, and *Nettles*, of each a Handful; bruise them well in a Mortar, and add a sufficient Quantity of Hog's Grease: Make a Plaister of the whole; and, after having shaved off the Hair, bind it on with a Bandage. Renew it every twenty-four Hours, till the Malady decreases.

Another Medicine.

Take two or three Heads of *Garlick*, and a Handful of *Juniper-Berries*; bruise them in a Mortar, and add a Glass of *Briony-Water*: Then take *Pepper* and *Ginger*, of each an Ounce; *Cinnamon* and *Cloves*, of each half an Ounce: These being all reduced into Powder, take a Glass of *Aqua Vitæ*, a Quartern of *Honey*, and an Ounce of *Tobacco*: Put the Whole into a Pint of White-Wine, and let it infuse the Space of a Night in an earthern Pot close covered, upon hot Embers. The next Day give him a little Broth; and having strained the Infusion thro' a Cloth, make him take it; observing that he has fasted four Hours before. Take him out when he has drank it, trot and gallop him alternately, but walk him chiefly, especially at last, for the Space of two Hours. Then put him in the Stable, rub him well down with Straw, cover him close, and let him fast two Hours longer. You may repeat this Remedy five or six times in a Fortnight, and if it does not cure him, it will be in vain to look for any other.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Farcy.

THERE are six Sorts of Farcy; five curable, with good Treatment; but the sixth absolutely incurable; though that is more than every one knows. When a Man has cured four or five Horses of the Farcy, imagining every Farcy to be the same, he pretends to have an universal Remedy. For this Reason, I will describe the six Sorts by their Names and their Effects; it being necessary to know them before their Cure is undertaken. The First is called the *Farcy Farini Oculus*. The Second, the *Flying Farcy*. The Third, the *Corded Farcy*. The Fourth, the *Hen's Arse Farcy*. The Fifth, the *Cancerous Farcy*. The Sixth, the *Internal Farcy*.

I. *The Farini Oculus.*

This sort of Farcy appears in small Pimples, which issue only from the Skin; fresh ones still rising as the former dry away. It is of little Consequence, and gives way to the slighest Remedy

Remedy: Which is only to put the Horſe to Bran inſtead of Oats, and give him one or two Bleedings. If theſe fail, you may purge him gently, and afterwards cure him by waſhing his Pimples with Urine. But great Precaution ſhould be uſed before one undertakes to purge a Horſe; for a Medicine that may have worked ſucceſsfully with hundreds of Horſes, may yet kill one at laſt, in certain Diſpoſitions of Body. CHAP. XV.

Thus if his Dung be hard, black, and burnt as it were, you muſt adminiſter a Gliſter or two, the Evening before you give him the Purge, in order to open his Body. For as nothing can purge a Horſe, unleſs it ſtays with him twenty-four Hours before it works, a hot Body and hardened Excrement may cauſe a Fermentation in his Bowels ſufficient to burſt him: The giving Bran, therefore, five or ſix Days, and a few Gliſters, make way for the Medicine to have its Operation. If it does not work at the end of twenty-four Hours, take the Horſe out, and walk and trot him alternately, till the Effect begins; then cover him well, and keep him warm, till the Purging is over; which will be in half a Day, or ſometimes, perhaps, longer, according to the Force of the Medicine. If the Horſe be well prepared, according to the Directions above, you have nothing to fear, and the Cure will be ſoon accompliſhed.

II. *The Flying Farcy.*

This Farcy comes almoſt like the preceding; except that as that appears only on the Back, a little on the Neck, and ſometimes a little on the Head, this may appear in all Parts of the Body; but never runs up the Veins, or Nerves. Every Pimple that breaks, diſcharges a Matter, but it does not ſtink like the following Sorts. This kind too is very eaſy to cure, by uſing much the ſame Means as before, and giving the Horſe after his Purge an Ounce and a half of *Aſſafœtida*, and an Ounce and a half of *Salt Prunel*, diſſolved in a Bottle of Wine. Repeat this Draught three or four times every other Day, and waſh the Pimples with freſh Urine as faſt as they break, twice every Day, which will effectually dry them up. It is to be obſerved in all Farcys, that the firſt Pimple that appears, is generally the laſt that heals; and ſo long as that remains the Remedies muſt be continued.

III. *The Corded Farcy.*

This Sort may come all over the Body, as well as upon the Legs. It differs from others in this, that it ſhoots between the Skin and the Fleſh, as if Bits of Cord were put there, and at laſt breaks, ſometimes at one End, ſometimes at the other, and ſometimes in the Middle. It frequently extends four Inches, half a Foot, and ſometimes even a Foot, but not along the Veins or Nerves like the two following Sorts; and when broke, diſcharges a white Matter very thick, and the Edges of the Orifice are extreamly red. It is not very difficult to cure, any more than the preceding Sorts; not even if a Horſe has it all over his Body, and upon his Legs too. You have only to prepare the Remedies hereafter preſcribed, which are numerous, that ſo the moſt convenient may be adminiſtered. The Horſe, by Way of Preparation, ſhould be kept from Oats, and his Bran wetted. He muſt not be ſuffered to lick his Pimples, which might poiſon him afreſh, and render ineffectual all the Medicines that can be given. After having prepared him a few Days with Bran, let him be blooded in the Veins of the Neck; and the next Day, or the Day after, let him take one of the Purges hereafter preſcribed.

IV. *The Hen's Arſe Farcy.*

This Kind of Farcy, tho' curable, requires more Care and Application than either of the preceding. It comes almoſt like the laſt, but with this Difference, that it runs along the Veins, either of the Neck or Legs, which occaſions the Difficulty of the Cure. When it breaks, it diſcharges a white Matter mixt with Blood, and the Lips of every Orifice turn inward, as if the Wound was going to cloſe; whence it aſſumes the Name of Hen's Arſe. The Horſe's Body ſhould be properly prepared with wetted Bran, to looſen the Habit of it, for ſome Days before he is bled or purged; and ſome Cauſtic, as *Black Hellebore*, *Sublimate*, *Cyprus Vitriol*, or any Compoſition found in the Chapter of Medicines, ſhould be put to every Orifice: But beſure never to uſe *Arſenick*, becauſe it eats a long Time, inflames violently, and may lame a Horſe if the Farcy-Bud be near the Nerves or Tendons.

V. *The Cancerous Farcy.*

This diſcovers itſelf almoſt like the preceding; except that it creeps along the Nerves inſtead of the Veins, and is conſequently more difficult to cure: But the worſt is that which begins

CHAP. XV.

begins near the Fetlock-Joint, and running up the great Nerve almoſt to the Haunch, makes the Leg very thick. Sometimes it is only in one Leg; and then, if immediately taken in Hand, it may be hindered from affecting the other, and conſequently all the Body, which may in Time render it incurable. From every Pimple that breaks there iſſues a Matter almoſt like the former, mixed with Blood. The Matter being diſcharged, inſtead of an Oriſice remaining, an Elevation of proud Fleſh appears, which muſt be artfully taken down, obſerving not to injure the Nerves by Cauſticks, which ſhould not be too violent for that Reaſon. In this Sort of Farcy, the Horſe ſhould be ſeparated from others, as in the preceding, and that which follows. For the former Sorts, it is ſufficient that he come not too near thoſe that are ſound. But this by its Stench may communicate itſelf from one Stable to another, at leaſt, if they are not pretty diſtant; for if the Vapours of the infected Air, or any thing elſe enter the other Stable, the Horſes may be infected by it. It is proper to ſay here, that a Horſe in this Condition ſhould be work'd, provided the Weather be fair, and there is no Dirt under Foot. His Wounds ſhould be waſh'd with freſh Urine. When a Horſe has the Farcy, it is wrong to put him to Graſs, becauſe the Rain and Dew always make the Pimples revive in the Sort we are ſpeaking of. Never think your Horſe cured till after the third Moon, tho' nothing appears; but if then one of the Legs ſhould be ſtill a little ſwelled, Labour alone will diſſipate the Tumour in time. Some Legs have continued ſwelled a whole Year, and yet afterwards have look'd as handſome as ever.

VI. *The Internal Farcy.*

It would be needleſs to ſpeak of this Sort, if it were not to make it known, to prevent the Uſing of Remedies to no purpoſe. It appears like the two former, only with this Difference; that beſides the Stench, it throws out a green and yellow Corruption mixed with Blood, as well by the Noſe, as thro' the Wound. Add to this, that little Kernels are found growing to the nether Jaw-Bones, as in Glandery Horſes. They are only Quacks who pretend to cure this Diſtemper, which repeated Experience has hitherto proved to be impoſſible.

The Firſt Remedy for a Beginning Farcy.

The Horſe muſt be prepared in the Manner preſcribed, and afterwards well blooded in the Vein of his Neck, according to his Strength: The next Day give him the following Purge.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, *Venice Treacle*, each two *Ounces*; mix them in a Bottle of White-Wine. Keep your Horſe faſting ten or twelve Hours, then adminiſter this Medicine, and let him continue as long after without Eating or Drinking. You may purge him thus three or four times in eighteen or twenty Days; and this alone is ſufficient to cure him, if given at the Beginning.

An Ointment for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take four *Ounces* of *Flowers* of *Brimſtone*, two *Ounces* of *Quick-Silver*; rub them together in a Mortar till the *Quick-Silver* diſappears; after which, mix them with the following Powders; *Verdigreaſe*, *Yellow Arſenick*, *Euphorbium*, *Spaniſh Flies*, *Cotton-weed*, *or Cud-weed*, *White Copperas*, *Green Copperas*, each one *Ounce*; *Gall-nuts*, half *an Ounce*: Mix all theſe well together with a Pound and a half of *Black Soap*, for an Ointment; add from time to time a little *Vinegar*. It will keep long in a Pot, and dries up all the Buds of a Farcy.

Another Ointment for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take two *Ounces* of *Oil of Bays*, and one *Ounce* of *Euphorbium* in Powder; mix them together, and add a handful of *Deer's Dung*, or *Goat's Dung*, for an Ointment.

Shave off the Horſe's Hair, and rub the Pimples or Cords of the Farcy. If once Rubbing is not ſufficient, repeat it the third Day, and ſo on for three or four times.

A Remedy for all Sorts of Farcys.

Take the Herb *Spleen-wort*, and *Long Pepper*, each 1 *Ounce*; both powdered, and mixed with a Bottle of White-Wine. Warm the Wine, and give your Horſe, he having been firſt blooded, three or four Draughts in a Fortnight; mean Time applying outwardly the following Compoſition.

Take four *Ounces* of double *Aqua Fortis*, one *Ounce* of *Quick-Silver*, one *Ounce* of *Braſs*; cut

cut the *Brass* into very small Pieces, that it may be consumed more easily in the *Aqua Fortis*, as well as the *Quick-Silver*; after which, take an *Ounce* of *Roch Allum*, burnt and powdered, and put it with the other Things into a glazed Pipkin, and set it over hot Ashes, or a slow Fire, which you are to continue till the Matter be turned into a Stone, which it will be as soon as the *Aqua Fortis* is evaporated. Powder it as you have Occasion, and apply it with an easy Hand, and in small Quantities; because putting too much at a Time may damage the Nerves. This is particularly excellent in Cancerous Farcys, and surpasses almost every other Caustic for Proud Flesh, after other Remedies have been found ineffectual. Prepare your Horse with Mashes of Bran, bleed him, and feed him only with Straw, abridging him even of that the Night before he takes the following Remedy; which, if he be robust, you may give all at once; if not, abate in Proportion.

Another Remedy.

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, made with equal Parts of *Quick-Silver* and *Brimstone*, four Ounces; *Succotrine Aloes* and *Manna*, each two Ounces; make it into Balls of a proper Size, which roll in *Liquorice Powder*. After every Ball, give him a Glass of Wine or Ale to wash it down, and keep him seven or eight Hours without eating or drinking. He may then have some wetted Bran, and must be kept well covered. The next Day, at the same Hour, walk him till the Purge begins to operate, and then put him up again. Afterwards use the following Ointment, along the Farcy-Cords, or upon the Pimples, whether they are broke or not.

An Ointment.

Take Oil of *Aspick*, and *Bay Berries*, each three Ounces; *Corrosive Sublimate*, one Ounce; *Æthiops Mineral*, two Ounces; *Honey*, two Ounces; *Arsenick* and *Cyprus Vitriol*, each one Ounce; make an Ointment according to Art, and apply it with a *Spatula*, or spread upon Tow.

An Internal Remedy.

Take two large Handfuls of *Plantain*, pound it well in a Mortar, and, having squeezed out the Juice, put it in a Bottle of Wine. Give this Draught every Morning for fifteen Days, the Horse being tied up from eating three or four Hours, both before and after taking the Medicine. Bleed him every fifth Day of the Course, that is to say, thrice in the whole. Then make the following Lye, with which wash his Body once in two Days, to prevent the Distemper breaking out in any other Part.

The Lye.

Take thirty or forty *Crab Apples*, and pound them; eight or ten Pounds of *Vine-Wood-Ashes*; put them together in a large Copper, and boil them till the Water has extracted all the Salt of the Ashes, which will be in about an Hour's Time. Let them settle in the Copper, and take off the clear Lye for Use, warming it every time, except it be in Summer. For Want of Vine-Ashes, common Wood-Ashes will make a very good Substitute, which will dry up all the Farcy-Buds as fast as they break.

Another Ointment.

Take half a Pound of *Quicksilver*, and the same Quantity of Flowers of *Brimstone*; mix these well together till the Mercury disappears, and add the following all in Powders; six Ounces of *Black Hellebore*, four Ounces of *Spanish Flies*, two Ounces of *Cyprus Vitriol*, one Ounce of *Salt Petre*; mix the whole with twelve Ounces of *Hog's Lard*, for an Ointment to be rubbed into the Farcy-Cords or Buds.

After having prepared your Horse with Bran and Bleeding, give the following:

Take *Assafœtida*, *Salt Prunel*, each one Ounce and a half; *Gentian Root*, *Olibanum*, each one Ounce; put these Powders well mixed together in a Bottle of warm White-Wine, to be given the Horse for one Dose.

If the Farcy be fresh, three or four of these Draughts will kill it; but if inveterate, after a few Days Rest, begin again as above, and you may work the Horse in fair Weather, upon dry Ground. One thing observe, that when the Farcy begins just as the Grass sprouts, and the Sap rises in Trees, it is harder to kill than in any other Season. While you drive it out by internal Remedies, apply outwardly the following Caustic to the Buds.

Take

CHAP. XV. Take *Black Hellebore*, *Spanish Flies*, *Euphorbium*, and *Sublimate*, all in very fine Powder, each one Ounce; and with one Ounce of Oil of Bays, make the Whole into an Ointment, which is to be applied to the Farcy-Buds, spread thick upon Hemp or Tow, (after having first shaved off the Hair,) which will form an Escar or Slough, that will come off in three or four Days, by the Application of any greasy or digestive Medicine; after which the Wounds may be dried up with burnt Alum powdered.

A Composition to eat off Proud-Flesh.

Take *Green Copperas*, one Pound; Wine-Vinegar, a Quart; fresh Urine, one Pint: Put these three Things into a glazed Pipkin, and evaporate them over a slow Fire, to a hard Consistence, which beat to Powder, and use as before directed. If the Pimples or Cords have not been opened, strew it lightly upon the Buds or Proud-Flesh, or mix it with Turpentine, or any other Ointment. This Powder is not only good for the Farcy, but for all Ulcers where there is Proud-Flesh, as also for all Excrescences whatsoever, that grow on the Legs or Fetlocks, or within-side the Foot, near the Frog; as also for Warts, Rat-Tails, &c. It is the more valuable, as it never causes any Inflammation. I could give many more Remedies for this Distemper, but these are the best of all I have ever tried: For tho' an empirical Medicine may now and then succeed, where a Bleeding or two only would have done the Affair; yet on the whole, I have always had Recourse to, and had Success only, from such whose Properties have been to purify the Blood.

N. B. *The Publisher has purposely omitted translating certain Methods of Cure in this Distemper, proposed in the Original, such as putting Medicines into the Horse's Ears,* &c. *being informed there is not the least Probability of Success to be hoped for, from such Means; (Anatomy, neither human nor comparative, having as yet discovered any Passage whatsoever from the External Ear to the Blood-Vessels) and consequently all such Proceedings, hitherto used, can only have been the Effect of Ignorance.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Mange, Itch, or Scab.

THE two chief Causes of the Mange in Horses, are, 1. A corrupted Blood, occasioned by Want of Nourishment, the Fatigue of a Journey, or Serving in the Army; or, 2. The being in Company with mangy Horses. It appears like the Itch in Men, by Pimples as big as small Pease, which break successively, and are succeeded by others as they dry away. The Horse that has it, rubs himself against the Manger, the Bars, the Pillars, or whatever stands in his Way; and it is hard to make the Hair come again when once off. You must begin the Cure by giving him scalded Bran instead of Oats, and then bleed, purge, and administer the following Remedies.

Tie half a Pound of *Flowers of Sulphur* up close in a Linnen-Cloth, and put it into three Quarts of *Nut-Oil*, or, for Want of that, *Oil of Olives*. Let it just boil up in an earthern Pot, setting it on Charcoal, that no Flame may come at the Oil. Having taken it from the Fire, rub all the mangy Parts with your Bag of Sulphur, as hot as the Horse can bear it. Do this three times, or at least twice a Day, for a Week or better: And to forward the Cure, mix *Liquorice Powder* and *Sulphur*, of each a Pound, and give the Horse two Ounces at a Time, Morning and Evening, in his scalded Bran.

Another Remedy for the Mange.

After having kept your Horse on Bran, blooded him, and given him two or three Purges; Take *Oil of Bays*, four Ounces; *Quicksilver*, two Ounces: Rub them together in a Stone-Mortar, till the *Quicksilver* disappear. Anoint all the scabby Parts. If it be warm Weather, dry in the Ointment in the Sun: But in Winter rub it on in the Stable, and never be too free with a hot Iron, like some ignorant Farriers, because it destroys the Roots of the Hair. Five or six Rubbings, once a Day, will effect a Cure.

Another

CHAP. XVII.

Another Remedy for the Mange.

Take *Braſil Tobacco* ſtripped, *Roch Alum*, *White* and *Green Copperas*, an equal Quantity of each; and to every half Pound of each a Quartern of *Gall-Nuts*, and a Quartern of *Cannon Powder*. Infuſe the whole in *Vinegar* and *Aqua-Vitæ*, of each two Quarts, for the Space of twenty-four Hours, without ſuffering it to boil all the Time. Then with the ſoaked Tobacco-Leaves, or a Piece of Spunge, apply it every Day to the itchy Parts: But the firſt two or three Days rub the Scabs well, before Application, with a Wiſp of Straw, that the Liquor may penetrate the better.

Another Receipt.

Take *Oil of Hemp-Seed*, one Pound; *Spaniſh-Flies*, and *Euphorbium*, each two Ounces. Let them juſt boil up together, and when cold, rub the Scabs with the Liquor three or four Days running, having fretted them firſt with Cow or Horſe-Piſs; in every two Quarts of which a Quartern of *White-Copperas*, or for want of that *Green*, has been diſſolved.

In all theſe Caſes a Bran Diet, Bleeding, and Purging are preſuppoſed.

Another Remedy for the Mange.

Take the Herb called *Lyon's-Foot* dried and powdered, and put two good Handfuls of it into two Quarts of *Oil of Hemp-Seed*, where let it infuſe over hot Aſhes ten or twelve Hours, and then waſh the Scabs with it.

Another Waſh.

Take two Quarts of *Vinegar*, *White-Coperas*, *Roch-Alum*, each four Ounces; the Herb call'd *Ravens-Foot*, one Handful (which may be omitted). Boil all together to the Conſumption of one Half.

An Ointment.

Take *Hog's Lard*, two Pounds; *Quickſilver*, four Ounces. Rub them well together, and add to it, *Euphorbium*, two Ounces; *Verdigreaſe*, one Ounce; *Spaniſh-Flies*, half an Ounce. Mix and make an Ointment.

A Purge.

Take *Succotrine Aloes* powdered, and *Manna*, each two Ounces; powdered *Sugar*, four Ounces; *Rhubarb*, half an Ounce; *freſh-Butter*, half a Pound: Make it into middle-ſized Balls, rolled in *Liquorice Powder*. Let the Horſe ſwallow after them three or four new-laid Eggs, in half a Bottle of White-Wine. He ſhould faſt eight or ten Hours before and after taking this: And if it does not begin to work in twenty-four Hours, walk him about till it does.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Old-Reds.

THIS is a Sort of Mange, that ſeldom comes but on large Stone-Horſes, who go to Cart and Plough, are full of Humours, thick-cheſted, have large Folds a-croſs the Mane, eſpecially near the Withers, and ſometimes in the upper Part of the Tail. Some take it for the true Mange, becauſe it is equally infectious. From the Wrinkles or Folds in the Cheſt there iſſues between whiles a red Humour, and ſometimes a white Matter. They both ſtink, and make the Hair fall. In order to a Cure, you muſt ſhave the Part as cloſe as poſſible, and rub it well with a Wiſp of Straw, as if you would fetch out the Blood: Nor is there any Damage, if it bleeds in earneſt. Then take *Black-Soap*, and rub it all over like an Ointment. In the Summer-time do it in the Sun, to make it penetrate the better; but obſerve to tie your Horſe up ſhort: In the Winter rub him in the Stable, and dry it in with a hot Iron-Shovel, which you may gradually bring near, to make it equal the Heat of the Sun. Be careful not to ſcorch the Roots of the Hair; and this Application, repeated once a Day for a Week or ten Days, will effect a Cure after the uſual Preparations.

CHAP. XVIII, XIX.

CHAP. XVIII.

Tetters, or Ring-worms.

SOME confound this Diſeaſe with the Mange, or the Old-Reds, from both which however it differs. There is the Live-Tetter, and the White-Tetter; and they both appear on the Head, on the Cheſt, and ſometimes on the Body, as well as on the Shoulders. Their Cauſe is a fine ſubtile Blood, which inſinuates between the Fleſh and the Skin, and makes the Hair fall the breadth of a Crown-Piece, or ſometimes of the Palm of one's Hand. Now and then the Head, and even a Part of the Cheſt, is left naked. A Horſe in this Diſorder ſhould be a long time refreſhed with Bran and Honey; or with good Barley juſt cracked in a Mill, but not reduced to Meal, which is better than Bran. Put either in the Bran or Barley, Morning and Evening, an Ounce of *Liver of Antimony* for a Doſe; and continue this a Month or ſix Weeks. All this while rub the bald Places every Day with *Black-Soap*, without expoſing him to the Sun, or uſing the hot Shovel; and three or four times, during the whole Space, open his Jugular Vein. If this Remedy is not effectual, uſe one of thoſe preſcribed for the Mange.

How to make the Hair come again, when fallen off by Tetters, Wounds, or Scabs.

Take Ointment of *Poplar-Buds*, and *Honey*, of each an equal Quantity; mix them, and rub the Parts once a Day for a Fortnight. If it be Summer, and the Flies are plenty, put in a little Powder of *Bitter-Apple*, or for Want of that of *Succotrine-Aloes*, which will keep the Flies from touching it.

For the ſame Purpoſe.

Take the Roots of long flat *Flags* that grow in Rivers, and boil them to a Pap; then mix with it *Honey* and *Hog's-Lard*, of each an equal Quantity with the Pap, and make an Ointment, which rub in ſeveral times every Day. This will make the Hair come almoſt in any Place where Hair is uſed to grow.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Foundering of Horſes.

THIS is a common and well known Diſtemper, which happens moſt frequently in the Army, and proceeds from many different Cauſes. A Horſe may founder by drinking cold Water, or by ſtanding ſtill when he is hot; whereas he ought to be cooled gradually, by trotting and walking till he comes into Temper. The ſame may happen by putting a Horſe hot into the Stable while others drink: To avoid which give him a Quart or two of Water in which the Hands have been dipped; or Water a little warm, or with a little Bran; or give him a Lock or two of wet Hay. It is equally dangerous to ſtop a Horſe when warm upon the Road, or in any open Place expoſed to the Wind, if it be only the Value of Half an Hour.

A Horſe may founder alſo by getting to the Oat-crib, and eating too great a Quantity; or by eating too much Beans, Wheat, Rye, or Barley. To prevent this, eſpecially in the Army, where the Want of Oats is often ſupplied by other Grain, you ſhould ſoak your Morning-Corn all the Night, and your Evening-Corn all the Day.

Green Forage, that is apt to heat, may alſo occaſion this Malady; an Accident that happens often in the Army, eſpecially when Rye is in Bloſſom: But Founderings of this Sort are eaſy to cure, provided one has recourſe to Means as ſoon as they are perceived.

The Foundering that ſmells is the moſt dangerous; becauſe it comes by Degrees, and may be long before it is diſcovered. When a Horſe that has been long in the Stable limps on one of his hind Legs, and can neither ſtand upon it nor lie down, he may be concluded in this Diſtemper; which is occaſioned by the Contraction of the Nerves, and a difficult Circulation of the Blood. Fat heavy Horſes are hard to cure, and ſcarce ſix in a hundred, whatever Care is taken in looking after them, but feel the Effects of this Diſtemper as long as they live.

To prevent this Sort of Foundering, when a Horſe is lame, it is not ſufficient to remedy the immediate Cauſe of his Lameneſs: You muſt labour to remove whatever may affect the

the other Legs and Feet, fortifying them from time to time, by rubbing the Nerves with *Oil of Turpentine* and *Brandy*, beat together in equal Quantities; or by bathing all the Legs well, from Top to Bottom, with Lees of Wine, and uſing afterwards Cow-dung fried with Hog's Lard and Vinegar. If a Horſe continues long lame, and his other Legs ſwell, have him well ſhod, and his Feet pared, continuing to put the Cow-dung into his hind Feet, and to rub his Legs and Nerves from time to time with Oil of Turpentine and Brandy, or Lees of Wine, which are the only Remedies in this Diſorder. CHAP. XIX.

A foundered Horſe is eaſily known, by his drawing back from the Rack or Manger, bearing upon the Reins of his Halter, walking with difficulty, and bending his fore-Knees with Pain. When you make him go backwards, he drags his Feet, and ſcarce can lift them from the Ground; his hind Feet move with Violence, and fall down as ſoon as they are up.

I have before ſaid that this Diſeaſe proceeds only from a Childneſs in the Blood, which hinders the Circulation thro' the Liver and Lights: To which I may add, that the Nerves ſtiffen, and have ſcarce any Motion; that the Horſe eats little, and preſently falls back from his Manger; and that when the Diſtemper is of long ſtanding, he almoſt always lies. To know it certainly, obſerve if the Hair frizzles, and curls as it were on the ſide of the Knees, the Fetlock, the Hams, and near the Flat of the Thigh. A Man muſt have a great deal of Skill, to cure a Horſe perfectly in this Condition. If it be a Draught-Horſe, which may ſtill ſerve for the Plough, take the two Shoes off his two fore-Feet, and pare his Hoofs almoſt to the Quick, taking care however not to draw Blood. Then ſhoe him as before, trot him till he begins to ſweat, and if you are near any Water, open his Neck-Vein, and ride him in up to his Knees, catching the Blood, to the Quantity of two Quarts, in a Pot. After he has bled enough, put a Handful of Salt into the Pot, and ſtir it well with your Hand, that it may not curdle; then give the Horſe to drink with a Horn, as ſoon as poſſible. Take afterwards a Quart or three Pints of Oil of Turpentine, and as much Brandy; beat them together, and rub with this Mixture down the four Legs, upon the Nerves, and acroſs the Loins, all with the utmoſt Expedition; the Horſe being tied ſhort with four Reins, two to the Manger, and two to the Rack, to prevent his hurting himſelf. The more he ſtruggles, the more Hope is there of a Cure; and his Uneaſineſs will not laſt above half an Hour. In Caſe he be unruly before you have done rubbing his Legs and Reins, pinch his Noſe till you have finiſhed, and then leave him at liberty to do as he pleaſes. Let ſome body ſtand behind him with a Whip, to prevent his doing himſelf any Miſchief. When he has done ſtruggling, rub round the Crown of his Hoofs with good Oil of Bays, and fill with it the two Fore-Feet that have been pared, keeping it in with Tow and Splinters.

The next Day, at the ſame Hour, be ſure to give him a good purging Gliſter, as directed in the Chapter of Medicines. If you ſee no Amendment, repeat the ſame Remedies without Bleeding, giving him, in the Room of Blood and Salt, two Ounces of good *Venice Treacle*, an Ounce of *Monk's Rhubarb* called *Raponti*, and half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*, all mixed in a large Bottle of Wine; with this rub his Legs, and acroſs his Reins, adding the Oil of Bays as before.

Gliſters ſhould be repeated Morning and Evening; and every other Day give the Draught above. If he be not thus well in nine or ten Days, conclude him incurable.

Another Remedy for Foundering.

When a Horſe is foundered, ride him to a River or Pond, or any other Water; but a River is beſt, and ſtill the better if it has a Mill on it. Lead him into the Mill-pool above his Thighs, and let him ſtand there an Hour, with his Head againſt the Stream. Then walk him till he ſweats, and rub his Legs and Reins well with a Wiſp of Straw; bleed him freely on both Sides his Neck, and rub the Nerves of his Legs well with the Blood mixed with Brandy. Afterwards put him in the Stable, and rub round his Hoofs with Oil of Bays, which bind on with Tow and Splinters. For want of Oil of Bays, uſe Hog's Dung, fried in Hog's Greaſe, Vinegar, and a handful of Salt. This will keep the Foundering out of the Hoofs. You muſt keep him to Bran and Water for the fifteen following Days; and the next Day after Bleeding adminiſter this Draught.

Take four large Heads of Garlick picked, and pounded with a handful of Salt: Dilute this in a Bottle of White-Wine. Repeat the Draught three or four Days running.

If

CHAP. XX.

If the Horse be bound, as is usually in these Distempers, and his Dung looks as if it were burnt, be sure not to neglect your Glisters.

Another Way of treating a Foundered Horse.

If you perceive in the Morning that your Horse is foundered, walk him in the Day; if in the Evening, walk him the same Night; because in this Distemper, no Time should be lost, unless you would run the hazard of never making a perfect Cure. If it be in the Spring, when you can have the Leaves or Tops of the wild Vine, make him eat as many of them as you can; and if you can keep him upon this and scalded Bran for some Days, it will do great Service. You must give him Bran Water during the whole Course, and often put Restringents into his Fore-Feet.

These Restringents may be composed of White-Wine Vinegar, the Whites of Eggs, Dragon's Blood and Salt, powdering all that requires it. When the Nerves seem too stiff, you may supple them with the following. Take raw Eggs, and beat them as if you would make a Biscuit: Then take Oil of Turpentine, Cows Dung, Wine-Vinegar, in proportion, and mix all together. Rub the Legs with this, along the Nerves, every six Hours.

It is not surprising that many foundered Horses are the worse for it all their Lives, some more, some less, according to the Strength of the Distemper, because most People content themselves with internal Remedies, without regarding the Feet and Legs.

CHAP. XX.

Of Melted-Grease.

THIS Distemper often accompanies Foundering, and few Horses that have them both are ever cured.

Melted Grease is, when there is, or at least seems to be, Pieces of Fat intermixed with the Dung of a Horse. Some ignorantly believe that this Fat comes from off the Kidneys: But how should the Fat of the Kidneys get into the Bowels? I will not dispute but that all the internal Fat may be over-heated: But what is voided with the Dung comes off of the Guts, and is only a Sort of greasy Filth that sticks to their Inside, and is loosened by the Heat. This is proved from what may be seen in cleansing the Bowels of any Animal at all. If the Discharge of this Matter cannot be stopped, it is all over with your Horse; for the Nutriment he takes cannot slide thro' the Bowels, which are no longer capable to receive it; so that the Horse loses his Appetite, and frequently dies. You must give him nothing that may heat, by the way either of Diet, Draught, or Glister; and instead of Wine, which is common in Horse-Physick, use only Whey; or, if that cannot be got, Water, in which Lettuce, Beet, Purslain, Succory, or other Herbs of the same Quality have been boiled; or, for want of the Herbs, Water softened with Bran or Meal. Let the Draughts otherwise be much the same as for Foundering, adding only a Quartern or Half a Pound of Honey. Refreshing Glisters should be often repeated. Tho' this Distemper is seldom curable when joined with Foundering, much less with the Stag-Evil; yet when alone there is room for Hopes.

Another Way to know when a Horse's Grease is melted.

A Horse whose Grease is melted loses his Appetite at once, appears very sorrowful, and often is seized with a Fever. To be certain look at his Dung, and if you find it slimy, or wrapped in a Sort of Membrane, or melted Fat, it is a Proof that the Kidney-Suet is heated, and that the Grease within the Bowels comes away with the Dung. A Horse in this Condition must be soon relieved, or not at all.

Such a Horse, from the very first, desires always to lie and be at Rest, which is what destroys him. You must walk him gently therefore from time to time, either in the Stable in Winter, or in the Sun in Summer, in order to prepare him for taking the Remedies already and hereafter mentioned.

For a Horse whose Grease is melted.

Take a Pound or two of those *Barbed Rushes* with a thick Leaf, that almost resemble a small Artichoke, and grow usually upon old Houses: Bruise them in a Mortar, squeeze out the Juice, and take a Quart of Whey, or a Pint of Milk: Mix the Whole together; warm

warm it, and add half an *Ounce* of *Salt Prunel*. Repeat this Draught twice a Day, and if in three or four Days it is not effectual, give the following. CHAP. XXI.

Take *Virgin Honey*, and *Sweet Oil*, each four *Ounces*; *Venice Turpentine*, two *Ounces*: Mix the Whole well in a Bottle of warm White-Wine, and give the Horse. Avoid Bleeding in this Disease, because that would chill all the melted Grease within him. For want of the above Drugs take three Pints of Beef or Pork Brine (the former is best) and a Pint of the Juice of Rue. Incorporate the whole together, and boil it a Quarter of an Hour. Give it luke-warm; and if the Distemper be taken in time, you may hope for a Cure from it. When neither the Drugs nor the Brine can be got, take all the Blood of a Sheep that is killed (if possible let it be a Ram) with a Handful of Salt, which you must first dissolve in warm Water, and give the Whole for a Draught.

Another Remedy for a Horse whose Grease is melted.

Take *Venice Treacle*, and *Manna*, each two *Ounces*; *Senna Leaves*, and *Salt Prunel*, each four *Drams*; *Gentian Root*, one *Ounce*. Cut the Root into thin Slips, and infuse the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine, for twenty-four Hours. Strain it thro' a coarse Cloth, and give it the Horse. This is good for all Sorts of Distempers.

CHAP. XXI.

The Stag-Evil.

THIS Distemper is so called, because Horses afflicted with it are like Stags that have been long hunted, and while they are heated have passed some River, which brings a Stiffness in their Neck, Body, and Legs. Such a Horse opens his Mouth with Pain, his Jaws being so locked together that he cannot receive any Nourishment, and you may sooner break them than force them asunder. The sole Cause therefore of this Disease is being overworked, and then suffered to stand still without a gradual Cooling. When it comes alone however, without melted Grease or Foundering, there is Hope of a Cure by treating it in the following Manner.

First, make a Sort of Wooden Wedge; then take Oils of *Spike* and *Turpentine* in equal Quantities, adding a double Quantity of Oil of *Bays*; put these in an earthern Pot, and dissolve them over a gentle Fire; stir the Composition till it is cold, and then rub with it both Sides of the Jaws, especially at the Joints, a little roughly, that it may the better penetrate. Then put your Wooden Wedge into the Horse's Mouth, and strike gently upon it, for fear of breaking the Jaws; and if he opens them ever so little, that is sufficient. As a Horse in this Distemper dies oftener with Hunger than with Thirst, because he cannot chew, in order to oblige him to take some Nourishment, set before him Water thickned with Bran or Meal, some of which he will swallow even in sucking. But if his Teeth continue shut, he must certainly die.

In this Distemper give Glysters two or three Times a Day: But when you have brought your Horse to open his Mouth a sufficient Width, good Nourishment should be preferred to Physick. Panada, given with a Horn, is very proper in this Case. You may make it with half a Dozen stale Biscuits, or an equal Quantity of dry Bread, powdered, and boiled up in the manner of Childrens Pap. Put to it half an Ounce of Cinnamon, half an Ounce of Nutmeg, two Ounces of Liquorice Powder, or powder'd Sugar, and mix the whole together. This will strengthen the Horse much. When he is very low, you may put five or six Yolks of Eggs into the Panada every Night and Morning, till he comes to eat; rubbing him every Day a-cross the Reins, and down the Legs, with Brandy and Oil of Turpentine in equal Quantities, according to the Directions for a foundered Horse.

A Medicine for the Stag-Evil.

Take *Venice Treacle*, and *Cordial Powder*, of each one *Ounce*; *Manna* and *Sugar*, of each two *Ounces*; mix them together in a Bottle of Wine, and let the Horse take two of these Draughts every Day, giving a Glyster between them. Whatever you give him by the Mouth, take care not to raise his Head too much, but rather sink it from time to time: For raising the Head will stupify, and may possibly make him fall, in which Case it would be difficult to get him up again. Nor must you force him to rise, but rather surround him with Dung, in order to keep him warm. Use the same Means to open his Mouth when he is down, as

CHAP. XXII. XXIII.

when he is ſtanding, with as little Violence as poſſible. Some Horſes have continued a Fortnight in this Condition, and yet have done well.

CHAP. XXII.

The Vives.

THIS Diſtemper is moſt frequent in high mountainous Countries, eſpecially to Horſes that are not uſed to the Crudities produced in the Stomach by the Spring and Fountain Waters that riſe in hilly Grounds. Standing-Waters, or thoſe that have very little Current, are the leaſt dangerous, and ſeldom cauſe the Vives: But very deep Wells are bad.

To prevent this Malady, when one is obliged to reſide in, or to paſs thro' ſuch a Country, where no other Water can be got, it is proper to take away the Rawneſs of the Water with Bran or Meal, or to heat a Part of it, or to ſtir the Whole a good while with the Hands. When there is no Opportunity to do either of theſe, take care to trot your Horſe immediately after he has drunk, in order to warm the Water within him. Without ſuch Precautions your Horſe will be always in Danger.

Remedies for the Vives.

In the firſt Place cover your Horſe, and ſhut him up cloſe in the Stable, that as little Air as poſſible may come to him. If there be any Sheep-fold at Hand, that is ſtill better to ſhut him up in, bringing all the Dung together with a Fork, and heaping it about him like a Wall. Let him continue two Hours thus incloſed, and then give him the following Drink.

Take *Honey*, one Pound; *White-Wine*, two Quarts; *Juniper Berries*, one Handful; one *Nutmeg*, and thrice its Weight of *Cinamon*. Powder the Berries and Spices, and mix them with the White-Wine and the Honey.

Another Remedy.

When a Horſe is attacked with the Vives, look in his Ears, and you will find a thick Lining, or Sort of Tumour, about as big as that in the Neck, between the Joint and the nether-Jaw, under the Ear. Open this with a Lancet or Inciſion-Knife, and it will diſcharge a kind of corrupted Blood, which will be mixed with Matter, if the Diſeaſe has been of long Continuance. Perform this Operation in both Ears, and the Horſe will find Relief in an Hour or two after.

As this Diſeaſe is almoſt always accompanied with the Gripes, which proceeds from the ſame Cauſe, I ſhall in the next Place treat of that Diſtemper.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Gripes or Cholick.

THIS Diſeaſe reſembles that of the ſame Name in human Bodies, and has much the ſame Cauſe: But I ſhall introduce it with ſaying a little more concerning the Vives.

If you are in a Place where Remedies may be had, walk your Horſe till he is a very little warmed, and then beat his Glands gently with the Handle of a Hammer, or any other Piece of Wood, without opening them. After that, open the Jugular Vein. Then take four Ounces of Conſerve of Elder, and diſſolve it in a Bottle of Wine, with two powder'd Nutmegs and a Quartern of Sugar. When your Horſe has drank this, wrap him up cloſe, and leave him to ſweat. Two Ounces of the Seeds of Garden-Creſſes, in caſe the Elder-Conſerve cannot be got, may be infuſed a Quarter of an Hour in a Bottle of Wine, and given for the ſame Purpoſe as hot as poſſible. For want of both, take four Ounces of Venice Treacle, with a ſmall Handful of Salt, and diſſolve them in Wine to give as the others.

When the Vives are accompanied with the Gripes, the ſame Remedy will operate, if you add to the Draught an Ounce of Salt Prunel. If it be ſtill ineffectual, add four Ounces of Nut-Oil, or Oil of Olives, and half an Ounce of Oil of Petre. If the Horſe continues in Pain, it is a Proof that the Paſſage of his Bladder is ſtopped, or that his Urine is detained in the Reins. In the former Caſe, take a Piece of Whalebone as long as your Arm, and reduce it to the Size of a Wheat Straw. Make it very round and ſmooth, with a little Knob at the End,

End, to which faſten a Bit of fine Muſlin. Dip this in ſweet Oil, and having dextrouſly drawn the Horſe's Yard out of the Sheath, thruſt it up the Paſſage to the Bladder. If this does not bring out any Water, it proves the Diſorder to be in the Reins; but if a little comes, it ſhows the Bladder to be full. Let a Man then rub his Hand and Arm up to the Elbow with Oil or Butter, and thruſt it up the Horſe's Fundament, in order to pull all the Dung out of the great Gut, taking care not to ſcratch him with his Nails. The Gut being empty, he may carry his Hand to the Bladder, which, if he finds it ſwelled, he muſt gently preſs, and ſo oblige the Horſe to piſs. When nothing is thus found in the Bladder, it proves the Water to be ſtill in the Kidneys. CHAP. XXIII.

If the Draught with Oil of Petre gives the Horſe no Relief, but he continues in great Pain, lying down and riſing every inſtant, take a large Quantity of Blood from his Neck-Vein, and then give him the following Remedies, *viz.* a Bottle of Emetic Wine, in which put a Quartern of Nut-Oil, and an Ounce of Oil of Amber. For want of the Oil of Amber, take four or five hundred Wood-Lice dried and powdered, and uſe them in its room. Give this for a Draught. It would be alſo proper to adminiſter a Glyſter twice or three Times in one Day, in which there ſhould be an Ounce of Amber, and as much Oil of Petre. If you cannot get theſe, uſe two Ounces of Salt Prunel, or a large Handful of common Salt: And if this Remedy does not cure your Horſe, depend upon it no other will.

Another Remedy for the Gripes.

Take a Handful of *Rue-Seed*, pound it in a Mortar, and mix it in a Pint of warm *White-Wine*, which give for a Draught. Immediately after walk your Horſe an Hour, or an Hour and an half, without ſuffering him to lie down, which in this Diſeaſe he will continually endeavour to do: For which Reaſon you muſt give him no Repoſe till his Pain ceaſes.

Another.

When a Horſe cannot urine, take *Black Roſin*, two *Ounces*, in Powder; mix it with two *Yolks* of *Eggs*, and add by Degrees a Pint of *Ale*, and give it the Horſe warm. You may walk him an Hour or two after taking it.

Another Way to make a Horſe piſs.

Take *Parſley* Root, or the Heart of a *Leek*, of the greateſt Length you can get, and endeavour to thruſt it into the Orifice of the Yard. This alone is ſufficient in a ſimple Retention.

For the Gripes.

Take *Green Aniſe* two *Ounces*, Oil of *Olives* a Pint, *White-Wine* a Bottle; bruiſe the *Aniſe*, mix with it the Oil and Wine, and give the Whole to drink warm. Walk him two or three Hours after, and let him not drink for twelve Hours; then give him warm Water, with Bran or Meal.

Another Remedy.

Take ten or twelve *Radiſhes*, in proportion to their Size, with the Greens on; boil them in three Pints of White-Wine to half the Quantity; ſtrain the Liquor thro' a fine Cloth, and give it warm to the Horſe. When he has taken it, thruſt a ſlender Piece of Mallows-Root up his Yard as far as you can, which may be near half a Foot. A Piece of yellow Wax Candle, well greaſed, may ſerve when the Mallows cannot be had.

To provoke Urine.

Take two or three large Heads of *Garlick*; cut them and bruiſe them in a Mortar, with Oil of *Olives*, till they come to the Conſiſtence of an Ointment, with which rub the Teſticles and the naked Yard of the Horſe, repeating it every Quarter of an Hour to the Number of five or ſix Times. If the Retention be not extraordinary, this will cure it.

There is another Diſeaſe called the Bloody Gripes, which happens moſt frequently to Cholerick Horſes, either for want of drinking at the uſual Time, or by drinking their Water too cold, or thro' too violent Labour, or their own Reſtineſs. Tho' in ſome Points it reſembles the Vertigo, or Spaniſh Evil, it muſt however be treated in a different manner.

A Glyſter

CHAP. XXIV.

A Glyster for the Gripes of every kind.

You must give no Rest to a Horse that is attacked with the Gripes, but keep him moving till he takes the following Remedy. Boil good Wheat Bran thoroughly in a sufficient Quantity of Water, which strain afterwards thro' a Linnen Cloth, and put to it a Quartern of Oil of Olives, a Quartern of Honey, two Ounces of strong Catholicon, Salt Prunel and Rock Oil, of each one Ounce. Admister this by way of Glyster as hot as the Horse can bear it without hurt, and if the Pain continues four Hours after, make him take the following.

A Drink.

Take *Venice Treacle* one *Ounce* and an half; *Salt Prunel*, Oil of *Petre*, each one *Ounce*; Oil of *Turpentine*, half an *Ounce*; *Sweet Oil*, two *Ounces*.

Mix them all well in a Pint of warm Wine. If this does not effect a Cure, repeat your Glysters two or three Times a Day till you perceive your Horse better; and towards the End of the Fit use Glysters composed only of Bran-water, Honey, Oil and common Salt.

I proceed now to another Distemper, which, tho' often from the same Cause, is worse than the Gripes. It is called the *Vertigo*, or *Spanish Evil*, because the *Spanish* Horses are more subject to it than those of other Countries; which however are not exempt from it, especially the *English* Horses.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Vertigo, or Spanish Evil.

THIS Distemper proceeds from different Causes: Sometimes from the intense Heat of the Sun, when a Horse stands at Piquet in the Army, or elsewhere, with his Face to the *South*: Sometimes from the Indiscretion of a Rider, who fatigues the Creature too much in giving him his Lesson, either at Piroets with the Head to the Pillar, keeping him at them too long, and with too much Eagerness, or at the natural or reversed Piroets. When this Distemper seizes a Horse, he kicks and flings, runs his Head against a Wall, or any Thing else that he meets, and now and then falls as if he was drunk. Some will even jump down a Precipice, or thrust their Fronts against any Thing with so much Force, as to drop down dead. You must keep them out of the way therefore of every Thing they can lean against, and tie them between two Pillars with a double-rein'd Halter, to prevent their doing themthemselves any Mischief; which they certainly would if left at the Rack or Manger.

When you perceive a Horse attacked with this Distemper, make immediately a Hair Rowel under his Fore-top, and keep it Running with *Basilicum* or any digestive Medicine for ten or twelve Days.

N. B. *It should be made with a red-hot Iron, in order to draw more Humours to the Part from the Brain; and the Rowel should be stirred every Day, and anointed afresh, for the same Reason.*

As soon as this first Operation is over, the very same Day, give him some refreshing Glysters, and administer Cordials with Wine, Day after Day, as directed in the preceding Article. Care must be taken, during the whole Cure, to put the Horse in a dark Stable, where nothing may disturb him. His Glysters, for the three or four first Days, must be two or three in twenty-four Hours. When the Wounds in his Head are cured, walk him about very leisurely, and be sure not to turn him short. Horses that have been seized with this Distemper will never be fit for the Manage, unless perhaps you have the Prudence to work them in Promenades, or the War-Manage, which is done in such extensive Lengths, that you may even put them on the Gallop. Volts or Piroets are very apt to make him relapse into his Vertigo.

Another Method of Cure.

If a Horse has been long vertiginous, and grows very desperate, make a Rowel as before under his Foretop, and four other Holes at the upper Part of his Mane, near his Ears, leaving only room to move his Halter. Let the Rowel run at least two Inches under his Foretop, and your four other Holes be at least two Inches distant. You must perform this Operation while the Fit is upon him, and put Pieces of Cord, dipped in *Basilicum*, into the Holes from

from one to the other, keeping them running, and afterwards healing them as the Rowel under the Foretop. Give plenty of Glyſters and good Cordials during the Courſe of the Malady. CHAP. XXV.

The *Italians* call this Diſtemper *Vermiforme*, becauſe they imagine it to be a Worm between the Fleſh and the Skin. Others make this Worm run along the ſpinal Marrow, and drop his Venom upon the Hole of the Brain, which kills the Horſe, unleſs he be relieved in time, by catching and burning the Worm. You muſt take, ſay they, a large Handful of a fat Ram's Wool, and rub the Horſe with it, from his Tail along his Reins, quite up to his Mane and Head. You muſt likewiſe twiſt all his Mane, proceeding from the Withers to the Ears, with the ſame Sort of Wool. They pretend there is an Antipathy between this Wool and the Worm, which facilitates the taking of the latter, who ſeats himſelf under the Foretop, where you deſtroy him with a red-hot Iron. But theſe are all ſo many Fables: That which they call a Worm is only a Humour, which indeed flies about from Place to Place, as the Gout does in Men. I do not deny that the Ram's Wool may change the Situation of the Pain: But Experience has taught me, that by rubbing the Horſe well in the ſame Parts againſt the Hair, with a Wiſp of Straw or Hay, without any Wool, the ſame Effects may be produced. The whole Cure therefore depends on the hot Iron, uſed as above directed.

CHAP. XXV.

A Remedy for Numbneſs of the Senſes, which reſembles a Vertigo.

TAKE a ſmall Stick, or a Bull's Pizzle, and faſten to the End of it a Bit of Linnen Rag two or three times double: Diſſolve Canary-Soap in a little Brandy, and dip the Rag in it: Then thruſt it ſeveral Times up the Noſe, firſt in one Noſtril, then in the other, as high as you can. Repeat this Application for ſome Time three or four Times a Day, and it will give Relief. But you muſt not forget, in the mean Time, to give him refreſhing Draughts and Glyſters.

Another Remedy for the Head-ach.

Take hold of the Glands in the Place where the Vives come, beat them, and open them with a Fleam or Inciſion-Knife, in order to let in the Air. Keep the Horſe from Oats, and give him no Water before Bran has been boiled in it. Then perform the following Operation.

Take black Hellebore Roots, and ſteep them ſome Hours in Wine-Vinegar to ſoften them: Open the Skin under the Breaſt of the Horſe, juſt in the middle between his Fore-Legs, and with a wild Goat's Horn, a Piece of Bone, or even with your Finger, make a Cavity between the Skin and the Fleſh, ſo as to form a kind of Bag: Put the Hellebore Root into this Cavity, and then ſew or pin up the Skin, leaving the Root there till it drops out of itſelf. If the Part ſwells much within 24 Hours, you may conclude your Horſe will recover; but otherwiſe he is in great Danger. You may rub the Swelling once every Day with the following Ointments, till a Cure is effected.

Take Ointment of *Marſhmallows*, of *Poplar Buds*, of *Roſes*, of *Baſilicum*, Oil of *Bays*, common *Honey*, of each four *Ounces*; melt them all together, and uſe them cold. Towards the End of the Cure, when the Roots are dropped out, waſh the Wound with the following Mixture, beat up well together. *Vinegar*, Oil of *Turpentine*, each one Quart; common *Salt*, four Ounces. Uſe it with a Piece of Sponge, or a Linnen Rag, in order to keep the Part clean.

Often waſh the Mouth of a Horſe in this Diſtemper with White-Wine Vinegar and Honey, in order to reſtore his Appetite; eſpecially after he has taken the following Drink.

Seeds of *Aniſeed*, *Cummin*, *Fennel*, *Coriander*, *Juniper Berries*, *Liquorice Powder*, of each one Ounce: Reduce the Whole into a fine Powder, of which give two Ounces at a Time three Mornings running, having infuſed it ſome Hours in a Bottle of Wine upon hot Aſhes. Let the Horſe faſt four Hours before, and as long after taking this Remedy. You may put in every Draught a Quartern of freſh Butter, and as much Sugar; and to the firſt add an Ounce or an Ounce and an half of Venice Treacle, in proportion to the Strength of the Horſe; which you may omit in the other two Draughts, upon the leaſt Sign of an Amendment.

CHAP. XXVI.

Another Remedy.

Take *Roch Alum*, one *Ounce*; Fine *Loaf Sugar*, two *Ounces*: Diſſolve the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine for a Draught, which repeat every Day for a conſiderable Time. Afterwards offer Oats to the Horſe, and if he covets to eat them, it is a Proof he is better.

As this Diſeaſe is eaſily communicated, you muſt keep the ſick Horſe by himſelf. Many ignorant Perſons attribute this contagious Quality to ſome Witchcraft in the Stable, whereas it exiſts only in the circumfluent Air. Even ſome Quacks of Farriers have taken upon them to remove theſe pretended Spells: But thoſe who have no Idea of Magick may cure a Horſe by the Medicines here preſcribed.

Young Horſes, that are large and fat, eſpecially Coach-Horſes, are the moſt liable to this Diſtemper. Old Horſes however are not exempt from it, if they come near thoſe that are infected; and when they are once attacked, they run a much greater Riſque of their Lives than thoſe that are young and robuſt.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Fever, or Fiery-Evil.

MANY Perſons who have no Skill in this Diſtemper, are forced to rely on the Judgment of their Farriers. Some ignorantly diſtinguiſh between the Fever and the Fiery-Evil, which in fact are all one, and well known to Perſons of Experience. There are different Degrees of Fevers indeed in Horſes, as well as in Men, ſome being more malignant than others. A Horſe in a high Fever will be delirious; and if let looſe would run into any Danger, like a Man in the ſame Condition.

To know if a Horſe has the Fever, hold the Flat of your Hand cloſe behind the Shoulder on the near Side, over-againſt the Heart, and feel if the Palpitation of the Artery be regular, or too violent; which Common Senſe will teach you to diſtinguiſh in a Horſe, as well as in a Man. If the Pulſe beats vehemently, pull ſome Hairs out of the Mane or Tail, which you may do with Eaſe, and look at the Roots of them: Little white Knobs there, are a Proof of the Violence of the Fever. Clap your Hand alſo upon his Back-Bone, near the Croſs, as if you would pinch him hard, and if the Horſe does not bend in, his Diſtemper is very dangerous. A Horſe that is diffident of his own Strength, and for that Reaſon will not lie down, is alſo in a bad Way. Theſe three Symptoms are for the Information of thoſe who cannot diſcover a Fever by the Palpitation of the Heart. But when a Horſe is ſenſible of a Pinch on the Back-Bone, there is good Hope of Succeſs; and when he can lie down without any Signs of Dread, it is a certain Proof that he is out of Danger, tho' he may not have recovered his Appetite: For every feveriſh Horſe has a weak Stomach; and his Nouriſhment ſhould be given him thro' a Horn, in the manner of a Drench, till he comes to his Strength. Glyſters ſhould be uſed plentifully, to abate the Violence of the Fever.

You may afterwards give him a Draught made of two Ounces of the Jeſuits Bark, infuſed in a Bottle of Emetic Wine; but let him faſt three or four Hours both before and after taking it. That Time being elapſed, give him a little Hay, or ſcalded Bran, or Bread, or Oats, and if he ſtill refuſes to eat, continue to feed him with the Horn. The next Day, if the Fever does not ceaſe, repeat the Bark, and make him take it every Morning till you find that Effect. Your Horſe will ſoon recover his Appetite when once his Fever has left him. If three or four Doſes of the Bark are not ſufficient, take an Ounce of Roch Alum, melt it in a Pint of Water, mix it with the Bark-Infuſion, and give the Whole together.

If you ſhould be in a Country where the Bark is not eaſy to be got, take the Tops of Wormwood and Centaury, of each an Ounce, half an Ounce of Gentian Root, and an Ounce of bitter Orange-peel: Powder the Whole, infuſe it in a Bottle of Wine, and give it the Horſe for a Draught, repeating it every Morning while the Fever continues. To diſſipate the Vapours, which in this Diſtemper may affect the Head, give him refreſhing Glyſters very frequently; and to bring him to his Appetite, even when the Fever is gone, you muſt from time to time tempt him with Bread, Bran, Oats, Rye, Carrots, or Graſs when it is in Seaſon, offering but little at a Time, and of that Thing chiefly which he eats moſt freely. During the Courſe of the Malady, take Aſſafœdida, Honey, and Cinnamon, tie them up tight in a Linnen Rag, and put them four or five Times a Day into the Horſe's Mouth, in order to provoke his Appetite; and if you perceive it has not that Effect, make him take the

hungry

hungry Balls, which may be given in any Diſtemper without danger. I ſhall deſcribe them at the End of the Book, in the Chapter of general Remedies. You may alſo give him, from time to time, a Bottle of Emetic Wine, which is very good for reſtoring a loſt Appetite. It is indeed a violent Vomit to Mankind, but gives no Diſturbance to a Horſe. In Countries where Wine is dear or ſcarce, Ale will do as well. The manner of making it is, by infuſing an Ounce of *Crocus Metallorum* in a Pint of Wine or Ale for ſeveral Days. On the contrary, it cleanſes his Stomach, carries down the Phlegm, relieves the Heart, and produces only good Effects. This Preparation, which may be uſed in almoſt every Draught and Horſe-Medicine, as well as in Glyſters, is very eaſy to make, as will appear by what here follows.

Emetic Wine.

Take two Ounces of Glaſs of Antimony, ſteep it twenty-four Hours in a Bottle of Wine or Ale, and then take it out, and give the Liquor to your Horſe. This is all you have to do; and you may dry your Glaſs, and keep it as long as you pleaſe, and uſe it a hundred Times over, without leſſening the Virtue, provided you dry it every Time: Nor will a Pound of this Preparation, when put in the ſame Quantity of Wine, make it any ſtronger than two Ounces. As a Bottle of this Wine or Ale is a proper Doſe for a Horſe, ſo half a common Gill Glaſs is enough for a Man: And if you want to vomit ten People, you need only put in ten Glaſſes of Wine as you take the other out, without adding a Grain to the Antimony. A very ſtrong Horſe may take three Pints at a Doſe.

Remedy for a Fever.

Take *Venice Treacle*, one *Ounce* and half: *Jeſuits Bark*, one *Ounce*: Put the Whole in a Bottle of Wine, and infuſe it about an Hour upon hot Embers, and then give it the Horſe. Continue this Remedy every Morning till the Fever abates, uſing Glyſters all the Time of the Diſtemper.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Faſhions.

THIS takes away a Horſe's Stomach, and cauſes a Palpitation in his Heart and Flanks; obliges him to fall back from the Manger, and hang on his Halter. It is cauſed by exceſſive Heat, which occaſions a contagious Fever; and therefore the Horſe that is taken with it, ſhould be ſeparated from all others. Bleed him in the Neck-Vein, and then with all poſſible Expedition refreſh him with cooling Drinks, ſuch as *Salt Prunel* diſſolved in warm Water, or the like; giving immediately after the following Glyſter.

Take *Caſſia* and *Lenitive Electuary*, each one *Ounce* and half; common *Honey*, and *Honey* made with the Herb *Mercury*, or *Mel Mercurialis*, each four *Ounces*: Boil the Whole in a Gallon of Bran-Water, and then give it the Horſe. You ſhould alſo apply a Cautery of *Hellebore* Root under the Breaſt, between the Skin and the Fleſh (as directed for the Head-ach) to draw off the bad Humours from about the Heart. If the Fever continues, bleed him on both ſides the Flank. A Horſe attack'd with this Diſeaſe, and having a Slow Fever, may be readily relieved by good Drinks, nouriſhing Panadas, and refreſhing Glyſters often repeated. I begin with the

Nouriſhing Drinks and Panadas.

Take Wheat-Flour, and make it into a Paſte with warm Water. When it is well kneaded, cut it into ſmall Bits, and boil them about half an Hour in a Sauce-Pan of Water. Give this to the Horſe with a Horn three Times a Day, and feed him in this manner till he has ſtrength enough to eat his uſual Diet.

Another Panada.

Take common Bread, and have it dried in the Oven till you can eaſily reduce it to a Powder; dilute this Powder with Cow's Milk, warmed upon Embers, and add two Ounces of Sugar. You may give this three times a Day: It is needleſs to ſay in what Quantities, becauſe, as the Deſign of it is only to ſupport and ſtrengthen the Horſe, the Quantity muſt be proportioned to thoſe Purpoſes. It is excellent for all Horſes who cannot eat for want of Strength.

A Medicine

CHAP. XXVIII.

A Medicine for the abovementioned Disease.

Take *Sugar Candy*, four *Ounces*; *Cinnamon*, *Cloves*, *Mithridate*, *Honey* of *Roses*, each one *Ounce*; *Saffron*, half an *Ounce*: Put the Whole in a Bottle of White-Wine, and having warmed it, give it to the Horse for a Draught. Repeat it Day after Day till a Cure is effected.

A Nourishing Glyster for the same Disorder.

Take a Sheep's Head, and half a Pound of Nut-Oil: Boil the Head in a large Kettle of Water, till the Flesh comes from the Bones in a perfect Jelly: Make a Glyster with this and the Oil. If the Reins of the Horse appear to be over-charged, give him one that is laxative, for which I shall insert a Form at the End of this Book.

Another Remedy.

Take *Gentian* Root, two *Ounces*; Long *Birthwort* Root, and round ditto, *Aniseed*, *Fennel Seed*, *Fœnugreek Seed*, each one *Ounce*; *Bay-Berries*, and *Poppy-Seed*, each half an *Ounce*: Powder the Whole; boil it in a Bottle of White-Wine over a gentle Fire, and give it for a Draught.

Another Medicine for the same Purpose.

Take about two Handfuls of *Sage*, pound it well, and then boil it in White-Wine: Strain the Wine, and put to it the following Seeds, having first reduced them to a Powder, *viz. Fennel Seed*, *Aniseed*, each one *Ounce*; *Coriander Seed*, two *Ounces*: Give it for a Draught.

Another.

Take *Ginger*, and long and round *Birthwort*, each one *Ounce*; *Olive* or *Sweet Oil*, four *Ounces*; *Bay Berries*, *Saffron*, *Myrrh*, each half an *Ounce*: Pound the Whole, mix it in a Bottle of White-Wine, and give it warm.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Incontinence of Urine.

SOME Horses are subject to stop often to stale, which is a great Inconvenience, especially when the Rider or Driver does not observe to give them sufficient time, but hurries them on in the very Action. As a Horse discharges his Water but little at a Time, the Bladder, when full, swells so suddenly and violently, that it may kill him. To remedy this, take two Ounces of Seed of common Burdock, very ripe, and well cleansed, because otherwise there are little Hairs on it that will stick to the Knots of the Throat, and make him cough a long while. Some Horses have been six Months, others a whole Year, before they have got over this. Pound this Seed very fine, and, with the Flour of Liquorice Powder, infuse an Hour or two on warm Ashes in a Bottle of Wine. Let him take this for three Weeks or a Month together every Morning, till the Distemper abates. It may be given likewise in Bran or Oats, Morning and Evening, two Ounces each time. Alum Posset, given in a Horn, is another very good, and perhaps the best Remedy for this Disease.

For a Horse that pisses Blood.

Boil the Quantity of two common Feeds of Bran in a Gallon of Water, and when it is well boiled, strain it thro' a Linnen Cloth, and then boil in it fifty Figs, to which add an Ounce of Melon Seeds cleansed, and the same Quantity of Seeds of Citrul, or great Gourd, pounded well in a Mortar. Give a Quart of this at a Time, Night and Morning; and thus it well serve two Days. But in Summer-time, when the Composition will not keep, you must make fresh every Day, and only half the Quantity here prescribed. Continue this Draught for some Time; and during the whole Course of the Disease, let the Horse eat nothing but scalded Bran, or Barley bruised in a Mill, and Wheat-Straw, or Chaff. Oats or Hay will retard the Cure, which without them may be soon expected.

CHAP. XXIX.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Anticor, or Anticow.

THIS Distemper is mortal to Horses if they are not soon relieved, especially in hot Countries, where twenty-five at the least die out of thirty that are seized with it. In *Holland* it is just the reverse; for there out of thirty it is a Chance but twenty-five recover, if they are but treated tolerably well. *Germany* and *France*, tho' temperate Countries, are notwithstanding pretty fatal in this Disease; and much more so are *Spain* and *Italy*, which are extremely hot.

The Anticor proceeds from different Causes; as for Instance, from the Remains of an old Distemper, which was never perfectly cured, or after which the Horse was too soon put to Labour; from too much Heat contracted in the Stable, by being kept up there a long Time without airing; or from having lost too large a Quantity of Blood, in what Part soever the Vein was opened. The Way to know when a Horse has this Distemper, is by looking under his Belly, to see if he has a Swelling there from the Sheath quite up between the Fore-Legs. This Swelling is sometimes larger, sometimes less, and very often the Sheath itself is affected with it. If it be a Mare, her Dugs usually grow turgid, tho' sometimes they continue without any Alteration. When you touch a Swelling of this kind, the Impressions of the Fingers remain for some Time, as if you had made them in a Bit of Puff-Paste, filling up again by Degrees as the Paste would rise. This Swelling contains only some bloody Water, that insinuates between the Flesh and the Skin, and which proves that all the Blood in the Veins is corrupted.

The first Thing to be done here, is to open the Skin under the Breast with a Razor or Incision-Knife, and make a Cavity with the wild Goat's Horn, or any like Instrument, as directed in a former Case; putting into it a Bit of Black Hellebore Root as big as a Nut, that has been steep'd an Hour or two in warm Vinegar. You must sew or pin up the Wound as in other Cases, and wait for the Swelling in twenty-four Hours, which comes almost in the Shape of a Hat. As this Swelling is the most favourable Symptom that can be, so a want of it shews the Life of the Horse to be in Danger; tho' sometimes indeed that Defect may proceed from the Badness of the Hellebore, it having lain till it has lost its Virtue.

To proceed to the Swelling: You must anoint it with Basilicum, to bring it to a Suppuration; which will draw away a great Part of the Distemper. You must also rub it between whiles with that Ointment which is ordered to be applied under the Jaws of a young Horse that has the Strangles. As soon as this Swelling becomes sufficiently soft, (which you may know upou touching it with your Finger, if the Cavity does not presently fill up, or at most while you can tell fifty or sixty) you must take an Iron proper for the Purpose, which all Farriers have, make it red-hot, and pierce the Tumour with it on each Side, in three or four Places. You must thrust in the Iron at each Place, till the bloody Water comes out as from a Tap, and then put a Broom-stick under the Horse's Belly, which two Men must hold at the Ends, and rub it backwards and forwards very hard, in order to force out as much Water as possible. You must afterwards anoint it every Day with the Ointment above-mentioned, till the Tumour disappears. Thro' the whole Course of this Distemper you must give the Horse Cordial-Medicines, as Venice-Treacle, Cordial-Powder, and good Rhubarb, in order to cleanse his Heart, and drive the Disorder out. If the Dung of the Horse in this Distemper appears too dry and black, you must give him from time to time some refreshing Glysters; which may be omitted when the Dung seems to be in good Order.

Another Remedy for the Anticor.

We have observed, in the preceding Article, that this Distemper may arise from different Causes: To which I must add, that it proceeds also from a Sort of Contagion. A Horse may be put in a Stable where sick Horses have been before; and, for want of due Care, that Stable may have been rendered unhealthy, and consequently infectious, so that a great many Horses may be ruined by being put in it. To remedy this, and prevent the Venom from reaching the Heart, and consequently from causing a Gangrene between the Flesh and the Skin, as soon as you perceive that a Horse is attacked with this Disorder, open the Skin under his Belly on each Side of the Swelling, with the Iron above-mentioned, and in every Orifice put a little Pellet of Burgundy-Pitch, about the Size of a Pea, melting it in with the red-hot Iron. Afterwards, rub the Swelling all over every

CHAP. XXX.

every Day with Oils of Turpentine and Bays, mixed together in equal Quantities. If the Swelling has already reached the Breast, you should foment the Belly all over, five or six Times a Day, with the Decoction of Marsh-Mallow-Roots, prescribed in the Sequel of this Book. This must be followed by the Cautery of Black Hellebore, under the Skin between the Fore-Legs, which should be applied and dressed as directed on other Occasions. You must often give the Horse good Cordials, such as have been already prescribed in several Places of this Work. Both these and the Cautery will contribute to drive the Distemper out.

CHAP. XXX.

Of a Pursive, or Broken-winded Horse.

THERE being no Remedy for broken-winded Horses, it would be almost needless to treat of them, were it not that some Quacks maintain they can cure this incurable Disorder. I leave to themselves the Glory of all such Cures, and shall be content with setting down a few Prescriptions, that may give Relief in this Case, and make the Horses capable of doing some Service, without running to any great and ineffectual Expence.

A Medicine for the Relief of Broken-winded Horses.

Take three Pounds, two Pounds and a half, or two Pounds of *fat Bacon*, in Proportion to to the Size of the Horse; mince it small, and soak it twenty-four Hours in a small Quantity of warm Water, changing the Water every two or three Hours: Then take a Handful of *Smallage*, cut it fine, and beat it up with the Bacon. You must have a Pint of sweet Oil, to dip this Mixture in, and then give it the Horse in a Morning, after he has fasted all Night. Get upon his Back as soon as he has taken it, and give him an Airing for three or four Hours. Repeat this Prescription six times in twelve Days, keeping him all the time from Hay, or wetting what Hay you give him. His Oats should be bedewed with the Urine of a sound hearty Man, and afterwards mixed with the following Powder.

A Powder to sprinkle among the Oats of a Broken-winded Horse.

Take three or four Pounds of *Small Shot*, cast in Water, and beat it in a large Mortar, till it is reduced to Powder: Then take the same Weight of *Flowers of Sulphur*, and mix with it in an earthen Pot. Heat a Spit red-hot, and thrust it into the Pot, and when the Composition has taken Fire, wait till it goes out of itself. The Powder that remains at bottom you must pound over again, and sprinkle about a Thimble full of it, Night and Morning, over his Oats. This will relieve a Horse very much in ten or twelve Days, but radically to cure him is impossible.

Another Remedy.

Take *sweet Oil* and *Brandy*, a Pint of each; give it for a Draught three Mornings running, the Horse fasting six Hours before, and as many after taking it. A man must be a good Judge, who can tell on the fourth Day, whether your Horse is broken-winded or no, at least if he be not very bad indeed.

Another Remedy for a Broken Wind.

Take three large Handfuls of the Herb called *Ox's Tongue*, and boil it in six or seven Quarts of Wine, till it is half wasted. Give the Horse about a Quart every other Day, keeping him warm. Litter him well, and let him fast three Hours before and as long after taking this Draught. Give him a good Handful of Rye, and let his Hay be all soaked in Water. Wheat Straw is much the best for him, if you can get a sufficient Quantity. Sprinkle all his Oats with fresh human Urine. If you repeat this Course once a Month, it will make a broken-winded Horse able to do a great deal of Business.

Another.

Take *Figs*, either fresh gathered or dry, and pound as many of them as will yield you half a Pint of Juice by Expression, which mix with good Wheat-Bran. Give the whole Quantity Evening and Morning, and continue it for some time, observing to wet the Bran with warm Water. The following Draught should also be given for some Days.

Take

Take three Ounces of *fine Starch*, and half a Pound of *Boar's Lard*; dissolve them in a full Quart of Water, stirring it well; and give this to drink every Morning till the Horse mends. Mix a little Honey in his common Water, and if he will not drink when you offer it, keep him thirsty till next Day, and then use the following Fomentation. CHAP. XXX.

Put two or three Handfuls of *Rosemary Branches*, Flowers and all if they are in Season, into a new earthen Pot: Fill the Pot with Brandy, cover it close, and set it over a gentle Fire, till it be ready to boil: Then put the Horse's Head into your Bag with Holes at both Ends, and perfume it with the Steam of the Pot from underneath, which will make the Horse sweat, and transpire the ill Humours that may affect his Lungs. Fumigate him in this Manner, Morning and Evening, for eight or ten Days, and if he is not perfectly broken-winded, you may hope for a Cure: If he is, this will do him great Service.

Another.

Keep your Horse shut up in the Stable a Fortnight, and then bleed him. Feed him only with Chaff, and scalded Bran, and let his Drink be fair Water warmed. If he has a great Cough, take an Ounce and an half, or two Ounces of Oil of Bays, and tie it up in a Rag for him to hold in his Mouth. Let him him drink freely whenever he is a-dry. You must use this as long as the Cough continues, and when that leaves him, give your Horse the following Composition.

Take common *Sweet Oil* half a Pint; *Succotrine Aloes*, and *Saffron*, each half an Ounce: Put the whole, well mixed, into a Bottle of Wine, and give it for a Draught. Let him fast four Hours before, and as much after taking it. Then take a Bottle of White-Wine, and put in it six large Onions, boiling them to a Pap over a gentle Fire without Flame, and till the Water in them is all evaporated. Give this with a Drenching-Horn, three Days after the former: Then let him rest three Days, and let his next Draught afterwards consist of these Ingredients, *viz. Nutmegs*, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Long-Pepper*, each one Ounce: Put them all together in a Bottle of White-Wine, with four Ounces of Oil of *Olives*. Heat the Whole, before you give it the Horse, who should be walked two Hours before and two Hours after taking it. In twelve Days Time repeat the first of these Draughts; and if you are desirous to preserve your Horse, let him drink nothing but blanched Water, and never eat any Hay, unless obliged to it by Necessity. When that is the Case, see it be good and clean, and moisten it a little with Water.

To preserve a Horse's Wind.

Take dry Teazles, such as the Cloth-workers use, reduce them to Powder, and sift the Powder well. Give the Horse half an Ounce of it at a time, Night and Morning, among his Oats. This Remedy, simple as it seems, is excellent for the Relief of a Broken-winded Horse; and to preserve the Wind of a Horse that is not affected, give him a Dose of it whenever he is to take a long Heat.

Another alleviating Remedy to a Broken-winded Horse.

Take Lead, and file it to as fine a Powder as possible, of which give an Ounce at a time in the Horse's Oats, after they have been soaked in fresh human Urine, or for want of that in fair Water. This Remedy continued will do much Service. Observe in general, never to give any Thing dry in this Distemper.

A Medicine to keep a Broken Wind from growing worse.

Take half a large Handful of green Broom in Blossom, chop it small, and mix it with your Horse's Oats, after you have wetted them with human Urine. Deprive him of Hay, and give him Straw in the room of it, wetting it Night and Morning to make it the fresher: For many Horses will not eat it when kept wet from one Day to another. While you give him the Broom, which should be for eight Days running, lead him once or twice a Day to the Water, and make him swim without suffering him to drink; especially on the Day when you would have him appear sound-winded.

Another

CHAP. XXX.

Another, to preſerve the Breath of a Shortwinded Horſe.

Take Pimpernel and Creſſes, of each a Handful and an half; pound them together, and having put them in a Pot to infuſe in a Bottle of White-Wine, give the Whole for a Draught. This is a very good Remedy.

Another for the ſame Purpoſe.

Take Broom-Flowers, and White-thorn Leaves the freſheſt and tendereſt you can get, with the yelloweſt Leaves of Sallow, and Colts-Foot, of each an equal Quantity: Chop the Whole very ſmall, and make the Horſe eat as much of it as poſſible in his Bran. Keep your Horſe on this Diet, and a little Straw between whiles, and his Wind will appear good.

Another, for a Broken Wind.

Diet your Horſe for a Fortnight with Straw, Chaff, and Bran, and keep him from Work; and four Days after give him the following Pills.

Take *Agarick*, *Aloes*, round *Birthwort*, each half an *Ounce*; *Elecampane*, *Flowers of Brimſtone*, common *Honey*, *Liquorice Powder*, each one *Ounce*. Powder all theſe Drugs; mix them with freſh Butter, and make them into Balls. Roll your Balls in Sugar or Liquorice Powder, and give them every Day eight or ten Days running. This will very much relieve.

A Powder to mix with the Oats of Broken-winded Horſes, or Horſes that have an inveterate Cough.

Take a Bar of Iron or Steel (Iron is beſt, tho' Steel be moſt uſed) and heat it at the Forge till it comes out almoſt white. Then take a large Piece of Sulphur, thruſt your Iron againſt it, and as it melts let it run into a Pail of Water. When the intenſe Heat is over, put it again into the Fire till it is as hot as before, and continue thus to put it to the Brimſtone till you have melted four or five Pounds, more or leſs, as you have Occaſion. Three Pounds of Sulphur, ſkilfully managed, will melt five or ſix Pounds of Iron or Steel. The Sulphur falls into the Water with the Metal, but you muſt leave it there, becauſe when you take out what is melted, you muſt dry it and reduce it to Powder in a Mortar, and paſs it thro' a fine Sieve, Sulphur and all. Take an Ounce or an Ounce and an half of this, according to the Corpulence of your Horſe, and mix it with his ſcalded Bran. Some give this for a Month, or even ſix Weeks together, without perceiving any Effect; but this ſhould not hinder them from continuing it two Months upon Occaſion, by which Time it will certainly do good. You muſt not throw away the Water in which the Metal was melted, but give a Quart of it to the Horſe every Morning by Way of Draught. There have been thoſe who have uſed File-duſt for the ſame Purpoſe; but it would be long before one could get a ſufficient Quantity; nor is that ever ſo fine as this Powder, which therefore is a more effectual and ſovereign Remedy.

Balls for a Broken Wind.

Stamp eight Heads of *Garlick*, and two Ounces of *Horſe-Raddiſh*, in a Mortar; then add to them, three Ounces of *Flowers of Brimſtone*, and make them into a Maſs with a ſufficient Quantity of *Sweet Oil*:- Divide the Maſs into four *Balls*. Let the Horſe have one of them in the Morning, and another in the Afternoon.

Others.

Take *Galbanum* and *Gum Ammoniac*, of each half a Pound; *Burdock Roots*, a Pound; let them be well pounded in a Mortar, with a Quarter of a Pound of *Flowers of Benjamin*, adding by Degrees, *Sweet Oil*, 'till it becomes a Paſte fit to be made into Balls, weighing each two Ounces. Give one in the Morning, and one in the Afternoon, two Hours before Watering.

CHAP. XXVII.

Heaving of the Flank.

CHAP. XXVII.

HORSES that are attacked with this Diſtemper ſeem as if they were broken-winded, which often makes their Caſe ſeem doubtful, ſometimes occaſions Law-ſuits, and leads ignorant Practitioners into the Uſe of wrong Means. Dealers have been obliged to take their Horſes again through the Suſpicion of the Buyers, who were unacquainted with the Diſtemper we are treating of: And others have ſold Horſes that have been really broken-winded, under the Notion of their being only over-heated, and newly taken up from Graſs.

This Accident often happens to Horſes that have been over-rid, or have eat what is unwholeſom; as damaged Hay, duſty or muſty Oats, or ſuch Drugs as the Jockeys give them to make them fat of a ſudden. Theſe Drugs ſeem at firſt to do them good; but they only heat their Inſide, make them infirm, and bring on this Heaving of the Flank. It is known by the Wheezing of a Horſe, and the continual Motion of his Flanks; his Bowels are tucked in, and ſo drawn together, that he may become burſten. The Cure ſhould be ſpeedily undertaken, and in the following Manner.

A Remedy for the Heaving of the Flanks.

Beat up a Pound of Bacon into a Lump, and ſoak out the Salt in River-water. Then take *Flowers of Brimſtone*, *Honey of Roſes*, *powder'd Aniſeeds*, and *Fennel Seeds*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum*, 1 Ounce.

Make this into ten or twelve Pills, each as large as a Nut, in the following Manner. When your Bacon is well ſoaked, cut it in very ſmall Pieces, and pound it in a Mortar, and then add the Drugs above-mentioned, after having powdered the Fennel Seeds and Alum. With a ſufficient Quantity of Barley-flour make the whole into Pills, and let the Doſe be more or leſs in Proportion to the Strength of the Horſe: Two or three of a Morning is the Quantity neareſt a Medium. The Horſe ſhould be tied up five or ſix Hours before taking them, and three or four after. You muſt feed him only with ſcalded Bran, and if the Doſe preſcribed is not ſufficient, repeat it in double the Quantity till the Beating of the Flank abates. Above all take care to give him eaſy Airings, without any Fatigue.

Another, for a Heaving of the Flanks through too much Fatigue.

Take *Juniper Berries*, *Wild Sage* dry'd, each 2 Ounces; *Bay Berries*, *Gentian Root*, each 3 Ounces; *Saffron*, half an Ounce. Having powdered the whole, tie it up in a Linen Cloth, and put it in a Pail of Water, which you are going to give the Horſe to drink. After he has drank, fill the Pail again, and leave the Drugs to ſteep. In this manner the Compoſition will ſerve two Days, and then you muſt put in freſh till the Horſe is well. During the whole Courſe put the following among his Oats or Bran.

Fenugreek Seed, and the Root of *Imperatoria*, each 1 Pound; *Gentian Root*, 2 Pounds; the Herb *Savin*, dry'd, half a Pound. Powder and mix theſe, and put a Spoonful of the Powder into his Oats or Bran every Time he eats, pouring on Water that you may mix them the better. It will very ſoon produce good Effects.

Another, for the Beating of the Flanks occaſion'd by Straining.

The Beating of the Flanks occaſioned by ſome Strain, whether through a Hurt on the Part, or by falling off a Bridge, or out of a Boat, or by leaping any Hedge or Gate, is very dangerous, and will kill a Horſe without ſpeedy Relief.

You muſt obſerve if there be any Swelling or Bruiſe, which the Horſe will generally point out himſelf, by turning his Head that Way. When this is the Caſe, loſe no Time, for the Place may ſuddenly mortify: To prevent which apply the following Remedy.

Take *Bole Armenic*, *Greater Comfrey Root*, *Black Pitch*, each 4 Ounces; *Sal Armoniac*, *Dragon's Blood*, *Frankincenſe*, each 2 Ounces; *Wheat-flour*, half a Pound; *Vinegar*, 2 Quarts. Dry the Drugs thoroughly, and having powdered them, take ſix Whites of Eggs, and put them in a large Pot, in order to mix the Powder with them and the Vinegar. Apply this hot to the Part, after having ſhaved off the Hair, and cover it with a Sheep-skin bound on with Leather-Thongs. Let it remain twelve Hours, and repeat the

CHAP. XXVIII.

the Application two or three Times, till the Horſe is relieved. In the mean time give him ſome Cordials, in order to ſtrengthen him, and drive the Diſtemper out. Give him no Oats, but only ſcalded Bran, and a little ſtale Rye-Bread; for that which is new would clog up his Teeth. A Horſe treated in this manner will very ſoon be out of Danger.

A Remedy for a Horſe that is over-heated, and ſtreightened in the Flanks.

Take a Pint of Sweet Oil, and as much Milk, freſh from the Cow: Mix them together, and give them to the Horſe a little warm: Then walk him in the Air a Quarter of an Hour, and keep him from eating two Hours after as well as before taking it. Water him with fair Water as ſoon as he comes back into the Stable; and the two Hours being expired, give him a Feed of ſcalded Bran, but no Oats. Repeat the Remedy five or ſix Times, once in two Days, and let his Feed all the Time be the ſame. A little Barley juſt broke in the Mill is very good for him in this Caſe, and will contribute to a ſpeedy Cure.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Cheſt-Foundering.

THIS Diſtemper is much like the former, and proceeds from the ſame Cauſes; which makes ſome Perſons call them both a *Heaving of the Flank*, without any Diſtinction. A Horſe may contract it by being lame behind, whether in the Hanch, the Leg, or the Muſcles; or from any long Fatigue, either in the Army, or elſewhere. A Horſe that is delicate may avoid eating, through mere Indifference, till his Bowels are contracted, and he looks as lank and thin as a Grey-hound. A Mare may be ſooner brought to fill out again than a Horſe by getting her covered, which is a Secret that Dealers make uſe of in order to ſell their Mares: But as this Stratagem is not univerſally received, the moſt ready Cure is by the following Medicines.

A Remedy for a Cheſt-foundered Horſe.

Refreſh your Horſe firſt with ſcalded Bran, depriving him of Oats. Some Days after bleed him in the Neck-Vein, and next Day give him a purging Gliſter, and in the Evening ſome common Purge. Feed him with the beſt Hay you can get, and whenever you give him Bran, take a Pail half full of it, and then fill it with Water, having mixed them well to blanch the Water. You may diſſolve in it half a Pound of Honey each time. This Water can ſerve but once, becauſe it will grow ſour in a Night's time, eſpecially in Summer. If the Horſe will not eat the Bran that is at Bottom, after he has drunk the Water, take it out in Balls, and put them into the Manger, with a few Handfuls of Beans to provoke his Appetite. You may alſo give him Beans to make him drink the Water; but they muſt be your ſmall Marſh-Beans, ſuch as they throw to Pigeons. During this Courſe rub his Flanks every Day with good Oil Evening and Morning, and endeavour to looſen, as it were, the Skin of his Belly with your Hand gently, and by little and little, taking Care not to hurt him. It muſt be owned that this is a Work of Time, but it will certainly cure the Horſe in the End. The Horſe ſhould have ſeveral Purges during the Courſe of this Diſtemper.

Another, for the ſame Diſorder.

Treat your Horſe as before directed, and in order the ſooner to make him belly, take Vine-branches and reduce them to Aſhes. When you have four Ounces, ſift it through a fine Sieve, and beat it up in a Bottle of Wine. Let the Horſe drink four Ounces of Sweet Oil, and then give him the Wine and Aſhes through a Horn. Repeat this Remedy every other Day till the Horſe apparently recovers, and never neglect your Gliſters when his Dung is hard and black; but when that is in good Order, Gliſters are no longer neceſſary.

When you cannot get Vine-branches, uſe Elder-ſhoots in the room of them; but Vine-Wood is abundantly the beſt. Take great care that you do not rub the Skin of the Belly too roughly; for you cannot here go too tenderly to work.

CHAP. XXIX.

Worms in Horſes.

CHAP. XXIX, XXX.

THERE are many different Kinds of Worms, and as many different Remedies proper to deſtroy them. To come at the Knowledge of this Diſtemper, you muſt obſerve that a Horſe who has Worms grows meagre, and his Hair curls and frizzles; he looks dull and melancholic, and falls away viſibly give him whatever you will. To be more certain of his Caſe, examine his Dung, and you will ſometimes find it dry and powdery, and mixed with Worms that get looſe from the great Gut; ſometimes the Worms keep behind, but ſtill the Dung is dry, and will not hang together. Another certain Sign of Worms is when the Horſe appears very uneaſy, and every Moment directs his Head to his Belly, ſometimes on one Side, ſometimes on the other, as if he would ſhew what ailed him. In this Caſe it is neceſſary to rub the Hand, and the Arm up to the Elbow, with Oil, and introduce it into the Fundament of the Horſe; firſt cutting your Nails very ſhort, and taking care not to ſcratch the great Gut as you pull your Hand back, when you have got in it all the Worms you can find. As for thoſe that are in the other Bowels, where the Hand cannot poſſibly come, you muſt get rid of them by the following Remedy.

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, 3 Ounces; and the ſame Weight of freſh Butter to make it up into Pills, which you ſhould roll in Liquorice Powder, and give the Horſe faſting, keeping him ſo three Hours after. In a ſhort Time the Worms will die, and come out with the Dung.

Another Remedy.

Take *Oil of Nuts*, 4 Ounces; *Gentian Root* powdered, *Flowers of Brimſtone*, each 1 Ounce: Mix the Whole in a Pint of White-Wine, or Ale, and infuſe it in a Pot cloſe ſtopped over hot Embers, in order for a Draught. Give it the Horſe warm, and let him faſt two Hours before and as long after taking it.

Another.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, *Agarick*, *Scammony*, each 1 Ounce; *Butter* without Salt, or *Hog's Lard*, 8 Ounces. Make the Whole into Pills, with Cordial Powder at your own Diſcretion, in order to give them a firm Conſiſtence. The Uſe of theſe will clear a Horſe of the Worms.

Another.

Take *Crocus Metallorum* in Powder, and every time the Horſe eats Oats, put an Ounce of it among them: Continue this for ſome Days. Either of theſe Remedies will do the Buſineſs.

CHAP. XXX.

Swelling of the Teſticles.

THIS Diſtemper uſually proceeds either from ſome Strain in Working, or from the Horſe's having continued too long in the Stable, or from his putting one Leg over any Bar, and being checked by the Halter, or, in a Word, from any other Accident that confines a Horſe, makes him kick and fling, and bruiſe his Cods. There is no other Way of knowing this Diſtemper but by ſome outward Swelling upon the Part. The coming down of the Teſticles proceeds from the ſame Cauſes, with this Difference only, that it is a long time in diſcovering itſelf; whereas the other may come in one Night.

A Poultice for the Swelling of the Teſticles.

Take about 4 Ounces of the Juice of *Leeks*, 2 Ounces of common *Salt*, a Quartern of the ſtaleſt leavened *Dough* you can get, 2 Ounces of the Juice of *Rue*, two Handfuls of *Rye-flour*, and about a Quartern of *Hog's Lard* ready melted. Boil the Whole with a ſufficient Quantity of *Vinegar* to make a Pap about as thick as that for Children, and apply it ſpread thick like a Poultice.

Another.

Take *Bean flour* and *Vinegar*; make a Pap as before; add a little Salt, and uſe it as the other.

Another.

CHAP. XXX, XXXI.

Another.

Take *Leeks* and the Crum of *White Bread*, an equal Quantity of each; pound them with *Honey*, or *New Milk*: Boil the Whole together, and make it of a proper Conſiſtence, to apply with Tow upon the Cods, covering it with an Ox's Bladder. Faſten it on with a Bandage, and apply freſh twice a Day, a little warmiſh, continuing the Uſe of it till the Swelling leſſens. If this Remedy is properly applied, the Horſe will be ſoon cured.

Another.

Bleed the Horſe in the Flat of his Thighs; then take the Flour of *Wheat* and *Linſeed*, *Turpentine*, and Oil of *St. John's Wort*, each 4 Ounces; Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, 2 Ounces. Mix the Whole with Vinegar, and make a Plaiſter for the Reins of the Horſe, which will very much contribute to aſſwage the Swelling of the Cods. This may be made as ſoon as a Poultice.

A Remedy for another Sort of a Swelling in the Teſticles.

The Swelling I mean, and which has not yet been mentioned, proceeds from a Collection of Humours which deſcend on the Part, and occaſion great Pains. Theſe Humours are often the Effect of eating Graſs too tender: They may alſo proceed from a Horſe's carrying too heavy Burthens, or having worked too hard, or eat too much. When Nature is over-charged, the obſtructed Digeſtion cauſes Ventuoſities which ſwell theſe Parts. To know when the Diſtemper proceeds from this, take your Horſe abroad into ſome Water as high as the Bottom of his Stones, and if the Swelling ſinks, you may be ſure it proceeds only from Humours; and in that Caſe have Recourſe to the following Remedies.

Take Potters Earth, and dilute it with Wine; ſtir it well, till it becomes very liquid: Then warm it, and with a Spunge dipped in it foment the Teſticles and Sheath. If this does not cure him, add the Juice of Garden Night-Shade, and Roſe-Water, an equal Quantity of each, and as much of both as you had put Wine to dilute the Earth. Apply this five or ſix Times a Day, till the Horſe is cured. If the Swelling proceeds from his having worked too hard, or carried too heavy Burthens, you may know it by touching the affected Parts, and feeling a Hardneſs cleaving to the Skin. In this Caſe uſe the following Remedy.

Dry Beans in an Oven; reduce them to Flour; boil that in Vinegar, and make a Plaiſter to apply to the Cods, binding it on with a Bandage.

Another.

Take a large Quantity of Lees of Wine, Cummin, and Beans; boil up the Beans firſt to ſkin them, and then boil the Whole well together, and make an Addition of Vinegar. Put this Compoſition into a Bag that will cover the Cods, and apply it as warm as the Horſe can bear. You may repeat the Application twice a Day, and in caſe the Swelling be very conſiderable, three times.

CHAP. XXXI.

A Remedy againſt the Gangrene.

IT is proper to ſay that the following Compoſition will keep a long time, provided it be in a dry Place.

Take *Green Vitriol*, *White Vitriol*, *Roch Alum*, *Sealed Earth*, *Venetian Ceruſs*, each 1 Ounce. Reduce every Drug into Powder ſeparately; then take a clean earthen Pipkin, well glazed, and put in it two Ounces of Spring Water: Throw in each Powder by itſelf; firſt the *Alum*, then the *Green Copperas*, then the *White*, and afterwards the others, ſtirring continually with a wooden Spatula till it becomes a little hardiſh. Let it dry at laſt upon the Fire, till the Whole is as hard as a Stone: Then take off your Pipkin, and let it ſtand till next Day to cool in ſome damp Place, that ſo it may diſengage itſelf from the Bottom of the Veſſel, which it does eaſily if that be well glazed. But as the Gangrene ſtays for no to-morrow, you may break off ſome Bits of the Stone while it is warm, and apply them pulveriſed to the numbed Fleſh, which begins to mortify. There is no other Way of uſing this Stone.

Another

Another for the ſame Purpoſe.

CHAP. XXXI.

Take Green Baum, either out of a Garden or the Field; pound it, and expreſs the Juice: Then take the ſame Weight of Mutton-Suet, with a Handful of common Salt; put the Whole into a Pot or Pipkin, and juſt boil it up. Strain this Compoſition through a Piece of fine Linen, and apply ſome of it freſh every ſix Hours to the beginning Mortification, till you ſee new Fleſh appear.

A Remedy to hinder the Gangrene from reaching the Heart.

Take *Aſſa fœtida*, *Bole Armenic*, *Flowers of Brimſtone*, each 3 Ounces: Powder the Whole, and put it in a Bottle of Wine or Ale, and give it the Horſe in form of a Draught. It will hinder the Gangrene from ſpreading farther.

Another.

When you ſee the Gangrene ſeize any Part of a Horſe's Body, take the Eſſence of Turpentine, and warm it in ſome covered Veſſel, which the Air cannot enter. Waſh the Wound with this Eſſence, and then cut off what dead Fleſh you can come at. Put corroſive Sublimate powdered upon what you cannot cut off, and apply Tow, dipped in the Eſſence, upon the Wound, which muſt be dreſſed in that manner twice a Day till it is cured. When the dead Fleſh is all gone, the Sublimate can be of no Service. But as the Gangrene will cauſe an Inflammation, make uſe of the following Baths.

Baths, or Fomentations.

Take Roots of Marſh-Mallows bruiſed and boil them in a ſufficient Quantity of Water, till the Water becomes thick and muddy: Then take it off the Fire, and when cool, rub the Horſe with it hourly till the Inflammation diſſipates.

A Remedy againſt internal Venom.

When a Horſe loſes his Appetite of a ſudden, and ſwells all over the Body, it is a Sign of internal Poiſon, perhaps from having eat ſomething venomous among his Hay or Graſs. Let the firſt Thing you give him be a Draught of this kind.

A Drink.

Take Juice of Mullein and Oil of Nuts, of each 2 Ounces; mix them together and give it the Horſe. Let him take upon it a Pint of White-Wine, and ply him with laxative Gliſters between whiles. If the Horſe is not relieved by this Drink, depend upon it the Poiſon is very violent. In that Caſe have recourſe to Venice-Treacle, which uſe in the following manner.

Take *Venice-Treacle*, 4 Ounces; *Oil of Nuts*, 2 Ounces: Dilute the Whole together, and mix it with a Bottle of White-Wine, which give for a Draught. If the Venom has not affected any of the noble Parts, you may promiſe yourſelf a Cure.

CHAP. XXXII.

A Remedy for the Bite of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal.

IF a Swelling comes on any Part of a Horſe's Body, inſpect it carefully, to ſee if there be no Prick or Bite capable of cauſing this Inflammation; for there may chance to be ſome Serpent or other venomous Animal in the Stable, eſpecially in the Country, though the ſame Thing may happen in a Town, in any Nation whatſoever. There is in *Holland* a kind of venomous little Beaſt called a Shrew-mouſe, ſomewhat leſs than a common Mouſe, with a more piqued Noſe, and of a grayer Colour. His uſual Reſidence is in Stables or Stalls, and his Bite is very venomous to all Sorts of brute Animals, and even to Mankind. Loſe no Time therefore when his Bite appears, but prepare the following Remedies, which are eaſily come at, wherever you may be.

Take a pointed Burning-iron, make it red-hot, and apply it to the Part bitten, thruſting it as far as you can, provided there be no Nerves in the way, that may endanger laming the Horſe. One Hole is not enough: You muſt make five or ſix round the Wound; and dreſs them with Eſſence of Turpentine and Oil of Spike, mixed in equal Quantities. For

CHAP. XXXIII.

For want of theſe you may uſe Brine, or Water well ſeaſoned with common Salt, or the following Ointment.

Take green Cole-wort Leaves and Hog's Fat, the ſame Weight of one as the other; pound them in a Mortar to an Ointment, with which dreſs the Wound. You muſt not have Recourſe to the common Counter-poiſon, and to Purging, in order to evacuate the ill Humours, for fear the Venom in the mean time ſhould corrupt the whole Maſs of Blood; for when that is once done, the beſt Remedies will be ineffectual, and Death muſt inevitably be the Conſequence.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How to purge a Horſe gently, and fatten him.

TAKE about a Dozen of Starlings; put them in a large Copper, juſt as they are, Guts, Feathers, and all; boil them till they drop to pieces, and then, having taken them out of the Water, pound them in a large Mortar; put them again into the ſame Water, and give them another boil. Strain the whole through a fine Linen Cloth, and ſee that you have about ſix Quarts of the Pap or Jelly, of which give the Horſe one every Morning, having mixed with it half a Pound of Bean-flour. Never put in your Flour till juſt as you are going to give the Horſe his Draught. You ſhould get a good Stock of Starlings, that you may have enough to ſerve the Horſe fifteen or twenty ſucceſſive Mornings. Give him frequently a ſmall Quantity of Hay, to provoke his Appetite, which too much at a Time will cloy. Before he drinks let him eat a Handful of *whole* Beans, and get the cleaneſt Oats you can, to feed him with three Times a Day. There are few Horſes that will not grow fat, when managed in this manner.

Another Way to effect the ſame.

Firſt, keep your Horſe always with an Appetite, feeding him little and often. Give him Oats three Times a Day, putting into them every Time a Handful of Nettle-Seed; and let him conſtantly drink warm Water blanched with Bean-flour, or, for want of that, Wheat-flour. In three Weeks or a Month this will make him fat.

Another Way.

Inſtead of Oats, feed your Horſe with Wheat half boiled. Let his Water every Time be blanched with Wheat-flour, and before he drinks, always give him a Handful of Fenugreek, mixed with a ſmall Handful of Oats, in order to warm his Inſide, and make him often thirſty; for the more he drinks, the ſooner he will be fat.

Another.

When you have a mind to fatten a Horſe, give him inſtead of Oats a Peck of Rye-flour Morning and Evening, made into a Paſte, and rolled up in Balls. You have nothing more to do but to give him Hay, a little at a Time, and often, and now and then a Peck of Beans juſt par-boiled; watering him with blanched Water, in which Leaven has been ſteeped. This will fatten a Horſe in three Weeks or a Month, and make him fit for Sale.

To give a Horſe Appetite.

Take *Honey*, 4 Ounces; *Pepper*, *Starch*, each 1 Ounce; *Violet Leaves*, *Nutmegs*, *Barley-flour*, each half an Ounce: Mix the Whole together, and make it into Balls, which roll in Liquorice Powder. After each Ball, to drive it down, make the Horſe ſwallow a Gulp of Emetic Wine, given through the Horn. A Pint will be more than ſufficient for the whole Doſe of Balls.

A Remedy for Cancers in the Mouth, or upon the Tongue of a Horſe.

Take three or four large Leeks, and pound them well; an Ounce of powdered Alum, two Ounces of Honey, half an Ounce of broken Pepper, and an Ounce of Salt: Put the Whole in a Quart of Verjuice, or the Juice of Lemons, and waſh the Cancers with it three or four Times a Day till they are cured, which will not be long.

CHAP. XXXIV.

For a Horſe whoſe Tongue is cut by the Bridle or Halter.

A Horſe often cuts his Tongue in the Place where he mouths the Bridle, or the Halter croſſes him. To remedy this when it happens, take human Urine, Salt, Honey, and pounded Pepper; mix the Whole together, and waſh the Tongue with it ſeven or eight Times a Day, with a Linen Rag. Or you may put the Drugs together in a Rag, and tie them up, for the Horſe to hold in his Mouth four or five Times a Day, an Hour each Time: Only the Quantity of Honey ſhould then be increaſed, to keep the other Ingredients together. This laſt manner is in fact better than the former, and will ſoon cure a recent Wound on the Tongue. A Hurt of this kind ſhould never be neglected, becauſe the Tongue of a Horſe that has been cut, and not preſently healed, is apt to make his Mouth rough, which is occaſioned by his toſſing about his Head, and oppoſing the Hand. CHAP. XXXIV.

Another for the ſame Purpoſe.

Take dried Figs, ſuch as are ſold at the Grocers, pound them to a Maſh, and mix with them the ſame Weight of Honey, to make a Compoſition for holding in the Mouth, like the preceding.

Pills for a Horſe in a ſick and languiſhing Condition.

Take *freſh Butter*, 8 Ounces; *Honey of Roſes*, 4 Ounces; *Senna Leaves*, *Coriander Seed*, *Mithridate*, each 1 Ounce; *Bitter Apple*, *Bay Berries*, *Saffron*, each half an Ounce; *Sugar*, 2 Ounces: Powder and mix the Whole well, and make Pills for two Doſes, to be given two ſucceſſive Mornings, and waſhed down with a little Wine. The Horſe ſhould faſt ſix Hours before, and as many after taking this Remedy.

Another Way of purging a Horſe.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, 2 Ounces; *Senna Leaves*, 1 Ounce; *Sweet Oil*, 1 Pint: Mix the Whole together, and give it the Horſe after he has faſted all Night: Keep him ſix Hours longer without eating or drinking, and then give him ſome ſcalded Bran and blanched Water.

The next Day, at the ſame Hour he took his Purge, give him a gentle Airing if it does not work; and when it begins to operate, put him up again into the Stable, cover him warm, and from time to time give him Bread, ſcalded Bran, or even Oats, but in very ſmall Quantities, becauſe his Stomach will then be weak. Purges take away the Appetite of a Horſe, which muſt therefore be reſtored with *Aſſa fœtida*, or ſome cordial Compoſition.

A Water proper for all Sorts of Wounds.

Take round Birthwort and powdered Sugar, of each 2 Ounces: Boil the Birthwort in a Quart of White-Wine till it comes to a Pint, and then ſtrain the Whole through a fine Linen Cloth, and keep it in a Bottle for Uſe. You need only waſh the Wound twice a Day with this Water, in order to keep it clean, without any other Application; and if it be freſh received, this alone will ſoon heal it.

How to dry up any Wound.

Waſh the Wound once a Day with warm Wine; and if you melt a little Sugar in it, ſo much the better: Then take the Powder of Roſemary Leaves, and ſprinkle on the Sore, which will ſoon dry away.

An excellent Suppurative for the Corns, or Kernels, that come on a Horſe's Back.

In the firſt Place take Oil, or any warm Ointment, or for want of that Hog's Greaſe, the oldeſt you can get: With this rub the Corns, and it will make them fall off. Then dreſs the Wounds with Eſſence of Turpentine, and Lint made of old Cords beat to a Powder. As you put on the Eſſence of Turpentine, ſprinkle the Lint-Duſt upon it, which will bind it together and ſtay on the Part. Continue this Courſe till the Horſe is cured. I could preſcribe other Remedies, which would be harder to get, more expenſive, and yet not a whit better.

Another

CHAP. XXXV, XXXVI.

Another Suppurating Ointment.

Take *Sweet Oil*, 2 Ounces; *Yellow Wax*, *Venice Turpentine*, *Black Pitch*, *Black* and *White Roſin*, *Mutton Suet*, and *Hog's Lard*, each half an Ounce: Melt the Whole together over a gentle Fire, and reduce it to an Ointment, which you muſt preſerve with Care. It is good in all Caſes where Suppuration is wanted.

CHAP. XXXV.

The beſt Way of Cutting off a Horſe's Tail.

YOU muſt ſhave off the Hair in the Place you deſign for the Operation, raiſing up and turning back what you intend to preſerve. Then take a Bar, or thick Piece of Wood, of juſt a proper Length to ſupport the Tail when ſet on one End: Hold it upright with one Hand, lay on the Tail, and with the other Hand clap croſs it a ſharp Hedging-bill at the proper Place, which muſt be ſtruck through with a Hammer or Mallet. Some ignorant Perſons put the Bill under the Tail, and ſtrike on the latter; but this hurts and bruiſes it, and may be attended with bad Accidents. The Tail being cut off in this manner, you muſt take a hot Searing-Iron, made in the form of the Letter O, and apply it gently to ſtop the Blood: Then take black Pitch, and put a little of it on the End of the Stump, clapping to the Iron, which has now loſt ſome of its Heat, to melt it. Put up your Horſe again in the Stable; but take care he does not ſtand near any Wall or Cellar, againſt which he may rub himſelf: For ſome Horſes have killed themſelves by that means, having brought a Mortification into their Tails. When the Operation is over, you muſt rub the Tail quite to the Croſs of the Reins with Brandy; continuing to do ſo Night and Morning for ſome Days. If the Horſe ſhould unluckily rub and fret the Part, or the Stump ſhould be bruiſed, or too much burned, you muſt rub quite to the Croſs with Spirit of Turpentine and Brandy, beat up together in equal Quantities. It is proper for one to ſtand behind the Horſe with a Whip, to keep him from flinging about, and ſo to prevent any Accidents.

CHAP. XXXVI.

The Manner of Gelding a Horſe well, and treating him during the Cure.

THERE are many different Ways of Gelding a Horſe. Some *Whip* them; that is, after they have made an Opening in the Cods with a Razor or Inciſion-Knife, ſo that the Stones come out, they bind the Roots of them with Pack-thread or Coblers-end, and then cut them off below the Ligature, cleanſing the Inſide of the Cods with Oil only, or Oil mixed with Wine. Others *Billet* them; that is, they take a Haſel-ſtick of moderate Thickneſs, ſplit it through, take out the Pith, and make a Cavity the whole Length, which they fill with powdered Vitriol, or Verdigreaſe, or ſometimes with Sublimate. With theſe Sticks they take hold of the Horſe between the Cods and the Belly, tying them on as tight as poſſible, and leaving them there nine or ten Hours; by which time the Parts will entirely fall off. Neither of theſe Ways is bad in itſelf; but they are not proper for a Horſe that has a Rupture, nor one whoſe Strings of his Teſticles are large and ſwelled. I have no Opinion therefore of either of theſe Operations, and that which follows is much more convenient, eſpecially as it may be performed at any Age, or in any Seaſon, provided it be done ſkilfully.

You muſt throw down the Horſe upon his Back, according to the Cuſtom in *Germany*, and put a large Leathern Strap round one of his Hind-Legs, bringing it under his Neck, and ſo drawing the Foot near the Shoulder, that you may have room for doing your Work with freedom. Then take up one Teſticle, and hold it faſt in your Hand; and with a Razor or Inciſion-Knife, make a large Opening in the Cod for the Teſticle to come out. You muſt uſe a delicate Hand in dividing it from the Strings and Ligaments, which form a Sort of SS; and then the Teſticles extend in Length. If he be a vicious and dangerous Horſe, you muſt cut it off as near his Body as poſſible; but if he be a quiet one, divide the Strings as near as you can to the Teſticle itſelf.

Having got the Teſticle out, take a Piece of Plate-Iron, about two Inches broad, and the Thickneſs perhaps of a Crown-piece: Claſp the Teſticle within this, and ſqueeze it cloſe: Then take a wet Diſh-clout, and put it between the ſaid Plate and the Cods, and cut

cut off the Teſticle with a hot Iron. You may throw on ſome Bits of Sulphur before you take away the Iron, and burn them on the Part; and laſtly, rinſe the Cods well with fair Water. Proceed in the ſame manner with the other Teſticle. CHAP. XXXVII.

Before this Operation, you ſhould draw the Horſe's Yard out of the Sheath, and cleanſe it well with Water from all Filth. This will in ſome Meaſure prevent the Greatneſs of the Inflammation, and of the ſubſequent Pain. All the farther Care required, is to keep the Horſe from Wind in a very cloſe Stable, and to waſh his Belly ſeven or eight Times a Day with fair Water, cold in Summer, but warm in Winter. If the Inflammation becomes very great, which ſometimes happens, you muſt frequently waſh the Cods, Sheath, and all that is ſwelled, with Cream, till the Symptoms diſappear. During the whole Proceſs, you muſt give the Horſe no Oats, but as much ſcalded Bran as he will eat; and let his Water be blanched, and a little warm.

Though I have ſaid that all times are equal for this Operation, yet the Spring is the moſt advantageous Seaſon, unleſs Neceſſity urges the contrary. The Horſe preſerves his Hair better, and keeps it ſmoother at that Time. I muſt obſerve farther, that if a Horſe is lean and meagre when gelded, he will never grow fat again nor have a good Coat, even though the Operation be performed in Autumn; and that there is moſt Danger of a Mortification when it thunders, which Weather therefore ſhould not be choſen. Some have a Charm againſt this ill Effect, which we omit, as equally idle and ſuperſtitious.

I had forgot to tell you, that during the Cure, beginning the Morrow after the Operation, you muſt walk your Horſe abroad three or four Times a Day, a Quarter of an Hour each Time, if the Weather be fine, and no Wind ſtirring. When you cannot take him out, walk him in the Stable, in order to make him evacuate the Matter from his Wounds. Every one knows that his Fever will increaſe nine Days, and be as many more in going off: But if the Method here laid down be obſerved, he will recover in a very ſhort Time.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Hurts on the Withers, or Wither-wrung.

THIS Accident is common in the Army, either through bad Saddles, or bad Pannels on the Horſes of Burthen, or ſometimes through the Truſſes of Forage being ill made up. It is very eaſy to diſcover, becauſe it begins by a Swelling, which proceeds from the Extremity of the Cheſt, juſt between the Movement of the Shoulders. Many Horſes are loſt through this Misfortune, and the Ignorance of thoſe who take them in hand, and who apply outward Remedies to bring the Swelling to a Head, which they afterwards open. When they have done this, they are uſually unable to prevent Ulcers or Filanders in the middle of the Wound, which grow to the adjacent Joints; and then Matter often flows down between the Shoulder-blade and the Body. Here all their Skill is at an end; for the Matter having no longer any outward Drain, the Horſe of conſequence dies, merely becauſe the Proceſs was not made as it ought, and acccording to the following Directions.

To prevent ſuch an Accident, as ſoon as you perceive the Swelling above deſcribed, let the Cauſe be what it will, you muſt hinder any Collection of Matter by this Compoſition.

Take the Whites of five or ſix Eggs, and beat them up to a Froth: Then take an Ounce of crude Roch Alum, which reduce into a fine Powder, and mix with the Eggs; adding, after you have well mixed them, about a Glaſs of Spirit of Turpentine: Then beat the Whole again, and add a like Quantity of Brandy; continuing to beat it till it comes to a kind of pappy Conſiſtence, with which you muſt rub the Swelling three or four Times a Day, and in a little while it will be entirely gone. In caſe the Swelling was far advanced when you took it in hand, and ſome Matter already formed, there will be no great Damage: The Matter will diſcharge itſelf, by continuing the Uſe of this Remedy.

Another Remedy for the ſame Diſorder.

If you are in a Place where you can have none of the Drugs abovementioned, take Brandy, and dilute it in a Bit of Soap, and then rub the Swelling with it till you make a Lather: Repeat this every three or four Hours till the Tumour diſſipates. When you cannot get Brandy, uſe Urine with the Soap; or, for want of that, Brine, or Water well ſalted: But theſe muſt be uſed ten or twelve, inſtead of three or four Times a Day. If all

CHAP. XXXVIII, XXXIX.

all other Means are wanting, as ſoon as you perceive this Diſorder, take a green Tuff out of ſome Meadow, with the Earth ſticking to the Roots, and apply it to the Swelling on the graſſy Side. Renew this every three or four Hours till the Tumour diſappears, or till you have furniſhed yourſelf with one of the Remedies above-mentioned.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Navel-Galls.

THIS Accident proceeds from the ſame Cauſe as the foregoing, and conſequently muſt be treated in the ſame manner. What we call a Hurt upon the Navel, is in reality upon the Kidneys, towards the Croſs of the Reins, where the Crupper and Saddle-buckle join.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Impoſtumations in the Withers.

THIS is occaſioned by ſuffering Matter to gather in the Swellings on the Withers; and a moſt terrible Diſtemper it is in the Army, eſpecially in hot Countries, where the Flies are very troubleſom. As the Horſe moves, the Matter trickles down continually between his Body and his Shoulder; and as it can have no Paſſage outward, becauſe you cannot force one through the Blade-bone, thoſe who know not how to make the following Operation, are obliged to give all ſuch Horſes over.

You muſt firſt bind your Horſe, and throw him down on the Ground: Then take a Stake about as thick as your Leg, four or five Foot long, and ſharp at one End; drive it into the Ground with a Beetle, and place the Horſe that it may ſtand juſt between his Shoulder and his Body, ſo that he cannot ſtir while you perform the Operation, which is thus done. Tie a Cord to the Horſe's Foot, and at about two Yards Diſtance drive another Stake into the Ground, to ſerve as an Axle-tree to a Coach or a Cart Wheel that you muſt put thereon. Faſten the other End of the Cord to this Wheel and then turn it about, till by winding up the Cord you extend the Horſe's Leg as much as it will bear. You may then make an Inciſion between the Body and the Shoulder, to the very Top, to come at the Matter behind the Blade-bone, by an Opening to be afterwards made. The Inciſion is made with a flat Iron, ſomewhat crooked, about an Inch broad, and as thick as two Crown-Pieces. The Curvity of this Inſtrument is in Proportion to the Ribs, between which and the Shoulder it muſt paſs, in order to let out the Matter that is lodged above: And for this purpoſe you muſt introduce a ſmall Rowel, from the Top of the Withers to the Bottom, between the Shoulder and the Trunk; which may be eaſily done if your Farrier has ever ſo little Addreſs. This Rowel ſhould be left in only twenty-four Hours, and then let the Wound be dreſſed like any common Wound; which Method will ſoon put your Horſe out of all imminent Danger, as the Matter between the Trunk and the Shoulder will be diſcharged. You may make the Rowel either with *Hungary* Leather, or with Tow and Horſe-Hair twiſted together, daubing it over well with Baſilicum. If at the End of three full Days the Matter does not run out plentifully below, you may leave the Rowel in a Day or two longer.

Never forget, during the whole Proceſs of the Cure, that your Horſe is to have no Oats, but only ſcalded Bran, or ſtale Bread Pap. Beſides that, it is abſolutely neceſſary to make him eat Root of baſtard Rhubarb, or the Herb Patience, which grows in almoſt all Countries, and is a Kind of wild Sorrel. It ſhoots up in Meadows, and by the Sides of Ditches, and ſometimes is very large. The Root is yellow, like that of the Sorrel; but both Stalk and Leaves are much bigger, though of the ſame Colour at the time of Seeding. That which grows in the Water is beſt, and next that which grows in fat Land; but for want of one Sort, another may be uſed, and the more a Horſe eats of either, cut very ſmall, the ſooner will he be well. This Root is alſo good for all other Sorts of Wounds whatſoever: And it is certain, that in a temperate Climate, when the Flies give no Diſturbance, one might cure a Horſe by Means of this Root only, without any great Operation.

CHAP. XL.

Faintness for want of Nourishment.

CHAP. XL, XLI, XLII.

THIS Distemper is more common in the Army than any where else, and occasioned by the great Heats, and the long Marches one is obliged to make. It oftener happens to brisk and lively Horses, than to those that are heavy; and nothing more is wanted than to be able to distinguish it. When a Horse falls down of a sudden on the Road, without having eat or drank, the Dust has got into his Mouth, and through his Nostrils, stopping up the Passages, so that he cannot breathe, and drops as if he were dead. Horses that are used to go in Harness, either in Coach or Carriage Service, are very subject to it. In order to cure this Disease, you must take fair Water, wash the Head of the Horse with it, pour some of it into his Nostrils, into his Mouth, and a good deal into his Ears: This will raise him in a little while. You may then let him drink, and he will be able to proceed on his Journey. Horses that are subject to this Disorder should not be neglected, but suffered to drink on all Occasions that offer. The Guts of such Horses are always narrower than in others, which makes them unable to bear Hunger or Thirst. It is much the same with Men, some of whom can go without drinking more easily than others.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Pole-Evil.

THIS is a very troublesom Distemper, and proceeds from different Causes; especially to large Draught-Horses, who wear hempen Halters, as those belonging to the Artillery, the Provisions of an Army, or any Sort of Carriages. Not but that others are also subject to it. Horses affected with it are apt to be frightened at every little Thing, and pull as if they would break their Harness to get loose; which occasions the Halter to hurt them between the Ears and the Neck, where the Neck and Head join; and this by Degrees becomes more and more painful. Matter at last forms in the Part, which, not being perceived, extends along the Chest, causes a great Inflammation, and often makes it necessary to open the Tumour along both Sides of the Mane, the Length of half a Foot, or more. In these Sorts of Wounds, which are made through Necessity, care must be taken to use no fat Ointment, nor an oily one, but of a restringent Nature. This Distemper is the more difficult to cure, as it is hard to keep the Remedies on, and you must put no Ligature on that Part.

You must take therefore a thick Piece of Linen Cloth, and cut it about a Foot square, that it may go between the Ears, and extend along the Mane. The Cloth must be four or five Times double, and fastened under with narrow Tape, in order to keep on the Medicines.

These Accidents may be occasioned by a Blow on the Head from a brutal Driver, when a Horse hesitates at passing any Place. It is needless to multiply Remedies that are proper for such Wounds, because they who have dressed one may dress others.

CHAP. XLII.

Of a Shoulder-slip, or Shoulder-wrench.

IT is common, for want of Knowledge, to confound the Disorders of a Horse's Shoulder, and only to say of each that it is a Wrench or a Slip: But it is proper to know, that a Horse may lame his Shoulder different Ways, and without ever straining himself in the least. This Distinction ought to be judiciously made, to prevent any Mistakes that may ensue.

A Horse may be lamed, in the first Place, by having been ill saddled; that is, by having the Saddle put too forwards, and rode on by a heavy Man, who neither knows how to place himself, nor to adjust his Stirrups. If one Stirrup is longer than the other, the Man consequently bears more on one Side than the other, and the Saddle-bow, pressing most against one Shoulder, must of course bruise it in a long Day's Journey; and so the Horse may be lamed without making one false Step. A Man in this Case goes to a Farrier, who tells him his Horse has slipped his Shoulder, and that his Case requires great

CHAP. XLII.

Care and Pains. He is paid as a ſkilful Man, though perhaps all the while he is a mere Block-head; and the Horſe renews his Malady for want only of mending the Saddle. You put him in the Hands of another equally ignorant, who treats him in the ſame manner, and leaves the Saddle juſt as it was. After the poor Beaſt has remained ſome time in the Stable, a freſh Rider mounts him, and changes the Saddle perhaps by hazard, or makes the Stirrups even, and rides him without ever laming him at all.

A Horſe may lame his Shoulder by coming haſtily out of the Stable, and running it againſt the Door or the Poſt, or by a Kick from another Horſe. Your Farrier then cures him by the help of Ointments, and in the Eyes of ignorant Perſons goes for a ſkilful Doctor. But a Horſe that has in reality a Shoulder-ſlip, or an Extenſion by a Strain within the Shoulder, between that and the Ribs, (having no Joint there that holds thoſe Parts together, as the Hanch is faſtened to the Body, nor any other Ligament but Fibres and Tendons;) ſuch a Horſe, I ſay, who has this true Shoulder-ſlip, is not to be cured by Remedies applied without the Skin: For how ſhould their Ointments penetrate through the Shoulder-blade, a ſolid Bone, to cure the Diſorder underneath it? This can be done no other way than by manual Operation, as ſhall be ſhewn in the Article of true Shoulder-ſlips.

There is another Sort of Cauſe that may make a Horſe lame in the Shoulder, without his having ever ſtrained himſelf, or received any Accident. He limps now on one Side, now on the other, and ſometimes on both; not being able to ſtand upright. This Caſe is the moſt difficult of all to cure, as it proceeds from Nature; the Horſe having been got by a *Turkiſh* or *Arabian* Sire, whoſe Shoulders were extremely flat and narrow, and cloſe as it were together. Some Perſons never obſerve this, and are ſatisfied when they go to a Stallion if he looks well, and be either a *Turk* or an *Arabian*. Now to come at the Knowledge of this Defect, when you ſee a Horſe whoſe Shoulders are cloſe together, and quite flat, inſtead of being fleſhy, there is little good to be expected from him. Such Shoulders make a Sort of demi-quarter Circle from the Bottom to the Withers, where you ſee a Void without Fleſh. Almoſt all your Farriers are miſtaken when they apply Rowels in this Caſe, and ſo make the Shoulder leaner and leaner, render the Horſe uſeleſs, and, in a little while, kill him; whereas they ſhould endeavour to nouriſh the Part, which is what it wants. I will now give you a Courſe of Remedies, in proper Order, for the ſeveral Accidents in the Shoulder that have been here enumerated.

For a Horſe that has been lamed in the Shoulder by the Saddle.

If you are in a Place where Drugs can be eaſily got, take Spirit of Turpentine and Brandy, an equal Quantity of each; beat them up together, and rub all the Part that has been hurt by the Saddle. Put your Saddle backwarder when you ride him again, which may be the next Day, or the Day after. If you have no Spirit of Turpentine, take Soap and Brandy, and rub againſt the Hair till you make a Lather. Repeat this three or four Times running, as faſt as it dries in; and thus you may cure your Horſe while you proceed on your Journey. For want of Soap, you may uſe Roch Alum; and for want of Brandy, Urine: But if you can get Spirit of Turpentine, the Whites of Eggs, Brandy, and Urine, the beſt Way is to make a Compoſition of them all, as directed for Horſes hurt on the Withers, and rub the Horſe with it four or five Times; which will effect a Cure. You may uſe the ſame Remedies in the other Caſes abovementioned. But if the Inflammation be very great, the Diſorder of long Continuance, and one Shoulder appears thicker than the other, you may introduce a Rowel under the Skin from the Bottom to the Top of the Shoulder. It may be made either with Leather or Tow, provided Hair be twiſted with it, and the Whole well bedaubed with Baſilicum. The two Ends of it muſt be tied together without the Skin, that you may commodiouſly turn it, and anoint it afreſh every Day. Keep it in nine Days, and in the mean time rub the Shoulder with the following Ointment.

Take *Ointments of Marſhmallows*, *Poplar Buds*, and *Roſes*, *Oils of Bays* and *Honey*, each two Ounces; melt them together, and ſtir the Compoſition till it is cold; then uſe it once every Day, and make more if this be not found ſufficient. The Rowel will draw the Bruiſe the Horſe has received to Suppuration; and the Ointment will nouriſh the Skin, and keep it from ſhrivelling.

It is very proper that a Horſe ſhould do no Work, while he is under this Courſe: But even if one is in the Army, or upon the Road, one may expect a Cure from purſuing it cloſely, though not ſo ſoon as when you can give him Reſt.

A Remedy for the Cooling or Chilling of the Shoulders.

CHAP. XLII.

In this Diſorder a Horſe cannot ſupport himſelf before, and has very little Motion in his Shoulders, as if they were rivetted or bound together. Some Perſons, for want of Knowledge, take this to be a Foundering; whereas Foundering hinders the Motion of the Legs, and a Cooling or Chilling of the Shoulder affects the Shoulder only. This Diſtinction being made, you may treat your Horſe in the following Manner.

Firſt, make him *ſwim*, as the Farriers call it, *on dry Ground*; that is, tie up one of his Fore-legs, bent at the Knee, with a broad leathern Strap; and then walk and trot him upon three Legs, till his one Leg before can no longer ſupport him. Exerciſe him in the ſame Manner upon the other Leg; and afterwards bleed him in the two Arches, and rub his Shoulders well with the Blood, and over that with Spirit of Turpentine, Oil of Spike, Oil of *Petre* and Brandy, mixed together in equal Quantities. Sprinkle Rye-flour over all, in order to make a Sort of Cruſt upon the two Shoulders, which ſhould be refreſhed once a Day, for ſeven or eight Days running, with Oil of Bays, and afterwards with an Unguent made of the Ointments of Marſh-mallows, Poplar-buds and Roſes, mixed up with Honey, an equal Quantity of each Ingredient. You may continue to rub the Shoulders of the Horſe with this Compoſition, once every Day, for three Weeks or a Month, in which Time it will comfort him greatly. Leave him afterwards five or ſix Weeks in the Stable, without ſtirring out.

As the Humours may poſſibly deſcend into his Feet, you ought to have his two Fore-feet unſhod, and pared well, before you begin the Cure: Then let his Shoes be put on again, and from time to time ſtuff the Hollows of them with Cow's Dung, fried in Hog's Lard, and afterwards mixed with Vinegar. By means of this Remedy you may prevent any ſuch Accident in his Feet. If you rub his Hoofs, towards the Crown, with Oil of Bays, ſo much the better. And if all theſe Remedies are found inſufficient, it is to no purpoſe to look after others.

A Remedy for the true Shoulder-ſlip, or what is called an Opening.

Before you undertake any Thing, have the Horſe unſhod, and his Feet pared; then ſhoe him again as even as poſſible, and make him ſwim on dry Ground, as directed in the foregoing Caſe; excepting that you muſt do it here with one Leg only, and that you muſt keep the lame one to the Ground. Whip him on upon a Trot till he ſweats, and then throw him down, and drive two Stakes into the Ground to ſupport him, one againſt the Hollow behind his Shoulder, and the other between the Belly and the Thigh, penning him up that he cannot ſtir. Take a long Cord, with a Shackle to it, and faſten it to his Foot, at the Joint between the Fetlock and the Hoof, and tie the other End to the Wheel of ſome Carriage, fixed according to the Direction for a Horſe that has impoſtumated Withers, in order to extend his Leg in a right Line. You muſt then make an Inciſion in the Skin between his Trunk and his Shoulder, as directed in the ſame Article, and introduce your Iron in three Places; one in the middle, to aſcend almoſt to the Top, and the two others on the Sides of it, making with it a Sort of Fork with three Prongs. Theſe Openings being made, you muſt have Candles caſt in flat Iron Molds for that Purpoſe, and compoſed in the following Manner.

Get a flaxen Wick of three Threads, that may lie flat by each other, and having put it into the Mold, take an Ounce of *Venice Turpentine*, an Ounce of *Spirit* of *Turpentine*, an Ounce of *Oil* of *Bays*, another of Ointment of *Marſh-Mallows*, two Ounces of *Mutton Suet*, and half a Pound of *yellow Wax*; melt the Whole, add half an Ounce of *Verdigreaſe* in Powder, and having mixed it well in, fill your Molds. When your Candle is cold, in order to looſen and take it out, paſs the Mold over a Wiſp of burning Straw, or ſome other Flame; and then putting the Candle in again, introduce the Mold to the very Bottom of the middle Hole, by which you muſt begin. Your Mold muſt be very ſmooth and even; and you ſhould have a flat Piece of Wood, of the Form and Size of the Candle, which you muſt introduce in it's Place, as you draw out of the Mold, in order to leave the Candle behind. Fill up the two other Holes in the ſame Manner, and then with a large Needle and a Cobler's End ſtitch the Skin together in the middle, to keep all in. Then let your Horſe riſe, and put him up in the Stable, where a Place muſt be prepared with Planks for him to ſtand upon, ſo even and ſmooth, that one Leg cannot be higher than

CHAP. XLIII.

than another. This is contrary to the Practice of ſome Farriers, who put a high Shoe upon the well Foot; which often makes the Legs uneven, by ſuffering the other Shoulder to deſcend, and ſo lames a Horſe for his whole Life after.

When your Horſe is in the Stable, take a large Towel, and tie his two Feet as cloſe as poſſible, as if he was fettered: Bind him in the ſame Manner at his Knees, ſo that he cannot bend them. You muſt renew the Candles every Day, and every Day diminiſh their Length, till the Holes are quite filled up.

It is neceſſary alſo to faſten your Horſe in ſuch a Manner, that he may not lie down for forty or fifty Days. This is done by four Reins or Thongs, tied, two to the Rack, and two to the Manger, leaving him barely Room to eat his Bran; for Corn he muſt abſolutely have none, during the whole Cure.

As the Ligatures may occaſion the Horſe's Legs to ſwell, it is proper to rub them every Day with Lees of Wine. At forty or fifty Days End, take off the Bandages, as well as the two Reins that were tied to the Rack, and litter him well. Perhaps it will be ſome Days longer before he lies down; but he will do it at laſt, and the Swelling of his Legs will diſſipate. You muſt not take him out of the Stable however for eight or ten Days after this: but then you may give a gentle Airing, taking great Care not to turn him on the Side where his Diſorder lay. This ſhould be obſerved a long while; and if ever there be an abſolute Occaſion to turn on that Hand, fetch as large a Compaſs for it as you can.

Though a Horſe may be able to work gently in a Month after he comes to lie upon his Litter, yet he ought not to be put to it for five or ſix Months. I would adviſe no Man therefore to perform this Operation, except to a Horſe of great Value, unleſs he does it by Way of *Experiment*, becauſe it will coſt him much Labour and Money.

To nouriſh the affected Parts, during the Courſe of the Cure, make Uſe of the Ointments that are preſcribed in the Article of withered Shoulders, rubbing in ſome of them once every Day. I would not adviſe any one to undertake the Operation here mentioned in the midſt of Summer, when the Heats are violent.

It was the Author of this Book, who invented this Manner of treating a Slip in the Shoulder, and the different Experiments he has made of it with Succeſs, leave no Room to doubt but it is the beſt that ever was invented. Many of theſe Experiments were made in his moſt Chriſtian Majeſty's Stud, of which he was forty Years Inſpector.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Spunge.

THIS Diſtemper is not ſo dangerous as diſagreeable to the Sight, becauſe it never makes a Horſe lame. It proceeds from his bending back his Fore-feet when he lies down, ſo that the Points of the Shoes or the Froſt-Nails when he has any, preſs againſt the Pit of the Shoulder, juſt where you put your Hand to feel if a Horſe has the Fever. This, in the Sequel, cauſes a great Swelling; a Maſs of foul Fleſh ariſes, and a large Bliſter full of a red Humour. If our Grooms and Hoſtlers were not ſo idle, it would be eaſy to get rid of this Diſorder, and quite diſpel it, at it's firſt Appearance, by only ſpunging the Part with Well or Fountain Water, the coldeſt they could get, uſing a Pail-full of it at a Time, five or ſix Times a Day. In two or three Days, at moſt, all the Swelling will thus diſſipate; but if it be neglected till the Bladder of bloody Water is formed, though it does not lame the Horſe, it will be a long while in curing, in ſpite of all the Remedies and Operations one can have recourſe to. When the Swelling does not give way to the cold Water, prepare the following Ointment.

Take *Cantharides*, *Black Hellebore*, and *Euphorbium*, of each two Ounces; powder them all, and make an Ointment with Oil of *Bays*, and *Venice Turpentine*, an equal Quantity of each: Let it be made without warming. Then ſhave off all the Hair from the ſwelled Part, and put on a large Plaiſter of the Ointment, making it faſt with Ligatures, brought between his Legs, and over his Withers. Renew this Plaiſter once every Day, five or ſix Days running; which will draw out all the noxious Humour, and diſſipate the Swelling. It muſt not be thought ſtrange if you find the Skin fall off, as well as the Hair, becauſe they will both come again more beautiful than before. If the Horſe takes again to his old Habit of lying, and another Swelling appears, run a hot Iron into it at

Bottom

Bottom, to let out all the Water, and then dress it as you would another Wound. It is to be hoped, that the Pain he feels in these Operations will make him leave this Habit, and take to lie on his Shoes.

CHAP. XLIV, XLV, XLVI.

CHAP. XLIV.

Stiff Legs.

THERE are some Horses, who, through the Remains of an old Distemper, or some great Fatigue, become so stiff in their Fore-legs, that they can scarce bend their Knees; which makes them stumble, and sometimes fall, when they are ever so little hurried, though even on a Walk. When this is the Case, you must endeavour to fortify the Nerves of the Legs and Joints by Fomentations of Marsh-Mallows Roots, or Lees of Wine, or any other Medicines proper to supple and strengthen those Parts. There are some good Receipts for it in this Book: But if, in spite of all the good Remedies you can use, the Legs continue stiff, you must make the following Operation. Under the Shoulders, or, to speak more properly, under the Breast, between them and the Knees, as is pointed out in the Explanation of the Figures, you seem to feel a Nerve very hard and stiff, which in reality is only a Tendon. It lies just under the Vein that we open for Disorders in the Shoulders, which may be justly called the Bow-Vein. Here you are to make an Incision with a Razor or proper Knife, descending along the Tendon, and opening the Skin about two Inches. You will find this Tendon separated, as it were, from the Skin and the Flesh, as if it was a Nerve; which makes many call the Operation, *Cutting the Nerves of the Fore-legs*. Having made this Opening, with a wild Goat's Horn, or any such like Instrument, which is crooked and pointed, you must get under the Tendon, in order to draw it without the Skin. You must cut this in two, and the Ends will draw in, the one upwards, and the other downwards. This being done in both Legs, fill up the Wounds with Salt Butter; putting about three Ounces of Salt to half a Pound of Butter, and mixing them well. You must continue to dress it with nothing but this, till a Cure is effected.

Before you undertake this Operation, you must have the Horse shod in the following Manner, and with such a Shoe as is depicted in one of the *Plates*, *Fig.* 3. and 9, to oblige him to bend his Legs in going: For as soon as the Operation is performed, you must air him at least a Quarter of an Hour, and then put him again in the Stable, filling the Wounds with Salt Butter. You must take him out thus every Day, Morning and Evening, and pace and trot him, observing still to dress his Wounds according to these Directions when you put him up, and keeping just the same Course till he is well. I would not advise any Man to ride the Horse at first, till he is accustomed to such Shoes; for he will be very apt to stumble or fall. You should not even lead him therefore on any Pavement, but only on plain Ground. Once every Fortnight you must gradually shorten the Corners of his Shoes. This will in time make his Legs as free as before, though in fact he will not have so much Strength in them as another Horse, who never had this Misfortune. He may be of Use however a long while, if he has but only Youth on his Side.

CHAP. XLV.

Of an Ox-kneed Horse.

IT is almost superfluous to speak of this Defect, because it proceeds from Nature, and can never be cured: only we would point out what such Horses are good for.

When you see a Horse whose two Knees bend in towards each other, and his Feet go wide asunder, we call him Ox-kneed, because Oxen and Cows have their Knees made almost in the same Manner.

These Horses are by no Means proper to ride: They are fit for nothing but the Cart or the Plough. In Work of this Kind they walk only, and are borne up in the Shoulders by their Collars and Harness; which makes them able to do some Service.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the three Kinds of Splents.

THERE is one of the three Sorts of Splents that ought not to hinder a Man from buying a good Horse; I mean what they call the simple Splent, which appears within

CHAP. XLVI.

within the Leg, under the Knee, remote from the great Nerve and the Joint of the Knee. Here it gives no Pain; is only diſagreeable to the Sight, and goes away in time of itſelf; which makes it uſeleſs to have Recourſe to Remedies. I ſhall only give ſome for the two other Kinds, which may incommode and lame a Horſe.

All the three Sorts are known by the ſame Rule: For whenever you ſee a Tumour upon the Flat of the Leg, whether within or without, if it be under Knee, and appears hard to the Touch, it is a Splent; and when it is ſituated as above deſcribed, it ſignifies nothing. But when it comes upon the Joint of the Knee, without any Interval, it loſes the Name of Splent, and may be called a *Fuſee*. It then, as one may eaſily conceive, makes the Leg of the Horſe ſtiff, and hinders him from bending his Knee: Conſequently it obliges him to ſtumble, and even fall, and, after a little violent Exerciſe, makes him lame. Reſt alone cures the Lameneſs, but not a Fuſee.

The third Kind of Splent, whether within or without, is when you feel it between the Nerve and the Bone; and ſometimes even at the End of the Nerve. This is called a nervous Splent, and is the worſt of all the Kinds; beſides that the Horſe is never here ſo firm-footed, but that he limps at every little Degree of Labour. The *French* reject every Horſe that has a Splent, very often without knowing how to diſtinguiſh them; and one that has only a ſimple Splent is as bad in their Eyes, as one that has the other Sorts: But a ſimple Splent always goes away of itſelf by that Time a Horſe is eight or nine Years old, which makes it unneceſſary to preſcribe for it.

A Remedy for Splents.

Take a Stick (Hazle if you can, though the Difference perhaps is only in Fancy) of about two Fingers Thickneſs, and beat and rub the Splent with it gently, in order to ſoften it by Degrees: Continue this Courſe till the Skin feels as if it were detached from the Calloſity. Then with the Point of a Lancet, or Fleam, prick it in ſeveral Places, in order to let out the corrupted Blood. This done, take a large Stopple of Tow dipped in Eſſence of Turpentine, and over it put a Linen Cloth five or ſix times double. Clap over this a Piece of Pig's or Ox's Bladder, and bind it with a Linen Swathe. Let the Swathe be about the ſame Breadth with what is uſed for a Man's Leg; but longer, that it may the better keep on the Dreſſing. Leave it there twenty-four Hours, and then renew the Dreſſing a ſecond and third Time.

To what Purpoſe, will ſome ſay, is all this great Wrap? Is not a Cord or a common Bandage as well? What good can the Pig's or Ox's Bladder do? I will tell you: That Piece of Bladder hinders the Spirits from evaporating; and the Linen Pledget keeps the Dreſſing on cloſe, without hurting the Nerve; which would be the Caſe if you were to uſe a Cord, and ſo the Remedy would become worſe than the Diſeaſe.

Of Splents, or Fuſees.

I ſhould inform the Reader that Splents and Fuſees are Calloſities made by a Humour in the Legs of a Horſe, according to the Deſcription above. Theſe two Excreſcencies have the ſame Cauſe, and yet are widely different: For Splents no way incommode the Horſe, unleſs they come too near the Nerves, as I have before ſaid: But Fuſees, on the contrary, often lame him, being of a great Length, and growing to the Bone which goes to the Joint of the Knee, and as it were riveting it. A Horſe that has them therefore may be called lock-kneed, and has in effect his Legs ſo ſtiff, that he limps, and his Knees cannot bend without Violence. When a Knee is once affected in this Manner, it is very difficult to cure, at leaſt unleſs you fire it, to prevent the Fuſee from going higher, and entirely depriving the Knee of Motion. As it is an Affair of great Concern, you ought not to neglect this Operation of the Fire, whenever the Fuſee begins to reach the Joint.

Another Remedy for Splents and Fuſees.

In the firſt Place ſhave off the Hair very cloſe, eſpecially juſt where the Hardneſs is, then beat and rub it eaſily with your Stick; for if you do it too roughly, it will cauſe an Inflammation: The Delicacy of the Hand therefore is here the chief Thing. When the Humour is ſufficiently ſoftened, prick it all over with the Point of a Lancet, to let out the corrupted Blood. Then make an Ointment with *Euphorbium*, *Flowers* of *Brimſtone*, *Cantharides*

Cantharides, and *Black Hellebore*, a Drachm of each: Powder the whole, incorporate it with *Oil* of *Bays*, and make a liquid Ointment, which apply to the Swelling spread on Tow, fastening it on with a Bandage, that it may keep there twenty-four Hours. Take great care that the Horse may not come at it with his Teeth. When the twenty-four Hours are expired, take off the Dressing, and wash the Wound with fresh Water; continuing thus till it is well. CHAP. XLVII.

Another for the same Purpose.

The Hair being entirely shaved off the Tumour, and the Tumour softened by rubbing it with your Piece of Wood, and pricked with a Lancet, as above described; take a Piece of Rind of Bacon, with a good deal of Fat on it, and apply it to the Part: Then run a hot Iron against the Rind, to make the Fat melt; and afterwards apply Butter and Black Pitch, fried together in a Fire-Shovel. Continue to use the latter once a Day for a Fortnight, in which Time the Slough will fall off, and then you may dress the Wound for a Cure.

Another.

Shave off the Hair, and do as before to soften the Splent: Then take five or six Bits of Tile, each about the Bigness of the Splent, and make them red-hot: Have ready an earthen Pot, with Wine Vinegar, and a strong Piece of Linen Rag; put one of the Bits of Tile into the Vinegar, and immediately take it out in the Rag, and apply it to the Splent, holding it there till cold. Use a second Piece of Tile in the same Manner, and so on, till you find the adjacent Hairs come easily off in your Hand. Then apply the following Caustic, which should extend no farther than the Humour itself, and be left there bound on twenty-four Hours.

A Caustic.

Take a Clove of *Garlick*, the same Weight of *common Salt*, of *Pepper*, and of *Black Hellebore*; pound the whole together, and with almost an equal Quantity of *Oil* of *Bays* make an Ointment; which apply to the Splent or Fusee, and bind it on, taking Care that the Horse may not get at it with his Teeth. When the Slough or Eschar is come off, take care to wash the Wound, Night and Morning, with warm Wine, and a little Sugar melted in it, till it is quite well.

Another Remedy.

After having treated the Swelling according to the former Direction, to prepare it for the Medicine, take Roots of *wild Turnips*, or *Rape*; cut them into Slices as thick as your Finger, and put a good many of these Slices into Wine Vinegar, and give them a gentle Boil; add a Handful of Salt, and let the Composition stand over the Fire, while you take the Slices out one by one, and apply them as hot as you can to the Splent or Fusee, till you perceive it come off, as in the foregoing Receipt; then apply the Ointment of *Pepper*, *Salt*, *Garlick*, *Black Hellebore*, and *Oil* of *Bays*, as there prescribed, and leave it on twenty-four Hours. Supple the Eschar well afterwards with greasy Things, and it will fall off, and the Hair come again.

Another.

After the preparatory Treatment, take the finest Head of *Garlick* you can get, boil it in Nut-Oil, and apply it as hot as you possibly can upon the Tumour: Bind it on and leave it twenty-four Hours; and afterwards add every Day *Oil* of *Bays*, till the Splent goes, which it certainly will.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the three Kinds of Osselets.

OSSELETS are of the same Nature as Splents, which makes some Persons take them for the same Thing: There is this Difference however between them, that Splents come near the Knees, and Osselets near the Fetlocks. Their Seat is indifferently within or without the Leg.

The first is the Simple Osselet, which does not grow near the Joint of the Fetlock, or the Nerve. This need not hinder any Man from buying a Horse, because it puts him to no Inconvenience, and is only disagreeable to the Sight: Besides it very often goes away of itself without any Remedy.

CHAP. XLVIII.

The ſecond is that which deſcends into the Fetlock, and hinders the Motion of that Joint: This occaſions a Horſe to ſtumble and fall, and with a very little Work to become lame.

The third has it's Seat between the Bone and the Nerve, and ſometimes upon the Nerve: It ſo much incommodes a Horſe, that he cannot ſtand firm, but limps on every little Occaſion. This Diſtinction is much like that between the three Sorts of Splents; and as the ſame Remedies will cure them both, I ſhall ſet down no other.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Windgalls of the three Kinds.

IN the firſt Place, and before you undertake the Cure of any Diſtemper, Accident, or Infirmity, that may happen to a Horſe, you ought thoroughly to know the Nature of it. It is juſt the ſame with Farriers, as with Phyſicians and Surgeons; thoſe who ſucceed without knowing what they are about, muſt aſcribe that Succeſs to mere Chance, which might as well have run againſt them. Windgalls, the Things I am now to ſpeak of, appear to the Eye much like Oſſelets; but are not however juſt in the ſame Places, nor do they feel like them; for whereas Oſſelets are hard, Windgalls give way to the Touch.

Some Horſes are more liable to theſe than others, and that for ſeveral Reaſons: Some becauſe they proceed from old worn-out Sires, and others becauſe they were worked too young. Among your delicate foreign Horſes, as *Barbs*, *Spaniſh*, *Arabian*, or *Italian*, when they are worked young, out of an hundred you will ſee 90 loaded with Windgalls, from the Age of five or ſix Years. But in the Countries theſe come from, they ſeldom, without the utmoſt Neceſſity, ride their Horſes till they are five or ſix Years of Age, eſpecially in Studs of Reputation. *Engliſh* Horſes are very ſubject to Windgalls, becauſe they are all worked too ſoon; and ſometimes becauſe they are deſcended from old decayed Stallions. The beſt Race in *England* comes from the *Barbary* and *Arabian* Horſes; and theſe are certainly the fineſt Creatures in the World for the Saddle, if they are not ſpoiled when young.

A ſimple Windgall.

I now come to the Deſcription of *Windgalls*. A Windgall is a little Tumour between the Skin and the Fleſh, round the Fetlocks. When it appears at a good Diſtance from the large Nerve, it does not lame the Horſe; and if he has but Age of his Side, that is, be under ten Years old at moſt, he will be as uſeful as before, provided the Work you put him to be not of the moſt laborious Kind. However a Horſe is much better without than with even this Sort, which is called a Simple Windgall. It conſiſts of thin Skins, full of a red Liquid, and ſoft to the Touch. The Remedies for it will come after the Deſcription of the third Sort.

Nervous Windgalls.

Nervous Windgalls anſwer the ſame Deſcription: Only as the ſimple ones come upon the Fetlock, or a little above it upon the Leg-Bone, in the very Place of Oſſelets; nervous ones come behind the Fetlock upon the great Nerve, which makes them of worſe Conſequence; for they never fail to lame a Horſe after much Fatigue.

Theſe Windgalls may happen upon any of the Legs; but ſome of them are more dangerous than others, in proportion as they preſs the Nerve, and are capable of laming the Horſe. When a Horſe happens to limp with them on a Journey, and you cannot poſſibly give him Reſt, be ſure, every Time you put him up, to ſee his Legs well waſhed with the coldeſt Spring Water that can be come at; uſing a Pail-full to each Leg with a large Spunge. This will enable your Horſe to continue his Journey without limping, though it can never cure him. Take Notice by the way, that Windgalls are more troubleſom in Summer than in Winter; eſpecially in very hot Weather, when the Pores are all open.

Bloated Windgalls.

I diſtinguiſh by this Name the third and worſt Sort of Windgalls, when they come over the hind Part of the Fetlock, between the Bone and the large Nerve, and make the Horſe ſo lame at every little Thing he does, that he can ſcarce ſet his Foot to the Ground. They appear on both Sides the Leg, without as well as within; and when you touch them with your Hand or Finger, they feel like a Pig's or a Cow's Bladder full of Wind. Some

Some have run the Riſque of opening them, and let out the red Water, that is within the Skin; but not one of theſe have ſucceeded. They have now and then relieved the Horſe indeed for ſome Time; but at other Times they have lamed him effectually. The moſt ſhort Way therefore is to have Recourſe to Remedies, which may be relied on for a Cure, and cannot poſſibly do any Hurt. CHAP. XLIX.

Windgalls of this Sort are more dangerous than is commonly thought, and if let alone too long, can never be otherwiſe cured than by Fire; and as good Farriers, who know how to give the Fire, are very ſcarce (though they all pretend to this Piece of Skill) there is leaſt Hazard run by taking the Diſorder at the firſt, ſhaving off the Hair all round the Fetlocks, and over the Windgalls, and then making Uſe of the following Ointment.

Take *Spaniſh Flies*, *Euphorbium*, and *Black Hellebore*, each 2 Ounces: Powder the whole, and make an Ointment with the Oils of *Bays* and *Turpentine*, in equal Quantities. Spread this with a Spatula all round the Fetlock, and eſpecially upon the Windgalls themſelves: leave it there twenty-four Hours, before which Time a great deal of the red Water will be diſcharged. Then ſcrape off the old Ointment with your Spatula, and apply freſh; continuing to do ſo every twenty-four Hours, for nine Days running.

The Skin will off in ſuch a Manner, that you will be apt to think at firſt it will never come again: But you may depend upon ſeeing it grow after ſome Time, and look as well at leaſt as before. When Windgalls are freſh, they ſometimes diſappear, and are not ſeen again for a long while, unleſs through the ſame Accident that firſt brought them, namely too much Labour.

A Way to make Windgalls diſappear.

I ſhould not ſpeak of this Method, if many Dealers did not make Uſe of it to deceive thoſe they ſell to: For when theſe Windgalls cannot be cured, they may be ſo diſpelled as to deceive a Buyer: It is therefore proper to know how this is done. When a Jockey lights on a handſom young Horſe, though perhaps all his four Legs are ſpoil'd, if he can but make thoſe Legs carry him to Market, and recommend him for a Horſe of Value, it is all a Man of this Profeſſion cares. If he buys him in Winter, he never fails, at the Beginning of the Spring, to ſend him to Graſs: After ſome Time he takes him up again into the Stable, and with Cow's Dung, diluted with Vinegar, rubs his Legs all over three or four Times a Day, and in a ſhort Time the Windgalls diſappear. The Jockey keeps this Horſe always ſtill, in a ſeparate Stable, till he lights of a Chapman; and then, while he is ſhewing him others, the defective Beaſt is brought in Sight, freſh and ſprightly, juſt as he comes from watering. The Chapman aſks the Price, and the crafty Jockey tells him the Horſe is not his, or that he has already partly ſold him; but ſince he likes the Creature ſo well, he will do all in his power that he ſhall have the Refuſal of him. This uſually makes the Cuſtomer more eager to buy: And in this Manner the *Engliſh* Jockies, more than others, get off their bad Goods. But the moſt ſure Way to make a Horſe firm in the Legs, and cure his Windgalls, is to give him the Fire, in the Manner repreſented in one of the ſubſequent Plates.

CHAP. XLIX.

How to give a Horſe the Fire.

CARE muſt be taken, in the firſt Place, that the Perſon who gives it have a light and delicate Hand; which a Farrier, who works with the Hammer, cannot poſſibly have. He muſt alſo have a good Sight, and be perfectly acquainted with the Operation: For if he bears ſo hard on his Iron as to go quite through the Skin, he runs a Riſque of laming the Horſe; and if he does not give the Fire enough, the Windgalls will remain, and he might as well have done nothing. Let us ſuppoſe then that we have a capable Man: He muſt have ſix or ſeven Steel Knives, made in the ſame Manner as is deſcribed in one of the Plates hereto annexed. Let him heat them over a Charcoal Fire, and not in the Forge, becauſe the intenſe Heat occaſioned by the Bellows will ſcale the Inſtrument, and make the Edge like a Saw, ſo that it muſt tear the Skin. Make it very hot, that it may paſs delicately over the Skin, and feel in Hand as if one were cutting of Butter. When one Knife begins to loſe it's Heat, a Perſon that ſtands by for that Purpoſe muſt give another quite hot, and put the firſt again into the Fire. Never go twice ſucceſſively upon the

CHAP. L. the ſame Line; and obſerve to take your Strokes downwards, not upwards, beginning in the middle, and then making Parallels on each Side. Continue thus till you have gone ſeveral Times over each Line. The firſt Knife will ſcarce be enough, without changing, to mark all the Lines out. When the Fire is given ſufficiently, the Bottoms of the Streaks appear red, or of a gold Colour, and certain little Drops of Water begin to riſe: This is a Signal for leaving off the Operations, for fear of cutting through the Skin. The middle Line ſhould not be ſo often gone over as the reſt.

The Fire being given on both Sides of each Leg, within and without, cover all the Fetlock, and a Part of the Nerve, as well as five Lines on the Side of the Nerve, and three on each Side of the Fetlock; making together nine on each Side the Leg, in all eighteen. Then take a ſmall Sponge dipped in Writing Ink, and draw it over all the Lines. You muſt do this as ſoon as you can after the Fire is given, and continue the Uſe of Ink in the ſame Manner nine Days following. After that anoint all the Lines, or Streaks, with Ointment, as the Eſchars fall off; and take care, during the whole Time of Cure, that the Horſe never comes at his Legs with his Teeth.

There are two Things to be noted, which are of great Importance. The firſt is, that the Horſe muſt have reſted a long while, before you give him the Fire, that he may not be lame at the Time of the Operation; which would render all your Labour ineffectual. The ſecond, that only Autumn or Winter are proper Seaſons for this Operation, to which the great Heats and the Flies may be of very bad Conſequence.

I would adviſe no Man to give the Fire to a Horſe of little Value, becauſe the Expence of it is more than an indifferent Horſe is worth. For after you have performed the Operation, there is a Neceſſity for his reſting four or five Months, without ſtirring out of the Stable; and for leading him early in the Fields and Meadows during the Month of *May*, among the green Corn or long Graſs, that his Legs may be fortified by being thus ſuppled with the Dew. If all this be well executed, one may be ſure, at the End of ſix or ſeven Months, that the Horſe will have better Legs than ever, and will laſt many Years longer. I have ſeen Horſes of great Value, without any Defect, on whom this Operation has been performed by Way of Precaution, and who have afterwards been fifteen or twenty Years fit for Service, with their Legs always firm and ſound. My Father has done it even to Horſes for *Lewis* the Fourteenth's own Riding; and with very good Succeſs. I have followed the ſame Practice ever ſince, and never found it fail.

I forgot to ſay, that in order to give the Fire properly, the Horſe ſhould be down; and the Pot of Charcoal ſhould ſtand juſt by, that the Irons may have no Time to cool when taken out. It is proper alſo to have a ſmooth Piece of Board at Hand, to draw the Inſtruments over, and diſengage any Filth that may ſtick to them. The Dreſſing to be uſed after the ninth Day is the following excellent Ointment for Burns, equally good for Man and Beaſt.

An Ointment for Burns.

Take a Pound of the freſheſt Hen-dung you can get, and mix it with a Pound of Sage chopped and bruiſed: Then take two Pounds of melted Lard, and put all together in a large earthen Pot: Cover the Pot cloſe, ſet it over a clear Fire, and let it boil four or five Hours. Strain it as hot as you can, through a coarſe Towel, and ſqueeze out as much as poſſible. Keep this Ointment in your Houſe, as a valuable Treaſure; for it will cure all Manner of Burns, without leaving the leaſt Mark behind.

The Way to uſe this Ointment upon Horſes who have had the Fire given them, is gently to anoint every Line with it, once a Day, upon the End of a Feather. For any Perſon who receives a Burn, let ſome of it be imbibed in ſoft Paper, and ſo laid on freſh twice a Day, if it be a Part that you can cover: But for the Face uſe a fine Feather, and apply it five or ſix Times a Day. This will certainly make a perfect Cure within a Fortnight.

CHAP. L.

The Mallenders.

TO know what the Mallenders are, you muſt examine the Feet of a Horſe loaded with Hair; for ſuch Horſes are more ſubject to it than others. You will find a Sort of little Slit in the Bend of the Leg, behind the Knee, from which a certain Humour iſſue

issues, that is sometimes whitish, and sometimes like muddy Water. The Hair round it is strait, and stands as it were on End; and as the Humour is sharp and salt, it makes the Hairs fall off by Degrees. This Disease happens often to fat Horses, and those that were bred in Countries where the Grass is luscious. It is none of the most considerable Defects, but worse in some Horses than others, in proportion to their Constitutions. CHAP. L.

Your Jockeys and Dealers say that it makes a Horse so much the better, because Nature thus discharges what offends her; and sometimes, I confess, it is but a trifling Matter: But still a Horse had better not be subject to it; because some are so loaded with Humours, that they descend into the Feet while you are curing the Mallenders, and often cause what is called a Fig in the Foot, which is much more dangerous than the Mallenders, and what few Farriers know how to cure, for Want of Experience.

Whatever Jockeys may pretend, the Mallenders make the Leg stiff, and take away the Motion of the Knee-Joint; which obliges a Horse to stumble often, and sometimes to fall, as he cannot bend his Joints without Pain.

In Summer this Defect often goes away voluntarily, the Humours being dried up by the Dust; but then the Mark of it remains. In Winter, when a Horse is obliged to work in Mud, Water, Snow, or Ice, he suffers many Inconveniencies; which makes it necessary to use gentle Remedies, lest by curing the Distemper in one Part, you drive it to another. The following are very proper for this Purpose.

A Remedy for the Mallenders.

Take *Oister-Shells*, and calcine them in the Fire to a Sort of Lime, so that you may crumble them to Powder, when cold, with your Hand: Then pound them well in a Mortar, and pass them through a fine Sieve. Take the same Weight of Navets, or wild Turnips, and pound them also: Then take *Hog's Lard*, to the Weight of both, and put all together in an earthen Pot, and let it boil over the Fire a full Hour, stirring it all the while, and even continuing to stir it till cold when taken off. Anoint the Mallenders with this Ointment, two or three Times a Day, and it will effect a Cure. But you must purge the Horse before you use it, to turn the Humours; and afterwards, to cleanse his Body.

Another Remedy for the Mallenders, Mules, and Sallenders.

These three Distempers, though different, may be treated and cured with the same Remedies.

It has been already said, that the Seat of the Mallenders is behind the Knee, in the Joint: I must add, that the Sallenders come over-against the Mallenders, in the middle of the Bend of the Hough; and that Mules are a kind of Clefts that come behind the Fetlocks, which split them quite a-cross. This last Accident is often a Matter of Importance, if it be not remedied very soon: For this Slit will grow so deep, that it sometimes extends to the Bone, and the Tendons that hold the Bones together; and sometimes a Filander comes in the middle of the Wound, looking white like the small End of a Nerve, but which is neither more nor less than an Excrescence, occasioned by the Humours that ooze from between the Bones of the Joint. This often destroys a Horse; but the best Way to save him is to use these Remedies.

Take *Oil of Hempseed*, *Honey*, *Hog's Lard*, *Verdigrease* finely powdered, *Black Pitch*, *Flowers of Brimstone*, *White Copperas*, *Red Arsenick*, *Common Alum*, each 2 Ounces; *Quicksilver*, 1 Ounce. Mix the Flowers of Brimstone and Quicksilver by rubbing in a Mortar till the Quicksilver is killed; and then mix the other Things in Powder with the Oil, over a slow Fire, in an earthen Pipkin (avoiding the Fumes) and boil it a little, and then stir it till it is cold. Dress the Horse every Day with this Composition, till he is well.

Another Remedy for the Mallenders or Sallenders.

Take *Black Soap*, Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, and *fresh Butter*, each equal Parts, mixed together for an Ointment; which use every Day.

Another.

Take *Oil* of *Lead*, *Whitest Cerusse*, each eight Ounces; *Common Honey*, twenty-four Ounces: Put the whole into a large earthen Pipkin, and let it stand over a gentle Fire, stirring it perpetually with a Spatula, to prevent it's boiling over, and continuing to do the same when you take it off, till it is quite cold. Use this as the preceding.

CHAP. LI, LII, LIII, LIV.

Every time that you dreſs your Horſe, foment the Wounds well with a little warm Wine and Sugar, which will keep them clean: But be as quick as you can in doing this, that the Air may not have Time to affect the Part, becauſe that would retard the Cure.

CHAP. LI.

Bow-Legs.

THIS Accident proceeds from two different Cauſes: Firſt, from Nature, when a Horſe was got by an old worn-out Stallion; ſecondly, from his having been worked too young. Neither in the one Caſe nor the other is the Horſe of any Value, becauſe he never can be ſure footed. It is moreover a diſagreeable Sight; and is known by looking at the two Fore-Legs, ſtanding about three Paces from his Shoulders. If the Knees point forwards, and his Legs turn in under him, ſo that the Knees come much farther out than the Feet, this is what we call a bow-legged Horſe. Such a Horſe ought to be rejected for any Service whatſoever, as he never can ſtand firm on his Legs; and how handſom ſoever he may otherwiſe be, he ſhould on no Account be uſed for a Stallion, becauſe all his Progeny will have the ſame Deformity.

I had taken no Notice of this Caſe, becauſe there is no Cure for it, had it not been to prevent any one's being deceived in making a Purchaſe.

CHAP. LII.

Tottering Legs.

THIS Infirmity, like the other, is not very eaſily diſcovered; which is often a great Advantage to the Seller. You cannot perceive it till after a Horſe has galloped for ſome Time, and then by letting him reſt a little, you will ſee his Legs tremble under him; which is the Diſorder I mean. How handſom ſoever the Legs of ſuch a Horſe may be, he never can ſtand well on them: You are not to mind therefore what a Jockey ſays, when he talks a great deal of the Beauty of thoſe Limbs; for if you oblige him to gallop his Horſe, or fatigue him pretty much (which is commonly done in order to try the Creature's Bottom) you will in all likelihood diſcover this Defect, unleſs you ſuffer the Groom to gallop him to the Stable Door, and put him up in a Moment; which he will certainly endeavour to do, if he is conſcious of it, while the Maſter has another Horſe ready to ſhew you, in order to take off your Attention from what he is afraid you ſhould ſee. There is no more Cure for this, than for Bow-Legs.

CHAP. LIII.

A Horſe that forges.

WHAT I mean by a Horſe that *forges*, is one, that when he walks or trots, ſtrikes the Toes of his hind Feet againſt the Corners of his Shoes before, which occaſions a clattering Noiſe as you ride. This proceeds only from the Weakneſs of his Fore-Legs, he not having Strength in them to raiſe them up quick, to make Way for the hind ones. A Horſe of this kind can do no great Service; and the Dealers to get rid of him will make abundance of Pretences. If he has been juſt ſhoed, they will ſcold at the Hoſtler for having ſuffered him to have ſuch long Shoes; and if his Shoes are old, they will tell you he is juſt arrived from a long Journey, and very much fatigued. You muſt not be over credulous therefore to any Thing a Jockey affirms, for all they ſay is uſually with an Intent to deceive: And it is very certain, that a Horſe who forges can never be ſure footed, any more than one who has Tottering or Bow-Legs.

CHAP. LIV.

A Blow on the Nerve.

THIS Accident may happen to the beſt Horſe in the World, as well as to the worſt; if the Perſon who rides him does not know how to manage and ſupport him juſtly. In Hunting eſpecially, or in ſwift Courſes, when you are obliged to ride over ſandy or ploughed Grounds, or ſuch as are wet and boggy, if you are not careful to ſupport him with your Hand, his Fore-feet will ſink in, and as he has not Time to raiſe them ſoon enough

enough to make Way for the hind ones, the Toes of theſe come againſt the large Nerves before, that lie between the Knee and the Back of the Fetlock, and ſtrike them with great Violence: But as the Blow does not break the Skin, nothing at firſt appears; only in the Evening, or the next Day, the Horſe grows lame, without your knowing the Cauſe of it. You muſt examine him therefore all over, drawing your Hand firſt from the Joint of the Knees downwards, and taking up the Nerve with your Fingers, in order to feel it all the Way. If he ſuddenly ſnatches away his Foot, imagine you have found the Seat of his Diſorder, and that it is a *Nerve-Shoe*, or Blow on the Nerve. This is no trifling Hurt; for if the Horſe be not preſently blooded, but the Caſe at firſt neglected, it becomes very difficult to cure. But if you diſcover it ſoon, proceed as follows. CHAP. LIV.

Take Spirit of *Turpentine*, and *Wine Vinegar*, of each alike; beat them together; then take a large Piece of Spunge, ſlit it almoſt through in the Middle, and having dipped it in the Compoſition, apply it to the Nerve, covering it quite from Top to Bottom. Then take an Ox's or Cow's Bladder, and bind it over the Spunge with a Linen Swathe. Let this remain twenty-four Hours, and then repeat the ſame Dreſſing three Times, on three ſubſequent Days, taking care never to bind the Nerve too hard. This will quite remove the otherwiſe dangerous Malady.

Another Remedy.

You muſt ſhave off all the Hair along the Nerve, and then rub it well with a Wiſp of Straw, in order to heat it. Then apply ſome of the following Ointment.

Take *Black Hellebore*, *Euphorbium*, and *Spaniſh Flies*, each 2 Ounces; *Oil of Bays*, 4 Ounces. Powder the dry Drugs, and mix them with the Oil for an Ointment; which apply to the whole Nerve, but moſt plentifully where the Hurt was received. Repeat the ſame Dreſſing twice in one Day, which will draw out a red Humour; and then continue to uſe it once a Day near a Week longer, by which Time the Nerve will look red, as if it were raw. You muſt not be ſurpriſed at this, becauſe both Skin and Hair will come again as before: And if this Ointment be well applied, and the Horſe left three Weeks or a Month in the Stable without ſtirring, his Leg will look as handſom as ever.

This Ointment is alſo good for worn-out or ſurbated Legs, the Nerves of which are hard and ſwelled: But if thoſe Diſorders are of long ſtanding, and the Nerves are entirely ſpoiled, the ſhorteſt way is to give the Fire, making ſix Lines on each Side the Nerve, and three on each Side of the Part that ſurrounds the Fetlock, and one in the Middle; that is, ten Lines on each Side. This is the only certain Remedy, if the Fire be well given, for wounded, or worn-out Nerves. But I muſt inform you, that always, before you give the Fire to a Horſe, you muſt let him reſt three Weeks or a Month in the Stable; and during that Time you muſt prepare the Leg, with good Fomentations of Marſh-Mallows, for the Operation. Three or four Days before you perform it, cleanſe the Leg from all Filth with Water and Soap; for though the Fomentations ſupple the Nerves, they always leave a Dirt behind them. As many Perſons will not conſent to give the Fire, for fear of diſfiguring their Horſe, and becauſe all who pretend to it are not capable of this Operation, the Reader may find here a great Number of Remedies, which I have tried myſelf, in order to avoid performing it.

A Remedy for the Nerves.

Rub your Horſe's Legs all over with your Hand, in order to warm his Nerves: Then bleed him in the Bow-vein, and rub his Legs again with his own Blood. Afterwards uſe the following Compoſition.

Take *Black Pitch*, *Black Roſin*, *Burgundy Pitch*, *Venice Turpentine*, *Oil of Bays*, *Bean Flower*, *Roſe Leaves*, *Camomile Flowers*, *Cyprus Nuts*, *Dragons Blood* powdered, each 2 Ounces: Boil the Whole a Quarter of an Hour, over a gentle Fire, in three Quarts of Wine, and with this rub the Nerves twice a Day, for fifteen or twenty Days following, in which time you will ſee them perfectly cured.

A Receipt for ruined Nerves.

Take *Oil of Bays*, *Common Honey*, *Turpentine*, *Bole Armenic*, *Black Soap*, *Mutton Suet*, each 2 Ounces: Put the Whole in a Pipkin, and boil it a Quarter of an Hour over a gentle Fire, ſtirring it all the while. Apply this to the Nerves moderately warm, with Tow and

CHAP. LV. and a proper Bandage; and repeat it till the Swelling goes down. Then, to perfect the Cure, have recourſe to the following Fomentation.

Take *Roſe Leaves*, *Camomile Flowers*, *Green Aniſe*, *Green Sage*, *Pomegranate Bark*, *Wormwood*, *Gall Nuts*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum*, *White Vitriol*, each 1 Ounce: Reduce the Whole to a Powder, and put it into a Kettle with about a Pail-full of Rain or River Water, which boil to half the Quantity. Then, with a Sponge, bathe the Nerves and Legs of the Horſe, twice a Day, till he is perfectly and manifeſtly well.

A Remedy for ſwelled Legs.

There often happens a Sort of Swelling in the Legs of Hunting-Horſes, by a Thorn that runs into them in the Chace. This Swelling uſually appears after the Fall of the Leaf. When you feel with your Hand that the Nerves are ſwelled, and that the Swelling is occaſioned by a Thorn, make uſe of the following Remedies.

Take equal Quantities of White-Wine and Oil of Nuts, and boil them over a gentle Fire in an earthen Pipkin, till it is reduced to half. Rub the ſwelled Legs with this againſt the Hair, twice a Day, the whole Length of the Nerves. The Hair of the Leg will all come off; but it will grow again, and the Leg be as ſound and handſom, as if it had never been diſordered. The Horſe, during the Courſe, ſhould have a whole Month's reſt.

Another.

Take Oil of Olives, and Lees of Red Wine, of each alike; mix and beat them well together, to reduce them into an unctuous Subſtance, with which rub the Horſe's Legs Night and Morning.

A Remedy for a Horſe that has got Thorns in Hunting.

Take the Skin of an Adder, and apply it upon the Place where there appears to be a Thorn, and at the End of three or four Days the Thorn will come out, without any other Remedy. But if Thorns have been long in the Legs of a Horſe, and are got in far, after the Application of the Adder-Skin, uſe the following Ointment.

Take *Gooſe Greaſe*, 1 Pound; *Burgundy Pitch*, *Gum Elemi*, each 6 Ounces; *Yellow Wax*, 4 Ounces; *White Sage Leaves*, 1 Handful: Boil the Whole together till it comes to an Ointment, with which rub the ſwelled Legs. Then heat a Peel red-hot, and hold it to the Legall round, to make the Ointment penetrate; but not too near, as the Farriers commonly do; becauſe that contracts the Nerves, and makes the Remedy worſe than the Diſeaſe. You need apply this Ointment but once in two Days; and if the Application is made with Judgment, it will produce wonderful Effects.

How to make an Ointment to fortify relaxed Nerves.

Take Mallow-roots well pounded, and ſteep them eight Days in a Pail of Water; then add two Pounds of Flour of Linſeed, and boil the Whole together over a gentle Fire till it becomes like a Haſty-pudding. Strain it warm through a coarſe Towel, and ſqueeze out all you can: Then add a Pound of Oil of Olives, and keep it ſtirring till quite cold, and of the Conſiſtence of an Ointment. Keep this in a Pot cloſe covered, and rub the Legs with it once a Day till they are cured; which will be very ſoon.

A Remedy for the Mallenders and Sallenders.

Take *Comfrey* and *Lead Ore*, of each 4 Ounces; *Honey*, half a Pound: Put them together in a varniſhed Pipkin, and melt them over a gentle Fire, ſtirring all the while, and continuing to do ſo when the Compoſition is taken off, till it is quite cold. Put ſome of this once a Day upon the Mallenders or Sallenders; but take care to cleanſe the Wound before you apply it. There is no Bandage wanting: Only put it on with your Finger or a Spatula.

CHAP. LV.

A Blow between the Fetlock and the Heel.

THESE Blows are received in the ſame Manner as thoſe on the Nerve before deſcribed: The only Difference is, that the Seat of the one is higher than that of the

the other. The Seat of the Blow we are now ſpeaking of, is between the Fetlock and the Heel of the Fore-feet. As this is a very ſenſible Part, ſuch Accidents are often dangerous. The Nerves, which contribute to the Motion of the Joint, run along juſt in this Place; that is, there are here a great Number of ſmall Veſſels, Veins and Arteries, which, upon every rude Knock they receive, may lame a Horſe. CHAP. LVI.

To know when a Horſe is hurt here, draw your Hand along the large Nerve, pinching it as you proceed. If you find no Senſibility there, carry your Hand to the Joint that is between the Fetlock and the Heel; and if you have then hit upon the Part, the Horſe will catch away his Foot. Having found what ails him, begin the Cure with the ſame Remedies that are preſcribed for a Blow on the Nerve, when there is no Wound. If the Blow be upon the Heel itſelf, and the Skin be a little broke, you have only to waſh the Part with warm Wine, and a ſmall matter of Sugar melted in it; putting over it a little Tow and a Bandage. On the Deficiency of Wine and Sugar, waſh the Wound with Urine; for with ever ſo little Dreſſing, if you keep the Air from it, it will heal. Spirit of Turpentine will do very well in this Caſe; or, if you are in the Country, the Juice of the Herbs Arſe-ſmart, Celandine, or Nettles, either of the three. If you can get none of theſe, take only a little Cannon Powder, fill the Wound with it, and let it off; repeating this three or four Times, till all the Inſide of the Wound is burned, as if you had made it with a hot Iron; and then dreſs it with Urine, Tow, and a Bandage. If the Sore through Negligence is ſuffered to grow very bad, you muſt dreſs it with a Digeſtive made in the following manner.

A Digeſtive.

Take 4 Ounces of *Venice Turpentine*, and 2 *Yolks* of *Eggs*; rub them together in a Mortar very well, and put a Spoonful or leſs of Brandy, and mix the whole for an Ointment. If there be proud Fleſh, ſtrew it over with burnt Alum, or rub it with blue Vitriol or *Lapis Infernalis*, or uſe any one of the Compoſitions mentioned in this Book for that Purpoſe.

Some Diſorders, to which we give other Names, are occaſioned by theſe Blows; and among others, what the *French* call *Javarts*, that is, Swellings in the Paſtern, are often owing to it, though they ſometimes proceed from natural Cauſes. I ſhall ſpeak of the three Sorts of theſe in their Order.

CHAP. LVI.

A ſimple Javart, or Core in the Paſtern.

AS nothing ſhould be undertaken in Medicine before the Conſequence of it is known, I ſhall firſt give the Idea of a *Javart*. It is a Humour that comes behind the Fetlock, above the Heel, and obliges a Horſe to limp extremely. There appears from the firſt a ſmall Swelling, which is very ſenſible to the Touch; and the ſooner you can bring it to Suppuration the better, in order to diſcharge the foul Matter: For no ſooner is he rid of that, but the Horſe finds himſelf relieved; whereas if it continues there long, he runs a great Riſque of his Life. Inſtead of ſimple, it then becomes a nervous Javart, which is no eaſy Thing to cure. But I proceed with the ſimple Sort, which may be cured by the following Remedies.

A Remedy for a ſimple Javart.

Take the ſame Drugs that are uſed to bring the Glands to Suppuration, in a Horſe that has the Strangles; or, in the Room of them, *Lily-Roots* roaſted in Wood-Embers; put them into a Mortar, with ſuch Oil as you can get (Rape or Linſeed Oil are the beſt) and reduce the Whole to an Ointment, which apply upon the Javart. It will ſoon draw out the Matter; and then heal it like another Wound.

Another Way of curing it.

Before you undertake to cure a Javart, you muſt carefully examine the Conſtitution and Temperament of your Horſe. If he is over-charged with Humours, you muſt purge him for ſome Time to turn them from that Part.

CHAP. LVI.

How to make a Plaiſter to draw the Matter out of a Javart.

Take four Ounces of *Hog's Lard*, and melt it in a Fire-Shovel: Then take four Ounces of *Honey*, and boil it up ſuddenly: Then add 2 Ounces of Bean-Flour, and ſet the whole over the Fire, ſtirring it till it comes to a pappy Conſiſtence: Add afterwards three Yolks of Eggs, and when the whole is well incorporated together, ſpread it upon Tow, and apply it to the Tumours. Renew this Dreſſing every twelve Hours, till the Matter is diſcharged: Then put a Tent of Tow, covered with a good Suppurative, into the Hole, to draw out all that remains. When nothing more comes, put a little powdered Alum round your Tent, to keep down the proud Fleſh: After which you may dreſs it with any Thing proper for Healing of Wounds; but take great Care to keep the Air from it as much as poſſible.

Having hinted that there are ſeveral Sorts of Javarts, I now proceed to another Species.

Horny Javarts.

Though all theſe Swellings proceed from much the ſame Cauſes, there may be this Difference obſerved between them. The ſimple Javart comes only in the Joint between the Heels and the hind Part of the Fetlock: The horny Sort comes nearly in the ſame Place; but the Hole forms itſelf between the Heel and the horny Crown of the Foot. Many Horſes have been loſt by this Accident, either through Negligence, or through leaving the Wound too long expoſed to the Air in dreſſing, or through the Omiſſion of their neceſſary Scourings. The beſt Remedies, at ſuch Times, are found ineffectual; and even Horſes that have not died of it, have been ſix Months, or ſometimes a Year under Cure. To prevent theſe Accidents, take Leeks, Heads and Greens together; chop them to Pieces, and beat them up in a Mortar, with Muſtard and Hog's Lard, the ſame Quantity of each as of Leeks. Make a Plaiſter and apply it to the Javart, in order to bring it to a Head, and draw out the Matter: Then heal the Wound with drying Powders, taking great care to keep out the Air.

If the Javart be of long ſtanding, take Eſſence of *Turpentine*, and *Succotrine Aloes*, both pulverized; mix with them Sugar, and make a Sort of red Tincture to dreſs the Wound with till it is well. If the Horſe has had it ſix Months or a Year, and proud Fleſh grows over the Horn, you muſt cut off as much of it as poſſible, with an Inciſion-Knife, and then give the Fire to the Part, making Lines from Top to Bottom over all the Swelling, from the Hair quite to the Horn. This will ſearch the Wound, and fetch down the proud Fleſh which you could not cut off. It is indeed the only Way to do it, and will ſucceed when all the Drugs of an Apothecary's Shop are found inſufficient.

The Operation of the Biſtoury and the Fire being over, apply to the Wound a Plaiſter made in the following Manner, and continue to renew it for ten or twelve ſubſequent Days.

Take Honey and *Venice-Turpentine*, an equal Quantity of each; beat them well together, and apply this Compoſition to the Wound, leaving it there, under a good Bandage, three whole Days: Then repeat the Dreſſing and continue it each Time as long. If you perceive any proud Fleſh to ariſe, ſprinkle on it a little burnt Alum, and dreſs it with the ſame Plaiſter, only adding a ſmall Quantity of Eſſence of *Turpentine*. You muſt always keep the Hoof greaſed with Foot-Ointment, to preſerve the Crown from contracting; and if, through the Length of the Diſtemper, the Crown ſhould be ſtraitened or diminiſhed, make Lines upon it with your Fire-Knives all round, drawing them from Top to Bottom. If the Contraction be extreme, without Heſitation unſole the Horſe, and ſplit his Frog, to enlarge his Foot. You muſt dreſs the Sole with *Turpentine* a little warm, nouriſhing the Hoof well with Foot-Ointment; the Receipt for which, and Manner of unſoling, you will find at the End of this Book.

Another Remedy.

Take Hog's Lard, and a Quarter of the ſame Weight of fine Baſket Salt; mix them together, and leave them on the Sore twenty-four Hours: Repeat the ſame till the Matter is diſcharged, and then any Ointment will effect a Cure.

How to know a nervous Javart.

This comes juſt in the middle of the Joint, between the Heel and the Back of the Fetlock. If it be taken in hand at the firſt, the Cure is eaſy; but if you wait till an Ulce

is formed, a ſmall Filander will at the ſame Time grow to the Nerve, and be very difficult to cure. The Reaſon is, becauſe you muſt not uſe violent Remedies, for fear of hurting the Nerve; and Medicines that are ſoft only nouriſh the Filander. After the common Applications therefore for other Javarts, you may have recourſe to good Digeſtives, and inſtead of Brandy uſe Spirit of Turpentine, mixing with it Powder of calcined Alum, more or leſs as the Occaſion requires. When the Filander diſappears, complete the Cure with a Digeſtive only. CHAP. LVII, LVIII, LIX.

CHAP. LVII.

For a Prick in a Horſe's Foot.

THIS Diſorder is eaſy enough to be known, and therefore requires no Deſcription. If the Hurt be freſh received, make the Hole as large as you can in pulling out the Nail, and dreſs it with Spirit of Turpentine covered with Tow. If the Horſe is ſtill lame at the End of twenty-four Hours, repeat the ſame Dreſſing; and ſo continue to renew it daily till he is well. For want of Spirit of Turpentine, you may uſe the Foot-Ointment, melting ſome of it into the Hole.

For an old Prick, you may make a Tincture of Succotrine Aloes in this Manner.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, fine *Sugar*, each half an Ounce; *Oil of Turpentine*, 3 Ounces: Mix them well, and apply. If there is a Filander at the Bottom of the Hole, which you cannot get off, put upon it a little powdered Sublimate, and the Tincture over that. Obſerve always to put a good Defenſative round the Crown, for fear the Inflammation ſhould throw any Matter upon it, which might ſever the Foot from the Hoof, and conſequently would ſpoil the Horſe. Nothing ſhould be more regarded than this, nor than keeping the Hoof always ſupple, as before deſcribed.

Another Remedy for an old Prick.

Steep Roman Vitriol in Brandy till you make it quite blue, and put of this once a Day upon the Hole till it is well. This Liquor will keep a long Time, and is good for all Wounds, where there is any Foulneſs.

CHAP. LVIII.

A Halter-caſt.

WHAT we call a Halter-caſt, is when a Horſe entangles his Leg, or his Paſtern, either behind or before, in the Rein of his Halter. This Accident is uſually moſt violent when it happens to a hind Leg. The Horſe, thus hampered, flings about, and cuts himſelf in the Joint between the Paſtern and the Fetlock.

If the Wound is recent, how great ſoever it may be, provided no Nerve be cut that is eſſential to the Motion of the Joint, nor any Vein, the Danger is but trifling, and a Cure may be effected by only raw Yolks of Eggs, faſtened on with a Bandage, and renewed every twenty-four Hours. In ſlighter Caſes, you need only apply the Egg with your Finger, Night and Morning. But if the Nerves or Veins have been damaged, there muſt be a good Digeſtive to heal them, and great Care to keep out all Air. The ſame Digeſtive, or even ſome of the Remedies preſcribed for Javarts after they are opened, may ſerve in the following Caſe.

CHAP. LIX.

Scratches or Chaps.

HORSES are more ſubject to this Diſorder in Winter than in Summer, becauſe their Skins are then more tender, and they are obliged to work in Water, Ice, and Mud half frozen, which often makes the Skin break behind the Joints, ſometimes upon the Paſterns, ſometimes higher, and now and then upon the Fetlock. It is not a very dangerous Caſe in itſelf, but exceedingly troubleſom upon a Journey. However, if you can keep your Horſe cloſe in the Stable, and preſerve the Scratches from Air, you may ſoon cure him, with any aſſwaging Remedy whatever. It is quite otherwiſe with the following Accident, which demands much more Attention, and that you ſhould have recourſe to many Remedies ſet down in the Article of Javarts.

CHAP. LX.

Mules.

CHAP. LX, LXI.

MULES, or tranverſe Mules, very much reſemble Scratches, being Clefts athwart the Skin behind the Fetlock. They happen oftner in the hind Legs than in the fore, and are known from Scratches by a kind of whitiſh Matter, ſomewhat like muddy Water, that iſſues out of them. The ſame may indeed be found ſometimes in Scratches; but then they never go deeper than the Skin, whereas Mules are much deeper; for if you take a Straw, and probe one of them, you will find it go in above two Fingers Thickneſs without forcing, the Orifice entering between the Bones and the Joint. While this Wound is under Cure, the Horſe muſt never go out of the Stable, not even to the Farrier's to be dreſſed; becauſe the Joint ſuffers much in walking, and the Cleft grows bigger, which takes away the Effect of the beſt Remedies. Uſe the ſame Remedies here as in Swellings on the Paſterns, or Javarts, and eſpecially the Tincture of Aloes and Spirit of Turpentine: And be ſure to put over the Tincture a good Defenſative, to prevent any Inflammation that might otherwiſe come; and to faſten it with a Bandage five or ſix Times double, to hinder any Motion of the Fetlock. You may complete the Cure with a Digeſtive.

CHAP. LXI.

Maltlongs or Maltworms.

THIS is moſt commonly a Humour inherent in the Horſe's Nature, and it's Seat is on the Fore-part of the Foot above the Crown; that is, under the Front of the Fetlock. It appears in a Sort of itching Scab, about an Inch in diameter, which makes the Hair come off of the Part; and the Matter that comes from it is very ſtinking, and troubleſom to the Horſe. Many Perſons ſpeak of it as a trifle, but few know how to cure it. There is indeed Occaſion to have recourſe here to a Cauſtic, in order to fetch off the ſcabby Excreſcence, which is, in fact, a kind of proud Fleſh not eaſily eradicated. Neither the Inciſion-Knife, nor any other ſharp Inſtrument, is half ſo effectual to this End, as the Cauſtics preſcribed in the preſent Treatiſe.

Having got off a Scab about as big as half a Nut, if no more proud Fleſh appears, you may dreſs it like any common Wound.

This Diſeaſe ſeldom happens to Saddle-Horſes, but only to large Draught-Cattle, that are loaded with Hair, and conſequently full of Humours; unleſs any Saddle-Horſe was brought up, or is fed on fat marſhy Grounds. If the Maltlong be neglected, it cauſes another and worſe Accident, which is what we call a Cloven or Ox's Foot. The Matter running down from the Maltlong, between the Foot and the Horn, occaſions the Hoof to cleave in the Middle, upon the Fore-part.

Deſcription of the Maltlong.

This Diſtemper comes, as we have ſaid, upon the Crown of a Horſe's Foot that works in Mud. It often diſunites the Horn from the Foot, and ſometimes makes the Hoof fall off. This Diſeaſe appears more in ſome Seaſons than in others; for it breaks out afreſh when the Corn begins to ſprout and is in Flower: At all other Times you ſee only a little Scab, as I before called it, which gives the Horſe no Trouble. Your Dealers and Jockeys take the favourable Seaſons to ſell off their Horſes that have it, and only tell their Chapmen, that it is a Blow which the Horſe gave himſelf by Accident, and that it is merely owing to the Negligence of a Farrier, or Hoſtler, that it is not yet well. The Deception however appears, when the fatal Seaſon comes again.

A Remedy for the Maltlong.

If the foregoing Remedy, though very good, did not ſucceed, give the Fire in the following Manner. You muſt have the ſame Sort of Knives that were before deſcribed, in the Article of Windgalls, and having heated them, cut the Maltlong through in the Middle, deſcending towards the Hoof, and make two other parallel Lines, one on each Side. Then apply the following Compoſition.

Tak

Take *Turpentine*, *Honey*, *Black Roſin*, each 2 Ounces; *Roch Alum* powdered, 1 Ounce: Mix the whole together, and melt them in a Pipkin to an Ointment, with which dreſs the Wound immediately, and repeat the Dreſſing every twenty-four Hours for eight or ten ſucceſſive Days. Every Time you dreſs it, have ready a little warm Wine, with Sugar melted in it, for a Fomentation; and when the Wound is ready to heal, burn an old Shoe or two, and mix the Aſhes with Brandy to bathe and dry it; or you muſt dry it up with calcined Alum, or a little digeſtive Ointment, till the Skin and Hair come again as before. CHAP. LXII, LXIII.

CHAP. LXII.

Of a Cloven or Ox's Foot.

WHEN a Horſe has his Feet cleft in two, from the Crown down to the Toe, it is very difficult to join the two Parts again: This is therefore a very bad Caſe. The beſt Way to proceed, is firſt to cover all the Horn of the Foot with Foot-Ointment, and fill the Inſide of the Hoof with the ſame, in order to ſoften the Horn. You muſt repeat it three or four Days running. Then take a Cobler's Awl, about the Size of a Needle to mend Stockings with, and heat it in a Charcoal Fire, which you muſt have ſtanding by you. Pierce both Sides of the Horn very tenderly, in three or four Places, ſo that the Holes may meet exactly; which muſt be a Work of Time, becauſe an Awl will not long keep hot. Then put a braſs Wire through each Pair of Holes, and twiſt the Ends together tight with Pincers, in order to cloſe up the Cleft as much as poſſible. You muſt then have three or four Pieces of Iron, made in the Form of the Letter (S), and faſten them on hot between the Ligatures of braſs Wire, which will keep the Hoof firm and cloſe. Three or four Weeks or a Month will make the Horn hold together; but the Horſe ought to be three or four Months before you work him.

Mules are very ſubject to this Accident, but with this Difference from Horſes, that though the Cleft appears the ſame, it is not ſo deep, and does not hinder them from working. I would not however adviſe any one to buy Mules that have it, becauſe in Proceſs of Time their Feet may open quite to the Quick; and a Mule as well as a Horſe may loſe his Life by it, if not well treated.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of a Seyme.

WHAT the *French* call a *Seyme* proceeds from different Cauſes; as firſt, from the extreme Drineſs of the Foot, when there has not been Care taken to keep the Hoof greaſed, and nouriſhed with Foot-Ointment, and ſometimes with Cow-dung. It happens chiefly to Horſes that go little abroad, and are taken out in Summer in extreme dry Weather. You ſhould always refreſh the Feet therefore on ſuch an Occaſion. It may proceed, ſecondly, from a *Bleyme* within the Foot, on the Side of the Frog, and which, as it could not make any other Way, cleaves the Horn within, or without near the Heel, proceeding from the Crown to the very Bottom. When the Foot is divided thus on the Side, as in the Ox's Foot it is in the Middle, there often comes out Blood as the Horſe walks or trots. Different Perſons treat this Diſtemper in different Manners; but though I ſhall introduce ſeveral Remedies, I prefer that of giving the Fire, as in the preceding Article of cloven Feet; with this Difference only, that there is no need here of the braſs Wire, the Iron SS being ſufficient to cloſe up this Cleft. If the Operation be well performed, and the Foot afterwards well anointed with Foot-Ointment, the Diſorder will never return, and the Horn will grow ſtronger and harder in thoſe Places than it ever was before. You are firſt, as I ſaid in the other Article, to prepare the Hoof for two or three Days with Foot-Ointment, and then to apply three or four hot SS acroſs the Cleft, one under another. If you can then excuſe your Horſe a Month or ſix Weeks from working, you will ſoon ſee him perfectly well, and in no Danger of the ſame Accident for the future.

But if you are obliged to work ſuch a Horſe within a Fortnight after you have given him the Fire, you muſt have the Corner of the Shoe cut off on that Side where the Diſorder was, ſo that that Quarter of the Heel may not bear upon any Thing; becauſe otherwiſe the Cleft might open again, and all you have done be to no Purpoſe. The Shoe to be uſed in this Caſe, and that wants one of it's Branches, is called by ſome a half Spectacle, and by others a half Slipper.

A Quarter-Seyme.

CHAP. LXIV.

The Seyme, as has been ſaid, comes on the fore, and never on the hind Feet. It often makes a new Quarter, and then we call it a Quarter-Seyme. It proceeds from the Alteration and Drineſs of the Hoof, and is known only by the Horſe's Limping, and having his Hoof cleft from the Top of the Crown to the Bottom of all, either on the Out-ſide, or the in. It cauſes very great Pain, and often happens to Horſes of the Manage, who never go in the Wet, as well as to thoſe who are confined long in the Stable. The Hoofs of all theſe therefore ſhould be often ſuppled with Foot-Ointment, and the Inſide filled, from time to time, with Clay or Cow-Dung.

A Remedy.

Dip a Pledget of Cotton in Spirits of Wine, and lay it along the Cleft of the Seyme; then put over it the following Plaiſter, made of new Wax and Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, the ſame Quantity of each, melted together. The Spirit will unite the Horn, and the Plaiſter will take away the Inflammation. Put on a freſh Plaiſter every twenty-four Hours, and the Seyme will ſoon heal, and the Horſe be well enough to work.

Another Remedy.

Take two large *Adders*, throw away their Heads and their Tails, becauſe they are poiſonous; then cut them in Slices, and put them into an Earthen Pot, with a Pound of Oil of *Olives*; cloſe up the Pot well, and put it into a Kettle-full of Water, but ſo as that not any may get into the Pot: Boil it till what is in the Pot is reduced to an unctuous Conſiſtence, and uſe this Ointment every Day upon the Seyme till it is well, which will not be very long.

Another.

Cleanſe the Seyme well by waſhing it with warm Water, and afterwards with Brandy: Sprinkle upon it Orpiment in Powder, and over that the Yolk of an Egg boiled hard: Then bind up the Foot, and keep it two Days without opening. You will ſcarce be able to ſee, at the End of that Time, that there was any Seyme. Theſe are excellent good Remedies when you want to ſell a Horſe; but if you would keep him, the ſureſt Way is to give the Fire.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of a Bleyme.

TO know when there is a Bleyme, you muſt unſhoe the diſordered Horſe, and pare his Foot very neatly. Upon one of the inner Quarters, near the Frog, you will ſee a red Spot, like corrupted Blood, which will ſometimes bleed with the very Paring. This is a Sign that the Bleyme is very violent, and let ſuch a Horſe work ever ſo little, eſpecially if it be in Summer, he becomes lame: But keep him ſome Time idle in the Stable, and he will not limp, unleſs he has been newly ſhod. Few old Horſes are ſubject to this Accident: Nor is the Caſe very dangerous, when viſible as here deſcribed: But when it is ſo forward, that you can hardly ſee it, and has no Room outwardly, you muſt divide the Side of the Hoof, agreeably to what was before ſaid. Many Farriers pretend to cure a Seyme by paring the Hoof, and digging it down with their Buttreſs; applying afterwards certain Remedies to prevent an Inflammation that may enſue. I own that a Horſe, after this Ceremony, may ſeem to be relieved for the preſent; but when he has continued ſome Time without being ſhod, he begins to limp again; and let him work ever ſo little, the Bleyme is as bad as before. There have been People ſo ignorant as to unſole a Horſe in this Caſe, without operating on the Seat of the Bleyme; but in ſuch a Horſe too the Bleyme ſoon grows as violent as ever: Whereas the following Remedy is infallible, and will make a perfect Cure.

A Remedy for a Bleyme.

Take *Cow-Dung*, *Pork-Fat*, *Turpentine*, and *Roſin*, of each half a Pound; a Quarte of a Pound of *Linſeed*, and half a Pint of Oil, of any Sort you can get; melt the Whol together in a Pot, and apply ſome of this Compoſition, as warm as he can bear it, to th Horſe's Foot, binding it on with Tow and Splinters. Repeat this every twenty-four Hour til

till the Horſe limps no longer, which probably may be twelve Days or a Fortnight. You will then never ſee any more of the Bleyme. CHAP. LXV.

Another.

When you have pared the Horſe's Foot as deep as you can, eſpecially juſt in the Seat of the Bleyme; melt *Sealing Wax* upon it three or four Days running, applying after each Time ſome of the above Compoſition. The latter, but not the Wax, muſt be continued till the Horſe limps no longer. This Method is equally good with the former, and either of them will ſometimes do when the other fails. The more lame a Horſe is after this Operation, the more certain you may be that his Diſorder will never return. If they both fail, for Want of Skill or Experience in him that uſes them, the ſhorteſt Way is to unſole the Horſe, and dreſs the Bleyme according to the preceding Directions.

How to unſole a Horſe for a Bleyme, or any other Accident.

Before you attempt to unſole a Horſe, you muſt prepare his Foot well, by ſoftening his Hoof with Foot-Ointment. Then, in order for the Operation, take a Cord about half as thick as one's little Finger, and make a Ligature about the Joint between the Foot and the Fetlock, in order to keep back the Blood, that you may ſee the Sole the better. Then cut the Sole all round with your Buttreſs; and when it is quick detached, you may take it off with Eaſe. This being done, untie the Cord, and let the Blood run about a Quarter of an Hour; after which take up the Foot, and renew the Ligature. Put the Shoe on as before, faſtening it well with five or ſix Nails, and then waſh the Inſide of the Foot with Salt and Vinegar, or Salt and Brandy; or, for want of either, with freſh human Urine. Apply afterwards Honey and Roſin, an equal Quantity of each, melted together with a ſmall Piece of Lime, filling the Foot with Tow, bound on with Splinters, to keep down the Sole; but take care you do not hurt it by binding them too tight. You muſt put alſo a Defenſative round the Crown, for fear the Humours ſhould fly thither. You may make it as follows.

A Defenſative to be uſed when a Horſe's Soles are drawn.

Chimney Wood-Soot two Pounds; *Turpentine*, *Pitch*, and *Honey*, each half a Pound; melt the whole together in a Pot, and then add about a Quart of Vinegar, in which ſix Yolks of Eggs have been beat up. Apply ſome of this Compoſition upon Tow freſh every twenty-four Hours, continuing it for eight or ten Days; and after that you need dreſs the Sole only with Turpentine and Tow, till it is hard and firm, which will be perhaps in twenty or twenty-five Days: But be careful, when you leave off the Defenſative, to keep the Hoof well ſuppled with Foot-Ointment, that the Horn may never be dry till the Cure is effected.

As there are other Accidents beſides Bleymes that may make a Horſe lame, and do him a great deal of Damage, eſpecially if he be fat and full of Humours, (though nothing perhaps may appear, on Account of the fine Make of the Body and Legs) I proceed to give ſuch Preſcriptions, as may be of general Uſe for their Cure.

CHAP. LXV.

New Frogs, or Fruſhes.

IT often happens that a Horſe full of Humours has a new Frog, which many People call a corrupted Frog, becauſe in changing the Horn that encompaſſes it it corrupts in ſuch a Manner, as to ooze out a ſtinking Moiſture, and by Degrees it all rots away. If a Horſe is not blooded, in proportion to the Humours that affect him, there comes another great Diſorder; and out of a hundred Farriers, ſcarce ſix can be found that know how to cure it. This is called a Thread, or by the *French Crapeau*, and may be known and cured by the following Directions.

A Remedy for drying off corrupted Frogs.

Take *Roch Alum*, *Green and White Copperas*, *Verdigreaſe*, all finely powdered, of each 2 Ounces: Infuſe them cold twenty-four Hours in a Pot, with a Quart of Wine-Vinegar;

CHAP. LXVI, LXVII.

Vinegar; and with a Piece of Cotton, or a Sponge, dipped in this Infuſion, waſh the Fruſhes twice every Day.

When you have not the above Drugs, take ſome of the Aqua Fortis which a Goldſmith has uſed to whiten his Work, and uſe it alone in the ſame manner as the foregoing Compoſition. You may have it for aſking for, becauſe the Workmen always then throw it away, as having loſt it's Strength.

Another Remedy for a new, or corrupted Frog.

Take *Aqua Infernalis*, and uſe it in the ſame manner as the two preceding Liquors, only not ſo often. The manner of making this Water here follows.

Aqua Infernalis.

Take *Verdigreaſe*, *Spaniſh Flies*, each 1 Ounce; *Venetian Ceruſs*, 2 Ounces: Powder the whole, and put it to a Bottle of Brandy and a Pint of Vinegar. Boil this in a Pipkin, over a gentle Fire, till it is half waſted, and then uſe it on Occaſion.

CHAP. LXVI.

Incaſtellated, or narrow Heels.

MANY Perſons make no Difference between incaſtellated Heels, and Heels that are cloſed up. The latter may happen to the beſt of Horſes, and is often occaſioned by the Fault of a Farrier, who knows how neither to pare nor to govern a Horſe's Foot: For a Horſe that has the fineſt Feet in the World may have his Heels cloſed up in four or five Times ſhoeing, when the Farrier, by an injudicious Application of the Shoe, takes away all the Force of that Part. We will treat therefore in the firſt Place of theſe cloſe Heels, and then of thoſe that are incaſtellated; they being quite different the one from the other.

When a Horſe has his Heels cloſed, you muſt begin the Cure by ſoftening his Horn all over, every Day, with Foot-Ointment. Put a Bandage about it, which you may make with three or four Liſts of Cloth ſewed together, in order to render them as broad as the Hoof. You muſt likewiſe put to it Cow-Dung, Night and Morning, and continue both for eight Days. Then let the Horſe be unſhod, and his Feet well pared, without dividing the Fruſhe from the Heel; which is a great Error, though moſt Farriers uſually practiſe it, in hopes, by that Means, to enlarge the Heel; becauſe moſt Authors, who have treated of this Diſorder, have ſpoke of Opening the Heels, without telling how it ought to be done. Having proceeded thus far, before you put on the Shoe, let three Lines be made on each Side of the Foot, with a proper Inſtrument, from the Crown down to the Bottom of the Hoof, at the Diſtance of about a Finger's Thickneſs from one another. Cut them almoſt to the Quick, and then put on a Shoe made in the following Manner.

It muſt be very thick within, and very thin without; I mean, in the Branches; that ſo if the Heels bear upon the Shoe, the Horn may ſlide under the Branch without, in proportion as it grows. As ſoon as the Lines are made, apply to them all ſome of your Foot-Ointment, and rub with it all round the Hoof. Continue to proceed thus for two or three Shoeings, allowing about a Month or ſix Weeks between each; and by theſe Means you will reſtore the Feet. Many object againſt the Length of this Proceſs; but the Horn of a Horſe's Foot does not grow ſo faſt as a Man's Beard. If it be a fine Horſe, worth the Labour and Expence, you need not grudge the Time allowed to make him as good as before.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of Incaſtellated Feet.

I Muſt firſt inform you what is meant by an incaſtellated Foot, that you may diſtinguiſh it from a narrow, or cloſe Heel, before you undertake the Cure.

An Incaſtellation ſeldom comes but upon fine Horſes, as thoſe of *Spain*, *Italy*, *Portugal*, and *Barbary*; or upon ſuch as are brought up in high Grounds, that are dry and mountainous. Such Horſes are liable to have their Feet very hollow, with ſmall and narrow Frogs; which, though it be a good Quality in a Horſe, may, like other Things, extend to Exceſs. It alſo happens ſometimes through the Fault of Farriers, when they hollow the Foot too much, and divide the Frog from the Heel; which by Degrees, and in Courſe of

of Time, occaſions the Frog to become ſo narrow, and the two Quarters of the Heel to join ſo cloſe, that it is difficult to ſee their Separation behind; ſo that, inſtead of two Heels, there appears to be as it were but one. This is what we call incaſtellated Heels. You may often ſee them in the riding Academies, and among managed Horſes, who are kept long without ſhoeing. It frequently happens, that the Riding-Maſters do not perceive it; perhaps through Ignorance, or becauſe they think themſelves above ſuch Matters, which they look on as the Farrier's Buſineſs. They trouble themſelves about nothing but teaching to ride; and when they have ſhewn you how to manage a Horſe in all his Airs, they perſuade themſelves they are great Men in their way. But when ſuch Men are left to themſelves, and have the Charge of conducting any grand Equipage, it makes them mad to be obliged to own they know nothing of the Matter. CHAP. LXVII.

To proceed to the Cure of an incaſtellated Horſe. You muſt begin by preparing his Feet, in order to make them tender, juſt as you do in the foregoing Caſe of cloſed Heels. Then have a Shoe made in three Parts, ſomething like one that is adapted to all Feet, which we carry with us upon a Journey, or in time of War, where there is a large Equipage to conduct; but with this Exception, that whereas the Shoe for all Feet opens and ſhuts only in the Middle, this does ſo in two Places. The Toe makes one of the three Pieces, and the two Branches the others. The Piece before muſt be punched quadrangularly, in order to receive four Nails in Form of a Square; and every Branch muſt have two Holes, for two Nails; which makes eight in the whole. The Figure of this Shoe is in one of the Plates annexed; and the Deſign of it is to open the Heel every Dreſſing, after you have unſoled the Horſe.

You muſt obſerve here, that the Frog ſhould be ſlit quite down between the two Heels, and to the Hair; and this Slit ſhould be very deep. Then take a little Tow, and roll or twiſt it between your Fingers to the Length of the Slit: Dip it in Spirit of Turpentine, and put it to the very Bottom of the Cavity. Afterwards roll up two Parcels of Tow more, but larger than the former; dip them in Turpentine, made as hot as the Horſe can bear it, and fill up the whole Cleft and the Foot, binding them on with thin Pieces of Iron, rather than Wood. Obſerve that you muſt not do this till after the Horſe is ſhod, and the Inſide of his Foot has been well waſhed with Brandy. This being done, put a ſmall Iron Pin, or Key, between the two Branches of the Shoe, where there ſhould be Indentions to receive the Ends of it, and make it keep in. Leave on this firſt Dreſſing, if it be Winter, three Days; if Summer, only two; and proceed ſo with all the following. Every time that you dreſs the Horſe, have ready a Key a little longer, in order to open the Heels farther; which will be eaſily done, provided the Horn be tender.

I have one Thing more to obſerve, which is, that though you do not take off the Dreſſing for three Days, you muſt apply a good Reſtrictive as ſoon as the Horſe is unſoled, and change it every Day, for three or four Days running.

When you take off the Rolls of Tow, to put on freſh, you may uſe the old ones to wrap about the Heels and the Hoof, eſpecially towards the Crown; continuing this Courſe till the Sole is ſound and beautiful. At the End of fifteen or twenty Days proceed to the other Foot; for this Accident is always common to both the Fore-feet, but never to the hind.

Another Remedy for an incaſtellated Horſe.

The Deſign of this is for thoſe Horſes which are not altogether incaſtellated. However, ſuch as are not firm on their Feet muſt be prepared for the Operation. For this Purpoſe, you ſhould ſoften their Feet with the following Ointment.

Take *Elder Bark*, *Pitch*, *Sweet Oil*, *Yellow Wax*, *Mutton Suet*, *Turpentine*, each 2 Ounces: Melt all together, and ſtrain it through coarſe Linen. Fill with this the Inſide of the Horſe's Foot, and anoint the Hoof all round. Repeat it for ſome Days, and let the Ointment be always very hot. When the Feet are well ſuppled, you muſt pare the Inſide of them as much as poſſible, and almoſt to the Quick. Then open the Frog as far as you can between the Heels, and quite to the Hair. Dreſs the Wound with Eſſence of Turpentine, and afterwards put on the Shoe deſcribed in the preceding Article, and uſe the ſame Keys.

CHAP. LXVIII.

A Numbneſs or Stunning of the Hoof.

CHAP. LXVIII, LXIX.

IT often happens that a Horſe hurts himſelf againſt ſome Stone, or other hard Thing, and numbs his Foot ſo as to make him lame: This is the Caſe I here ſpeak of. To know it, you muſt handle the Feet, and when you find one of them hotter than the other, you may conclude that in that lies the Pain which makes the Horſe limp. Have Recourſe then to the following Remedies; firſt cauſing the Foot to be well pared, namely, a Compoſition to put in the Hollow of it, and a Sort of Pultice, to bind round the Crown.

The Compoſition for the Inſide of the Foot is made with Lees of Wine, putting into it the Flour of *Linſeed*, *Hog's Lard*, *Honey* and *Turpentine*, about the ſame Quantity of each, and boiling all together till it is reduced to a Pap, which apply very hot. This is a good Preparation on almoſt every Occaſion, and fortifies bad Feet.

A Remedy to put round the Foot of a Horſe, and which may ſerve alſo for the Reins of a Horſe that is hurt in them.

Take *Old Hog's Lard*, *Common Honey*, *Roſin*, *Common Turpentine*, each four Pounds; *Sweet Oil*, and *Lees of Wine*, each one Pint; *Pitch* and *Linſeeds* powdered, each one Pound: Reduce what is dry to a Powder, and boil the Whole together to a Sort of a Pap, which apply warm all round the Hoof. Dreſs your Horſe once a Day till his Lameneſs is gone, which will not be long.

How to make the Horns on the Foot become good.

Take *Sweet Oil*, *Yellow Wax*, *Mutton Suet*, *Turpentine*, each four Ounces: Melt the whole together, and when you take it off the Fire, keep ſtirring till it is cold, and of an unctuous Conſiſtence. With this anoint the Horſe's Feet every Day, keeping them always moiſt, eſpecially towards the Crown, that what grows may be good and firm. You muſt not expect thoſe that are brittle and ſpungy to become good all at once; but in Courſe of Time, by Virtue of this Ointment, you will find them ſo.

Another Ointment to make the Feet good.

Let your Horſe be ſhod, as near as you can poſſibly, when the Moon is in the Middle of her Increaſe, and then anoint his Feet with the following Ointment.

Take *freſh Butter*, *Maſtick*, *Gum Galbanum*, *Pitch*, *Roſin*, *Gum Elemi*, each two Ounces; ſoak them twenty-four Hours in a Quart of Vinegar; and add *Yellow Wax* two Ounces; *Sweet Oil*, *Turpentine*, *Mutton Suet*, *Honey*, each four Ounces; *Ointment Agrippa*, and the *Soldiers Ointment*, or *Unguentum Martiatum*, each one Ounce. The two laſt may be omitted if not eaſily to be had at the Apothecary's. Put all together in a Pipkin, over a moderate Fire without Flame, and boil it till all the Vinegar is evaporated: Then pour it in another Veſſel, and ſtir it till it is almoſt cold. Uſe this as the preceding.

CHAP. LXIX.

For a Horſe that is tender-ſoled.

SOME Horſes ſeem to have very beautiful well made Feet, and yet are very tender in the Sole. They cannot walk on ſtony or hard Ground, becauſe every little Matter hurts their Feet, and lames them. The Cauſe of this is often looked for in the wrong Place: To know where it is therefore, you need only clap the Palm of your Hand upon the Horſe's Sole, which will itſelf ſhew you, by it's extraordinary Heat, where the Pain lies. For this Heat will be much greater in the fore Feet, where the Diſorder is, than in the hind. Sometimes in walking over ſtony Ground, a ſmall Flint gets into the Hollow, and is held by the Branches of the Shoe, ſo as to bruiſe the Sole much. The following Remedy will ſerve in both theſe Caſes. Take Onions, and pound them well; add *Hog-Dung*, *Vinegar*, *Common Salt*, and *Oil of Olives*, the ſame Quantity of each as of Onions; ſtew the whole together a full Quarter of an Hour, and let it juſt boil up: Then apply it upon the Sole, as hot as the Horſe can bear it. You may dreſs him in this Manner every twenty-four Hours, four or five Days running; and this will harden the Sole, and take away his Lameneſs. *For*

For a Horſe that has fat and ſoft Feet.

CHAP. LXIX.

A Horſe is liable by this Means to become lame, when he is obliged to work upon any Pavement, or ſtony Ground. When this happens, you muſt begin by unſhoeing him, and paring the Inſide of his Feet almoſt to the Quick. When he is ſhod again, apply the following Remedy; which you muſt bind on with Tow and Splinters, and renew it every twenty-four Hours. Take two Pounds of the oldeſt and fatteſt Bacon, chop and pound it well; then melt it in a Pipkin, or Stewpan, and ſtrain it through a coarſe Cloth: As it comes through, let it run into about a Pint of Brandy, which you have ready for that Purpoſe in another Veſſel: Beat the Whole well together, and apply ſome of it to the Horſe's Feet three or four Days running. This will bring them into good Order, and harden the Soles.

A brittle Hoof.

There are ſo many Infirmities that make a Horſe lame, that few People take the Pains to know what they all proceed from. I have one yet to ſpeak of, which is the brittle Hoof. Though the Foot may appear beautiful, and well ſhaped, and the Horn good and ſmooth, a Horſe may be of little Value on Account of this Defect. It is difficult to be known, at leaſt without ſeeing a Horſe ſhoed: But then the Farrier is obliged to uſe very thin Nails, or elſe the Hoof will fly as he drives them. The Shoes alſo muſt here be very light; for if you put heavy Shoes on ſuch a Horſe, and work him in Mud, or fat heavy Land, or in Roads that are a little frozen, he will be apt to leave his Shoes behind him, and ſo much of the Hoofs as held them. When your Dealers have ſuch a Horſe, they keep him a long time in the Stable, in order to let the Horn grow afreſh, and then ſhoe him with light Shoes, or Shoes almoſt worn out, and Nails that are very ſmall in the Shank. This Defect, great as it is, may however be remedied in ſome Meaſure, if you only keep the Horn well greaſed with Foot-Ointment, and do not run into the Error of many Coachmen, Farriers and Grooms, in *Holland* eſpecially, who make uſe of Train, that is Whale, Oil, and Chimney-Soot, or the Aſhes of burnt Straw, to render the Hoofs black and ſhining. If they were to do this to the hind Feet only, the Evil would be but half as bad; becauſe this Accident never happens but to the fore Feet: But if theſe People are obſtinately ſet upon having their Horſes Feet all black, let them mix their Soot in the Foot-Ointment, which will be never the worſe, nor leſs nouriſhing to the Horn. I own, that if they uſe it often, this Ointment will come dearer than the Train Oil, becauſe the Bruſh will ſuck up a great deal of it: And on the other Side, if our delicate Coachmen and Grooms were obliged to rub the Hoof with their Hands, it would undoubtedly injure them much, though it would ſave the Ointment, becauſe thoſe fine Fingers of theirs were not made to be daubed.

An Ointment for all Sorts of Feet.

This Ointment, beſides that it keeps well the Feet of Horſes that are already ſo, will in Courſe of Time, if conſtantly uſed, make thoſe that are bad good and ſound.

Take *Yellow Wax*, *Black Roſin*, *Burgundy Pitch*, *Turpentine*, *Honey*, *Hog's Lard*, *Mutton Suet*, *Sweet Oil*, each half a Pound: Boil the whole together in a large Pot over a Charcoal Fire, where there is no Flame, and take care that nothing boils over of theſe combuſtible Ingredients. The whole being well boiled, pour it into earthen Pots, in order to cool for keeping. No Man that keeps Horſes ſhould be without this, becauſe a Horſe that has bad Feet can be of little Service, till you get them cured.

Rat's Tails on the Legs.

This Defect is more common on the hind than on the fore Legs, though the latter are not quite exempt from it. It is thus known: When you ſee from the hind Part of the Fetlock, up along the Nerves, a kind of Line or Channel, that ſeparates the Hair to both ſides, this is a Rat's Tail. In Summer, there appears a kind of ſmall dry Scab along this Channel, and in Winter there iſſues out a ſtinking Humidity, like the Water from the Legs. This Defect is not common to delicate Horſes, who have ſcarce any Hair on their Legs, and who have been nouriſhed in dry Paſture, and among Mountains; but it happens often to fat Coach or Dray Horſes, that have been brought up in ſtrong, humid, marſhy Lands,

CHAP. LXX, LXXI, LXXII.

Lands, and conſequently are fuller of Humours than the others. You muſt uſe the ſame Remedies here as to Horſes that have the Waters. A Horſe may work however, notwithſtanding this Diſorder; becauſe it ſeldom lames him, at leaſt unleſs it be in Winter, when he is obliged to work in Mud, Ice, or Snow. It occaſions a Stiffneſs in the Legs, and makes them trot like Foxes, almoſt without bending their Joints.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the Capelet, or Paſſe-Campane.

THIS is a Sort of Tumour which begins at the Hough behind, and deſcends along the Nerve. It is very hard to the Touch, and conſiſts of a Humour which is ſoft at firſt, but hardens with Time, and forms itſelf into a Callus. While it is yet ſoft, if you take care to know it, the Cure is eaſy with only a Quart of Wine, and as much Urine mixed together, and having a Quarter of a Pound of Salt Armoniac melted in them. Apply ſome of this with a Sponge upon the ſwelled Part, and bind it on with a Bullock's Bladder, to keep it from evaporating, and a broad Ligature. Repeat this eight or ten ſubſequent Days, and the Capelet will diſappear. But if you wait till it is quite hardened, there is nothing but the Fire can cure it; which muſt be given in the following Manner.

Make a Line in the Middle, drawing it from the Point of the Hough down the whole Length; then make three more on each Side, as you are directed to do round the Fetlock for Wind-galls. Treat the Horſe afterwards in the ſame Manner as in the Article for that Diſtemper.

Another Remedy for the Capelet.

If the Caſe be recent, you may take Spirit of *Turpentine*, and *Wine Vinegar*, an equal Quantity of each, and beat them up together. Rub in ſome of this very hard with your Hand twice every Day, againſt the Hair, and continue it till the Horſe is well. For want of Spirit of *Turpentine*, you may make Uſe of Brandy and a Bit of Soap, with which rub the diſordered Part, three Times a Day, till it is well.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the Eſperon, or Spur.

THIS Diſorder comes juſt above the preceding, but ſeldom makes a Horſe limp: It diſfigures him, and that is all. Your ſprightly, gay, ſtartliſh Horſes are moſt ſubject to it, becauſe it proceeds from their Skittiſhneſs with their hind Legs, when they ſtrike the Hough againſt a Bar, a Pillar, a Wall, or whatever is in their Way, and by the Violence of the Blow bruiſe the Part, and make it ſwell, ſo that it looks like a Bladder full of Wind. If this Hurt be recent, it is eaſy to cure with only eight or ten Pails of cold Spring Water, bathing the Tumour well and often with a large Sponge. This will ſoon diſſipate it, and may be entirely depended on, ſimple as it is, provided the Hurt be freſh, and there is no Neglect in making the Application. A more inveterate Spur may be cured with the ſame Remedies as the Capelet, if you take away every Thing he can hit himſelf againſt in his Gambols.

If the Diſorder has been of a Year's ſtanding, or more, you muſt open the Swelling with your Fire-Iron, claſping the Skin faſt in your Hand, to keep the Iron from touching the Bone of the Hough. Having pierced it, a red Water will come out. You muſt then dreſs the Wound with Tents of Tow, dipped the firſt time in warm Wine and Sugar melted in it. Afterwards dreſs it every Day with the Tents in the ſame Form, dipping them in Tincture of Succotrine Aloes; and continue thus till he is well.

CHAP. LXXII.

Relaxed, or extended Nerves.

IT is not uncommon for a Horſe to relax by a Strain, either when he is at Work, under any Operation of the Farrier, or at any other Time, the Nerve which goes from the Point of the Hough up the hind Part of the Thigh. This Accident often makes him ſtop ſhort, being no more able to move his Leg, nor to ſupport himſelf on it, than if the Bone of his Thigh was broken.

A Remedy.

A Remedy.

CHAP. LXXIII, LXXIV.

Take Spirit of Turpentine and Wine Vinegar, the same Quantity of each, and beat them up well together: Dip in this two large Sponges, and apply them along the Nerve: Bind them on with a good thick Wrapper, a Bullock's Bladder, and a broad Swathe over all. Repeat this Dressing eight or ten Days running; and take special Care that the Horse never lies down all that Time, nor indeed for a Fortnight or three Weeks longer: For which Purpose you must tie him with four Reins, two to the Rack and two to the Manger; so that he can neither eat nor drink without moving out of his Place. The eight Days being over, rub the Part on the following Days, to the Number of ten or twelve, with this Composition.

Take *Oil* of *Bays*, *Ointment* of *Marshmallows*, *Ointment* of *Poplar-Buds*, *Ointment* of *Roses*, *Honey*, each a Quarter of a Pound. Let the Whole be well mixed together, and used once a Day, which will completely fortify the Nerve. At a Month's End the Hair will be come again, and then you may work the Horse as before.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Disorders in the Haunch.

A Horse is very often lame in the Haunch, but the Difficulty is, to know what that Lameness proceeds from. Almost every one treats a Horse that is lame here, as prick'd, or unhaunched: Yet the Causes of such Lameness are many and various.

First, He may have received a very hard Blow upon either Side of the Croup. When this is the Case, there is no great Danger.

Secondly, He may have been struck upon the Corner of the Haunch, which is over the Bone of the Joint, and yet nothing be displaced. This is more to be feared than the other; but a Horse may be cured of it in a little Time, with good Remedies.

In coming out at a Door, and turning too short, a Horse may strike the Corner of his Haunch, and lame himself.

He may also hit it in the Hip-joint, which is that Joint that appears next to the Flanks, of the same Height as the Shoulder. This Part is very sensible, and a Horse may be lamed here for a long while, though nothing be put out.

Farriers confound all these Accidents with one another, and all Hurts in the Haunch are with them the same: They always ignorantly say, your Horse is unhaunched, or pricked; and have recourse to Remedies that can be of no Effect.

We will treat of the Dislocation of the Haunch after we have gone through the other Cases.

When you have discovered the Hurt to be from one of the above Causes, make the following Composition.

Take *Linseeds*, beat or bruised in a Mortar; *Rosin*, *Pitch*, *Turpentine*, *Sweet Oil*, *Honey*, each 8 Ounces; *Lees* of *Wine*, a Quart. Boil the Whole gently together a full Quarter of an Hour, and when you take it off the Fire, stir it till it is of a proper Warmth to be applied to the Part afflicted. Renew the Application twice a Day, and every Time clap over it a Piece of soft Paper, or a Bladder, or a Bit of moistened Parchment, which will give it the better Effect. The same Composition is good for the Reins, for relaxed Nerves, and for tired Legs. If you continue it for ten or twelve Days, you will discover very manifest good Effects: But the Horse must not lie down all the while, when you use this Remedy.

CHAP. LXXIV.

A false Step.

WHAT we call a false Step is a Strain that a Horse receives by some violent Wrench, occasioned by his Foot slipping into a Hole, or by travelling on uneven Ground, or in frosty Weather.

If the Hurt is fresh, it will be the more easily cured. The best Way is, immediately upon his receiving the Strain, or as soon as you can come at any running Water, to lead him in, and make him stand there a full Hour; which will prevent any Lameness ensuing.

CHAP. LXXV.

ing. Repeat this Bathing four or five Times within twenty-four Hours, leaving him as long in the Water each time. This will entirely cure him, without any other Remedy. But if it be an old Hurt, as all the Ligaments of the Joint muſt have ſuffered, the Caſe may be a long Time in Hand, in ſpite of the beſt Remedies. There will appear to be very good Reaſons for this, if we conſider, that as the Legs of a Horſe carry a great Burthen, they muſt be fatigued; and that moreover he cannot lie down nor riſe without much Pain, and many Efforts. It is not the ſame with a Man, who keeps his Bed, or carries his Arm in a Sling, for a violent Sprain; and therefore, as he gives the Part no fatigue, it is ſoon well.

A Remedy for a falſe Step.

Take Tar and Rye-Flour, with the ſame Quantity of Turpentine, and half as much Pig's Fat: Mix the Whole together, and ſtew them over the Fire to the Conſiſtence of a very thick Pap. When you take it off, add a Gill Glaſs of Spirit of Turpentine, and ſtir it well in. Apply this, as hot as the Horſe can bear, round his Fetlock, with Tow, a Pig's Bladder, and a good broad Bandage; for any Thing narrow would make the Nerve above ſwell. Repeat the ſame Dreſſing every Day, till you ſee it has it's Effect. The Tow which was uſed firſt may ſerve a long Time, only putting on a little freſh Pultice when you open it. If you do this Night and Morning, inſtead of once a Day, the Horſe will be the ſooner cured.

When you perceive that the Horſe mends, you may leave off the above Remedy, and only uſe in it's place Marſh-Mallows Roots, boiled and beat to a Pap. There is no Occaſion to apply them warm. Towards the End of the Cure you muſt cleanſe the Part with warm Water and Soap, and afterwards take the Horſe out, and give him an eaſy Airing, without forcing him to any Thing, for fear of renewing the Strain. You muſt ride him to prevent him from leaping, which he might do if led by a Servant. He muſt not lie down during the whole Cure, nor ſtir out of his Place before this.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Comb, or Crown-Scab.

THE Crown-Scab is occaſioned by Humours that fall upon a Horſe's Feet, round the Crown, and juſt above the Hoof. It ſends out a thick Moiſture, like muddy Water, which prevents the Hair of the Crown from falling down equally upon the Hoofs, and makes it divide all round like the Teeth of a Comb. This Diſeaſe never happens to Horſes bred up in dry and hilly Countries, but to thoſe only who have been uſed to low and moiſt Meadow-Grounds. It is very common to Horſes who have abundance of Hair upon their Legs. There is no great Difficulty in curing it; but then you muſt not work the Horſe in a large Town, among the Dirt, Rubbiſh, and Filth that may clog up the Streets. It may even come again another Winter, after it has been once cured, though the Horſe has fed ever ſo drily, provided his Feet have not been kept very clean.

The Remedy is only to cut off the Hair with a Pair of Sciſſars, as cloſe as you can; and then rub all round the Crown, Night and Morning, with black Soap; and at the End of two Days to waſh it with warm Wine: And when the Foot is dry, you muſt begin again with the black Soap, and repeat it five or ſix Days running, waſhing the Part every other Day with hot Wine. Thus you will ſee the Hair become ſmooth, and the Crown-Scab diſappear.

Another Remedy for the Crown-Scab.

Though it has been ſaid that this Diſeaſe happens to Horſes that have much Hair on their Legs, I do not mean by that, that all Horſes who have much Hair there are ſubject to it. It proceeds alſo from ſudden Chills, and an ill Management of Horſes when they work in Mud; and likewiſe when a Horſe is put up in the Stable, without having his Legs, and even his whole Body well rubbed down; for this will cauſe thoſe Humidities to fall down upon the lower Part of the Legs; and the Filth continuing there, produces ſmall Bliſters that break, and throw out a Moiſture, which between whiles fetches off the Hair, and running down in Channels, makes the Figure of the Teeth of a Comb, as before deſcribed. If the foregoing Remedy does not ſucceed to your Satisfaction (though it be very good, provided the Horſe be kept clean) make uſe of the following. Take

Take *Unguentum Pompholigos*, *Unguentum Nutritum*, *Unguentum Neapolitanum*, each one Ounce: The Whole being well mixed together, rub with it the Place where the Combs appear, ten or twelve Days running, having firſt ſhaved off the Hair. CHAP. LXXVI.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Watery Sores on the Legs.

THIS Defect happens to Horſes loaded with Hair on their Legs, and fed in ſuch Countries as the preceding. To diſtinguiſh them, obſerve the lower Part of the Legs, and if you find them ſwelled, eſpecially thoſe behind, between the Fetlock and the Heel, and that there iſſues from them a ſtinking Moiſture, conclude this to be the Water in the Legs; which is often the Fore-runner of the two ſubſequent Diſeaſes, and therefore ſhould never be neglected. To ſtop the Courſe of it, begin by taking ſome black Hellebore Root, and ſteeping it in Wine Vinegar: Then make an Inciſion behind in the upper Part of each Thigh, juſt over the Buttock; you muſt a little looſen the Skin in theſe Inciſions, that there may be Room to put in the Hellebore, to about the Size of one's Finger, and then give a Stitch at each Cleft, to keep it in. Leave it there till it drops out of itſelf, in which Time it will draw away abundance of Matter, and by that Means give a Revulſion to the ill Humours that may deſcend. If the Swelling does not diminiſh, ſhave off the Hair all round the Leg, ſo far as it extends, and as the Moiſture appears, in order to apply the following Remedies.

A Remedy for watery Legs.

After having ſhaved off the Hair behind the Fetlock, cut the latter acroſs the Spur, and looſen the Skin from the Fleſh on both Sides of the Cleft, that you may gently find a Way to a thin Skin full of Water, in the Shape of a little Bladder, and about as large as the End of one's Finger. Take this away eaſily, for fear of hurting the Nerves and Ligaments that hold the Joints of the Fetlock. Then foment the Wound with freſh Urine, and wrap it with a Bandage, and Tow dipped in Spirit of Turpentine, keeping it cloſe that no Air may enter. You muſt leave on this firſt Dreſſing thrice twenty-four Hours; and when you take it off, have another ready to clap on in a Moment, without ſtaying to look at the Wound, which you muſt treat in this Manner till it is quite cloſed up. This laſt Operation is very good, and cuts off the Communication of ill Humours that may fall upon the Legs: But if you have no Farrier that knows how to perform it delicately, have Recourſe to the following Remedies.

A Remedy for watery Sores.

Take *Litharge*, 2 Pounds; *Verdigreaſe*, *Green Copperas*, *Common Alum*, *White Copperas*, *Gall-Nuts*, each 1 Pound: Reduce the whole to Powder, and ſteep it twenty-four Hours in a Gallon of Vinegar: Then with a Sponge dipped in this waſh lightly, twice every Day, the Parts which the Water ouzes from, continuing to do ſo till the Horſe is well. The Hair muſt be here cut off.

Another for the ſame Diſtemper.

Take *Verdigreaſe*, *Gall-Nuts*, *Green Copperas* and *White Copperas*, all finely powdered, each two Ounces; *Roch Alum*, 1 Ounce; *White-Wine Vinegar*, three Bottles: Pound the Drugs, and then boil the Whole in a large earthen Pot. Uſe this every Day, Night and Morning, to foment the Horſe's Legs till they are well.

Another Remedy for ſcabby Legs.

Take *Æthiops Mineral*, (made with equal Parts of *Sulphur* and *Quickſilver*) 4 Ounces; *Verdigreaſe*, *Roch Alum*, *Gall-Nuts*, *Pomegranate Bark*, all powdered, each 2 Ounces; *Hog's Lard*, 1 Pound: Mix the Powders with your Lard cold in a Mortar for an Ointment, which apply to the Scabs.

Another for watery or ſcabby Legs.

Take *Roch Alum*, and *White Copperas*, a Pound of each; powder them, and put them into 2 Gallons of Water, which boil to the Conſumption of half. You may keep this Water as long as you pleaſe, in order to uſe in the following Manner.

Dip

CHAP. LXXVII, LXXVIII.

Dip a ſmall Spunge in it once every Day, and draw it lightly over the Parts that diſcharge a Humour. If the Graps begin to run, this Water alone is ſufficient to cure them. But in order to prevent their returning again, when Winter comes on, you muſt purge the Horſes that have been attacked with them, and keep their Legs very neat and clean, in order to turn back the Humours: For, without very great Care, you may have Warts at laſt come in the Room of Graps, and then you will have much more Trouble to cure your Horſe than before. They are both indeed of the ſame Kind; with this Difference, that the Graps only grow to the Skin, and are ſmaller and more numerous; whereas Warts are large, and grow to the Fleſh, and ſometimes to the Nerves. Theſe laſt are the worſt Sort of all; for ſome of them ſometimes are bigger than Nuts, and are with great Difficulty removed, eſpecially after they have been long growing.

CHAP. LXXVII.

A Remedy for Warts.

IT is needleſs, I believe, to repeat the Rules for diſtinguiſhing of Warts: Our Buſineſs at preſent is to know how to get rid of them. Firſt then, you muſt rub them every Day with * *Lapis Infernalis*, and afterwards apply the ſame Remedies that are preſcribed for Graps. Continue the Uſe of the Stone till they quite diſappear; but touch them with it very eaſily, eſpecially if they grow to the Nerves, which you may readily diſcover. For want of the *Lapis Infernalis*, apply ſome of the following Stone pulveriſed, and put the Remedies over it.

A Stone to eat off Warts, and dead or proud Fleſh.

Take *Green Copperas*, *Wine Vinegar*, *Urine*, each 1 Pound; put them all into a glazed earthen Pipkin, and ſet them over a gentle Charcoal Fire till the Humidity is quite evaporated, and the whole becomes dry: Then augment the Fire, till what there remains becomes as hard as a Stone. Take off your Pipkin red-hot, and put it into a Cellar, or ſome other cool Place, a whole Night. In that Time the Stone will looſen itſelf from the Pot, and you may uſe it in Powder, as above directed.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Fleſhy Frogs.

WHAT we call Fleſhy Frogs are never found but on the Fore-feet. It is no ſmall Inconvenience, becauſe every Horſe that has them muſt have a large, and conſequently a very heavy Foot. Such a Horſe fatigues himſelf more than another, and cannot, for that Reaſon, do ſo much Work as one that is well. The Caſe is known by only taking up a Horſe's Feet and looking at them, to ſee if they ſpread very much, and if the Frog grows as high as the Shoe. It is this that hinders a Horſe from working upon any Pavement, or rough Ground, becauſe the Frog, by growing ſo high, comes to the Ground or Pavement, and is ſo bruiſed as to make the Creature lame. It is uſual to ſhoe ſuch Horſes with large Froſt-nails; but that is both a troubleſom and expenſive Method, becauſe they muſt be new ſhod as often as the Nails wear down, or the Lameneſs returns. They who cannot diſtinguiſh fat Frogs from low Heels are often deceived, and have their Horſes ſhod as for the latter Defect. They puzzle themſelves about Opening the Heels, and divide them from the Frogs with their Buttreſs, by which Means they take away the Strength of that Quarter which the Branches of the Shoe ought to bear on, cauſe the Heels to cloſe up, and make the Horſe lame: Whereas they ought not to ſeparate the Frog, but rather to fortify and nouriſh the Heels with good Foot-Ointment, bound on with Liſt. This will make them grow, but not very ſuddenly; becauſe, as I ſaid before, the Horn of a Horſe's Foot is a very hard Subſtance. It requires at leaſt five or ſix Months to reſtore Feet that are ſpoiled; and conſequently, there muſt be full as much Time for Heels that are naturally weak to become ſtrong.

* The beſt and only true *Lapis Infernalis* is made by evaporating the ſtrongeſt Soap Lees (called Capital Soap Lees) in an earthen Pipkin over a gentle Fire, to the Conſiſtence of a Stone. It is then the ſtrongeſt and ſafeſt Cauſtick yet known.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Full, or clogged-up Feet.

CHAP. LXXIX, LXXX, LXXXI.

WHAT we call a full or clogged-up Foot is a capital Defect, becauſe very difficult to be cured. Nothing can be done for it without great Pains, and what we can do at moſt is ſo little, that it is hardly worth while to take them. A Horſe in this Condition can do very little Service; not being proper either for the Saddle, or for drawing upon the Stones. He can be uſeful only at Plough, and that too muſt be in very light Ground.

The Way of ſhoeing him is with vaulted Shoes, that he may bear only on the Edge of the Horn; and to keep this good, you muſt rub it often with Foot-Ointment, from the Crown down to the Bottom: Otherwiſe the Horn will break, after which there can be no Poſſibility of faſtening a Shoe to it; and indeed the Shoe is then worth more than the Horſe.

CHAP. LXXX.

Circled Feet.

CIrcled Feet are very eaſy to be known. They are when you ſee little Excreſcencies round the Hoof, which encloſe the Foot, and appear like ſo many ſmall Circles. Dealers who have ſuch Horſes never fail to raſp round their Hoofs, in order to make them ſmooth; and to conceal the Raſping, when they are to ſhew them for Sale, they black the Hoofs all over; for without that one may eaſily perceive what has been done, and the ſeeing the Mark of the Raſp is a Proof that any Horſe is ſubject to this Accident. As to the Cauſes of it, in ſome it proceeds from the Remains of an old Diſtemper; in others, from their having been foundered, and the Diſeaſe cured without any Care taken of the Feet; whereupon the Circulation of the Blood not being regularly made, eſpecially round the Crown, between the Hair and the Horn, the Part loſes it's Nouriſhment, and contracts or enlarges itſelf in Proportion as the Horſe is worked. If theſe Circles were only on the Surface, our Jockies Method of raſping them down would even then be good for nothing: But they form themſelves alſo within the Feet as well as without, and conſequently preſs on the ſenſible Part, and make a Horſe limp with ever ſo little Labour. One may compare a Horſe in this Condition to a Man that has Corns on his Feet, and yet is obliged to walk a long Way in Shoes that are too tight and ſtubborn. A Horſe therefore is worth a great deal leſs on this Account; notwithſtanding that one may in Time, by continued daily Application of the Foot-Ointment, bring him a little to himſelf: But this muſt be a Work of Time indeed, becauſe his Feet muſt be quite changed before they can be good; which, with all the Care you can take, they will hardly be in leſs than ten or twelve Months. You may work him however eaſily in the mean while, obſerving always, when you put him up, to cleanſe the Inſide of his Feet well, and fill them with Cow-Dung fried with Pig's Fat and a little Vinegar: And even if he does not go out of the Stable, never fail to do this twice or thrice every Week, till the Circles on the Feet are gone.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Battered Soles.

A Battered Sole is when a Horſe that has pretty flat Feet loſes a Shoe, and travels for ſome Time without it; or when he gets a Stone in his Foot, which is kept in by the Shoe, and walks upon it till it bruiſes the Part. If this Stone continues there long, and you are obliged to pull it out, you are certain what made your Horſe lame: But when it drops out of itſelf, ſome ignorant Perſons look for the Cauſe of their Horſe's Lameneſs, when that Cauſe no longer exiſts. The beſt Way therefore, is to get him inſtantly unſhod, and have his Feet pared: After that examine them well, by ſtriking gently with a Farrier's Hammer all round, to ſee if he has been any where pricked in Shoeing. If you do not find any Thing thus, take up the Foot again, and preſs it all round gradually with Pincers, obſerving if he no where winces, and catches away his Foot. Even this may not be ſufficient to find the Cauſe of his Malady: You muſt next take the Hammer therefore, and ſtrike him on the Sole, and if he ſhews then any Signs of Pain, you may know

CHAP. LXXXII, LXXXIII. know what the Grievance proceeds from. In order to remedy it, you muſt apply ſome healing Compoſition; or fill the Foot Night and Morning with Cow-Dung, fried with Hog's Lard and a little Vinegar. This, with Reſt and Time, will certainly cure it.

CHAP. LXXXII.

The Bone-Spavin.

WHEN the Bone-Spavin happens to a Horſe in one Leg only, it makes him lame; but when it ſeizes both, either behind or before, he does not limp at all. His Joints however are not free, and conſequently he cannot be ſure-footed. The Motion of the Joint between the Hoof and the Fetlock being impeded, it can be of no great Service: And when the Diſorder is alike in both Legs, and the Horſe is not lame, many People are ignorant how that Joint is formed, and what uſe it is of in walking. They buy ſuch Horſes without knowing them, and are not convinced of their Error till it is too late. You ſhould examine a Horſe thoroughly therefore before you buy him, and in particular ſee if all the Joints of his Fore-Legs move with equal Freedom. Moſt Horſes that have the Bone-Spavin are very apt to ſtart when you go to take up their Legs, and will hardly let you touch them with your Hand. Examine them well therefore with your Eye, and ſee if between the Fetlock and the Crown the Leg deſcends even and ſmooth; for if you ſee any Protuberance between the Fleſh and the Skin, that looks like a Sort of Knot or Kernel, you have found the Defect. If the Tumour be yet ſoft, it will be the more eaſily cured; but in time it grows very hard and callous, and conſequently very obſtinate. A Man that has cured twenty of theſe in his Life-time, cannot fairly promiſe for the twenty-firſt; for the Leg perhaps may be never the better, after all the good Treatment in the World. But if you have the good Fortune to take it in Hand at firſt, before the Swelling is grown hard, you muſt ſhave off the Hair upon it, and apply, once every Day, ſome of the ſtrong Ointment, which you will find in the Article of Blows on the Nerve. Continue this for about a Fortnight; after which, apply Marſhmallows Root, well boiled and pounded, and continue it alſo, once a Day, for a Fortnight or three Weeks longer, faſtening it on with a Bandage. One muſt not expect, however, that this Method will cure an old Bone-Spavin; for that you muſt unſole your Horſe, as the Farriers know how; and the Sole being raiſed, bleed him in the Foot, and then dreſs the Sole with Turpentine a little warm, and bind it faſt down with Tow and Splinters. The Foot being dreſſed, give him the Gooſe-foot Fire; that is, draw a Line upon the Middle of the Joint, from before the Fetlock to the Fore-part of the Crown; and then draw three others on each Side, encircling the Joint with them all round as they deſcend. The Fire ſhould be given more fiercely here than for Windgalls: But the firſt Line ſhould not be ſo ſtrong as the others, becauſe it ſerves only for a Guide to make the others by. When you have given the Fire according to Art, in the Manner here ſet down, you have room to hope the Diſorder will go away, and the Horſe become pretty free in the Joints: But you ought not to expect as much Service from him as if he had never had any Defect: He may be fit for ſhort Excurſions, by way of Pleaſure, but not for any long Journey.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Spavins, or Blood-Spavins.

SPAVINS may come upon all Sorts of Horſes; but ſome are more ſubject to them than others, according to their Natures and Habits. As there are three Sorts of Spavins therefore, I ſhall ſhew what kind of Horſes are moſt liable to each particular Species. Dry Spavins happen moſt frequently upon ſlender delicate Horſes, ſuch as thoſe of *Spain*, *Italy*, *Portugal*, *Barbary*, and *Arabia*; or upon thoſe that are uſed to run in dry mountainous Grounds. They may come alſo by Deſcent; for if a Stone Horſe has the Spavin, out of twenty Mares he ſhall cover, nineteen will have Spavin-Foals. One ought to be very cautious, therefore, what Horſe we make uſe of to breed from.

Though the dry Spavin be a capital Defect, yet when a Horſe has it equally on both Sides, and is put to the Manage, provided he falls into the Hands of a good Maſter, and who has the Patience to put him well on the Haunches, this Horſe will be more ſprightly than any other, and more agreeable to the Sight, as both his Hams will beat exactly alike.

alike. But, whatever good Air he may have, it is impoſſible he ſhould be fit for the Field, and that for many Reaſons. Firſt, ſuch a Horſe never goes ſo ſwift, and yet gallops much harder than any others; ſo that an ancient Man, or one of a weak Conſtitution, cannot long bear the Fatigue he muſt give him in his Loins. Even in Pacing, or Trotting, he lifts up his hind Legs ſo high, and brings them down ſo haſtily, and then catches them up again, as if he trod on Thorns, that there is no bearing it. When a Horſe has the Spavin but on one Leg, it is a very diſagreeable thing. You cannot take too much Care therefore, as I ſaid before, of the Houghs of delicate Horſes; and when a Swelling ever ſo ſmall appears upon the Flat of the lower Part of the Hough within ſide, though the Horſe may not limp, you ought to be apprehenſive that in time, and with a little Labour, the Spavin will increaſe on him. CHAP. LXXXIII.

The ſecond Kind is called the fat Spavin, which comes almoſt in the ſame Place as the other, but is larger. It is moſt incident to Horſes that have been bred in fat marſhy Lands: And this kind, ſoon or late, lames a Horſe, if regard be not had to him at the beginning. When it happens to two oppoſite Legs, the Horſe does not limp any more than in the former; but then he is good for little, and the Effects of this Spavin are different from that of the other: For whereas in that the Horſe lifts his Feet very high, and bends his Houghs with Violence; in this, on the contrary, he bends his Houghs with Pain, and conſequently is very unfit for the Manage, as well as for the Field.

If a Horſe has this Spavin but in one Leg, and works ever ſo little, he will certainly limp; and thoſe who are unacquainted with Spavins, look for the Cauſe of it in his Feet or Haunches: But, that no Man may be deceived, the Seat of each of the three Kinds is marked in the Plates.

The third Kind is called the Ox Spavin, and is the worſt of them all three. It will admit however of a Cure, as well as the others.

A Remedy for Spavins.

Take five or ſix Bits of Houſe-Tile, rub them round, to about the Size of a Crown-Piece, and make them red-hot; then having thrown the Horſe, and rubbed the Spavin well with a Stick, made on purpoſe, or the Handle of a Hammer, take the Tile-Sherds out of the Fire with Pincers; put them into a Linen-cloth that has been dipped in Vinegar, and apply them to the Part, leaving them there ſome time. When they are a little cool, heat them again, and put them in the ſame Cloth as before; and thus apply them ſucceſſively, till the Hair comes off with ever ſo little pulling, as if the Part had been ſcalded. All this being done, let the Horſe alone till the Eſchar falls off the burnt Place: Then rub it with a Pomatum, made of Hog's Lard and Honey, till the Hair comes again.

Another Remedy for Spavins.

Though the preceding Remedy has very often ſucceeded, this which follows is as much to be depended on. It is a ſtrong Unguent, which is fit for all Sorts of hard Swellings and Calloſities that we want to get rid of.

How to make the Strong Ointment.

Take Euphorbium, Corroſive Sublimate, black Hellebore, Spaniſh-Flies, and crude Mercury, of each one Ounce; Flowers of Sulphur, two Ounces; Oil of Bays, ſix Ounces: The Drugs being all pulverized, kill the Mercury in the Flowers of Sulphur, till you can ſee none of it: Then mix the whole in the Oil of Bays, and make an Ointment, with which anoint the Spavin, or any other hard Protuberance, that you have a mind to diſſipate. (You may ſave the trouble of mixing the Mercury and Sulphur, by buying three Ounces of Æthiops Mineral). Uſe it once a Day, the Hair being firſt ſhaved off, for three Days ſucceſſively. In that time an Eſchar will fall off; and then you may dreſs the Part with the ſame Pomatum as is preſcribed in the preceding Article.

Another Remedy for Spavins.

I could inſert many Remedies for Spavins, which would be ſucceſsful: But the beſt way of all is, to give the Fire, when you can get a Farrier that underſtands his Buſineſs. In order to this, he muſt throw the Horſe, and then rub the Humour with his Stick, or Hammer-handle:

CHAP. LXXXIV, LXXXV.

mer-handle: Then let him draw a Line with the hot Iron or Fire-Knife deſcribed in the Plate. He muſt take his Stroke downwards, through the Middle of the Spavin; and then make three more Lines on each ſide. But the Operator ſhould have a light Hand, and not cut quite through the Skin, though he draws the Knife ſeveral times over each Line. He muſt never let the Knife paſs upwards, againſt the Hair, but always downwards. After the ſeven Lines, make four Holes with your Fire-Iron, and put in each a Pellet of black Pitch, which you muſt melt with your Iron. You will ſee the Manner of doing all this in one of the Plates. After having given the Fire, put Ink upon all the Lines, and continue this Application for ten ſucceſſive Days. Afterwards make uſe of the Ointment for Burns, that has been already preſcribed, and continue it till the Skin is quite united. Every Horſe that has had the Fire given him, for Spavins, Swellings in the Hough, or Windgalls, ought to be kept three or four Months without Work; and if poſſible to avoid it, never perform this Operation in Summer, eſpecially when the Flies are plenty. Neither muſt you do it at the very time that the Horſe limps, becauſe then he will never be cured. Let him reſt a Fortnight, or three Weeks. The beſt Way is to give the Fire as ſoon as you perceive the Spavin, without waiting till the Horſe is lame.

Thoſe who are no Judges of Spavins, often deceive themſelves; for as ſoon as the Horſe has reſted a little, his Lameneſs is over, which was owing only to his Work. There is yet another Sort of Spavin, below the Hough, and on the Outſide; whereas the true Spavins come within. The ſame Remedies are equally good for the Jardon, which is a callous Tumour near the ſame Part.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Varices.

THESE are Swellings that come withinſide the Hough, very near the Seat of the Sallenders, in a certain Void that may be ſeen in that Place, where there paſſes a large Vein, which deſcends from the Flat of the Thigh to the Bottom of the Leg. Varices proceed from the violent Extenſion of this Vein, which forms a Sort of Knot, about as big as a Filbert; and which by degrees grows as large as a Tennis-Ball. It moves when you touch it, and ſeems not to be fixed; ſo that one might take it for a Bowl between the Fleſh and the Skin.

To cure this, you muſt cut the Vein above and below the Hough. Preparatory to this, you muſt make a Ligature at top and at bottom, to keep back the Blood: Then make the Inciſion between the Ligatures, and afterwards diſengage the Tumour from the Fleſh. If a Farrier dares not undertake this Operation, though very eaſy, and without Danger, let him take a hot Iron, pointed at the End, and pierce the Middle of the Swelling, taking Care not to touch any Part of the Joint of the Hough. At the Bottom of the Orifice, let him put ſome little Pieces of Corroſive Sublimate, and fill it up with Sulphur or Pitch: Then, with the Point of the burning Iron, let him melt theſe Ingredients, that the Sublimate may produce it's Effect, and corrupt this ſuperfluous Fleſh, which will conſequently die away. You may then dreſs it like any common Wound.

CHAP. LXXXV.

A Veſſigon.

THERE are two Sorts of theſe: The firſt is called a ſimple Veſſigon; the ſecond, a windy Veſſigon, which is the moſt dangerous. It is a ſmall Skin, which is found in the Middle of the Flat of the Hough, and which, being now ſwelled, forms a Bag of red Humour, that in time makes a Horſe lame. All Horſes have this Skin, but they are not all ſubject to have it filled in this Manner. The ſooner you take the Cure of a Veſſigon in Hand, the better.

The ſimple Veſſigon appears without the Ham, and the other within. If you ſqueeze it with the Hand on one Side, it rebounds to the other. This Diſorder, when recent, is eaſy to cure; but if you let it get ever ſo little head, it becomes a difficult Caſe.

In ſome Horſes, it is the Effect of too much Fatigue; in others, of a violent Strain. The latter Sort, how large ſoever it may be, is moſt eaſy to cure. As ſoon as you perceive it, take about a Quart of Wine Vinegar, and the ſame Quantity of Urine; mix them together, and

and diſſolve in them a Quartern of Sal Armoniac, cold. With a Sponge dipped in this Compoſition waſh both Sides of the Hough ſeven or eight times a Day, and continue to do ſo for about a Fortnight, in which time the Swelling will uſually go away. That this Remedy may be the more efficacious, it is proper to have two Sponges, and dip them in the ſame Compoſition, applying one on each Side, and putting over them a Pig's or other Bladder, with a good Compreſs of Linen Cloth all round the Hough, ſewed on cloſe, that nothing may come out. Bind down the Whole with Liſt, but not too tight; for Farriers often make their Bandages ſo tight, as to ſwell the Nerves, and lame the Horſe; and then they lay the blame of their ill Succeſs on the Medicines, without reflecting that they themſelves are the Cauſe of it. If the Remedy does not ſucceed, it is a Sign the Caſe is of longer ſtanding than was imagined: And when that appears uſe the following. CHAP. LXXXVI.

Take about two Quarts of Spirit of Wine, in which diſſolve half a Pound of Camphire, and uſe it in the ſame manner as the former, and about the ſame time. If neither of theſe has any Effect, which would be ſomething extraordinary, you muſt abſolutely give the Fire on both Sides the Hough, in the ſame manner deſcribed in one of the Plates, under the Name of Fern-Fire.

If a Man expects to ſucceed in this, and to get Reputation by what he does, he muſt never give the Fire, either for the Veſſigon, the Spavin, the Curve, or the Windgall at any time but about Autumn, when the Flies diſappear; and let the Horſe be kept all the Winter in the Stable, without going ever abroad. Even in the next Spring you muſt take him out only in the Morning early, to walk him through the dewy Graſs, or green Corn. Having done this for ſome Months, you may be aſſured that no Accident will ever happen in the Place where the Fire was given.

I remember to have ſeen my deceaſed Father, as I elſewhere took notice, perform this Operation by way of Precaution to Horſes for *Lewis* XIV's own riding; and have practiſed it a long while my ſelf with Succeſs, without any Accident, even to Horſes whoſe Legs ſeemed quite ruined; and they have done nine or ten Years Service afterwards. For a Mare, or a Gelding, inſtead of keeping them in the Stable, during the Spring, the ſhorteſt Way is to put them to Graſs; but a Stone-Horſe, if he be not kept in the Stable, muſt be in a Cloſe by himſelf, and walked in the Morning as before directed. It is trifling to object the great Expence of keeping ſo long: For if the Creature becomes uſeful afterwards, that Expence will not be regretted. The grand Point is, to have the Fire well given: I have never known ſix Perſons able to do it to Perfection, though every Country Farrier thinks himſelf ſo. A Farrier, I inſiſt on it, cannot have a light Hand, and conſequently cannot uſe his Tools with Delicacy. If he makes his Knives too hot, he cuts the Skin quite through; if not hot enough, he tears it. He muſt have ſeven or eight of them, to change as they cool, and not heat them in the Forge, but in a Charcoal Fire. It ſignifies nothing to tie a Horſe for this Operation. You muſt abſolutely throw him down, as if you were going to geld him. After having given the Fire, there muſt be Ink put on every Line for nine ſucceſſive Days, in which time the Eſchar will fall off. You muſt mollify the Wound with Ointment of Marſh-Mallows, or Ointment of Roſes, every Day, till the Skins reunite. This may take up five or ſix Weeks.

The Method of giving the Fire comes from the *Arabians*, who do it in almoſt all Caſes; and a hundred Years ago it was quite unknown to us. They give it with Golden Knives, and formerly in *France* it was done with Silver. I have uſed theſe myſelf; but lately, Experience has convinced me that Steel Knives are as good.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

The Curb.

THIS Accident may happen in different Manners; as from the Veſſigon, of which we have treated. A Horſe often receives a Strain in Working, or by ſlipping his Foot in a Hole, or in marſhy Ground, out of which he pulls it with Pain, and by that Means wrenches his Hough, without diſlocating any thing: Yet the Creature may be lamed, without ſpeedy Care. The Ligaments of the Hough being ſtretched, cauſe a great Inflammation within; the Hough ſwells from the Middle, the Seat of the Veſſigon, to the Bottom, where Spavins and Varices appear; and if it be not ſpeedily cured, it becomes incurable; at leaſt without giving the Fire, which is the only Remedy; and that too

CHAP. LXXXVII.

too may fail in a very inveterate Caſe: But at the Beginning, you need only uſe the ſame Remedies, that are proper for Veſſigons, which having in part diſſipated the Tumour, make it more eaſy to bar the Vein, both above and below the Hough.

In order to bar a Vein, you muſt throw the Horſe: Then look for the Vein that proceeds from the Thigh along the Leg and the Joint of the Hough, within ſide: Make an Inciſion in it with a Biſtoury or Penknife; but firſt, with a light Hand, open the Skin, and with a wild Goat's Horn, or ſome other like Thing, diſengage it from the Skin and the Fleſh, between which it runs. When you have got the Horn under it, take a Piece of waxed Silk, or fine Cobler's End, and bind the Vein tight, that it may not bleed too much. Afterwards make another Opening above the Hough, and do the ſame as below: Then cut the Vein in two between theſe Ligatures, and with a Bit of cleft Stick, about three or four Inches long, take faſt hold of the End of it, and by turning the Stick gradually you will pull it out. Suppoſing it be a young Horſe, there is no great damage if the Vein breaks, becauſe of the Ligatures above and below. It is needleſs to uſe any other Medicine in dreſſing the Wounds than Salt Butter, applied Night and Morning. Let there be at leaſt an Ounce of Salt, powdered very fine, to a Quartern of Butter; and this will do more good than all the Ointments you can get.

If by chance an End of the Vein remains, or any Impurity enters the Wound, that may cauſe an Inflammation, you muſt uſe Ointment of Marſh-Mallows, or a Bath made of the Roots of that Herb, twice every Day. For want of both, Lees of Wine and Hog's Lard may ſerve the turn. Put about half a Pound of Lard to two Quarts of the Lees, and boil them well together, ſtirring afterwards till it is cold. With this rub the Swelling twice every Day. If the Curb be new, it will certainly be ſoon cured.

Moſt Farriers perform this Operation for the Spavin; but Experience ſhows their Ignorance in ſo doing, becauſe the Spavin has nothing to do with this Vein. It may be uſeful however for Varices. There are others who perform the ſame Operation for watery Sores, or Humours which fall down the Legs. I own my ſelf to have fallen into this Error, which I have now abandoned, ſince I have acquired a perfect Knowledge of the ſeveral Parts of a Horſe.

It is true that in barring a Vein for the Waters, ſome open it before it is bound, and draw out a great deal of Blood; after that they tie it above and below the Orifice, and cut it below the two Ligatures. This will relieve the Horſe for ſome time; but as the Arteries carry the Blood down, and it cannot aſcend again as uſual, it produces a greater abundance of Humours than before. For this Reaſon I by no Means approve of their Manner of Operation.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

General Remedies.

AFTER having taught the Knowledge of many Diſeaſes and Accidents, it is proper I ſhould inſert ſome neceſſary general Remedies, according to the Nature of each Diſorder, and the Convenience of thoſe who have the Care of a great Number of Horſes. For Example, a Horſe that eats and drinks well, and yet does not thrive, or one who by any Means is hindered from eating and drinking as uſual, ſhould have the following Remedy given him.

A Purge.

Every one ought to know that the moſt gentle Purge is ſometimes dangerous, and kills a Horſe, if he be not prepared for taking it ſome Days before. Many ignorant Perſons, when they ſee a Horſe's Dung in ſmall Balls, black and dry, and ſeeming even to be mixed with Blood, are of Opinion that he is burnt up within, and therefore ought to be purged. Becauſe they may have purged two or three ſuch without Preparation, and by chance ſucceeded, they imagine they muſt ſtill go on in the ſame Track; and when there happens any Accident to a Horſe, or they kill him by their Medicines, they inſiſt on the Juſtneſs of what they have done, and attribute the Misfortune to ſome other Cauſe.

When a Horſe is heated, and the Balls of his Dung are cloſe and hard, you muſt debar him of Oats, and only give him, for two or three Days running, Bran and warm Water. If he can bear Honey, you may put a little of that with the Maſh. The Evening before you purge him, adminiſter to him a laxative Gliſter, for which you will find a Receipt in this

this Book. The next Morning, after he has faſted five or ſix Hours, give him the follow- CHAP.
ing Pills, and let him faſt as long after he has taken them. You may repeat all this again LXXXVII.
in two or three Days, for it will never do any harm.

Purging Pills.

Take *Succotrine Aloes*, in Powder; the coarſe Sort of *Manna*, and *Honey*, of each two Ounces; *Salt Prunel*, powdered, half an Ounce. If the Horſe be ſtrong, half an Ounce more of *Manna* may be added. Mix the Whole together, and make it up into Pills of the Size of a Cheſnut, which roll in Liquorice Powder, and let him ſwallow them one after another. Give him a ſmall Glaſs of Wine after each, and when he has taken them all, leave him to himſelf. If you purge him for any Giddineſs of the Head, or Defluxion in the Eyes, add half an Ounce or an Ounce of powdered *Agarick*, in Proportion to the Horſe's Strength. The next Day, at the ſame Hour that you give him the Pills, if they do not yet work, take him out of the Stable, and walk or trot him till the Medicine begins to take effect: Then put him up again, and cover him warm. You muſt offer him nothing but warm Water, with Bran and Honey if he will take it. Let him have a good Maſh of this five or ſix Hours after the Purge begins to operate.

Another Way of purging a Horſe.

As all Purges are not alike, you muſt know the Diſtemper of a Horſe before you purge him. There are ſome Purges to cleanſe the Inteſtines; others for Pains of the Head, and others to purify the Maſs of Blood; whether in the Farcy, the Itch, the Reds, or any other Foulneſs. Having had the Precaution to prepare your Horſe, as before directed, and even blooded him, if there appear to be need of it, a Day or two before, let him take the following.

Take 6 Ounces of *Æthiops Mineral*, (which you may make yourſelf with 2 Ounces of *Quickſilver*, and 4 Ounces of *Flowers* of *Sulphur*, rubbing them in a Mortar till the *Quickſilver* is quite killed) half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel* in Powder, and a Quartern of *Freſh Butter*; make this into 8 Pills, roll them in Liquorice Powder, and give them as the preceding. This Purge is very good to cleanſe away all Corruption, and kill the Worms in the Body of a Horſe: But if his Lungs are ever ſo little damaged, it will haſten his Death, which is no great Matter, becauſe he is not in a Condition to do any more Service, and ſo the ſooner he goes the better. It is quite otherwiſe with Mankind, who may be uſeful on Earth after they are touched with a Conſumption, as well for the Management of their Families, as for civil Society.

How to make Liver of Antimony.

Take 4 Pounds of common *Salt Petre*, and 5 Pounds of *Antimony*: Beat them ſeparately to a coarſe Powder; then mix them, and put them both in a large Iron Mortar, or Pot. A Copper or Braſs Veſſel is not fit for the Purpoſe. Set it on fire with a Piece of Charcoal, and get out of the way as ſoon as you can; for the Wind and Smoke may take away a Man's Senſes, and ſuffocate him. You muſt let this cool four or five Hours in the open Air, and then turn up the Mortar on a Linen Cloth, to receive all that falls out of itſelf. The Liver of Antimony will remain at Bottom, and the Droſs at Top, on the Side where you ſet it on fire. You muſt divide the one from the other, which is very eaſy; and that being done, the Antimony will appear brown, almoſt of the Colour of a Bullock's Liver, and ſhining. Pound it, paſs it through a Sieve, and keep it for Uſe, according to the Preſcriptions in ſeveral Places of this Book. The Doſe of it ſingly is an Ounce Morning and Evening, mixed with the Horſe's Oats, or Bran; and let theſe be a little wet, that the Antimony may ſtick to them. The Doſe may ſerve in Gliſters, in the room of Salt Prunel. You may make alſo an Emetic Wine, to be given in the Draughts where ſuch Wine is mentioned as an Ingredient. If you get four Pounds, or four Pounds and a half of Liver of Antimony from the Whole, you are very well off.

How to make the Crocus Metallorum.

Crocus Metallorum is made in the ſame Manner as Liver of Antimony. The only Difference is, that in the Crocus the two Ingredients (Salt Petre and Antimony) are in equal

CHAP. LXXXVII.

equal Quantities. It is proper for the ſame Purpoſe, but the Liver of Antimony is the moſt ſalutary. The Doſe of the Crocus is half an Ounce Morning and Evening, given as before.

A Gliſter for a Looſeneſs.

Take a Gallon of *Emetic Wine*, and boil in it twenty or thirty *Acorns*, dried and powdered. When they are well boiled, let this Compoſition ſtand till it is of a proper Warmth to be adminiſtered: Then add a Quart of *Sweet Oil* to mollify the Bowels. One Gliſter of this will not be ſufficient; you muſt repeat it twice a Day for two or three Days running. You may alſo make a Draught with a Bottle of *Emetic Wine*, and a Dozen of *Acorns* in Powder. Two Days after let him take an Ounce of *Monks Rhubarb*, otherwiſe called *Raponti*, which will be as effectual as the true Eaſtern *Rhubarb*.

Another, for a Horſe that has taken a Purge, which has not worked.

Take Leaves of *Marſh-Mallows* and common *Mallows*, *Pellitory of the Wall* or Garden *Night-Shade*; or, for want of both *Lettuce* or *Succory*, or ſome of the *Caſſia Decoction* ſold at the Apothecaries: You may boil any of theſe Herbs with his Bran, or mix the Decoction with his Bran and Water; and having ſtrained the Whole, add two Ounces of *Double Catholicon*, a Quartern of *Sweet Oil*, and an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*. If this firſt Gliſter does not move the Purge, repeat it five or ſix Hours after, adding two Ounces more of *Catholicon*.

Another refreſhing Gliſter.

Take Leaves of common *Mallows*, *Marſh-Mallows*, *Pellitory of the Wall*, *Violets*, *Lettuce*, the Herb *Mercury*, of each two Handfuls; *Aniſe* and *Fennel Seeds* bruiſed, of each two Ounces; boil the whole together in Water, and then ſtrain and give it the Horſe. After he has diſcharged it, take him out, and trot him till he begins to ſweat, and then put him up in the Stable and cover him cloſe, to prevent his catching cold. His Sweat being over, if you are under a Neceſſity of it, you may ride him ten or twelve Miles the ſame Day; but ſtop him a little between whiles, and at every Place give him a Mouthful of Hay: If he eats it, you may conclude him out of Danger. This Gliſter is good for the Gripes, if you give a Quart of it at a Time, in the Form of a Draught.

Another.

If it be in the Summer, you may make the following. Take Leaves of *Lettuce*, *Purſlain*, and *Succory*, (or for want of that, *Piſs-a-beds*) *Groundſel*, Garden *Night-Shade*, *Bete*, *Mallows* and *Marſh-Mallows*, of each an equal Quantity; boil them well, and ſtrain the Decoction, and let each Gliſter conſiſt of a Gallon. You muſt diſſolve in it two Ounces of *Double Catholicon*, an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*, half a Pound of *Honey*, and add half a Pound of *Sweet Oil*. The Whole being well mixed, if you have not a Syringe large enough, make uſe of a *Bullock's Bladder*, with a Joint of Reed, or Elder with the Pith out, of about a Foot long. Fill the Bladder with a Funnel; but before you inject the Gliſter, run your Hand up the Horſe's Fundament, and empty his great Gut, taking care not to ſcratch him with your Nails, which might prove mortal. If you cannot get the abovementioned Herbs, make a Decoction of *Barley*, or *Rye* Flour, and add to it the other Ingredients.

How to make the Cordial and Univerſal Powder.

This Powder may be kept as long as you pleaſe, provided you put it in a Glaſs Veſſel, or a Bladder, and let no Moiſture come near it. Every military Farrier, who has the Charge of a Number of Horſes, ought to have it always by him, becauſe it is good for almoſt all Diſtempers. It is for this Reaſon that we call it the Univerſal Powder.

Preſcription.

Take *Bay Berries*, *Juniper Berries* ripe, the Seeds of *Fennel*, *Aniſe*, *Fenugreek*, *Skirret*, *Angelica Root*, *Gentian Root*, *Orris Root*, *Saſſafras Wood*, *Guaiacum Wood*, *Olibanum*, *Agarick*, *Monks Rhubarb*, dry'd *Seville Orange* Peel, Leſſer *Centaury*, Leaves and Flowers of *Wormwood*, *Galangals*, Long *Birthwort Root*, and Round *Birthwort Root*, Leaves of *Sage*, and Leaves of *Rue* dry'd in the Shade, *Ground-Ivy* and *Wild Tanſy*, of each a Quarter

Quarter of a Pound: Reduce them all to a Powder ſeparate, and then add Flowers of *Sulphur*, and *Liquorice* Powder, of each half a Pound; mix the whole together, and paſs it through a Sieve. You may be certain, if the Mixture be well made, that few Remedies are equal to this Powder. The Doſe, for each Time, is from three to four Ounces, according to the Strength of the Horſe; and add to every Doſe half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel*. This Powder may be given at all Times, either in the Morning or the Afternoon: And if you are obliged to continue a Journey, you need apprehend no bad Conſequences from it, becauſe it tends to fortify the Horſe. CHAP. LXXXVII.

Another Medicine to fortify a Horſe that is ready to caſt, or whoſe Appetite is palled.

Take two or three Ounces of good *Venice Treacle*, an Ounce of *Aſſa fœtida*, half an Ounce of *Salt Prunel* in Powder: Dilute the Whole in a Quart of Wine, if it be for a fat Horſe; if for a lean one, in a Quart of good old Beer. We have taken Notice, more than once, that a Horſe ſhould be kept ſome Hours entirely faſting, both before and after taking any Remedy. If you give this in the Morning on a Journey, and the Horſe is hungry in the Afternoon, you may venture to ride him ſome Miles further, in Caſe of Neceſſity, becauſe the Remedy gives him no Trouble. If you perceive no Change in him at three or four Hours End, repeat the Doſe; for a Horſe, on account of his prone Poſture, is very difficult to purge. He is alſo hard to vomit, becauſe of the Diſtance between his Throat and his Stomach; but then a Vomit does not ſtrain, but only ſharpens his Appetite. This Remedy is good when you merely ſuſpect any Diſorder; and you never run any Hazard in giving it.

How to dye the Hair of a Horſe.

When you have a white Horſe, or a Horſe that has any white Spots, and you are willing to conceal it for a long time; Take a Pound of *Lime*, a Pound of *Gold Litharge*, a Quartern of *Caſtile Soap* cut ſmall; put the Whole into a large Pot, and pour in Rain-Water, by little and little, till the Lime heats and diſſolves: Then add more Water, and keep ſtirring it with a wooden Ladle. When it comes to the Conſiſtence of a clear Pap, apply it with Art upon the Hair, in the Places that you want to blacken. Cover it with Paper, or a Linen Rag, and leave the Horſe tied up for ſome Hours, till it becomes dry. Then waſh the Part with Water and Soap; and the more you waſh it, the blacker it will appear. This may be done in any Part where Hair grows, except upon the Noſe, where the Hair is very thin. You muſt take Care however that the Compoſition does not come to the Skin, for it would certainly fetch it off.

To paint the Eye-brows of an old Horſe.

Take two Ounces of *Aqua Fortis*, diſſolve in it half an Ounce of *Leaf-Silver*, and add an Ounce of *Roſe Water*: Lay on this Compoſition delicately with a Pencil on the Eye-brows, and take great Care that none of it gets into the Eyes. If they are not ſtained the firſt Time, you muſt repeat it as often as it dries, till it has the Effect. If the Horſe be bay, you muſt put into the Compoſition an Ounce of *Umber*; if ſorrel, an Ounce of *Litharge* of *Gold*.

To make Hair come again that is fallen off, whether through the Itch, or a Wound, in what Part ſoever it be.

Take Ointment of *Poplar Buds*, and *Virgin Honey*, an equal Quantity of each; mix them well together, and rub with this, twice every Day, the Places that are bare. Continue this for fifteen or twenty Days, in which Time the Hair will grow again as thick and ſmooth as if it had never fallen off.

Another Way.

Take the Roots of flat *Sedge*, which grow upon the Borders of ſtanding Waters; and having cleanſed them well, boil them in Water to a pappy Conſiſtence, and then add as much *Virgin Honey* as you can conveniently mix with it. Put ſome of this Compoſition freſh every Day upon the bald Places; and if you continue to do thus for fifteen or twenty Days, you will ſee the Hair return.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

I remember my having uſed this Preparation upon a young Woman who had ſcarce any Eye-brows: I had them ſhaved cloſe twice every Week, and rubbed the Places well; and at the End of ſix Weeks, ſhe was hardly to be known, ſo large and beautiful were her Eye-brows grown.

How to make what we call a Star *come on the Forehead of a Horſe.*

Take three leaden Pencils, about the Size of a Gooſe Quill, and three or four Inches long: Then take a pointed Iron Inſtrument, of the Shape of a Shoemaker's Awl, and ſomewhat larger than the Pencils. Run your Inſtrument under the Middle of the Horſe's Forehead, between the Fleſh and the Skin, bringing the Point out at about five Inches Diſtance. Put one of the Pencils into this Hole, leaving both Ends out. Make two more ſuch Holes croſs the firſt, in ſuch Manner as to form a Star with ſix Rays, and introduce the other two Pencils as the firſt. After this, take a Piece of Woollen Yarn, of the Thickneſs of one of the Pencils, and carry it under the Ends of the Pencils, turning it round each, and ſo continuing till you have quite clogged up the ſaid Ends, and made a large Circle of Yarn: Faſten it with a Knot or two, and turn back all the ſix Points of Lead, ſo as to keep it tight on. Leave the Whole in this Manner five Days, and then take off the Yarn, and pull out the Pencils; and without any more Trouble, a Sort of Impoſtume will form under the Skin, that will make the Hair fall off. There will then come a Kind of Cruſt, which will drop off of itſelf: After which you muſt greaſe the Part with a Mixture of Honey and Lead, in equal Quantities. All the Hair which grows after this will be white, ſmooth, and even. There are many other Receipts to make the Hair white, but we ought always to imitate Nature the moſt nearly; which is done in the Manner I have ſet down.

How to fill up the hollow Places over a Horſe's Eyes.

Take clean Barley and Vetches bruiſed, in equal Quantities, and boil them in Roſe Water to a pappy Conſiſtence. With this fill the Cavities every Day that come over a Horſe's Eyes, and tie it on with a Bandage made on Purpoſe. Continue the Uſe of this for three Weeks or a Month, and the Cavities will fill up, as if they had never been.

Remedies for Figs in a Horſe's Feet.

Pare the Foot well where you diſcover a Fig, that with your Biſtoury you may the more eaſily cut the Sole round the Place where the Complaint is, till you come to the raw Fleſh, which is going to the Root of the Diſorder. If you regard only the Top of the Fig, your Cure will be imperfect; for the Fig will ſpread and extend, and though it appear ſmall on the Outſide, it will reach all over the Sole. I do not think, however, that it grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot. Having thus diſcovered it all, take two Pounds of Honey, a Pint of Aqua Vitæ, ſix Ounces of Verdigreaſe in fine Powder, and ſifted through Silk; ſix Ounces of white Copperas, pounded pretty fine; four Ounces of Litharge, and two Drams of Sublimate, pounded in the ſame manner, and well ſifted. Mix the Whole with Honey in a clean earthern Pot, and let it ſtand over a very gentle Fire, ſtirring it often, till it is ſufficiently thick. The Ointment being made, ſpread it upon Pledgets, which apply on the Fig.

If in ſearching for the Roots, you make the Blood come, which ſhould be avoided as carefully as poſſible; put, for the firſt Dreſſing, a Reſtringent, made with Turpentin and Chimney-ſoot: Apply this warm all over the Fig, cover it with Tow, and bind and ſplinter it down, to ſtop the Blood: Thus, in two Days time, when you take off the Dreſſing, you will find all in good Order. Afterwards, put on a Dreſſing of the Ointment above deſcribed, cold, with Pledgets of Tow well banded and ſplintered on. Let the whole Dreſſing be ſo ordered, with hard Rolls of Tow, that the Tents you clap on the Sides may preſs in the Fig, and prevent it's enlarging. Leave not the leaſt Corner of the Frog, that touches the Fig, without Rolls of Tow, that the Whole may be kept under, and nothing grow beyond Bounds.

Obſerve that the Tow you make uſe of be very dry; and that the Pledgets and Tents be made up hard, before you ſpread the Ointment on them. Take care alſo that your Horſe be in a good Stable, or ſome other dry Place, becauſe Moiſture is ſo hurtful in this Diſeaſe that it may hinder a Cure.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Having taken off the ſecond Dreſſing, which ſhould continue eight and forty Hours, cleanſe the Part well with dry Tow, and examine if there are no Fibres or Roots remaining. Then waſh your Fig with what the Goldſmiths call ſecond Water, putting over it the Ointment I have here preſcribed. Bind and ſplinter the Place well, as before, upon clean dry Tow, keeping in the Sides with Rolls and Pledgets, that it may not enlarge. A great Part of the Cure of this Diſorder, depends upon the good or bad Application of the Dreſſing.

When you change the Dreſſings, take off gently, with your Spatula, the ſmall Eſchars, or rather Skins, that the Ointment has occaſioned, obſerving to fetch Blood as little as poſſible. If after the ſecond Application of the Ointment, the Fig is not checked, but breaks out again, mix, with one half of your Compoſition, three Ounces of good Aqua Fortis, putting them cold together, and letting them ferment. Afterwards uſe this Ointment as you did the former, and it will certainly ſtop the Progreſs of the Fig, if you take care to renew and bind on the Dreſſing well every twelve Hours. When, upon taking off your Dreſſing, you perceive the Fig ſufficiently deadened, return again to your former Ointment without Aqua Fortis, applying that with it between whiles, as you ſee Occaſion, to eat off the exuberant Fleſh, or to dry up the Wound apace. If you do all this with Judgment and Diſcretion, it cannot fail of Succeſs.

There are often, I ſay, Places where the Fleſh grows too faſt; There you muſt uſe the Ointment with Aqua Fortis. When you want to dry only, the ſimple Ointment is uſually ſufficient: But always ſupport the Dreſſing well, and ſplinter it down tight.

When the Fig grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot, or has Communication with them; when you imagine it healed on one Side, it ſpreads on the other, and extends ſometimes from the Frog to the Quarter, which it is often neceſſary to cut. When the Quarter is cut, Cauſtics, or potential Cauteries, in Powder or in Ointment, may ſerve to deſtroy the Tendon. You may make uſe of the ſame here that were preſcribed for the horny Javarts; for without deſtroying the Tendon, you can never cure the Fig.

If the Fig be pretty large (as there are ſome as large as a ſmall Pullet's Egg) it is very proper, after having well examined all round, to ſee if there be no Void under the Sole, where certain Roots of the Fig be concealed; and after having cut and diſcover'd all you can with your two-edged crooked Inciſion-Knife; it is very proper, I ſay, to take a good ſharp Buttreſs, and cut off all the Fig, and all the corrupted and bad Fleſh you can ſee. Let your Horſe afterwards bleed pretty well, and then let the Sponges of his Shoe be lengthened, and his Paſtern tied with a Cord, in order to ſtop the Blood. Then cover all that you have cut with fine Salt, and put over it Turpentine, that has been mixed over a Fire with Suet chopped ſmall. You muſt ſoak Tow well in this, and ſo lay it on. If the Blood comes ſo freely, that you cannot put on the Salt, mix it with the hot Compoſition, bind the Foot well, and ſplinter on the Dreſſing. Put the ſame Defenſative round the Crown, and leave your Horſe for three Days without touching him, keeping him always in a very dry Place.

If the Fig is in one of the hind Feet, as it commonly is, you muſt take great Care to keep the Dung from under it, that no Moiſture may come to the Part, becauſe Moiſture is very hurtful.

When you take off the Dreſſing, you muſt gently cleanſe the Whole with dry Tow upon your Spatula: Then put on ſome of the Ointment with Pledgets, and let the Whole be adjuſted and compreſſed with an Iron Splinter. You will have no more Occaſion for any Defenſative round the Crown. Two Days after, when you take off the Dreſſing, you muſt obſerve the Colour of the Fleſh, and waſh it with ſecond Water, as there may be Occaſion. If you want to eat off any Fleſh, have recourſe to your Ointment with Aqua Fortis, and continue the ſame Dreſſing for ſome Days. Upon thoſe Places where the Fleſh looks well, put only the ſimple Ointment.

If the Fig grows to the Tendon, or the inner Foot, the moſt certain Remedy is to unſole the Horſe, and then dreſs the Fig in the manner preſcribed, making uſe of the Razor when you ſee Occaſion, or eating off the Tendon with Cauſtics. But wherever you can employ the Razor, let the Cauſtic alone, becauſe with the former you ſee beſt what you do, and may go juſt as far as you pleaſe, without putting the Horſe to ſo much Pain. If there be any Splinter looſe from the inner Foot, apply the Searing-Iron to it rather than a Cauſtic.

If

CHAP. LXXXVII. If the Horſe is of a delicate Conſtitution, he may loſe his Appetite. In that Caſe faſten in his Mouth one of the Bags to provoke Hunger that have been deſcribed in this Book, and give him Gliſters with Sal Polychreſtum, and for his Food ſcalded Bran. Continue to proceed thus, and he will recover his Appetite, and not loſe it any more.

Madam FEUILLET's *Green Balm.*

This has performed ſuch great Cures upon Mankind, that I thought it worthy of a Place in the preſent Work. I have not ſet down here the Preſcription for the Stiptick Plaiſter that is uſed with this Balm, becauſe the Diapalma, that may be had any where, is as good for it as the ſaid Plaiſter, and much cheaper. It is not the Plaiſter, but the Balm, that effects the Cure; the other ſerves only to keep it on, and prevent the Air from hurting the Wound.

This Balm is very good for all Wounds in Horſes, in what Part ſoever they happen; as alſo for Pricks in the Foot, and the like. It is thus made.

Take Oils of *Linſeed*, *Olives*, and *Juniper Berries*, each 2 Ounces; *Turpentine* of *Chio*, or, for want of that, other fine *Turpentine*, 2 Ounces; Oil of *Bays*, 1 Ounce; Oil of *Gilly-flowers*, one Drachm; *Verdigreaſe* pounded and finely ſifted, three Drachms; *White Copperas*, two Drachms: Put the Whole cold into a Phial, and ſhake them till they incorporate; continuing ſo to do from time to time for a Month: After which keep it for Uſe.

You muſt waſh the Wound with warm Wine the firſt time that you dreſs it: Then heat the Balm, and ſpread it upon Lint, over which put a ſticking Plaiſter to keep it on. If the Wound be deep, you muſt cover a Tent with this Balm, and put a Plaiſter over it.

You muſt uſe it as an Unguent warm to freſh Wounds, having firſt cleanſed them well with Tow. Sprinkle over it, when thus applied, the Lint of old Cord that has been beat almoſt to a Powder. And if you continue this every Day, without ever moiſtening the Wound, it will heal in any Part whatſoever. It it equally good for all Pricks, whether with Nails, Thorns, or Stumps of Trees.

Gunſhot-Water, or a Vulnerary Draught.

Horſes that are wounded with a Fuſil, Muſket, or Piſtol, cannot always be treated with large Inciſions; eſpecially in hot Weather, in the Army, where there are not always convenient Places to put them out of the Sun, nor to protect them from Flies.

To find the Bottom of theſe Wounds, and know their Magnitude, you muſt ſearch them with a large Iron Probe, which is the only way you can do it. For this purpoſe, you muſt place them in the ſame Poſture they were in when they received the Shot. The Wound often appears to be ſo deep, that you can convey neither Ointment nor Powder to the Bottom of it: For this Reaſon Liquids have been invented, under the Name of Gunſhot-Waters, which are injected into the Wounds ſeveral Times a Day, you muſt introduce a Tent dipped in it to keep the Wound open, and apply a Linen Rag, dipped likewiſe, over the Mouth of it, in the moſt convenient manner you can. Give the Horſe half a Pint of the ſame Water every Day in a Draught; and in this manner Wounds may be cured which would otherwiſe prove mortal. Not but that a great Number thus treated do notwithſtanding die; but when a Man has done all in his Power, he bears his Loſs with the leſs Regret, becauſe it was inevitable. If the Horſe has a Fever, you muſt have recourſe to Gliſters, and not let him ſwallow any of the Vulnerary Water, becauſe the Simples that compoſe it are moſt of them hot, and would tend to increaſe the internal Fire, and the Agitation of the Humours, which naturally preſs towards the wounded Part. But we very often ſee Horſes, that have very large Wounds, without any Fever. It is not the ſame with Men, for whom the Uſe of Vulnerary Waters is almoſt aboliſhed, except among the *Swiſs*, who have ſtill a very good Opinion of them.

How to make a Gunſhot-Water.

Take a new Earthen Pot, well glazed, in which put three Quarts of ſmall *White Wine*, with an Ounce and a half of Round *Birthwort* raſped: Put your Pot over a moderate Fire, and let it boil gently, or rather ſtew, till one Quart of the Wine is diminiſhed. Juſt before you take it off, put in ſix Ounces of Sugar in Powder, and when that is diſſolved, ſet it by

by to cool. Uſe this Water, or rather this Wine, to waſh or ſyringe the Wound thrice a Day; and every Morning, as I ſaid, let the Horſe drink half a Pint of it, after you have ſtrained it well. CHAP. LXXXVII.

Lapis Mirabilis.

This Stone is as admirable for it's good Effects, as it is in it's Name. To compoſe it, take *White Copperas*, two Pounds; *Roch Alum*, three Pounds; *Armenian Bole*, half a Pound; *Litharge* of Gold or Silver, two Ounces: Powder the whole, put it in a glazed Earthen Pot, and pour upon it three Quarts of Water; then let it boil gently over a moderate Fire, without Flame, till the Water is quite evaporated. Let the Fire be equal all round the Pot. You will ſee a Sediment at Bottom, and when that is entirely dry, take the Pot off the Fire, and let it cool. This Matter ought when cold to be very hard, and it will grow harder and harder the longer you keep it.

The Doſe of this Stone is half an Ounce, which you muſt put into four Ounces of Water. In a Quarter of an Hour it will diſſolve; and then, if you ſhake it in a Phial, the Water will look as white as Milk. Moiſten with this the Eyes of a Horſe Morning and Evening.

A Remedy for Sprains.

Take *Pitch* and *Tar*, ſuch as is uſed for Ships or Carts, a Pound; *Aqua Vitæ*, a Pint: Boil them together over a Charcoal Fire, leſt any Flame ſhould touch them, ſtirring them often for a Quarter of an Hour: Then add two Ounces of fine *Bole* in Powder, and thicken the Whole with Flower: Put this warm upon Tow, and apply it all round the Fetlock, binding it on. Renew it every two Days; and there is ſcarce any Sprain that will not be well in three or four Applications, provided you dreſs the Part firſt with the Eſſence of *Turpentine*. The only Inconvenience of this Remedy is, that it tarniſhes and reddens white or grey Hair, and the Stain appears for ſome Time after. However, the Remedy is excellent, and in black Horſes has no ill Effect. It is admirable alſo for Blows, and Swellings in the Knees and Hams: But in theſe Caſes you muſt uſe no Eſſence of *Turpentine*. What makes this Remedy the more to be preferred, is, that though equally good with any, it coſts but a Trifle.

A ſolutive Cataplaſm, or Poultice for ſwelled Stones.

Boil Beans in Lees of Wine, the thineſt you can get, till they become ſoft: Then pound them, and make them into a Paſte. Add to two Pounds of this Paſte, an Ounce of *Caſtor* in Powder: Mix the whole well, and put it into a Linen Bag capable of containing the Teſticles. You muſt firſt greaſe them well with Ointment of *Oil of Roſes*, and then put them into the Bag, while the Poultice is as hot as you can bear it upon the Back of your Hand. Tie it on in the moſt convenient Manner you can, and every twenty-four Hours repeat the Unction, and heat the Bag in the Lees made hot, which muſt be kept for that Purpoſe. Continue to proceed thus till the Swelling diſſipates.

A Treatise of the STUD.

A STUD ſhould be fixed upon dry Ground; for the more dry and brittle the Graſs is, the more light, ſlender, and ſound the Horſes that eat it will grow: Whereas thoſe who feed on very juicy Graſs, are uſually very thick and clumſy in the Head, the Neck, and even the whole Body; and ſuch Graſs grows only in moiſt and watery Places: Beſides, the Hoofs thereby being too much moiſten'd, they become groſs and heavy; ſo that when you raiſe a Race of Colts out of fine Horſes and Mares, if you breed them up in humid Lands, their ſlender Legs are unable to bear the Weight of a great Head, a thick Neck, a groſs Body, and to lift Hoofs that are too large and heavy; all which Defects are cauſed by too juicy Graſs A dry Soil therefore is abſolutely neceſſary for the Seat of a Stud; becauſe the Graſs there being more wholeſom, it makes the Colts founder, more vigorous, light, and couragious; which are all the good Qualities one can wiſh for in a Horſe, The Stud, being ſituated in ſuch a Place, muſt be governed in the following Manner.

Rules to be obſerved in a Stud.

I. You muſt always keep the Place clean to which the Colt retires, and change the Litter in it, at leaſt twice a Month in Winter, and four Times in Summer.

II. Take Care, when you perceive any Mares to grow heavy, to ſeparate them from others that are not with Foal; becauſe the latter, being more light and wanton, may kick the big ones, and make them caſt their Foals.

III. Thoſe Mares that have caſt their Foals ſhould be expell'd the Stud, as improper for Breeding; becauſe were they afterwards to produce a Foal, it would be of no great Value.

IV. When a Mare has been kept three Years in a Stud without producing a Foal, it is Obſtinacy to keep her there any longer: For, though ſhe ſhould give you one the fourth Year, you run a great Hazard of waiting a long Time for a Second; and the Colt that ſhe produces will never be worth a Quarter of the Expence that the Mare will put you to.

V. You muſt not put Colts of one Year old into the ſame Encloſures with thoſe of two, three, or four Years; becauſe the latter, being much ſtronger, will kick the others, and hinder them from feeding, which muſt ſpoil their Growth.

VI. You muſt not let Stone-Colts of a Year old run with Mares of the ſame Age, nor with any other Mare-Colts whatſoever. They begin to have ſome Senſation at that Age; and what by their Play and their Feeding with thoſe young Females, they pall their Appetites, and ſometimes ruin and deſtroy themſelves. To avoid this Inconvenience, Mares of two Years ſhould be put with their Dams; and the He's of two, with thoſe of three or four.

VII. Neither muſt Stone-Colts be ſuffered to come near grown Mares, in what Seaſon ſoever it may be; for this would certainly do them harm, and in Covering-time make them ſhed their Seed, how gentle ſoever they might be.

VIII. Never take a Colt from Graſs till he is three Years and a half old, nor begin to mount him till he is five; which is the Way to make him long ſerviceable.

IX. It would be very proper to have two large Encloſures; one to put the Mares in when they foal, that they may be at Reſt, leaving them together till they have all foaled; and the other to contain the reſt of the Stud, that they may not mingle with the Stone-Colts; becauſe there is more to be apprehended then, than at any other Seaſon, as well on the Colts Account, as on that of the Mares.

X. Theſe Parks are very convenient to lodge the Studs in a-nights, in the ſeparate Diviſions: They feed there in Summer more at Eaſe by Night than by Day, not being incommoded either by Heat, or the Flies.

XI. In order to know if all the Mares that were covered have conceived, and if there are not ſome of them which ſtill want the Horſe, you muſt bring out a Stallion that neighs much, and lead him within Piſtol-ſhot of the Mares, holding him tight, that he do not get from you: All thoſe Mares which ſurround the Stallion, give you Notice that they are yet in Luſt. But as there are ſome Mares who will take Horſe after they have retained, the

the moſt ſhort and eaſy Way of knowing the Truth is, to pour Water into their Ears: For if they ſhake it out violently, in a Moment, it is a Mark they have not conceived. You muſt then lead them to other Horſes; and in the Moment that the Stallion has done his Office, let the Mare be blooded in her *Jugular* Vein.

XII. It is a very good Way to have your Mares covered about the Middle of *March*, that, if they do not retain, you may have Time to get them covered again: For, when the Month of *May* is once over, I look upon the Seaſon to be no longer proper for that Buſineſs; becauſe, in order to make a Colt vigorous, he ſhould have two Summers for one Winter; which cannot be if the Mare foals in the latter Seaſon; but the Colt, on the contrary will be weak and languid, through the Hardſhips he ſuffers the firſt Year.

XIII. If the Mare brings forth her Foal with Difficulty, you ought to aſſiſt her, giving her good *Sweet Oil* and *Flowers* of *Sulphur*; and ſometimes, to ſtrengthen her, *Venice Treacle* in Wine, or a Doſe of good Cordial Powder; which no Man who pretends to manage a Stud ſhould ever be without, it being of continual Uſe, as well for Colts, as for Mares and Stallions.

XIV. You ſhould take Care to get your Mares covered again in a Fortnight, at fartheſt, after they have foaled; becauſe if you neglect it longer, the Beauty of the Seaſon for that End will be over.

How to couple Stallions with Mares, in order to make them bring forth well-proportioned Foals.

As among the foreign Stallions, ſome will get ſmaller Foals, ſome larger, you ought to put them to Mares more or leſs corpulent, that the Foals may be brought forth in good Proportion.

A *Barbary*, *Arabian*, or *Turkiſh* Stallion, to be a good one, ſhould be tall, very ſlender, very high before, young, and without any Defect. As the Colts they get are uſually larger than themſelves, but extremely ſlender, you muſt give them Mares that have Capacity enough, and are very thick in their Bodies. The *Engliſh* Mares, in my Opinion, are the beſt for this Purpoſe; for the *Italian* ones produce feeble Foals, that cannot be depended on; the *Barbary* Mares cannot nouriſh their Foals in *France*: The *Engliſh* therefore are preferable to all others.

An *Engliſh* Stallion, to be a good one, ſhould be ſtrong, thick, and every Way well ſet; becauſe the Colt he gets is uſually ſmaller, and leſs vigorous than himſelf.

The *Spaniſh* Stallions ſeem to me not ſo uſeful in *France* as thoſe of other Countries: But if any Man has a Mind to breed from them, he ſhould chuſe thoſe that are very ſtrong, and well ſet every way. As for Beauty and Spirit, they never want thoſe.

Though I have mentioned no Horſes for Stallions but *Barbs*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, and thoſe of *England* and *Spain*, it does not follow from thence, that others are to be rejected, or that you may not get from them Colts that are both handſom and good: But the former being more ſprightly, more delicate, and more couragious, they get Foals of a more noble and lofty Stature, and conſequently more proper for Perſons of Quality.

As to *French* Mares, who are deſcended from Horſes of Reputation, ſuch as the Stallions I have juſt mentioned, thoſe that are higheſt before are the beſt. You may find a Mare that is very handſom to the Eye, but will never produce a Colt of any Value, becauſe ſhe was got by a worthleſs Horſe. Not but that the Colt may at firſt appear handſom and well made; but the bigger he grows, the worſe will he look: Whereas a Mare of good Deſcent will bring forth a Colt that does not at firſt appear ſo beautiful, but which grows every Day in Beauty as well as in Stature. Take great Care therefore that your Mare be of a good Race, becauſe this is a Matter of great Importance.

The Stallions, as well as the Mares, ſhould be without any Defect; that is, their Sight ſhould not be impaired, they ſhould not be low in the Reins, nor have their Legs ſpoiled by Curbs, Veſſigons, or Spavins: In a Word, let them be ſound all over their Bodies, leſt their Offspring partake of their Infirmities; for many Times theſe Diſtempers are hereditary in Horſes.

It is neceſſary likewiſe, that neither the Horſe nor the Mare ſhould have any Way ſtrained themſelves. This is what few People regard; but on the contrary, when they have a good Stone-Horſe, they make a Slave of him till they have worn him out, and then his laſt Service is to be kept for a Stallion: As if it was ſufficient that a Horſe has been once

good,

good, to make the Colts he gets afterwards ſtrong and vigorous. But I would be glad to know what Reaſon they can aſſign, why a Horſe, entirely worn out, and conſequently without Strength, ſhould be able to get a vigorous Foal? Doubtleſs, this is impoſſible in Nature. For my Part, I believe that the moſt certain Means to have good and ſprightly Foals, is to look out for, and procure, at any Price whatſoever, a Stone-Horſe that is ſtrong, handſom, well-made, and without Defect; one that has never been rid, but in order to break him: You ſhould know too his Qualities and Share of Spirits, and let him have a Mare equally well-conditioned. A Stallion of this Kind may get good Foals, even at 25 Years of Age, which no Horſe can do that has been worn out with Labour.

In order that a Mare ſhould produce good Foals, let her not be covered till ſhe is four Years of Age, and take her out of the Stud in her 16th or 17th Year. A Stud regulated in this Manner, will produce the fineſt Horſes in the World, by only obſerving the proper Seaſons to have the Mares covered, that their Foals may have two Summers for one Winter.

A Mare goes with Foal 11 or 12 Months, or ſome Days more or leſs; for there is no certain Time; and the older ſhe is, the longer ſhe carries her Burthen. Some Perſons amuſe themſelves with reckoning the Years of a Mare, to determine from thence the Day of her foaling; but this is very uncertain, and only an imaginary Piece of Knowledge. Such is the Folly of many other People, that they pretend the State of the Weather, when a Horſe covers a Mare, contributes much to the Goodneſs or Badneſs of the Colt: Thus, if it be rainy, windy, or ſtormy, in the Moment that the Mare conceives, the Colt will be vicious; but that, on the contrary, he will be very docile, if the Air is then clear and ſerene.

It is however certain, in ſpite of all that ſuch People ſay, that a Horſe produced between a Mare and a Stallion which are both perfect, will always be good, well-ſhaped, and vigorous, if he be got in the right Seaſon; for this, joined to the Manner of bringing him up, is the only Thing that can contribute to his Perfection. You muſt aſſiſt your Mare in the feeding of her Foal, by giving him Provender, as Bran, with Wheat or Oats crack'd in the Mill, and mixed among it.

A Colt ſucks for ſix or ſeven Months. When you take him from under his Dam, you muſt feed him Morning and Evening with Oats wetted, and Bran, during the Winter-Seaſon. In the Spring, you muſt take him off gradually from this Diet, till the Graſs grows hard and high; for if you let him eat the tender ſprouting Graſs, it may looſen his Belly too much, weaken him, and make him ſick, and at laſt perhaps kill him. You muſt treat him thus from Year to Year, till he is four Years old, taking great Care not to let any whole Grain come in his Way; for as the Joints of his Jaws are yet very tender, he may, in ſtriving to chew, bring down Defluxions on his Eyes, to his great Prejudice.

A Stone-Colt, that is well-ſhaped, may at four Years of Age be ſuffered to cover Mares, if you are ſure he has never received any Hurt before. He might even ſerve for this Office at three Years old; but as he is not then quite at his full Growth, it is better to wait till he is four, when there will be greater Chance of his getting a Colt that may be good for ſomething.

Inſtructions *for the* Commiſſioners, *who go to buy Horſes in foreign Countries, in order to make them acquainted with their Defects.*

THE *Perſian* Horſes are very good and vigorous, but they are ſubject to have high and cloſe Heels, and alſo liable to Incaſtellations. They are very good to breed from.

The *Arabian* Horſes are very good; but apt to have their Feet fat and large. They are alſo good Stallions.

The *Tartary* Horſes are of middling Stature, and have Feet like Mules; that is, very good Feet.

The *Barbary* Horſes have delicate Feet, and are ſubject to the Chilling of the Shoulders. Their Breed is admirable, when you can get a full-ſized Horſe; and for the generality very good. They ſhould be loaded on the Shoulders.

The *Poliſh* Horſes are ſmall, and hang down their Heads: They will do good Service, but eat a vaſt deal.

The *Croatian* Horſes are much like Mules, and have good Feet.

The *Hungarian* Horſes are good Courſers; they have good Feet, but are with Difficulty held in, and carry the Noſe almoſt always poking forwards.

The

The *Swediſh* Horſes are liable to the Mallenders, and tranſverſe Mules.

The *Neapolitan* Horſes are vigorous, and good Courſers; ſubject to have weak Feet, to be reſty, malignant, and treacherous.

The *Spaniſh* Horſes are fiery, and good for every thing, eſpecially for War and the Manage: They are ſubject to dry Spavins.

The *Daniſh* Horſes are very ſerviceable, but good for nothing till they are ſix or ſeven Years old. They are ſubject to Bleymes, and Defects in the Sight.

The *Italian* Horſes are good Courſers; ſubject to Bleymes and Bone-Spavins; to be reſty and malignant.

The *German* Horſes are ſtrong; fit for the Saddle and the Coach; but ſubject to Javarts, and watery Legs.

The *Swiſs* Horſes are good for Draught, as for the Train of Artillery; but liable to Defects of Sight, which they ſeldom have very clear. They have much Hair on their Legs.

The *Engliſh* Horſes are good, eaſy to the Rider, and excellent for the Chace. They are ſubject to Bleymes and Seymes, and to have flat and cloſe Heels.

The *Dutch* and *Frizeland* Horſes are good for the Coach: They are tall and fat; but ſubject to have flat Feet, Curbs in the Houghs, Veſſigons, greaſy Spavins, and Ox-Spavins.

The *Flemiſh* Horſes have large Heads, and much Hair on their Legs: They are ſubject to Graps round the Hoof, to Figs in the Fruſh, and to be full of Humours in their Legs.

The *Norman* Horſes are excellent, and good for the Chace: They have good Feet, and ſome of them are fit for the Coach. Many of them are ſubject to Diſtempers in the Eyes.

The Horſes of *Britanny* are not fit for Service till they are five or ſix Years old: They have heavy Heads, a cloudy Sight, and much Hair on the Legs.

The *Poitevin* Horſes have large Heads, and are ſubject to be moon-ey'd. They have much Hair on their Legs, and wide open Feet.

The *Limoſin* Horſes are very good: They are fit for the Chace, and have good Feet and good Sight. Some of them are no ways inferior to the *Engliſh* Horſes in any thing; which are however, in general, indiſputably the beſt Horſes in the Univerſe.

To preſerve and reſtore a Stable infected by the different Maladies of Horſes.

FIRST, when a Stable is ſpoiled by having had in it Glandery Horſes, you muſt begin by unpaving it: Then take away at leaſt half a Foot of Earth, or Sand, becauſe the Urine that is ſoaked in it may infect the Air; and in the Place of what you take away, put freſh Earth or Sand.

If the Wood of the Rack, Manger, Pillars, and Bars, is not very old, and the Infection has not been of long ſtanding, it will be ſufficient to ſcrape them well, and waſh them with hot Water. When the Whole is dry, take Pot-aſh, and diſſolve it in boiling Water, with which waſh them a ſecond time. You may diſſolve what Quantity of it you pleaſe, in proportion to the Size of the Stable; but the Medium is, a Pound of Pot-aſh to a common Pail of Water. When the Whole has been well ſcoured with this Lye, take Olibanum, and the Root of *Bohemian* Angelica, of each alike; pound them coarſely together, and take three or four Pots, or Chafing-diſhes, according to the Magnitude of the Stable, and put in them lighted Charcoal; then ſhut up all the Windows and all the Doors, and put ſome of this Compoſition upon each Fire, where it will ſmoke very much. Get out of the Stable, and ſhut the Door cloſe after you; and thus leave the Stable cloſe ſtopped up for 24 Hours, in which time it will be purified. When you have opened the Doors and Windows long enough to let out the Smoke, and let in the freſh Air, you may put in it any Horſe with ſafety. But if the Diſtemper be any thing leſs than the Glanders, there is no occaſion for taking up the Pavement, becauſe the Waſh and the Perfume will of themſelves be ſufficient. If the Wood of the Rack or Manger be old and rotten, you muſt take them down and put up new, eſpecially after the Glanders.

THE

Anatomical Deſcription of the BONES and MUSCLES of a Horſe.

PLATE I.

Oſſium Equi Nomina.

A. CApitis Oſſium Structura.
a. Frontis Os.
b. Jugale Os.
c. Maxilla ſuperior.
d. Naſi Oſſa furcalia.
e. Occipitis Os.
f. Maxilla inferior.
B. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, Colli Oſſa.
g. Spinæ, ſeu ſuperiores Proceſſus Colli Vertebrarum.
h. Tranſverſi Proceſſus Colli Vertebrarum.
i. Inferiores Proceſſus olli Oſſium.
C. Sterni ſuperior Proceſſus.
D. Scapula.
k. Cartilago Scapulæ.
l. Spina Scapulæ.
m. Scapulæ Coſta inferior, aut poſterior.
n. Anterior Coſta Scapulæ.
o. Acetabulum Scapulæ ſeu Junctura, quod & Caput ejus appellatur.
p. Anchoræ formæ, quod appellatur in Homine Caput ſeu Proceſſus Scapulæ, cui Clavicula jungitur.
E. Thoracis Vertebræ, ſignatæ 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.
q. Thoracis Vertebrarum Proceſſus ſuperiores, ſeu Spinæ Dorſi.
r. Tranſverſi Proceſſus Thoracis Vertebrarum.
F. Coſtæ Thoracem efficientes, numeratæ, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. Coſtæ legitimæ, quarum Cartilagines nectuntur, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18. Coſtæ ſpuriæ, I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII. Coſtarum omnium Cartilagines.
G. Humeri Os, ſeu Axilla.
ſ. Caput ejus ſuperius.
s. Caput inferius.
t. Interior Pars ſuperioris Capitis.
u. Idem inferioris.

The Names of the Bones in a Horſe.

A. STructure of the Bones of the Head.
a. The Forehead-bone.
b. The Yoke-bone.
c. The upper Jaw-bone.
d. The forked Bones of the Noſe.
e. The hinder Bone of the Head, or Noll-bone.
f. The lower Jaw-bone.
B. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, The Bones of the Neck.
g. The Spinæ, or upper Proceſſes of the Neck-bones.
h. The tranſverſe, or croſs Proceſſes of the Neck-bones.
i. The lower Proceſſes of the Neck-bones.
C. The upper Proceſs of the Breaſt-bone.
D. The Shoulder-blade.
k. The Cartilage of the Shoulder-blade.
l. The Spine of the Shoulder-blade.
m. The lower or hinder Shoulder-Rib.
n. The fore Rib of the Shoulder.
o. The Socket or Joint of the Shoulder, which is alſo called it's Head.
p. The Anchor form, which in a Man is called the Head or Proceſs of the Shoulder, to which the Clavicula joins.
E. The Vertebræ of the Thorax, or Cheſt, marked 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.
q. The upper Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Thorax, or the Chine-bone.
r. The tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Spinal Vertebræ.
F. The Ribs forming the Thorax, numbered, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. The true Ribs, the Cartilages of which are knit to the Breaſt-bone, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18. The falſe Ribs, I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII. The Cartilages of all the Ribs.
G. The Shoulder-bone, or Axilla.
ſ. Its upper Head.
s. Its lower Head.
t. The inner Part of the upper Head.
u. The inner Part of the lower Head.

H. Cubiti Os.
- *w.* Superius Caput Cubiti Oſſis.
- *x.* Inferius Caput ejus.
- *y.* Proceſſus magnus ſuperioris Capitis Cubiti Oſſis.

I. Radius.
- *z.* Ligamenta & Officula in junctura Radii ſuperiore.
- *α.* Proceſſus in poſteriore juncturæ Parte ſuperioris.
- *β.* Elevationes in poſterioribus Radii Lateribus ſpinoſæ.
- *γ.* Proceſſus Officuli minor in junctura inferiore Radii.

K, L, M. Tria Pedem imum conſtituentia Officula.

O. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, Lumbares Vertebræ.
- *δ.* Spinæ Lumbarium Vertebrarum.
- *ε.* Tranſverſales Proceſſus earundem Vertebrarum.

P. Os Sacrum, ſignatum, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.
- *ζ.* Proceſſus ſeu Spinæ ſacri Oſſis.

Q. Os Coccygis, ſeu Caudæ Vertebræ, ſignatæ, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.

R. Os anonymum, ſeu triplex.
- *η.* Pars Oſſis anonymi quæ Ilium Os appellatur.
- *η.* Coxendix, dicta ejus Pars.
- *θ.* Pubis Os, nominata Pars ejuſdem.
- *ϑ.* Proceſſus magnus Acetabuli, qui Capiti majori ſeu Rotatori junctura præbet.

S. Femoris Os.
- *ζ.* Caput ſuperius Femoris Oſſis, ſeu Rotator magnus.
- *ϰ.* Trochanter major, dictus hic Proceſſus.
- *λ.* Cervix Femoris Oſſis.
- *μ.* Minor Locus, interior Trochanter ubi latet.
- *ν.* Caput inferius Femoris Oſſis.
- *ο.* Capitis inferioris Pars exterior.
- *ϱ.* Interior ejus Pars.
- *π.* Patellæ vices agens Os.

T. Tibia.
- *τ.* Caput ſuperius Tibiæ Oſſis.
- *υ.* Ligamina & Oſſa, junctura Tibiæ cum Fibula. *N. B.* Hæ ad præcedens pertinent Os.

V. Os cui Fibulæ nomen dabimus.
- *ϛ.* Proceſſus Talum effingens. Sequentes duo Characteres ad Tibiam pertinent.
- *ϖ.* Caput ſuperius Tibiæ.
- *σ.* Inferius ejuſdem Caput.

H. The Leg-bone, or Cubitus.
- *w.* The upper Head of the Leg-bone.
- *x.* The lower Head of the ſame.
- *y.* The large Proceſs of the upper Head of the Leg-bones.

I. The Shank-bone.
- *z.* The Ligaments and little Bones in the Knee, or upper Joint of the Shank-bone.
- *α.* The Proceſs in the hinder Part of the upper Joint.
- *β.* The knotty Elevations in the hinder Sides of the Shank-bones.
- *γ.* The ſmaller Proceſs of the little Bone in the lower Joint of the Shank.

K, L, M. The three ſmall Bones that conſtitute the lower Foot.

O. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, The Vertebræ of the Loins.
- *δ.* The Spines of the ſame.
- *ε.* Their tranſverſe Proceſſes.

P. The Holy Bone, marked, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.
- *ζ.* The Proceſſes or Spines of the holy Bone.

Q. The Os Coccygis, or Vertebræ of the Tail, marked, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18.

R. The anonymous or triple Bone.
- *η.* That Part of the anonymous Bone which is called the Os Ilium.
- *η.* The Coxendix, or Huckle-bone, a Part of the ſame.
- *θ.* The Os Pubis, another Part of it.
- *ϑ.* The large Proceſs of the Socket, which holds the larger Head, or the Rotator.

S. The Thigh-bone.
- *ζ.* The upper Head of the Thigh-bone, or the large Rotator.
- *ϰ.* The larger Trochanter, called here the Proceſs.
- *λ.* The Neck of the Thigh-bone.
- *μ.* The leſſer Cavity, where lies the inner Trochanter.
- *ν.* The lower Head of the Thigh-bone.
- *ο.* The outer Part of the lower Head.
- *ϱ.* Its inner Part.
- *π.* The Bone that ſerves as a Knee-pan.

T. The Shin-bone.
- *τ.* The upper Head of the Shin-bone, or Tibia.
- *υ.* The Ligaments and Bones that join the Tibia with the Fibula. *N. B.* Theſe belong to the laſt mentioned Bone.

V. The leſſer Bone of the Leg, which we call Fibula.
- *ϛ.* The Proceſs forming the Heel. The two following References belong to the Tibia.
- *ϖ.* The upper Head of the Tibia.
- *σ.* Its lower Head.

φ. Elevationes

Φ. Elevationes longiuſculæ marginales in poſteriore latere Fibulæ.
ψ. Proceſſus inferiori in junctura Fibulæ.

X, Y, Z. Tria Oſſa Pedem efficientia.

Φ. Longiſh Elevations on the Edge of the Fibula behind.
ψ. The Proceſs in the lower Joint of the Fibula.

X, Y, Z. The three Bones forming the Foot.

PLATE II.

Explicatio Oſſium Capitis.

Figuræ primæ & ſecundæ.

A. OS Jugale.
B. Os Temporale.
C. Os Frontis.
D. Oſſa Naſum ſuſtinentia.
E. Molares Dentes.
F. Canini Dentes.
G. Inciſorii Dentes.

Figuræ tertiæ & quartæ.

A. Mammillaris Proceſſus.
B. Occipitis Oſſa.
Δ. Proceſſus inferioris Maxillæ, ſuperiori inarticulatum.
C. Proceſſus inferioris Maxillæ, in Temporali Oſſi inſertum.
D. Muſculi Maſtoidis Inſertionis locus.
E. Muſculi ejuſdem Ortus locus.

Explication of the Bones of the Head.

Figures the firſt and ſecond.

A. THE Yoke-bone.
B. The Temporal-bone.
C. The Forehead-bone.
D. The Bones ſupporting the Noſe.
E. The Grinders.
F. The Pincers.
F. The Fore-Teeth.

Fig. three and four.

A. The mammillary Proceſs.
B. The Bones of the Occiput.
Δ. The Proceſs of the lower Jaw, joined to the upper.
C. The Proceſs of the lower Jaw, inſerted in the Bone of the Temple.
D. The Place where the Muſcle Maſtoides is inſerted.
E. The Place which the ſame Muſcle ariſes from.

PLATE III.

Fig. 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

Oſſa Pedis tria variè conſpicienda, majores nempe, quæ in Sceleto Literis G, H, I, K, L, M, inſignita & deſcripta ſunt.

Fig. 13, uſque ad 19.

Oſſicula imi Pedis tria, variè conſpicienda.

A. Proceſſus, ſeu Alæ, quibus Ilii Oſſa injunguntur.

Fig. 20 & 21.

Oſſicula, ſeu potius Cartilagines duæ, quæ inter Radium primumque Pedis Os interveniunt junctura.

Fig. 22.

Anterior Facies, exteriuſque Latus Scapulæ.

Fig. 23.

Interius Latus Scapulæ, Coſtis adverſum.

Fig. 24.

Os Sacrum, interiori & inferiori Latere conſpiciendum.

Fig. 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

The larger Bones of the Feet repreſented in various Views. They are in the Figure diſtinguiſhed by the Letters G,H,I,K,L,M.

Fig. 13, to 19.

The three ſmall Bones of the lower Feet, to be viewed different Ways.

A. The Proceſſes, or Wings, by which the Bones of the Os Ilium are joined.

Fig. 20 and 21.

The ſmall Bones, or rather the two Cartilages, which are joined between the Shank-bone and the firſt of the Foot.

Fig. 22.

The foremoſt Face, and outer Side of the Shoulder-blade.

Fig. 23.

The inner Side of the Shoulder-blade, oppoſite to the Ribs.

Fig. 24.

The Holy Bone, to be ſeen from the inner and lower Side.

PLATE IV.

Fig. 25.

Interius ſuperiuſque latus Sacri Oſſis, cum Coccygis Oſſibus, ſeu Caudæ Vertebris.

Fig. 25.

The inner and upper Side of the Holy Bone, with the Bones of the Coccyx, or Vertebra of the Tail.

Fig.

Fig. 26.

Thoracis anterior ſeu inferior Facies.

A. Sternum tota Longitudine conſpiciendum.

B. Elevatio in medio Sterni duos pectoris Muſculos diſcernens.

C. Xiphoides Os.

D. Vertebræ Thoracis.

I, P. Claviculæ.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, Coſtæ legitimæ. 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, ſpuriæ Coſtæ. I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, Cartilagines Coſtarum.

Fig. 27.

Lumbares Vertebræ & Os Sacrum.

Fig. 26.

The foremoſt or lower Face of the Thorax.

A. The Breaſt-bone exhibited in full Length.

B. The Elevation in the middle of the Breaſt-bone, dividing the two Muſcles of the Breaſt.

C. The Bone Xiphoides.

D. The Vertebræ of the Thorax.

I, P. The Claviculæ.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, the true Ribs. 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, the falſe Ribs. I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, the Cartilages of the Ribs.

Fig. 27.

The Vertebræ of the Loins and the Os Sacrum.

PLATE V.

Fig. 28.

Os anonymum, Parte ſuperna conſpiciendum.

Fig. 29.

Idem Os inferna Parte apparens.

Fig. 28.

The nameleſs Bone, ſhewn from the upper Side.

Fig. 29.

The ſame Bone, appearing from the lower Part.

Muſculorum Corporis Equi Explicatio.

Caput moventes Muſculi, quorum 8 *ſunt Paria.*

1. AErnoides. Duplici Ortu, ex inferioris anteriore Parte Vertebræ primæ Colli; inde oblique aſcendens per anteriora Colli in mammillaribus Temporis Oſſis Proceſſibus inſeritur. Caput & deorſum trahunt, & firmum antrorſum continent, ſi ſimul ambo agunt; ſi ſolus, Collum in ſuam Partem flectit.

2. Spernius. Ex quinque Thoracis totidemque Colli Vertebris vicinis oritur nervoſus, & ſatis latus & carnoſus aſcendens Occipiti innectitur; Caput retrorſum agit.

3. Complexus ſeu Trigeminus. Nomen nactus a triplice Origine, quorum unum è quarta & quinta tranſverſis Proceſſibus Vertebrarum Thoracis, ſecundum è prima & ſecunda, tertium verò ex poſteriori Vimine ſeptimæ Colli Vertebræ enatus. Statim poſt Ortum in unum coalitus Corpus, in Occiput aſcendit, ibique ad mammillarium Proceſſuum Radices inſeritur, quandoquidem uno, ſæpe & triplici Tendine. Caput retrorſum agit.

An Explication of the Muſcles of a Horſe's Body.

The Muſcles moving the Head, which are 8 *Pair.*

1. AErnoides. It riſes with a double Root, from the fore Part of the firſt Vertebra of the lower Neck; whence aſcending obliquely along the fore Parts of the Neck, it is inſerted in the mammillary Proceſſes of the temporal Bone. They draw the Head downwards, and keep it firm forwards, when both act together; when one only, it pulls it to it's own Side.

2. Spernius. It ariſes from five Vertebræ of the Thorax, and as many neighbouring ones of the Neck; is nervous, and aſcending broad and fleſhy is knit to the Occiput. It pulls the Head backwards.

3. Complexus or Trigeminus. So called from its triple Origin, one from the fourth and fifth tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Thorax, a ſecond from the firſt and ſecond, and a third from the hinder Branch of the ſeventh Vertebra of the Neck. Immediately after its Riſe theſe unite in one Body, which aſcends into the Occiput, and is there inſerted at the Roots of the mammillary Proceſſes, ſometimes with a ſingle, but often with a triple Tendon. It draws the Head backwards.

4. Turgidulus. Exiguus Muſculus, ſub Modo dicto latens, e ſex ſuperioribus tranſverſis Colli Vertebrarum Proceſſibus enatus, admodum nervoſus, poſtea carnoſior effectus aſcendit, inque poſteriores Partes Radicis mammillaris Proceſſus inſeritur, Caputque retrorſum trahit.

5. Rectus major. Parvus graciliſque, etſi carnoſus. E Spina Vertebræ ſecundæ Colli progenitus, paremque ſuum tangens, ſtatim iterum ſeparatim medio Occipiti innexus. Idem huic cum cæteris Uſus.

6. Rectus minor. Sub Modo dicto ortus, & perſimilis illi: ſed ex prima Vertebra oritur, ubi illa nullam ut aliæ Spinam habet, ne ſcilicet majorem Rectum ſuper illam aſcendentem impediret. Occipitis in Latere inſeritur. Caput ut alii retrorſum ducit.

7. Obliquus ſuperior. Sub Rectis ſitus illis Forma proxime ſimilis, ut & Subſtantia. Exterius per Latera Rectorum Occipitis orti in tranſverſales Proceſſus primæ Colli Vertebræ innectuntur, dexter in dexterum, alter in alium Proceſſum.

8. Obliquus inferior. E Spina ſecundæ Colli Vertebræ ortus, oblique ſurſum fertur, primæque Vertebræ tranſverſis Proceſſibus e Latere injungitur.

Collum moventes Muſculi, quorum quatuor ſunt Paria.

9. Spinatus Colli. E ſeptem anteriorum Thoracis Vertebrarum Spinis enatus, quinque inferioribus Colli Spinis tranſmiſſis, quibus paulum adhæret, acſi quædam ejus pars ex his pronaſceret, tandem ſecundæ deorſum Colli Spinæ Vertebræ inferiori Parti innectitur. Collum retrahit.

10. Tranſverſalis. Ex Thoracis ſex anteriorum Vertebrarum tranſverſis Proceſſibus enatus, carnoſiorque aſcendens, omnibus Colli Vertebrarum tranſverſis Proceſſibus innexus, Collum uti prior retrorſum ducit.

11. Longus Colli. E ſexta & quinta Dorſi Vertebris (vel potius Sterno & Clavicula) aſcendens, omnium Colli Vertebrarum Lateribus innexus eſt; donec in primum aſcendens, ter ambo illi inſeruntur. Collum deorſum trahunt, Caput inclinant, aut etiam directe adverſum exhibent.

4. Turgidulus. A ſmall Muſcle, lying hid in the manner above-mentioned. It ſprings from the ſix upper tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Neck, is very nervous, and afterwards becoming more fleſhy, it aſcends, and is inſerted into the hinder Part of the mammillary Proceſs. Its Office is to pull the Head backwards.

5. The larger Rectus. A ſmall and ſlender, though fleſhy Muſcle. It ariſes from the Spine of the ſecond Vertebra of the Neck, and touching its Fellow, it immediately proceeds again ſeparately, and is knit to to the Middle of the Occiput. Its Uſe is the ſame as the others.

6. The leſſer Rectus. It ariſes in the ſame manner as, and is very much like the former; but its Root is from the firſt Vertebra, where that has no Spine like the others, ſo that it does not impede the larger Rectus which aſcends over it. It is inſerted in the Side of the Occiput, and, as the reſt, pulls the Head backwards.

7. Obliquus ſuperior. Situated under the Rectus's, and reſembling them in Form as well as Subſtance. Outwardly ariſing by the Sides of the Rectus of the Occiput. This Pair of Muſcles are knit into the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the firſt Vertebra of the Neck, the right into the right, and the left into the left.

8. Obliquus inferior. It riſes from the Spine of the 2d Vertebra of the Neck, runs obliquely upwards, and is joined to the Side of the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the firſt Vertebra.

The Muſcles moving the Neck, of which there are four Pair.

9. Spinatus Colli. It riſes from the ſeven Spines of the fore Vertebræ of the Thorax, and paſſing by the five lower Spines of the Neck, to which it cleaves a little, as if ſome Part of it aroſe from them, it is at laſt knit to the lower Part of the 2d Spine, in order downwards, of the Neck, which it draws back.

10. Tranſverſalis. Riſing from the ſix tranſverſe Proceſſes of the fore Vertebræ, and growing more fleſhy as it aſcends, it joins to all the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Neck, which it alſo draws back.

11. Longus Colli. Aſcending from the ſixth and fifth Vertebræ of the Back (or rather from the Breaſt-bone and Clavicula) it is knit into the Sides of all the Vertebræ of the Neck; then riſing to the firſt, it is there inſerted, and the Pair together draw the Neck downwards, incline the Head, or one of them moves it on one Side.

12. Scalenus, aut Triangulare. Incipiens ex poſteriore Coſta, carnoſus larguſque aſcendens, omnibus tranſverſis Proceſſibus inſeritur.

12. Scalenus, or Triangularis. Beginning from the hinder Rib, it aſcends fleſhy and large, and is inſerted in all the tranſverſe Proceſſes.

Thoracem & Pectus moventes ſeptem Paria & unus ſunt.

There are ſeven Pair and an odd one that move the Thorax and Breaſt.

13. Subclavium Par. A Situatione dictus, quoniam Cavitatem inter Claviculam & primam Coſtam explet. Ex interiore & inferiore Parte Claviculæ oritur, éque Colli ultima Vertebra, deorſumque tendens, primæ Coſtæ prope Sternum innexus.

13. The Subclavian Pair. So called from their Situation, becauſe they fill the Cavity between the Clavicula and the firſt Rib. They riſe from the inner and lower Part of the Clavicula, and from the hind Vertebra of the Neck, and running downwards, are knit to the firſt Rib near the Sternum.

14. Serratus major Anticus. A Forma & Proportione. Ex interiore Latere Scapulæ, primaque & ſecunda Coſta pronatus, quinque ſequentibus veris & duabus ſpuriis Coſtis inſeritur. Uſus illius eſt movendi Scapulam, & dilatandi Coſtas in Reſpiratione.

14. Serratus major Anticus. From its Saw-like Form and its Proportion. Ariſing from the inner Side of the Shoulder-blade, and from the firſt and ſecond Rib, it is inſerted in the five following true and two falſe Ribs. Its Uſe is to move the Scapula, and dilate the Ribs in Reſpiration.

15. Serratum poſticum ſuperius par. Situs eſt in Dorſo ſub Rhomboide (ad Scapulam pertinente) inter Scapulas. Oritur membranoſus a tribus inferioribus Colli Oſſibus, primoque Thoracis, & inſertus eſt tribus aut quatuor Interſtitiis primarum Coſtarum.

15. Serratum poſticum ſuperius par. Their Seat is in the Back under the Rhomboid (belonging to the Scapula) between the two Shoulder-blades. It riſes membranous from the three lower Bones of the Neck, and the firſt of the Thorax, and is inſerted in three or four Interſtices of the firſt Ribs.

16. Serratus poſticus inferior. Oritur ab ultimis Spinis tribus Vertebrarum Dorſi, & Lumbarum prima, admodum largus, carnoſus, & nervoſus principio, poſtea per 4 aut 5 poſteriores ſpurias procedens Coſtas, iiſdem antequam Cartilaginibus junguntur innexus eſt.

16. Serratus poſticus inferior. It riſes from the laſt three Spines of the Vertebræ of the Back, and the firſt of the Loins, is at the beginning very large, fleſhy, and nervous, and then proceeding by the 4 or 5 hinder falſe Ribs, it is knit with them before they unite in Cartilages.

17. Triangularis pectoris. E media Sterni Linea (in Pectoris enim interna Cavitate ſedem habet) oritur, & tertiæ, quartæ, octavæ & ſextæ veris Coſtis antequam cartilaginoſi fiunt inſeritur.

17. Triangularis pectoris. They ariſe from the middle Line of the Breaſt-bone, (for their Seat is within the Cavity of the Cheſt) and are inſerted into the third, fourth, ſixth, and eighth true Ribs, before they become cartilaginous.

18. Diaphragma. Muſculus in Cavitate Thoracis Reſpirationi ſerviens inter hos numeratur.

18. The Midriff. A Muſcle in the Cavity of the Cheſt, of uſe in Reſpiration. It is numbered with the reſt.

19. Cervicalis deſcendens. Ex tertia, quarta, quinta, & ſeptima Colli Vertebris oriens, Coſtis Thoracis è contraria vel anteriori Parte innexus eſt.

19. Cervicalis deſcendens. Riſing from the third, fourth, fifth, and ſeventh Vertebræ of the Neck, it is joined to the Ribs of the Thorax on the contrary or fore Part.

20. Sacro-lumbus. Ab Ortu, qui ex Oſſe Sacro & Spinis Lumbarium eſt, appellatur. Situs eſt ſub Serrato poſtico inferiori, ſurſumque repens, longo Dorſi Muſculo admiſcitur, & ſic tranſverſis Lumbarium Proceſſibus Vertebrarum uſque ad ultimum Thoracis adnectitur, unde aſcendens ad Coſtas, illis omnibus ad trium digitorum diſtantiam a Vertebris, Tendine cuique proprio inhæret.

20. Sacro-lumbus. So called becauſe it riſes from the Holy-bone and the Spines of the Loins. It is ſeated under the lower backward Saw-bone, and creeping upwards, mixes with the long Muſcle of the Back, and ſo is knit to the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Loins quite to the laſt of the Thorax, whence ariſing to the Ribs, it joins to them all with a reſpective Tendon to each, at the Diſtance of three Finger's Breadth.

Dorſi

Dorſi & Lumborum Motores quatuor Paria ſunt.

21. Longiſſimus Dorſi. Ex Oſſe Sacro & Ilio pronatus, totum percurrens Lumbum, Dorſum & Collum, ſemper prope Vertebras, uſque ad Proceſſus mammillares porrigitur, quibus innexus deſinit.

22. Quadratus. A Figura quam ambo Muſculi ſimul efficiunt, nam ſingulus triangularis eſt. Latus, validus, & carnoſus oritur ex poſteriori ſuperiorique Cavitate Ilii Oſſis, & interiori ſuperiorique Parte Oſſis Sacri, & ſic, carnoſus uti eſt, omnibus tranſverſis Proceſſibus Lumbarium Vertebrarum ad primam uſque Coſtam, innectitur. Modo dicto Dorſum rectum continet: hic autem introrſum flectere videtur.

23. Semi-ſpinatus. Ex omnibus Sacri Lumbique Oſſium Spinis nervoſus oritur, & inſeritur tranſverſis Lumbarium Oſſium Proceſſibus, ultimiſque Thoracis. Hic cum ſequente Sacro Cavitatem inter ſummas Spinas & Coſtas, Rimamque explet. Spinis contrahendis vacat hic Muſculus.

24. Sacer Muſculus. Oritur ex ea Oſſis Sacri Parte, cujus Alæ Ilii cum Oſſe compactæ ſunt. Poſt Originem craſſior eſt, nec finitur antequam Spinas ultimarum Thoracis Vertebrarum nanciſcitur, quanquam per viam pleriſque Lumbarium tranſverſis Proceſſibus innectitur. Spinis extendendis facti ſunt: ſed ſi unus ſolum agit, Dorſum a ſuo Latere incurvat.

Notandum eſt inter unamquamque Coſtam duplicem eſſe Muſculum, quorum tot ſunt quot Coſtæ utriuſque generis.
25. Illi quidem qui interius in Cavitate ſunt,
26. interiores Intercoſtales, qui vero exterius apparent, Intercoſtales exteriores dicuntur. Uſus eorum eſt facilitandæ Compreſſionis Coſtarum, Inflexione Corporis; ut & in Retractione.

Scapulam moventium quatuor Paria ſunt.

27. Cucullaris. Naſcitur ex Occipite modice nervoſus, ſed deſcendens ex quinque ſuperioribus Colli Vertebrarum Proceſſibus accreſcentibus Nervis; augmentatus imo denique etiam ex Thoracis Vertebris ad octo uſque Ramis auctus, Scapularum ſuperiores anterioreſque Proceſſus, operiens ejus Spinas, Dorſo, Scapulæ, & infimis

The Movers of the Back and Loins are four Pair.

21. Longiſſimus Dorſi. Ariſing from the Holy Bone of the Os Ilium, it pervades the Loins, the Back, and the Neck, keeping ſtill near the Vertebræ, and extends quite to the mammillary Proceſſes, in which it ends.
22. The ſquare Muſcle. Named from the Figure which both Muſcles make together, each being of a triangular Form, broad, ſtrong, and fleſhy. It riſes from the hinder and upper Cavity of the Os Ilium and the inner and upper Part of the Holy-bone, and ſo, fleſhy as it is, is knit to all the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Loins quite to the firſt Rib. In this manner it keeps the Back ſtreight, and ſeems alſo to have a Power of bending it inwards.
23. Semi-ſpinatus. It riſes nervous from all the Spines of the Holy-bone and the Loins, and is inſerted in the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Bones of the Loins, and in the laſt of the Thorax. This, with the following Holy Muſcle, fill the Cavity and the Cleft between the upper Spines and the Ribs. It's Buſineſs, when uſed, is to contract the Spines.
24. The Holy Muſcle. It riſes from that Part of the Holy-bone where its Wings are compacted with the Os Ilium. After its Origin it grows thicker, and does not end till it gains the Spines of the laſt Vertebræ of the Thorax; though by the way it is knit with many tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Loins. Their Office together is to extend the Loins; but when one only acts, it bends the Body on its own Side.

It is to be obſerved, that there is a double Muſcle within each Rib, and that theſe Pairs are juſt as many in Number as the Ribs. The inner ones, that lie hid in the
25. Cavity, are called the inner Intercoſtals, and
26. thoſe which appear outwardly, the outward Intercoſtals. Their Uſe is to facilitate the Compreſſion of the Ribs, and the Inflexion of the Body; as alſo in drawing back.

There are four Pair that move the Scapula, or Shoulder-blade.

27. Cucullaris, or Monk's Hood. It riſes moderately nervous from the Occiput, but deſcending its Nerves increaſe from the five upper Proceſſes of the Vertebræ of the Neck; augmented alſo from below by the Vertebræ of the Thorax, it increaſes at laſt to eight and fore Proceſſes of the Scapula, and at laſt

Colli

Colli Vertebris tandem innexus eſt. Motiones ejus variæ pro Origine Partium ſunt, Scapulam oblique ſurſum trahendo, eamque & Collum contrahendo.

28. Levatores. Quiſque ſitus eſt ſuper Claviculam, oritur è tranſverſis Proceſſibus primæ, ſecundæ, tertiæ, & quartæ Vertebrarum Colli; & hæc Principia poſtmodum unita in unum abeunt Tendinem, qui in anteriori Proceſſu Scapulæ apud Juncturam Cubiti inſertus eſt, & Caput Scapulæ antrorſum ſurſumque trahit.

29. Serratus minor Anticus. Situs eſt ſub Pectorali, & oritur ex primis Coſtis quatuor, antequam Cartilagines fiunt; inde procedens ad Scapulam, illi largo Tendine in Loco anchora-formi inſeritur, eamque antrorſum movet.

30. Rhomboides. Situs eſt ſub Cucullari; tener, largus, & quadratus eſt; oritur carnoſus ex tribus ultimis Colli Vertebris, & totidem anterioribus Thoracis, & admodum ſuo ſimilis Origini extenditur uſque ad Scapulam, cujus Baſi inſertus eſt, & trahit eum ſurſum & retrorſum.

knits with the Back, the Shoulder-blade, and the loweſt Vertebræ of the Neck. Its Motions are various, according to the Origin of its Parts, in drawing the Scapula obliquely upwards, and by contracting that and the Neck.

28. Levatores, the Lifters. They are ſituated upon the Clavicula, and riſe from the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the firſt, ſecond, third, and fourth Vertebræ of the Neck. Theſe Beginnings, united afterwards in one, go forth in a Tendon, which is inſerted in the fore Proceſs of the Scapula at the Joint of the Shank, and draws the Head of the Scapula forwards and upwards.

29. Serratus minor Anticus. It is ſeated under the Pectoral, and riſes from the firſt four Ribs, before they become Cartilages; thence proceeding to the Scapula, it is inſerted in it by a large Tendon in the anchor-form Place, and draws it forwards.

30. Rhomboides. It is ſeated under the Cucullaris; is tender, large, and ſquare; riſes fleſhy from the three laſt Vertebræ of the Neck, and the three foremoſt of the Thorax, and continues very much in the ſame State quite to the Scapula, in the Baſe of which it is inſerted, and draws it upwards and backwards.

Axillam moventium ſunt novem in Unaquaque.

31. Deltoides. Aſcendens ex medio Claviculæ, acumine Axillæ, & toto Scapulæ Dorſo, extenditur ad Medium uſque Scapulæ, ubi inſertus eſt prius. Muſculum Fibras habere quaſdam oblique deorſum, tales quæ ſunt in anteriori ejus Parte, alias oblique introrſum, uti in poſteriori Parte, & denique alias uti in medio, quæ recta deorſum pedem verſus deſcendunt, habere eum ſcilicet triplicem motum, obſervatum eſt. Si igitur Fibræ prioris Partis contrahuntur, Axilla introrſum verſum Nares Equi levatur; ſi mediæ, Dorſum verſus; & ſi poſteriores, oblique deorſum fertur. Itaque his Muſculus non ſolum levat Axillam, ſed & etiam alia quædam perficit.

The Muſcles that move each Shoulder are nine in Number.

31. Deltoides. Aſcending from the Middle of the Clavicula, Extremity of the Shoulder, and the whole Back of the Scapula, it extends to the Middle of the Scapula, and is there inſerted. It is obſerved that this Muſcle has certain Fibres obliquely downwards, ſuch as are thoſe in its fore Part, others obliquely inwards, as in the hinder Part, and others, laſtly, as in the Middle, which deſcend directly towards the Foot; that is, it has a triple Motion. If therefore the Fibres of the firſt Part are contracted, the Shoulder is lifted inwards towards the Noſtrils of the Horſe; if the Middle, it is lifted towards the Back; and if the hinder ones, it is pulled obliquely downwards. By theſe therefore the Muſcle not only lifts the Shoulder, but alſo performs other Functions.

32. Supra Spinatus, aut ſupra Scapularis ſuperior. Cavitatem omnem inter Scapulæ Coſtam anteriorem & Spinam ejus explet. Oritur a Spina Scapulæ, tranſienſque Juncturam Axillæ Cervici largo Tendine innexus eſt. Opus ejus eſt Axillam levare.

32. Supra Spinatus, or ſupra Scapularis ſuperior. It fills all the Cavity between the fore Rib of the Scapula and its Spine. It riſes from the Spine of the Scapula, and croſſing the Joint, is knit to the Neck of the Shoulder by a large Tendon. Its Office is to raiſe the Scapula.

33. Latiſſimus. A Quantitate. Oritur membranoſus & largus a Proceſſibus earum Vertebrarum quæ ſunt inter ſextum Thoracis & Medium Sacri, ut & a ſuperiore Parte Oſſis Ilii. Inde procedens uſque ad eum locum, unde Coſtæ Caudam verſus curvari incipiunt, carnoſior fit, & poſteriorem ſeu inferiorem Scapulæ Proceſſum operiens tranſitu, gracilior, quandoquidem carnoſus ſemper, fit. Largo fortique tandem Tendine Capiti Scapulæ interius inſeritur, inter Pectoralem & Rotundum. Axillam retrorſum Caudam verſus, quamque paulò oblique ſurſum verſus trahit.

34. Rotundus. Oritur ex inferiore Scapulæ Coſta, & admodum forti, carnoſo, & nervoſo Tendine interiori ſuperiorique Axillæ Capitis Parti inſeritur. Axillam retrorſum Caudamque verſus trahit.

35. Pectoralis. Oritur ſuperiori ejus Parte ex Clavicula in Medium uſque; Parte media ex toto Sterno, atque illis Cartilaginibus quæ illi inhærent; inferiore autem Parte è Cartilaginibus ſextæ, ſeptimæ & octavæ Coſtarum. Poſt largum & membranoſum Ortum, carnoſior factus craſſiorque, ad Axillæ Os deſcendit, & illi tandem breviore, ſed admodum craſſo fortique & largo Tendine paululum, ſub Capite ejus, innectitur inter Deltoidem & Bicipitem. Officium ejus eſt, Axillæ Os antrorſum Pectuſque verſus movendi.

36. Caracoides. Oritur ex Proceſſu caracoideo Scapulæ, unde in Medium Axillaris Oſſis inſertus abit, & illud ſurſum & antrorſum ad Pectus trahit.

37. Infra Spinatus, aut ſub Scapularis inferior. Situs eſt intra Spinam & poſteriorem Scapulæ Coſtam, Cavitatem illam explens. Carnoſus oritur a Baſi Scapulæ & Proceſſu inferiori; minuitur inde, ut & Scapula, & lato brevi Tendine inſertus eſt in quarto Humeri Ligamento; retrorſum ac ſurſum Scapulam movet.

38. Sub Scapularis, aut Immerſus. Scapulæ interiori Lateri adhæret & Coſtis, nullo itaque modo apparens, cuidam Ligamentorum axillarium inſeritur, Dorſum verſus illud agens.

39. Rotundus minor. Oritur ex inferiore Scapulæ Latere, & inſeritur in Cervicem inferiorem Axillaris, ſurſum Dorſum verſus illud agens.

33. Latiſſimus. So called from its Magnitude. It riſes membranous and large from the Proceſſes of thoſe Vertebræ that are between the ſixth of the Thorax and the Middle of the Holy-bone, as alſo from the upper Part of the Os Ilium. Thence proceeding to the Place, where the Ribs towards the Tail begin to be bent, it grows more fleſhy, and covering in its Paſſage the hinder and lower Proceſs of the Scapulæ, becomes more ſlender, though ſtill fleſhy. At laſt, with a large and ſtrong Tendon, it is inwardly inſerted in the Scapula, between the Pectoral and the round Muſcles. It draws the Shoulder backwards towards the Tail, though a little obliquely upwards.

34. Rotundus. It riſes from the lower Rib of the Scapula, and with a very ſtrong, fleſhy, and nervous Tendon, is inſerted in the inner and upper Part of the Head of the Shoulder. It draws the Shoulder back towards the Tail.

35. Pectoralis. It riſes in its upper Part from the Clavicula quite to the Middle; in its middle Part from the whole Breaſt-bone, and thoſe Cartilages that adhere to it; in its lower Part from the Cartilages of the ſixth, ſeventh, and eighth Ribs. After its large and membranous Riſe, grown more fleſhy and thick, it deſcends to the Shoulder-bone, and at laſt, by a ſhort, but very thick, ſtrong, and broad Tendon, is gradually knit to it, under its Head, between the Deltoides and the Biceps. Its Office is to move the Shoulder-bone forwards, and towards the Breaſt.

36. Caracoides. It riſes from the caracoidic Proceſs of the Scapula, whence it proceeds and inſerts it ſelf in the Middle of the Shoulder-bone, which it draws upwards, and forwards to the Breaſt.

37. Infra Spinatus, or ſub Scapularis inferior. It is ſeated between the Spine and the hind Rib of the Scapula, filling that Cavity. It riſes fleſhy from the Bottom of the Scapula and its lower Proceſs; thence growing leſs, as does the Scapula, with a ſhort broad Tendon it is inſerted into the fourth Ligament of the Shoulder. It moves the Scapula backwards and upwards.

38. Sub Scapularis, or Immerſus. It cleaves to the inner Side of the Scapula and the Ribs, and thus no where appearing, is joined to ſome of the axillary Ligaments, working the Back towards the Shoulders.

39. Rotundus minor. It riſes from the lower Side of the Scapula, and is inſerted in the lower Neck of the Shoulder, working it upwards towards the Back.

Pedis

Pedis anterioris Cubitique Motores, quanquam plures ſint, quoniam haud magni Momenti ſunt, quatuordecim tantum ſtatuemus.

The Movers of the Fore-foot and the Cubit or Shank, though they are many, yet as all are not of the ſame Moment, we ſhall take notice only of fourteen of them.

40. Biceps. Duplici Origine: altero exterius, tendinoſo rotundoque naſcente e ſuperiore Cavitate Scapulæ; altero ex anchora-formi ejuſdem Proceſſu, partim nervoſo, partim carnoſo, ſed latiorique primo. Inde carnoſus juxta interius Axillaris Caput deſcendens, ſuperiori Cubiti Capiti anterius paulumque interius innectitur, quod antrorſum, ſurſum, introrſumque paulum movet.

40. Biceps. It has a double Origin; one outwardly, ariſing tendinous and round from the upper Cavity of the Scapula; the other from its anchor-form Proceſs, partly nervous, partly fleſhy, but broader nearer the Riſe. Thence it deſcends fleſhy near the inner Head of the Shoulder, and a little lower and forwarder is inſerted in the upper Head of the Cubit, which it moves forwards, upwards, and a little inwards.

41. Brachiæus internus. Introrſum ſub Bicipite ſitus, aliquantumque brevior eo; carnoſus tamen admodum. Oritur prope Finem Deltoides, in Medio ferè Scapulæ, cui firmiter inhæret. Inde priori ſimilis Extenſione exit ad anteriorem Cubiti Partem prope Caput ejus, ibique inſertus ſurſum illud agit.

41. Brachiæus internus. Seated inwardly under the Biceps, and a little ſhorter than that, but very fleſhy. It riſes near the End of the Deltoides, almoſt in the Middle of the Scapula, to which it firmly cleaves. Then with an Extenſion like the former, it proceeds to the fore Part of the Cubit near its Head, and, being there inſerted, works it upwards.

42. Longus. Largus, fortiſque oritur, partim carnoſus partimque nervoſus, ex interiore Coſta Scapulæ: Inde deſcendens per poſteriorem Axillaris Partem, Cubiti Proceſſui inſeritur, Cubitum extendit.

42. Longus. It riſes large and ſtrong, partly fleſhy and partly nervous, from the inner Rib of the Scapula. Thence deſcending by the hinder Part of the Shoulder, it is inſerted in the Proceſs of the Cubitus, which it extends.

43. Brevis. Oritur è poſteriore Parte Cerviceque Axillaris, & ſequens priorem Curſu, Cubito in eadem Parte, quæ Longus, inſertus eſt, ſed parumper inferius, idem quod prior agens.

43. Brevis. It riſes from the hind Part of the Neck of the Shoulder, and following the Courſe of the former, is inſerted in the Cubitus in the ſame Part, but a little lower. It has the ſame Office as the Longus.

44. Brachiæus externus, qui aliis Pars Longi habetur, dum cum illo eundem Originem, Laborem, & Inſertionem Partus eſt.

44. Brachiæus externus, which ſome count a Part of the Longus, as its Origin, Office, and Inſertions are the ſame.

45. Anconæus. Parvus Muſculus, ex interiore & poſteriore Axillaris Parte ortus. Inſertus eſt Cubito duorum Pollicum Latitudine a Proceſſu cubitali. Idem cum Brevi agit.

45. Anconæus. A ſmall Muſcle, riſing from the inner and hinder Part of the Shoulder. It is inſerted in the Cubitus two Inches from the cubital Proceſs, and has the ſame Office as the Brevis.

46. Cubitæus internus. Oritur ex interiori Axillaris Capitulo, & interius Latus Cubiti perſequens, interiori & poſteriori Radii Capiti ſuperiori inſeritur, illudque flectit.

46. Cubitæus internus. It riſes from the inner Head of the Shoulder, and running along the inner Side of the Cubitus, is inſerted in the inner and hinder upper Head of the Radius, which it bends.

47. Radiæus internus. Eandem Originem, Laborem, & Inſertionem cum priori habet.

47. Radiæus internus. It has the ſame Origin, Office, and Inſertion as the former.

48. Cubitæus externus. Ab exteriori Capitulo Axillaris ortus, Cubitumque ſequens, exteriori & anteriori ſuperiori Radii Capituli Parti inſertus, illud extendens.

48. Cubitæus externus. Ariſing from the outer Head of the Shoulder, and running along the Cubitus, it is inſerted in the outer, and upper fore Part of the Head of the Radius, which it extends.

49. Radiæus externus. Similis modo dicto Ortu, Extenſione, Inſertione, & Opere.

49. Radiæus internus. It reſembles the laſt mentioned in its Riſe, Extenſion, Inſertion, and Uſe.

50. Plan-

50. Plantaris. Oritur carnoſus ex inferiori Capitulo, ſed citò in Tendinem abiens longum, Plantæ Pedis innexus eſt, illudque curvat.

51. Sublimis. Oritur ab interiori Capitulo Axillaris, & inſeritur duobus illis ſuperioribus Officulis, eorumque Appendici ſub Radio. Pedem flectere Uſus ejus eſt.

52. Profundus. Ex ſuperiore Parte Cubiti ortus, ultimo Lunato Officulo qui Ungulam induit inſertus eſt. Pedem item flectit.

53. Extenſor magnus. Oritur ab exteriore Capitulo Axillaris, & Tendo ejus anteriori exteriorique Parti tertii ſeu ultimi trium Officulorum Pedis innexus eſt. Pedem itaque extendere Uſui ille eſt.

N. B. Multitudo Tendinum plures in Pede Muſculos eſſe arguit Motioni ejus inſervientes, quos tamen obſcuritas inutiles Inſtituto noſtro reddit. Itaque iis prætermiſſis ad alios tranſibimus, qui Partem conſpicuam quandam Corporis conſtituunt.

Femur moventium 17 *in utraque ſunt.*

54. Pſoas, ſive Lumbaris. (Femur intelligimus eſſe illud Os quod Coxendici jungitur.) Hic Muſculus in Cavo Corporis ſitus eſt, circa Vertebras Lumbarum. Carnoſus oritur e duarum ultimarum Thoracis Vertebrarum tranſverſis Proceſſibus, & tribus prioribus Lumbarum. Inde ad inferius Latus Oſſis Ilii deſcendens, tandem in rotundum fortemque Tendinem abit, qui anteriori Parti inferioris Capitis Femoris Oſſis ſuperiori Parti inſertus eſt. Femur antrorſum & parumper introrſum agit.

55. Iliacus internus. Oritur teneri carnoſoque Tendine ex inferiore Latere Ilii Oſſis, junctuſque Tendine cum priori Muſculo, in inferius Caput Rotatoris ſeu Femoris Oſſis inſeritur. Idem quod prior agit.

56. Pectinæus. Oritur largus & carnoſus è Linea Oſſis Pubis, perque Cartilaginem ejus, & inſertus eſt interiore in Latere Femoris Oſſis inferiore in Capite ejus. Levat introrſumque trahit Femoris Os.

57. Glutæus externus. Admodum carnoſus oritur ex Vertebris Lumbaribus, Spina Oſſis Ilii, & Oſſe Sacro. Poſtea oblique deſcendens, & ſuper Femoris Juncturam & Cox-

50. Plantaris. It riſes fleſhy from the lower Head, but ſoon going off in a long Tendon, it is knit to the Bottom of the Foot, which it bends.

51. Sublimis. It riſes from the inner Head of the Shoulder, and is inſerted in the two upper ſmall Bones, and in their Appendix below the Radius. Its Uſe is to bend the Foot.

52. Profundus. Riſing from the upper Part of the Cubitus, it is inſerted in the laſt Lunar-bone which clothes the Hoof. It alſo bends the Foot.

53. Extenſor magnus. It riſes from the outer Head of the Shoulder, and its Tendon is knit to the outer fore Part of the third or laſt of the three Bones of the Foot. Conſequently its Uſe is to extend the Foot.

N. B. The Multitude of Tendons proves there to be many other Muſcles in the Foot which contribute to its Motion; but theſe are ſo obſcure, that they can be of no Uſe in our preſent Deſign. Paſſing by them therefore, we will proceed to others, which conſtitute ſome viſible Part of the Body.

To move the Thighs there are 17 *in each.*

54. Pſoas, or the Loin-Muſcle. (By the Thigh we mean that Bone which is joined to the Hip.) This Muſcle is ſeated in the Hollow of the Body, about the Vertebræ of the Loins. It riſes fleſhy from the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the two laſt Vertebræ of the Thorax, and the three former of the Loins. Thence deſcending to the lower Side of the Os Ilium, it goes off at laſt in a round and ſtrong Tendon, which is inſerted in the fore Part of the lower Head of the Thigh-bone at the Top. It works the Thigh forwards, and a little inwards.

55. Iliacus internus. It riſes with a tender and fleſhy Tendon from the lower Side of the Os Ilium, and being joined by a Tendon with the preceding Muſcle, is inſerted in the lower Head of the Rotator or Thigh-bone. It has the ſame Office as the former.

56. Pectinæus. It riſes large and fleſhy from the Line of the Os Pubis, and by its Cartilage, and is inſerted in the inner Side of the Thigh-bone in its lower Head. It lifts and draws inwards the Bone of the Thigh.

57. Glutæus externus. It riſes very fleſhy from the Vertebræ of the Loins, the Spine of the Os Ilium, and the Os Sacrum. Then deſcending obliquely, and extending upon

endicem

endicem extendens haud jam tam largus donec in fortem deſinens Tendinem interiori Femoris Oſſis Lateri ſupra Juncturam cum Tibia inſeritur, quam fere attingere videtur. Femur retrorſum trahit & extendit.

58. Glutæus Medius. In Homine ſub priori qui cæteris major eſt latet, ſed longè aliter in Equo. Apparet in hoc major cæteris, inque Medio aliorum duorum qui æque ſpectandi ſunt. Oritur largus carnoſuſque parum altius altero a Spina Oſſis Ilii in anteriore ejus Parte, & inde deſcendens ſuper Juncturam Femoris oblique repit uſque ad Caput inferius Femoris Oſſis, in cujus exteriori Parte Tendine forti, largo, & membranoſo inſertus eſt. Uſus ejus eſt, extendere Femur, & paululum vertat extrorſum, uti ſcilicet Equus ſe habet urinando.

59. Glutæus minor. Cum modo dicto eundem habet Originem in Spina Oſſis Ilii. Initio rotundus & carnoſus eſt, ſed latior fit procedens; oblique deſcendit ad Latus ſecundi ſeu Medii, inque Caput inferius Femoris inſertus eſt, exteriori in Parte. Idem quod Medius agit.

60. Triceps, aut Quadriceps. A quatuor Principiis. Primum oritur in ſuperiori Parte Oſſis Pubis, admodum nervoſus, & deſcendens inſertus eſt in inferius Caput Of-
61. ſis Femoris. Secundum, ab inferiori ejuſdem Oſſis Latere largus & carnoſus exiſtit, & in interiori Parte Femoris Oſſis, inferiori in Capite, ſed paulum altius quam
62. primus inſertus eſt. Tertium, Caput carnoſum nervoſumque aliquando a tota inferiori Parte Coxendicis Oſſis circum Foramen ejus, & prope ſecundi Caput.
63. Quartum, emanat nervoſo carnoſoque Origine a Proceſſu Coxendicis, poſteaque inferiorem Femoris Oſſis Ductum ſequens, in rotundum Tendinem exit, qui cum primi Capitis Tendine, in inferiore Capite Femoris Oſſis inſertus eſt. Hi Muſculi Femur introrſum continent, & confirmant trahuntque, neque illis alius Uſus eſt.

64. Iliacus externus, aut Pyriformis. Inter tres ſequentes, qui ſimul uno Nomine Quadrigemini dicuntur, longiſſimus eſt. Oritur ab inferiori & exteriori Parte Oſſis Sacri, inde deorſum vergit, ad poſteriorem

the Joint of the Thigh and the Hip, not being now ſo large, it ends by Degrees in a ſtrong Tendon, and is inſerted together with the Tibia, above the Joint, in the inner Side of the Thigh-bone, ſeeming almoſt to touch the Tibia. It draws back and extends the Thigh.

58. Glutæus Medius. In a Man it lies hid by the foregoing, which is larger than the reſt; but in a Horſe it is quite otherwiſe. Here the Medius is the largeſt, and lies between the other two, which are equally obvious to the Sight. It riſes large and fleſhy a little above the other, from the Spine of the Os Ilium in its fore Part, and thence deſcending upon the Joint of the Thigh, it creeps obliquely to the lower Head of the Thigh-bone, in the outer Part of which it is inſerted by a ſtrong, large, and membranous Tendon. Its Uſe is to extend the Thigh, and bend it a little backwards, juſt as a Horſe ſtands when he ſtales.

59. Glutæus minor. It has the ſame Origin with the former in the Spine of the Os Ilium; is round and fleſhy at the Beginning, but grows broader as it proceeds: It deſcends obliquely to the Side of the ſecond or Medius, and is inſerted in the lower Head of the Thigh-bone, in its outer Part. It has the ſame Office as the Medius.

60. Triceps, or Quadriceps. It has four Beginnings. The firſt riſes in the upper Part of the Os Pubis, is very nervous, and deſcending is inſerted in the lower Head
61. of the Thigh-bone: The ſecond has its Origin from the lower Side of the ſame Bone, is large and fleſhy, and is inſerted in the inner Part of the Thigh-bone, in the lower Head, but a little higher than
62. the former: The third has a fleſhy and nervous Head, and riſes ſometimes from the whole lower Part of the Hip-bone about its Orifice, and near the Head of
63. the ſecond: The fourth ſprings from a nervous and fleſhy Origin at the Proceſs of the Hip, and afterwards following the lower Duct of the Thigh-bone, it ends in a round Tendon, which is inſerted with the Tendon of the Head of the firſt, in the lower Head of the Thigh-bone. Theſe Muſcles keep the Thigh in, and ſtrengthen and draw it; which is their only Uſe.

64. Iliacus externus, or Pyriformis. Among the three following, which all go by the common Name of Quadrigemini, it is the longeſt. It riſes from the lower and outer Part of the Os Sacrum; thence inclines

Rotatoris Partem, cujus inferioris Capitis
65. exteriori Parti inſertus eſt. Secundus &
66. tertius Nomine particulari carent, ſed ambo ex Oſſis Iſchii Protuberatione oriuntur, atque cum priore eodem loco inſe-
67. runtur. Quartus horum Quadratus dicitur; carnoſior latiorque cæteris eſt. Oritur ex interiori Parte Protuberationis Oſſis Iſchii, & diſtat ad tres Pollices ab alteris; ſed Inſertio ejus eadem eſt. Uſus horum Muſculorum eſt Femur extrorſum movendi.

68. Deltoides Femoris. Oritur ab exteriore Oſſis Ilii Protuberatione acri initio, ſed cito latius panditur in triangulari Forma, largoque & membranoſo Tendine exteriori Femoris Oſſis Parti innectitur. Eundem quem Quadrigemini Actum habet, nempe exterius vertendi Femoris Oſſa, totumque cum Tibia Femoris Appendicem.

69. Obturator internus: Ab Officio quod præſtat in explendo Cavitate inter Femoris & Coxendicis Pubiſque Oſſa. Oritur circum internum Latus Foraminis in Oſſe Ilio, inde procedens per Extremitates Oſſis Coxendicis, ubi cum Femore articulatur, in Rotatoris Cavitate inſertus eſt. Femur oblique circum agit.

70. Obturator externus. Ab Extremo Latere circum Foramen Modo dicto oritur, lato & carnoſo Initio. Cervici poſtea Femoris Oſſis circum Inflexus, cum modo dicto in eadem Cavitate magni Rotatoris inſertus eſt. Idem quod prior agit.

Tibiæ Motorum decem ſunt in utroque Femore.

71. Membranoſus. Exoritur a ſuperiori Parte Oſſis Ilii exterius, & prope Proceſſum Oſſis Femoris membranoſus factus latiorque (inde Faſcia lata dictus, quoniam totum ferme Femur involvit) deſcendens ad Patellam uſque, illam involvens, tandem Tibiæ Oſſis anteriori Parti inſeritur. Extendit Femur, & oblique parumper extrorſum illud vertit.

72. Longus. Sartorio in Homine reſpondet, acri Origine & Tendine forti ex anteriore ſuperiorique Parte Oſſis Ilii Appendicis oritur, & dum oblique deorſum ad interius Femoris Latus extendit, carnoſior efficitur, taliſque continuò eſt uſque dum

downwards, to the hinder Part of the Rotator, in the outer Part of the Head of
65. which it is inſerted. The ſecond and
66. third want a particular Name, but both riſe from the Protuberance of the Os Iſchium, and are inſerted with the firſt in
67. the ſame Place. The fourth of them is called Quadratus; and is more fleſhy and large than the others. It riſes from the inner Part of the Protuberance of the Os Iſchium, and is three Inches diſtant from the others; but has the ſame Inſertion. The Uſe of theſe Muſcles is to move the Thigh outwards.

68. Deltoides Femoris. It riſes from the outer Protuberance of the Os Ilium with a ſharp Beginning, but ſoon grows wider in a triangular Form, and with a large and membranous Tendon is knit to the outer Part of the Thigh-bone. It has the ſame Action as the Quadrigemini, which is to turn the Bones of the Thigh outwards, as alſo the whole Appendix of the Thigh with the Tibia:

69. Obturator internus: So called from its filling the Cavity between the Bones of the Thigh, the Hip, and the Pubis. It riſes about the inner Side of the Orifice in the Os Ilium; thence proceding by the Extremities of the Hip-bone, where it is articulated with the Thigh, it is inſerted in the Cavity of the Rotator. It works the Thigh about obliquely.

70. Obturator externus. It riſes from the Extremity about the Orifice in the Manner above mentioned, with a broad and fleſhy Beginning. It is afterwards inſerted about the Inflexions of the Thigh-bone, in the above Manner, in the ſame Cavity with the great Rotator.

The Movers of the Tibia are ten in each Thigh.

71. Membranoſus. It riſes from the upper and outer Part of the Os Ilium, and near the Proceſs of the Thigh-bone growing more membranous and large (whence it is called the broad Faſcia, becauſe it involves almoſt the whole Thigh) it deſcends to and involves the Patella, and at laſt is inſerted in the fore Part of the Shin-bone. It extends the Thigh, and turns it obliquely a little outwards.

72. Longus. It anſwers to the Sartorius in a Man, and riſes from the fore and upper Part of the Os Ilium, with a ſharp Origin and a ſtrong Tendon; and while it obliquely extends downwards to the inner Side of the Thigh, it becomes more fleſhy,

Tibiæ

Tibiæ Capiti ſuperiori appropinquat; illic, latiori Tendine, interiori ejus Lateri inſertus eſt. Hujus Muſculi Opere non ſolum extenditur Femur, ſed & introrſum fertur.

and continues to be ſo till it comes near the upper Head of the Tibia; there, with a broader Tendon, it is inſerted in its inner Side. By the Help of this Muſcle the Thigh is not only extended, but is likewiſe pulled inwards.

73. Rectus. Oritur ex inferiore Margine Ilii Oſſis, rectaque deorſum fertur rotundus carnoſuſque uſque ad inferius Caput Femoris Oſſis, & Rotulam complectens Proceſſui anteriori Capitis ſuperioris Tibiæ innectitur, quem extendit antrorſumque agit.

73. Rectus. It riſes from the lower Edge of the Os Ilium, and proceeds round and fleſhy directly downwards to the lower Head of the Os Femoris; then, embracing the Rotula, it is knit to the fore Proceſs of the upper Head of the Tibia, which it extends and works forwards.

74. Vaſtus externus. Oritur largus & carnoſus e Radice Rotatoris magni, ſeu Trochanteris, firmiterque adhærens Femoris Oſſi per ejus Longitudinem, deſcendenſque denique, haud longe ab Inſertione ejus, in Tendinem latum firmumque abiens, Recti Tendini admixtus; Patellæ inhærens tandem in Capite ſuperiori innectitur Tibiæ, ſed in exteriore ejus Parte.

74. Vaſtus externus. It riſes large and fleſhy from the Root of the great Rotator, or Trochanter; and ſticking cloſe to the Thigh-bone its whole Length, and afterwards deſcending, not far from its Inſertion, it goes off in a broad and hard Tendon, which mingles with the Tendon of the Rectus; then cleaving to the Patella, it is at laſt knit in the upper Head of the Tibia, but in its outer Part.

75. Vaſtus internus. Oritur è Radice minoris Trochanteris, atque Cervice Femoris Oſſis, Initio nervoſo. Poſtea carnoſior effectus ad Rotulam uſque deſcendens, cui cum aliis Tendinibus Recti Vaſtique externi commixtus inhærens tandem eundem Inſertionis Locum adipiſcitur. Hic cum Recto & Vaſto externo idem agunt.

75. Vaſtus internus. It riſes from the Root of the leſſer Trochanter, and the Neck of the Thigh-bone, with a nervous Beginning. Grown afterwards more fleſhy, it deſcends to the Rotula, to which cleaving, and mingling with the other Tendons of the Rectus and the Vaſtus externus, it reaches at laſt the ſame Place of Inſertion. It has the ſame Office as the Rectus and the Vaſtus externus.

76. Biceps. Oritur acuto nervoſoque Tendine ab Appendice Coxendicis, inque exteriorem Femoris Partem delatus circa Medium ejus carnoſior factus, & ſecundum quaſi Caput accipiens, inde deſcendens adhuc largior effectus, nervoſuſque exterius, donec in fortem Tendinem abit, qui inſertus eſt in exteriori & poſteriori Parte Appendicis Tibiæ. Flectit Tibiam retrorſum agendo.

76. Biceps. It riſes with a ſharp and nervous Tendon from the Appendix of the Hip, and proceeding to the outer Part of the Hip, it grows more fleſhy towards the Middle, and receiving as it were a ſecond Head, it thence deſcends larger, and more nervous outwardly, till it goes off in a ſtrong Tendon, which is inſerted in the outer and back Part of the Appendix of the Tibia. It bends the Tibia by working it backwards.

77. Semimembranoſus. Oritur ex Capitulo Coxendicis, teneri & membranoſo Capite; inde deſcendit in poſterius Femoris Latus donec Tibiam tangit, cui in poſteriori Parte rotundo Tendine inſertus eſt. Idem Officium cum prædicto habet.

77. Semimembranoſus. It riſes from the little Head of the Coxendix, with a tender and membranous Origin; thence it deſcends in the back Side of the Thigh till it touches the Tibia, in which it is inſerted in the hinder Part with a round Tendon. It has the ſame Office with the preceding.

78. Seminervoſus. A Subſtantia. Ex eadem Coxendicis Parte æque procedentes duo enati, inde oblique in poſteriori interiorique Parte Femoris Oſſis deſcendens carnoſior fit; Tendo ejus medio Tibiæ Oſſi inſeritur. Retrorſum Pedem trahit.

78. Seminervoſus. From its half nervous Subſtance. They both proceed alike from the ſame Part of the Hip, and then deſcending obliquely become more fleſhy in the hinder and inner Part of the Thigh, and are inſerted by a Tendon in the middle Bone of the Tibia. They pull the Foot back.

79. Gracilis. E Medio Pubis Oſſis largo Tendine oritur, ad ejus prope Junctu̇ram, & deſcendens ad interius Latus Femoris donec pervenit ad Tibiam, cujus etiam interiori Parti inſertus eſt prope Modo dicto.

80. Poplitæus. Ab exteriori Capite Femoris nervoſus latuſque oritur, poſteaque carnoſior factus, Femoris juxta Oſſem deſcendens, Tibiæ Capitis poſteriori Parti interius innectitur. Oblique Tibiam movet hic Muſculus.

Muſculi Fibulam moventes, & totam Pedis Appendicem, 11 *ſunt.*

81. Tibiæus Anticus. A Situatione ejus ſic dictus. Oritur carnoſus & acutus e ſuperiori Appendice Tibiæ, & firmiter huic Oſſi inhærens per ejus Longitudinem, in ejus Fine in Tendinem abit; qui Tendo ſub Cartilagine qui circum Junctu̇ram volvitur perrepens, in duo aut tres dividitur Tendines, qui cuncti Fibulæ innexi ſunt anteriori in Parte. Pedem antrorſum levat & agit.

82. Peronæus Anticus. Oritur ex ſuperiori Appendice Tibiæ, perque Oſſis Longitudinem ſeſe extendens ad inferius Caput ejus in Tendinem vertitur, qui Lateri exteriori adjacendo Junctu̇ram tranſit, & Fibulæ exteriori Parti inſeritur, quam cum Pede antrorſum & parumper extrorſum agit.

83. Gemellus externus. Oritur fortis, largus & tendinoſus ex inferiore Capite Femoris, & ab ejus exteriori Capite; nam duplicem habet Originem, quæ duo quidem Capita tantiſper ſeparatim procedentes, ante medium adhuc Longitudinem eorum junguntur, inque unum Tendinem cohærent, qui latus & fortis eſt. Inſeritur autem Oſſi illo Appendici Radii qui Talum repreſentat. Fibulam extendere Officium ejus, & retrorſum illud agere.

84. Gaſterocnemius, ſeu Gemellus internus. Sub priori ſitus eſt, & oritur a poſteriori & interiori Proceſſu Capitis Tibiæ, & forti nervoſoque Tendine quidem. Poſtea in Medio fortior evadit, & tandem in Tendinem, qui cum priori conjunctus eandem Inſertionem facit actumque habet.

79. Gracilis. It riſes with a large Tendon from the Middle of the Os Pubis, near its Joint, and deſcends on the inner Side of the Thigh, till it comes to the Tibia, to the inner Part of which it is inſerted almoſt in the Manner above deſcribed.

80. Poplitæus. It riſes nervous and broad from the outward Head of the Thigh, grows more fleſhy afterwards, and deſcending by the Thigh-bone, is knit to the hinder Part of the Head of the Tibia, which it moves obliquely.

The Muſcles moving the Fibula, or Shank, and the whole Appendix of the Foot, are 11 *in Number.*

81. Tibiæus Anticus. So called from its Situation. It riſes fleſhy and ſharp from the upper Appendix of the Tibia, and ſticking very cloſe to the ſaid Bone its whole Length, goes off at the End of it in a Tendon; which Tendon creeping under the Cartilage, that is rolled about the Joint, is divided into two or three Tendons, which are all knit to the Fibula in its fore Part. It lifts the Foot and works it forwards.

82. Peronæus Anticus. It riſes from the upper Appendix of the Tibia, and extending itſelf the Length of that Bone, at its lower Head is converted to a Tendon, which lying cloſe to the outer Side, paſſes the Joint, and is inſerted in the outer Part of the Fibula, which, with the Foot, it works forwards, and a little outwards.

83. Gemellus externus. It riſes ſtrong, large, and tendinous from the lower Head of the Thigh, and from the outward Head of the ſame; for it has a double Beginning. Theſe two Branches proceeding ſeparately a little way, before they have run half their Length are joined, and ſtick together in one Tendon, which is broad and ſtrong. It is inſerted in that Bone which repreſents a Heel, and is an Appendix of the Radius. Its Office is to extend the Fibula, and to work it outwards.

84. Gaſterocnemius, or Gemellus internus. It is ſeated under the former, and riſes from the hinder and inner Proceſs of the Head of the Tibia, with a very ſtrong and nervous Tendon. Growing ſtronger in the Middle, it goes off again at laſt in a Tendon, which, being joined with the preceding, has the ſame Inſertion, and the ſame Office.

85. Plantaris.

85. Plantaris. Carnoſus & rotundus (quamvis aliquando tener) inter duos priores oritur, & quidem ab inferioris Capitis Tibiæ poſteriori Parte, inter duos Muſculos priores eorumque Tendines deorſum extenditur, & ſuper Junctúram vergens, inque poſterius Fibulæ Latus deſcendens, tandem ſub ultimis duobus abiens Muſculis tertio innectitur, retrorſum Pedem agens. Hi Muſculi illum magnum Tendinem, quæ Chorda magna dicitur, in Talo efficiunt.

85. Plantaris. It riſes fleſhy and round (though ſometimes tender) between the two former, and from the hinder Part of the lower Head of the Tibia; is extended downwards between the ſaid two Muſcles and their Tendons, and turning over the Joint, and deſcending into the hinder Side of the Fibula, at laſt, going off under the laſt two Muſcles, is knit to a third, working the Foot backwards. Theſe Muſcles make that large Tendon in the Heel, which is called the Chord.

86. Tibialis poſticus. Oritur è ſuperioris Capitis Tibiæ interiore Parte, & inde deſcendens inter prius dictos Muſculorum Tendines, per Junctúram in Fibulæ interius Latus decurrens uſque ad tertium Os, ubi ſub Planta inſeritur. Introrſum oblique Pedem movet.

86. Tibialis poſticus. It riſes from the internal Part of the upper Head of the Tibia, and thence deſcends between the forementioned Tendons of the Muſcles, running by the Joint to the inner Side of the Fibula quite to the third Bone, where it is inſerted under the Bottom of the Foot. It moves the Foot obliquely inwards.

87. Peronæus poſticus. Ex ſuperiori & poſteriori Tibiæ Capite oritur, unde deſcendens in exteriori Oſſis Latere firmiter illi adhæret, donec Medium ejus attingit; inde tendinoſus factus, cumque Antici Peronæi Tendine deſcendens, in exteriori Parte Fibulæ eam tranſgredit donec in Plantam Ungulæ inſeritur. Oblique extrorſum Pedem movet.

87. Peronæus poſticus. It riſes from the upper and hinder Head of the Tibia, whence it deſcends to the outer Side of the Bone, to which it ſticks very cloſe, till it comes to the Middle of it; thence, grown tendinous, and deſcending with the Tendon of the Peronæus Anticus in the outer Part of the Fibula, which it croſſes, it is at laſt inſerted in the Bottom of the Hoof. It moves the Foot obliquely outwards.

88. Flexor longus. Oritur ex ſuperioris Capitis poſteriore Parte, Medioque tendinoſus factus, in anteriorem ejus Partem deſcendens ſuper Junctúram Fibulæ & Tibiæ, totam Longitudinem Pedis tranſmigrans uſque ad Ungulæ Os, cui infra inſertus eſt. Pedem retrorſum movet, & extendit.

88. Flexor longus. It riſes from the inner Part of the upper Head, and grown tendinous in the Middle, deſcends in the fore Part upon the Joint of the Fibula and the Tibia, wandering over the whole Length of the Foot to the Bone of the Hoof, in which it is inſerted below. It moves the Foot backwards, and extends it.

89. Flexor brevis. Oritur a Fibulæ ſuperioris Capitis poſteriore Latere, ſub Protuberatione ſeu Talo, eandemque Inſertionem & Motionem habet cum priori.

89. Flexor brevis. It riſes from the hinder Side of the upper Head of the Fibula, under the Protuberance or Heel, and has the ſame Inſertion and Motion as the preceding.

90. Longus Tenſor. A Femore ſub Patella internus oritur, perque anteriorem Partem hujus Oſſis deſcendens, perque Longitudinem Fibulæ, trium Oſſium inferiorum in ultimo Oſſe anteriori Parte ſuperius inſertus eſt. Pedem antrorſum extendit.

90. Longus Tenſor. It riſes from the Thigh below under the Patella, and deſcending by the fore Part of the ſaid Bone, and along the Fibula, it is inſerted above in the fore Part of the laſt of the three Bones that form the lower Foot. It extends the Foot forwards.

91. Extenſor brevis. Ex anteriore Parte Ligamenti annularis oritur, illius qui Fibulam ambit ſuperiori in Junctura; deſcendens cum priori eandem Inſertionem & actum habet.

91. Extenſor brevis. It riſes from the fore Part of the annular Ligament, that Ligament which encompaſſes the Fibula in its upper Joint, and deſcending with the preceding, has the ſame Inſertion and the ſame Office.

Capitis Muſculi 25 *ſunt Paria.*

92. Oculorum Motioni tria Paria inſervi-
unt. Duo qui eos aperiunt, ſunt ſitæ
93. in Oſſis ſuperiori Margine, qui Oculos
Cavitate ſua amplectitur.

94. Secundum Par, qui claudunt eos, cir-
cum Palpebras ſitæ ſunt, ita ut illas
95. includant, & affixæ interius Margini cir-
culari.
96. Tertium Par, quod vel unus Muſculus
quibuſdam habetur, haud propriè Ocu-
lis inſervit, ſed tantum accidentaliter,
& ille eſt frontalis.
97. Naſum movent 4 Paria. Abducentium
98. unum dicitur Par. Secundum ſurſum
attrahens Par etiam quibuſdam Deltoi-
des dicitur; in Medio Naſi dividuntur.
99. Tertium Par adducit Naſum, & in an-
teriori Parte Naſi ſupra Labrum; &
100. quartum Par, quod idem agit, intra Naſi
Oſſa ſitum eſt.

101. Labia moventum ſeptem Paria ſunt.
Quadratus detrahens Labia fere ipſa ef-
102. ficit in Latere eorum. Secundum, Fol-
laris ſeu Bucca, totum Latus occupat
ad Oculos uſque, & natus ex ſuperiori,
103. inferiori Maxillæ inſertus eſt. Tertium
Par attollentium Labia eſt, in anteri-
104. riora ſuperioris Maxillæ. Quartum Par
Abducentium eſt, ſub Jugali Oſſe or-
105. tus. Quintum Par Jugale, ſeu Zuge-
maticum, oritur ex Proceſſu Oſſis Ju-
galis. Hæ omnia ſuperium Labrum mo-
106. vent. Sextum Par Deprimentes ſunt.
Inferioribus Labris inſervit, oritur ex
107. Lateribus Maxillarum inferiorum. Sep-
timum Par oblique detrahens eſt pau-
lum, paulum ſub illo ſitus eſt.

108. Maxillam inferiorem movent quinque
Paria. Temporalis in Temporis Oſſe
oritur, & minori Proceſſui Maxillæ in-
109. ſeritur, ſurſumque illum trahit. Secun-
dus Deprimens eſt. Oritur ex Styli
ſeu Maxillæ-formis Officulis Temporis
Oſſis ſeu Occipitis, & poſteriori Coſtæ
Maxillarum inſertus eſt; deorſum illos
110. trahit. Maſtoides, ex ſuperiori Maxilla
ortus, in inferiorem exterius innectitur.
111. Mandiendo inſervit. Pterigoideum poſt
hos poſitum Cervicem verſus videmus,
primoque externum, ſecundo ſub illo

The Muſcles of the Head are 25 *Pair.*

92. There are three Pair that ſerve to the
Motion of the Eyes. Two that open
them are ſeated in the upper Margin of
93. the Bone which receives the Eye in its
Cavity or Socket.

94. The ſecond Pair, which ſhuts them, are
ſeated about the Eyelids, ſo as to incloſe
95. them; and faſtened within to the cir-
cular Margin.
96. The third Pair, which ſome take only
for one Muſcle, does not properly offi-
ciate for the Eye, but only accidentally,
and that is the frontal Muſcle.
97. Four Pair move the Noſe. One is called
98. the adducent Pair: The ſecond, the Pair
that draws up, and by ſome the Del-
toides, which are divided in the Middle
99. of the Noſe. The third is the adducent
Pair, ſeated in the fore Part of the Noſe,
100. over the Lip: The fourth Pair, which
has the ſame Office, is ſituated among
the Bones of the Noſe.

101. There are ſeven Pair that move the
Lips. The Quadratus draws the Lips
back, and almoſt forms the Sides of them.
102. Secondly, the Follaris or Bucca poſſeſſes
the whole Cheek up to the Eyes, and
riſing from the upper, is inſerted in the
103. lower Jaw. The third Pair draw the
Lips up, in the fore Part of the upper
104. Jaw. The fourth Pair are the Abdu-
cents, and riſe under the Os Jugale.
105. The fifth is the Jugal Pair, or Parjuge-
maticum, which riſes from the Proceſs
of the Os Jugale. All theſe move the
106. upper Lip. The ſixth Pair are the De-
preſſors. They ſerve the lower Lips,
and riſe from the Sides of the lower
107. Jaws. The ſeventh Pair draw obliquely
back a little, and are ſeated ſomewhat
under the former.

108. To move the lower Jaw there are five
Pair. The temporal Muſcle riſes in the
Temporal-bone, and is inſerted in the
leſſer Proceſs of the Jaw, and draws it
109. upwards. The ſecond Pair are the De-
preſſors. They riſe from the little Bones
of the Style, or Jaw-like-bone of the
Temples or Occiput, and are inſerted in
the hinder Protuberance of the Jaws,
110. which they draw downwards. The Maſ-
toides, riſing from the upper Jaw, is out-
wardly knit into the under. Its Uſe is in
111. chewing. After theſe is the Pterigoidæ-
um, placed towards the Neck, the firſt
the external, and under that the internal
112. in-

112. internum. Ab Oſſe Alæ-ſimili ortus ſub Jugali, inferiori Maxillæ inſeruntur. Dentes ſemovit, ſeu aperit Os, & antrorſum Maxillam inferiorem movit.

113. Aures quatuor Par reguntur. Primum Par attollens dicitur. A frontis Muſculo antrorſum oritur, & Auri in Ra-
114. dice inſertus eſt. Detrahens ſecundus eſt. Ex mamillari Proceſſu oritur, & inferius in Radice Auris nectitur tri-
115. plici Tendine. Tertius Aurem Adducens eſt, Pars creditur Quadrati Labi-
116. orum eſſe. Abducens ultimum Par eſt. Oritur ex Occipite, & Auri antrorſum inſertus eſt, retrorſum Aurem vertit.

Explicationis Finis.

112. One. They riſe from the Wing-like-bone under the Os Jugale, and are inſerted in the lower Jaw. It ſeparates the Teeth, or opens the Mouth, and moves the lower Jaw forwards.

113. Four Pair govern the Ears. The firſt are the Drawers-up. They riſe from the forehead Muſcle forwards, and are
114. inſerted in the Root of the Ear. The ſecond Pair draw back. They riſe from the mamillary Proceſs, and are knit below in the Root of the Ear with a triple
115. Tendon. The third Pair are the Adducents, and are taken for Part of the
116. Quadratus Labiorum. The laſt are the Abducents. They riſe from the Occiput, and are inſerted in the fore Part of the Ear, which they turn back.

End of the Explanation.

Sequitur ſimplex Muſculorum, quod cuivis Parti inſerviunt, quidque agunt Explicatio Brevior.

Here follows a ſimple and ſhort Explanation of the Muſcles, the Number of them to each Part, and their Offices.

Capiti inſervientes, & quidem primum Oculis.

Of the Muſcles of the Head, and firſt thoſe of the Eyes.

1.	A Periens ——	92	THE Opener.
2.	A Claudens ——	94	The Shutter.
3.	Frontalis —— ——	96	The frontal Muſcle.

Naſum moventes.

To move the Noſe.

1.	Abducens ——	97	The abducent Muſcle.
2.	Surſum trahens ——	98	The Puller-up.
3.	Adducens exterior ——	99	The external adducent Muſcle.
4.	Adducens interior ——	100	The internal.

Labia moventes.

To move the Lips.

1.	Quadratus detrahens ——	101	The four-ſquare Drawer.
2.	Bucca ſeu Follis ——	102	The Trumpet or Bellows.
3.	Attollens ——	103	The Lifter-up.
4.	Abducens ——	104	The Abducer.
5.	Jugale ——	105	The jugal Muſcle.
6.	Deprimens ——	106	The Depreſſer.
7.	Detrahens obliquus ——	107	The oblique Drawer.

Maxillam movent inferiorem,

The lower Jaw is moved by,

1.	Temporalis ——	108	The temporal Muſcle.
2.	Deprimens ——	109	The Depreſſer.
3.	Maſtoides ——	110	The Maſſeters or Chewers.
4.	Pterigoidæus exterior ——	111	The external } Wing-like Muſcle.
5.	Pterigoidæus interior ——	112	The internal }

Aurium Muſculi.

Muſcles of the Ear.

1.	Attollens ——	113	The Lifter-up.
2.	Detrahens ——	114	The Puller-back.
3.	Adducens ——	115	The Adducer.
23—4.	Abducens ——	116	The Abducer.

Caput moventes ſunt antrorſum.

1. Sternoides —— —— 1
2. Obliquus inferior —— —— 8

Retrorſum.

1. Splenius —— 2
2. Complexus —— 3
3. Parvus & craſſus —— 4
4. Rectus major —— 5
5. Rectus minor —— 6
8——6. Obliquus ſuperior —— 7

N. B. Hi Muſculi ſi ambo agunt id efficere dicuntur, ſed ſi ex uno Latere ſolus quidam agit, ſemper in ſuam Partem Caput flectit.

Colli ſequuntur Motores.

Retrorſum.

1. Spinatus —— 9
2. Tranſverſalis —— 10
3. Cucullaris —— 27

Antrorſum.

1. Longus Colli —— 11
5——2. Scalenus —— 12

Idem quod diximus de Capitis Motoribus, quod nempe ſingulus in ſuum Latus movet, cum ambo aut antrorſum aut retrorſum id agant, hic verum eſt.

Thoracem movent,

Contrahendo,

1. Intercoſtales interni & externi 3 2, 25, 6
2. Triangularis —— 17
3. Sacro-lumbus —— 20

Dilatando Reſpirationi,

1. Subclavium —— 13
2. Major Serratus Anticus 14
3. Serratus ſuperior Poſticus 15
4. Serratus Poſticus inferior 16
5. Cervicalis deſcendens — 19
40—6. Diaphragma —— 18

Dorſum Intendentes.

1. Longiſſimus Dorſi — 21
2. Quadratus —— 22
3. Sacer —— 24
4——4. Semi-ſpinatus —— 23

Scapulam movent,

Surſum & antrorſum,

1. Levator —— 28

Surſum & retrorſum,

1. Rhomboides —— 30

Antrorſum,

1. Serratus minor Anticus — 29

Retrorſum ſeu ſurſum Dorſum verſus,

4——1. Cucullaris —— 27

Theſe move the Head forwards.

1 The Breaſt-bone Muſcle.
8 The lower oblique Muſcle.

Backwards.

2 The Splenius.
3 The complex Muſcle.
4 The ſmall thick Muſcle.
5 The greater } right Muſcle.
6 The leſſer }
7 The upper oblique Muſcle.

N. B. When theſe Muſcles act on both Sides, they perform the Office here aſſigned them; but if one of them only pulls, it always bends the Head towards its own Side.

Here follow the Movers of the Neck.

Backwards.

9 The ſpinal } Muſcle.
10 The tranſverſe }
27 The Monk's Hood.

Forwards.

The long Neck Muſcle.
The triangular Muſcle.

What we remarked of the Movers of the Head, namely, that ſingly they draw the Head their own way, but both together either backwards or forwards, is true here.

The Thorax or Cheſt is moved,

In contracting it, by

The internal and external Intercoſtals.
The triangular Breaſt Muſcle.
The Holy-Loin Muſcle.

In dilating it for Reſpiration, by

13 The Subclavian Muſcle.
14 The larger fore Saw-like Muſcle.
15 The upper hind Saw-like Muſcle.
16 The lower hind Saw-like Muſcle.
19 The deſcending Neck Muſcle.
18 The Midriff.

The Benders of the Back.

21 The longeſt Back Muſcle.
22 The four ſquare Muſcle.
24 The holy Muſcle.
23 The ſemi-ſpinal Muſcle.

The Shoulder-blade is moved,

Upwards and forwards, by

28 The Lifter or Heaver.

Upwards and backwards, by

30 The rhomboidal Muſcle.

Forwards, by

29 The leſſer fore Saw-like Muſcle.

Backwards, or upwards towards the Back, by

27 The Monk's Hood.

Humerum

Humerum movent,

Surſum ſeu antrorſum,

1. Deltoides ——
2. Supra-ſpinatus ——

Deorſum ſeu retrorſum,

1. Latiſſimus ——
2. Rotundus major ——

Antrorſum,

1. Pectoralis —— 35
2. Caracoidæus —— 36

Retrorſum,

1. Infra Spinatus —— 37
2. Sub Scapularis — 38
9——3. Rotundus minor — 39

Ultimi quinque Muſculi non tam Scapulam quam Humerum movent.

The Shoulder is moved,

Upwards or forwards, by

31 The Delta-like triangular Muſcle.
32 The upper ſpinal Muſcle

Downwards or backwards, by

33 The very broad } Muſcle.
34 The larger round }

Forwards, by

35 The pectoral } Muſcle.
36 The caracoidal }

Backwards, by

37 The inner ſpinal }
38 The upper blade } Muſcle.
39 The leſſer round }

The laſt five Muſcles do not ſo much move the Shoulder-blade, as the Shoulder itſelf.

Cubiti Flexores id faciunt

Vel flectendo, ut

1. Biceps —— 40
2. Brachiæus internus —— 41

Vel extendendo, ut

1. Longus ——
2. Brevis ——
3. Brachiæus externus —
6——4. Anconæus ——

Radium movent Flexores.

1. Cubitæus internus —— 46
2. Radiæus internus — 47

Et Extenſores.

1. Cubitæus externus — 48
2. Radiæus externus — 49

Trium Pedis Oſſium Flexores.

1. Sublimis —— 51
2. Profundus —— 52
3. Plantaris —— 50

Extenſores.

8——1. Extenſor magnus — 53

Femoris Muſculi.

Flexores antrorſum.

1. Pſoas —— 54
2. Iliacus internus —— 55

Surſum & introrſum.

3. Pectinæus —— 56

Retrorſum, ſeu Extendentes & paulum extrorſum Vertentes.

1. Glutæus major —— 57
2. Glutæus medius — 58
3. Glutæus minor — 59

Extrorſum Flexores.

1. Quadrigeminus primus pyriformis 64
2. Quadrigeminus ſecundus 65
3. Quadrigeminus tertius — 66

The Movers of the Cubit-bone perform their Office

By bending it, as

The double headed } Muſcle.
The inner arm }

Or by extending it, as

The long }
The ſhort }
The outer arm } Muſcle.
The anconeal }

Theſe bend the Radius or Shank.

The inner Cubit } Muſcle.
The inner Shank }

Theſe extend it.

The outer Cubit } Muſcle.
The outer Shank }

The Benders of the three Bones of the Feet.

The ſublime }
The profound } Muſcle.
The ſolar }

Their Extenders.

The large Pair.

Muſcles of the Thigh.

To bend it forwards.

The Loin Muſcle.
The inner Haunch Muſcle.

Upwards and inwards.

The Comb-like Muſcle.

To bend it backwards, or to extend and turn it a little outwards.

The greater Buttock Muſcle.
The middle Buttock Muſcle.
The leſſer Buttock Muſcle.

To bend it outwards.

The Pear-like Muſcle, or firſt of the 4 Twins.
The ſecond of the Quadrigemini.
The third.

4. Quadrigeminus quartus, ſeu Quadra- tus	——	67	The fourth, or the four-ſquare Muſcle.
5. Deltoides Femoris	——	68	The Delta-like Muſcle of the Thigh.
Introrſum Flexores.			*To bend it inwards.*
1. Quadricipitis Pars prima		60	The firſt Head of the Quadriceps.
2. Ejuſdem ſecunda	——	61	The ſecond }
3. ——— tertia	——	62	The third } of the ſame.
4. ——— quarta	——	63	The fourth }
Oblique Flectentes.			*To bend it obliquely.*
1. Obturator externus	——	70	The outward Stopper, or Filler-up.
17—2. Obturator internus	——	69	The inward Stopper.

Tibiæ Muſculi.

Muſcles of the Tibia or Leg.

Extenſores.

Extenders.

1. Membranoſus	——	71	The membranous }
2. Longus	——	72	The long }
3. Rectus	——	73	The right } Muſcle.
4. Vaſtus externus	——	74	The vaſt external }
5. Vaſtus internus	——	75	The vaſt internal }
Flexores.			*Benders.*
1. Biceps	——	76	The two-headed }
2. Semi-membranoſus		77	The half membranous } Muſcle.
3. Semi-nervoſus	——	78	The half nervous }
4. Gracilis	——	79	The ſlender }
Oblique Flectens.			*To bend it obliquely.*
10—1. Poplitæus	——	80	The Ham Muſcle.

Radii Muſculi.

Muſcles of the Radius.

Flexores ejus ſunt.

Its Benders.

1. Tibiæus Anticus	——	81	The fore tibial } Muſcle.
2. Peronæus Anticus		82	The fore peroneal or fibular }
Extenſores.			*Its Extenders.*
1. Gaſterocnemius externus		83	The external } Gaſterocnemius.
2. Gaſterocnemius internus		84	The internal }
3. Plantaris	——	85	The ſolar Muſcle.
Extrorſum oblique.			*Obliquely outwards.*
1. Tibiæus poſticus	——	86	The hind tibial } Muſcle.
7—2. Peronæus poſticus		87	The hind peroneal }

Imum Pedem moventes Muſculi.

Muſcles moving the lower Foot.

Flexores.

Benders.

1. Longus Flexor	——	88	The long } Bender.
2. Brevis Flexor	——	89	The ſhort }
Extenſores.			*Extenders.*
1. Longus Extenſor	——	90	The long } Extender.
2. Brevis Extenſor	——	91	The ſhort }

Characterum Muſculos in Figuris Indicantium Explicatio.

Explanation of the References that point out the Muſcles in the Plates.

PLATE VI.

Fig. 1.

A. Frontalis
B. Temporalis.
C. Auris Motores, Ear Movers.
D. Palpebras Moventes, Eyelid Movers.
E. Philtra nominati Narium Motores } Noſe
F. Nares Adducens } Movers.
G.
H. Longum Par Colli.
I. Scalenus, aut Triangularis.
K. Trigeminus, aut Complexus.
L. Sternoides.
M. Scapularium Muſculorum Maſſa, Maſs of ſcapulary Muſcles.
N. Pectorales Muſculi.
O. Deltoides Scapulæ.
P. Dentatus major Anticus.
Q. Serratus, aut Dentatus Poſticus.
R. Cucullaris, aut Trapezius.
S. Sacro-Lumbaris.
Z. Vaſtus externus.
Δ. Glutæus anterior.
Θ. Glutæus medius.
Γ. Glutæus poſterior.
T. Longiſſimus Dorſi.
U. Semi-Spinatus.
W. Obliquus deſcendens.
X. Deltoides Femoris.
Y. Rectus.

PLATE VII.

Fig. 2.

A. Frontalis.
B. Temporalis.
C. Maſtoides.
D. Palpebrarum Motor.
E. Philtrum Nares movens.
F. Alter Narium Motor.
G. Labia Claudens.
H. Maſſeter Scalenus.
I. Trigeminus aut Complexus.
K. Trigeminus.
L. Sternoides.
M. Subclavius.
N. Pectoralis.
O. Deltoides Scapulæ.
P. Dentatus major Anticus.
Q. Trapezius.
R. Dentatus poſticus.
S. Sacro-Lumbaris.
T. Longus Dorſi.
W. Obliquus deſcendens.
V. Semi-ſpinatus.
U. Proceſſus cartilaginoſus Scapulæ, The cartilaginous Proceſs of the Scapula.
X. Deltoides Femoris.
Y. Rectus.
Z. Vaſtus externus.
Δ. Θ. Γ. Glutæus { anterior. medius. poſterior.
a. Triangularis ſeu Splenius.
b. Spinatus.
c. Complexi, aut Trigemini Partes.
d. Supra-Spinatus Scapulæ.
e. Spina Scapulæ.
f. Infra-Spinatus Scapulæ
g. Depreſſor Cubiti.
h. Brachiæus externus.
i. Longus.
k. Biceps.
l. Longi, Bicipitis, & Brachiæ Tendinis Inſertio; Inſertion of the Tendon of the Longus, Biceps, and Brachiæus.
m. Cubitæus externus.
n. Radiæus externus.
o. Extenſor magnus.
p. Radiæus internus.
q. Cubitæus internus.
Λ. Tranſverſalis Abdominis.
Σ. Ventris Rectus.
Ξ. Obliquus deſcendens.
Π. Biceps Femoris.
r. Gaſterocnemius externus.
f. Gaſterocnemius internus.
t. Tibius.
u. Flexor Fibulæ.

Fig. 3.

A. Maſtoides.
B. Philtrum.
C. Labia Claudens.
D. Cucullaris.
E. Tranſverſalis Colli.
F. Spinatus Colli.
G. Triangularis.
H. Trigeminus, aut Complexus.
I. Sternoides.
K. Subclavius.
L. Deltoides Scapulæ.
M. Proceſſus cartilaginoſus Scapulæ.
N. Spina Scapulæ.
O. Supra-Spinatus.
P. Infra-Spinatus.
Q. Biceps.

Q. Biceps.
R. Dentatus major anterior.
S. Longus Cubitalis.
T. Brachiæus externus.
V. Dentatus poſterior.
U. Sacro Lumbaris.
W. Longus Dorſi.
X. Obliquus aſcendens.
Y. Obliquus deſcendens.
Z. Deltoides.
□. Rectus Abdominis.
Γ. Biceps Femoris.
Δ. Longiſſimi Dorſi Portio.
Θ. Glutæus anterior.
Λ. Medius Glutæus.
Σ. Glutæus poſterior.
Π. Vaſtus externus.
Ξ. Biceps poſterior.
Φ, Ω. Lividus aut Pectinalis.
Ψ. Semi-nervoſus.
a. Cubitæus externus.
b. Radiæus externus.
c. Extenſor magnus.
d. Radiæus internus.
e. Cubitæus internus.
f. Peronæus anticus.
g. Peronæus poſticus.
h. Gaſterocnemius externus.

F I N I S.

An INDEX to the PLATES describing the

DISEASES incident to HORSES.

	Let.	No.
A		
Anticor	*a*	2
Anticor, or palpitation of the heart, to know	*f*	6
Artery, operation on, for ſore eyes	*f*	14
B		
Barbs	*a*	1
Bleed, where to	*f*	2
Bliſters on the lips	*b*	4
Bowel gall'd	*g*	3
C		
Cheſt-founder'd	*c*	5
Circled feet	*b*	3
Cloven or Ox-feet	*i*	5
Corns in the heel	*k*	6
Crown ſcab	*a*	5
And	*b*	4
Curb	*c*	9
Curve ſurrounding the ham	*g*	9
E		
Ears to carry well	*e*	5
Excreſcences on the ſides	*f*	13
Eye, excreſcences on	*k*	8
Eye, haw in it	*f*	1
F		
Fetlocks, ſtrains in	*g*	2
Fire, to, the haw or hough	*g*	8
Foot, ſole of	*d*	9
Founder, operation for the cheſt	*i*	4
Fluxions in the eyes	*g*	1
G		
Glanders	*c*	4
H		
Heel cloſe	*d*	4
Heels, chaps in	*d*	7
Hoof bound in	*d*	8
Hoof-horny	*d*	6
Hough, elbow of	*d*	2
J		
Jardon	*g*	7
K		
Kidnies hurt	*c*	7
Knees broke	*b*	2
Knubs and warts	*c*	3
Knuckles over, a horſe that	*h*	2,5
L		
Lampas, ſeat of	*h*	1,7
Legs, rats-tails on	*d*	10
Legs, to cauteriſe	*c*	5
Legs, trembling, of the	*b*	1
M		
Mallanders, ſeat of	*k*	2
Molet, nervous behind	*f*	9
Molet, ſimple	*f*	7
O		
Oſſelets	*k*	5
Oſſelets, ſimple	*k*	4
P		
Paſtern-joint	*d*	5
Pearl or web on the eye	*g*	11
Pincer	*a*	6
Pole-evil	*g*	13
Purſy horſe	*d*	1
Q		
Quitter bone	*e*	8
R		
Ring bone, ſeat of	*a*	3,4
And	*e*	2
Round bone, operation for lameneſs in	*e*	7
Rupture	*h*	10
S		
Sallenders, ſeat of	*k*	1
Sand crack	*h*	3
Scarf, elephantick	*d*	12
Seton, the ſhoulder to	*f*	10
Seaton to dry humours from the eyes	*i*	2
Seaton for the round bone	*k*	11
Seime, outward or inward	*f*	5
Shoulder, boreing of	*e*	6
Shoulder diſlocated, bandage for	*g*	12
Shoulder, ſlip or wrench, where to bleed for	*h*	6
Sinew, back	*g*	5
Sole above the hoof or pumice	*k*	9
Spavin, blood	*f*	8
Spavin bone, ſeat of	*e*	1
Spavin, dry	*f*	10
Splents	*f*	3
Sprained ſinew	*f*	4
Sprain between the fetlock and hoof	*g*	6
Stifle, bandage for	*f*	15
Strangles, baſtard, ſeat of	*e*	4
Strangles, where they iſſue	*k*	7
String halt	*f*	12
T		
Teeth	*a*	7,8
Tuffs	*d*	1
V		
Vein, ſhuckle	*d*	3
Vertigo, or ſtaggers, operation for	*i*	1
Vives	*c*	1
W		
Wen	*i*	3
Windgall	*g*	10
Windgalls	*g*	10
Withers, hurt in	*c*	8

R. Parr Sculp.

PLATE. II.

Fig. 2.

Fig. 1.

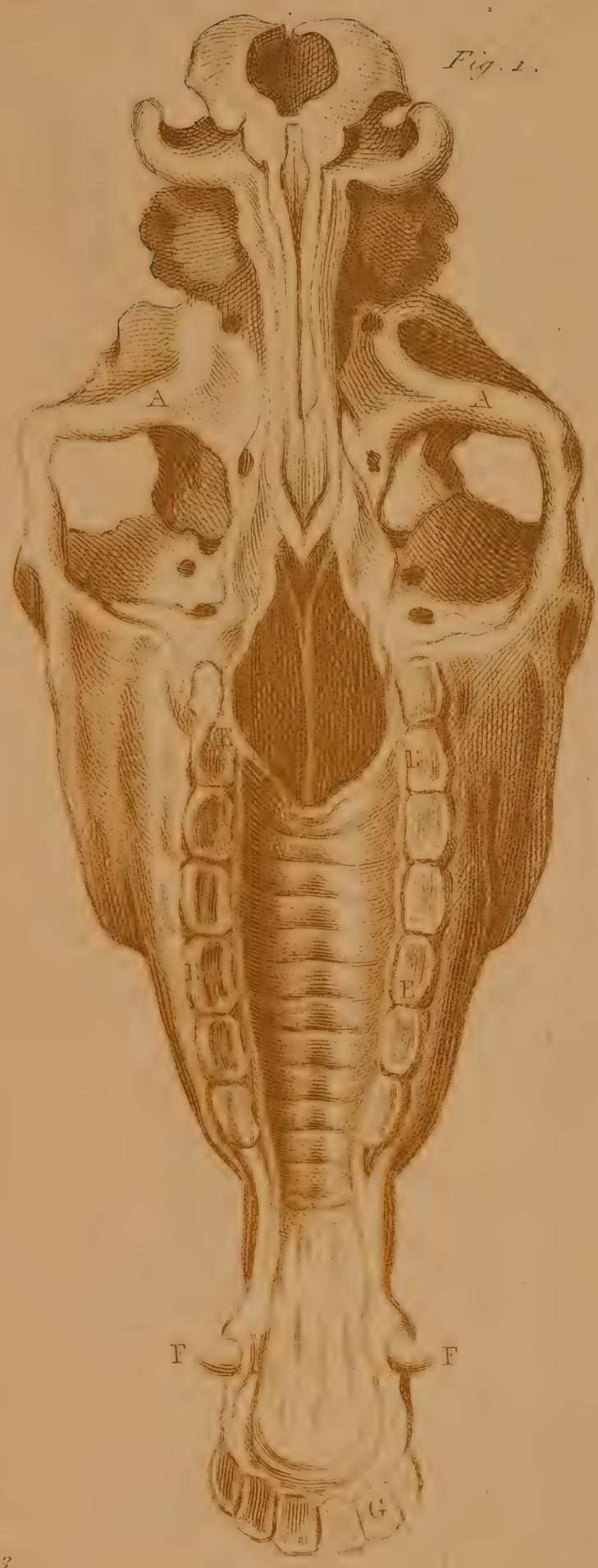


Fig. 3.

Fig. 4.

Andrea del.

R. Par

Fig. 3.

Fig. 1.

Fig. 6.

Fig. 5.

Fig. 10.

Fig. 9.

Fig. 12.

Fig. 11.

Fig. 15.

Fig. 14.

Fig. 16.

Fig. 17.

Fig. 18.

Fig. 19.

Fig. 20.

Fig. 21.

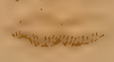


Fig. 13.

Fig. 23.

Fig. 22.

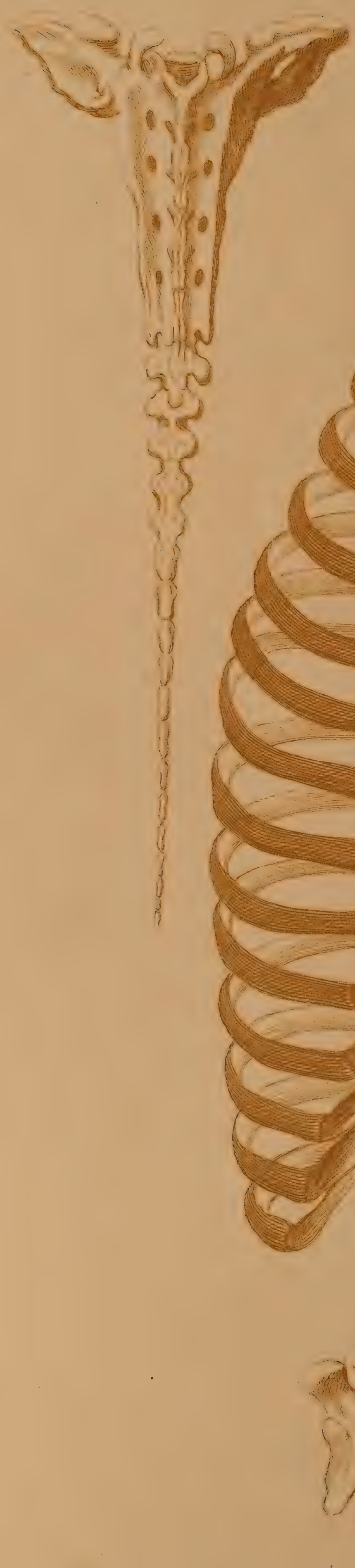
Andrea. del.

R. Parr. Sculp.

PLATE. IV.

Fig. 26.

Fig. 25.



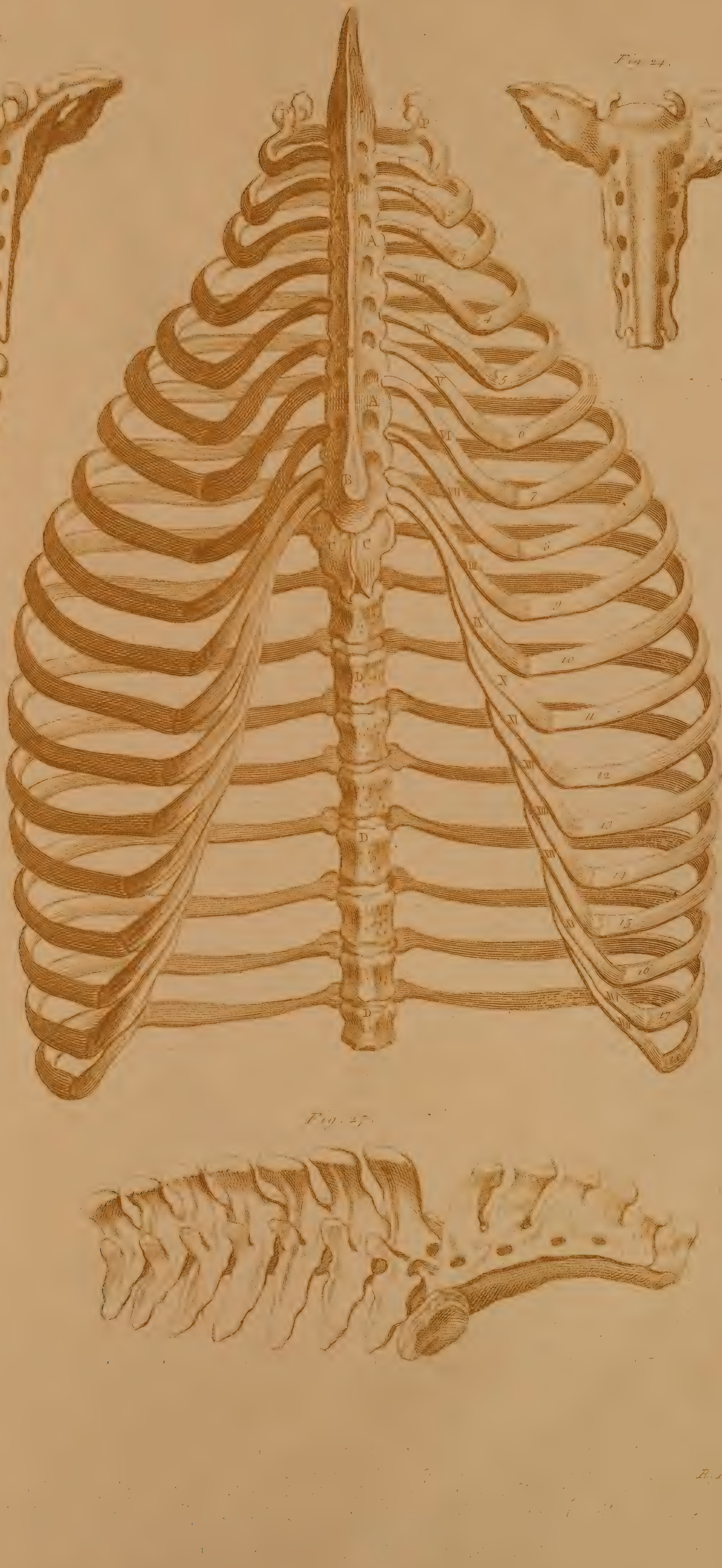


Fig. 24.

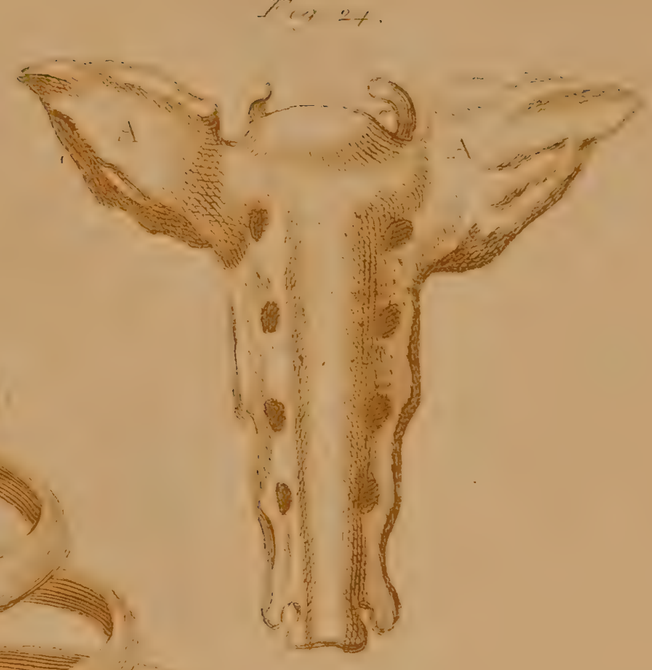


Fig. 27.

Andrea del.

R. Parr Sculp.

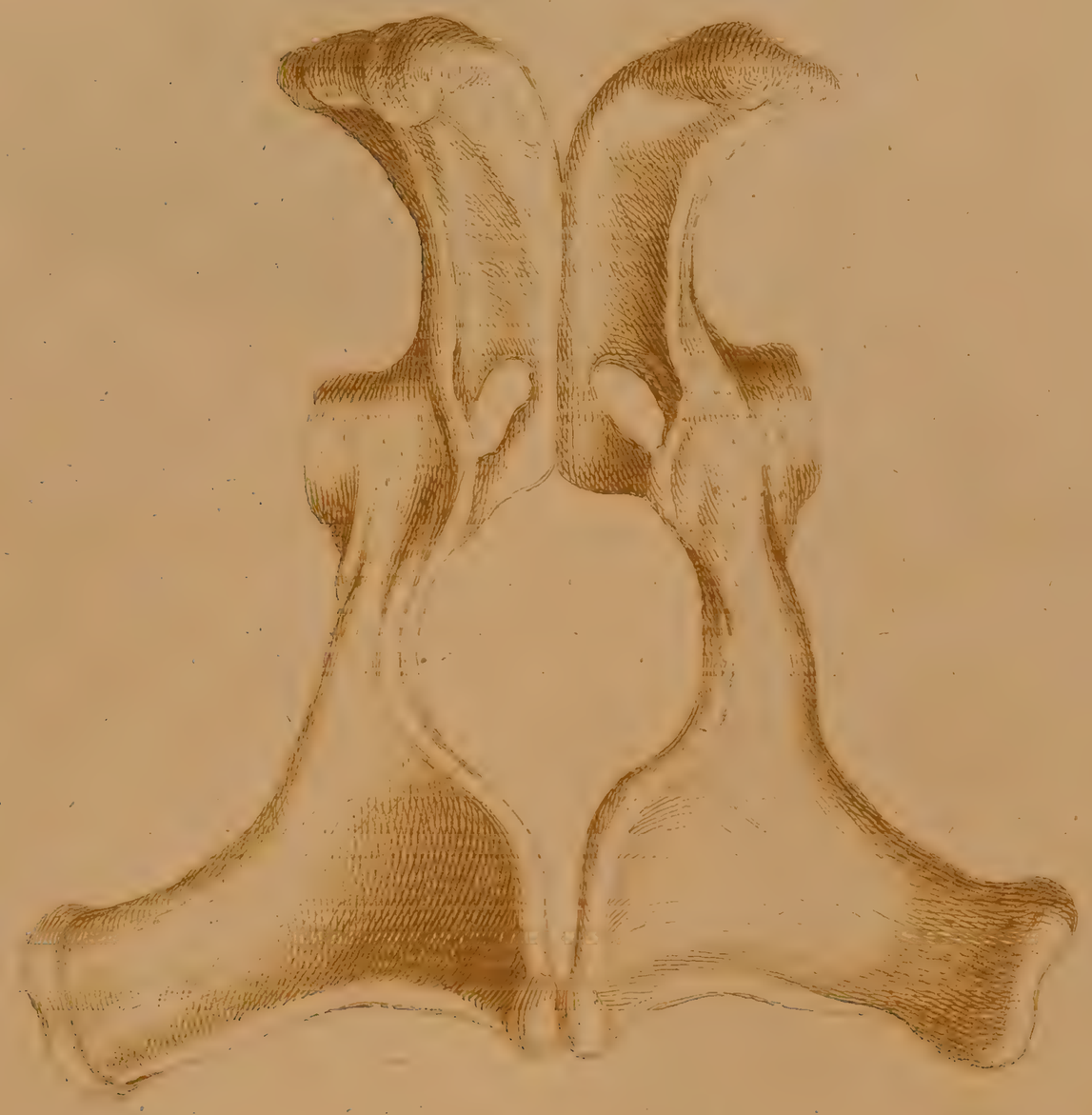


Fig. 28.

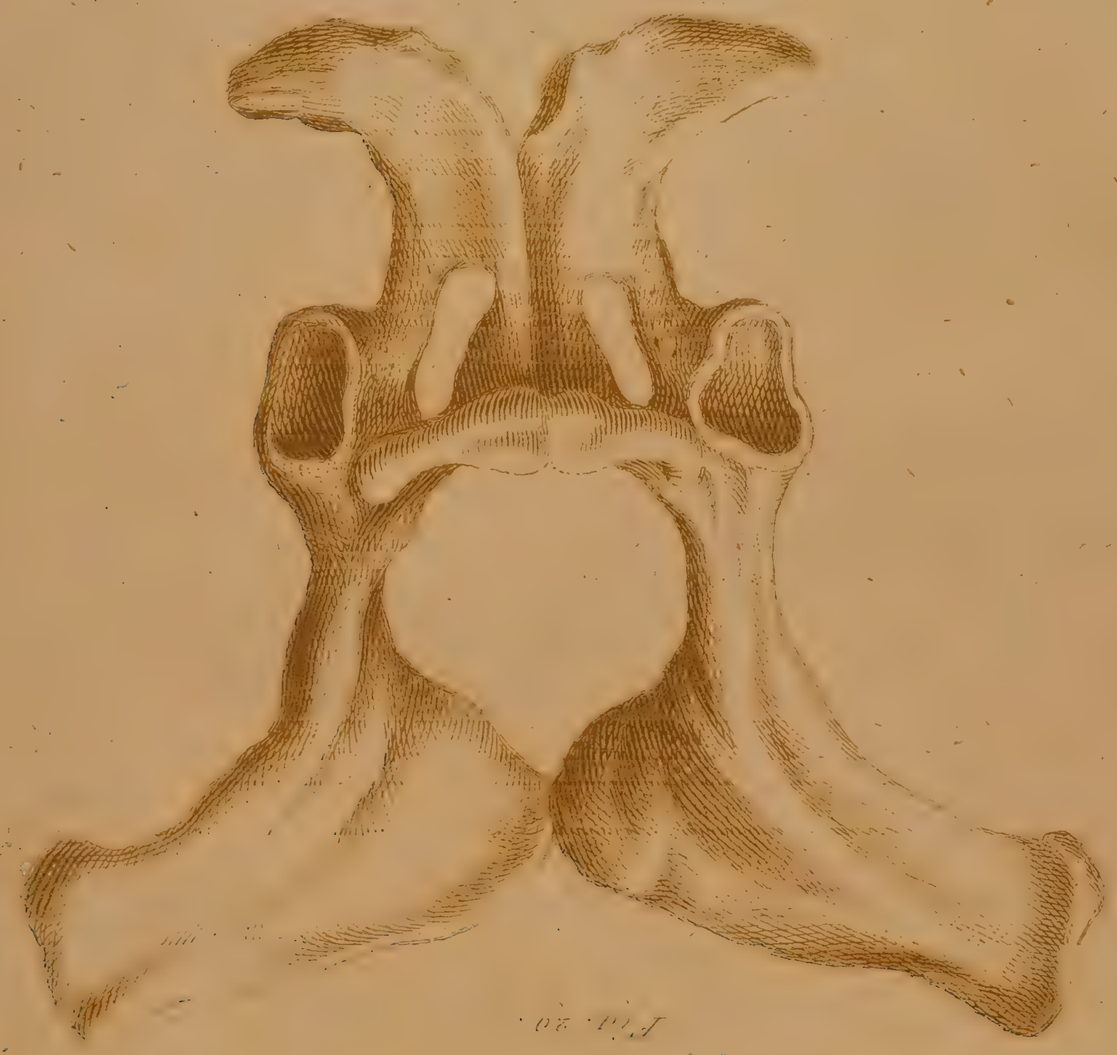


Fig. 29.

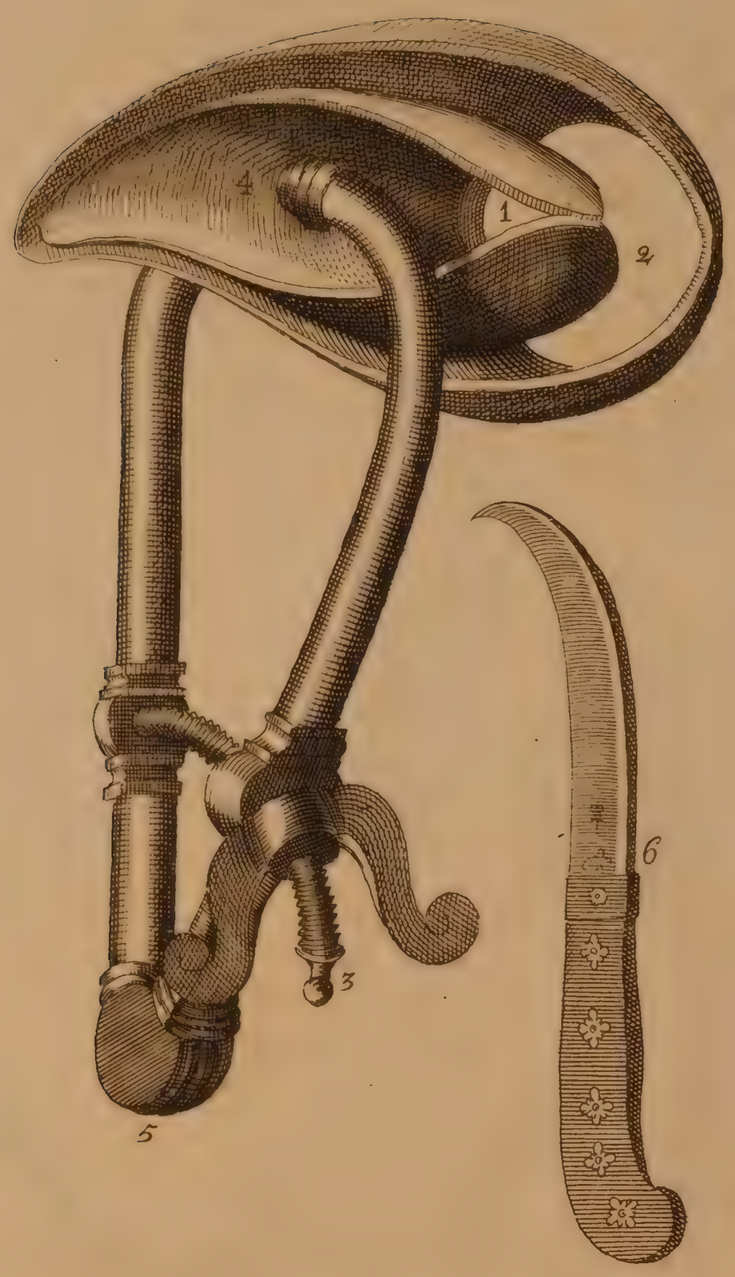
PLATE. VI.

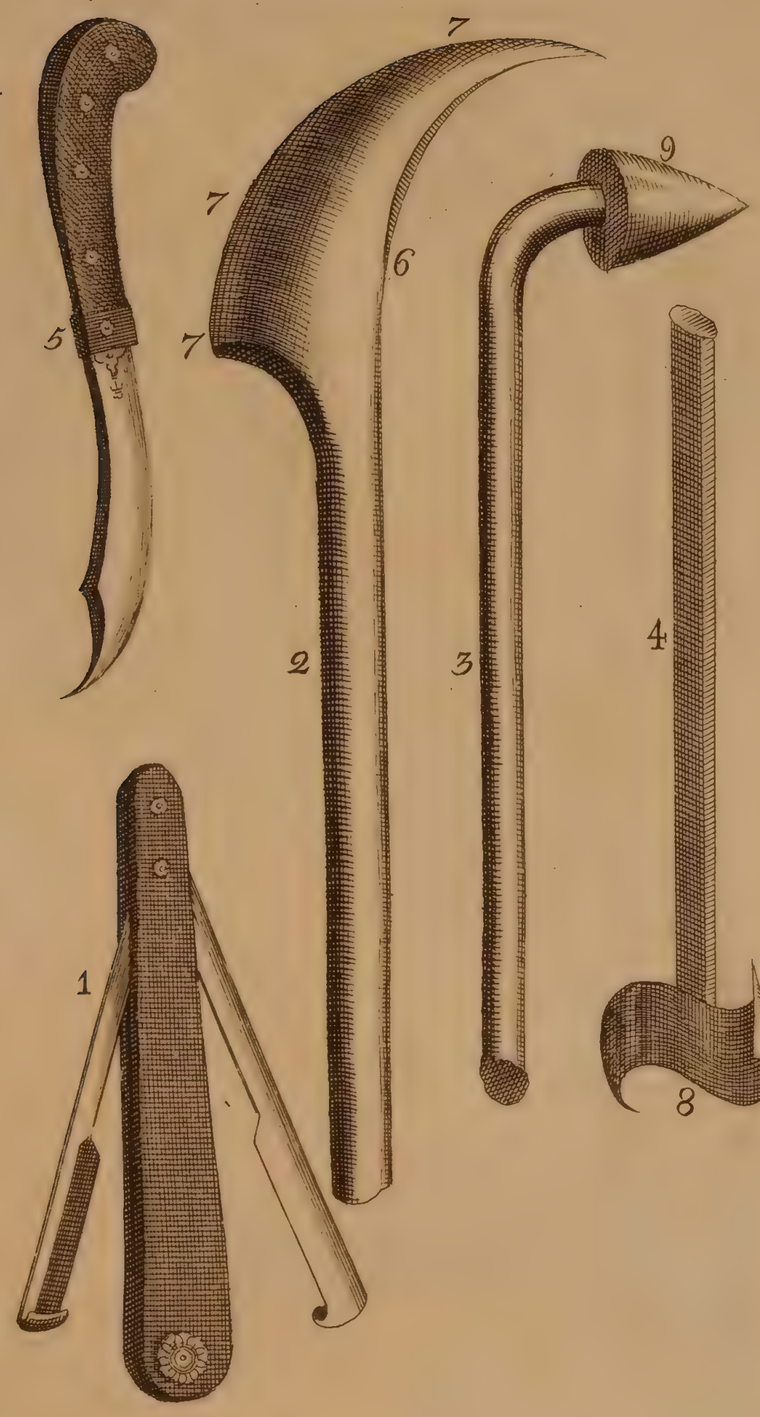
R. Parr. Sculp.

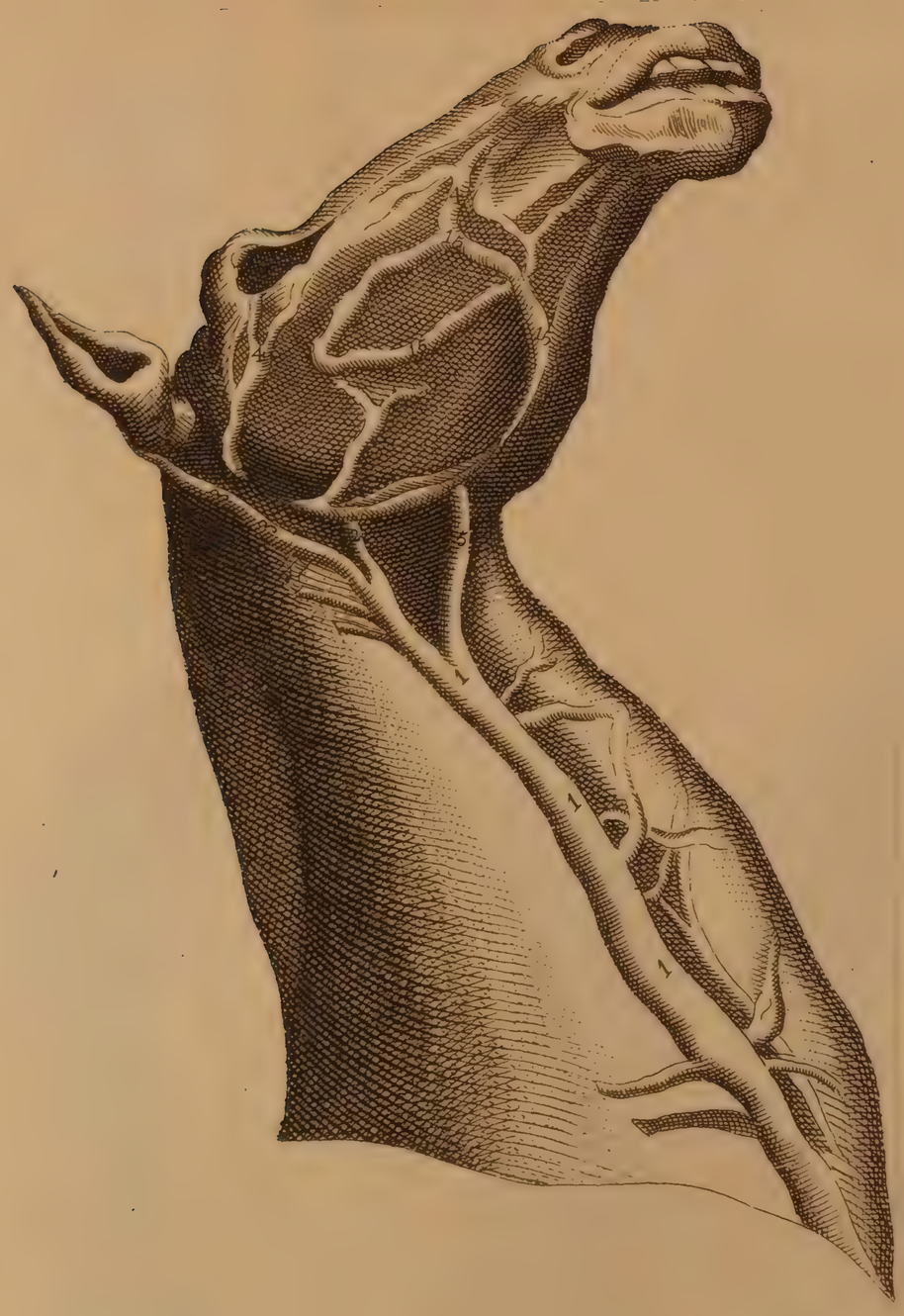
A
B
D
C
E
F
G
L
M
I
V
Q
O
W
P
N

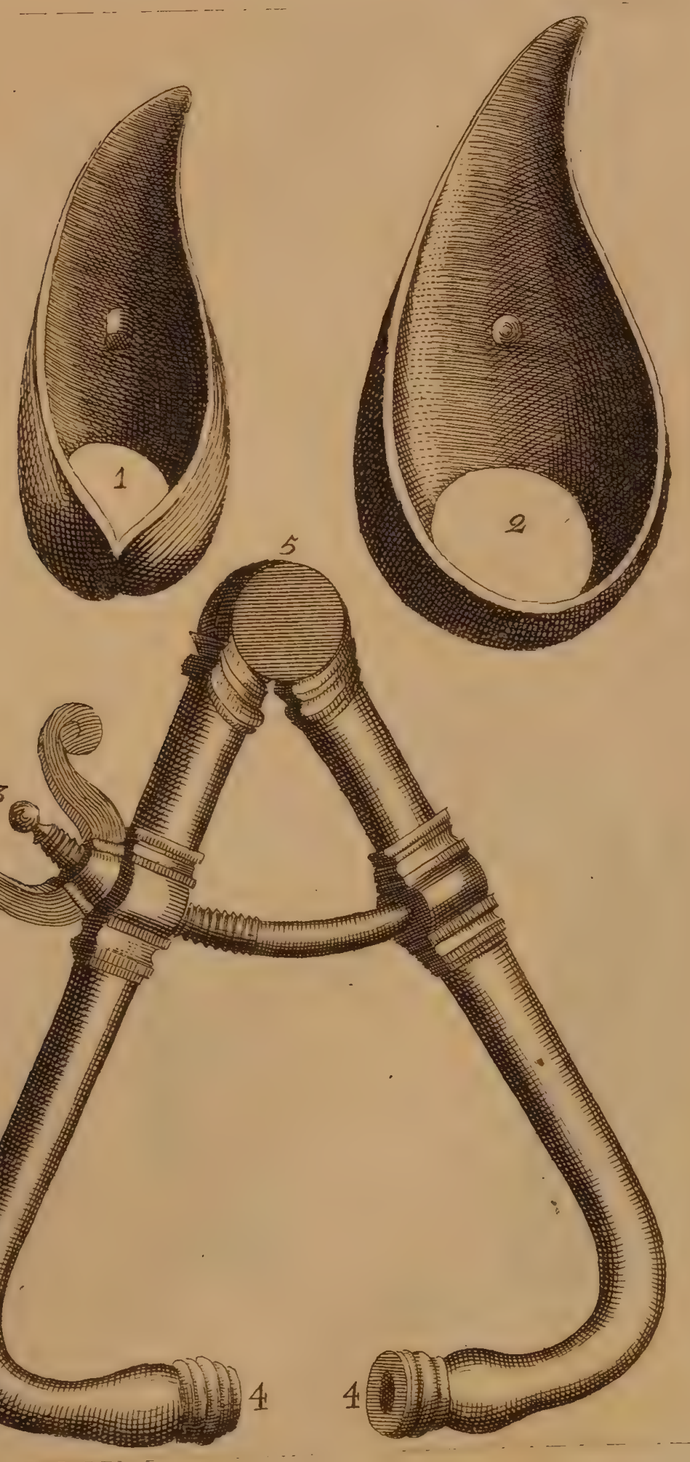
PLATE VIII.

R Parris.


4
1
2
3
5
6


7
7
7
6
5
9
4
3
2
1
8

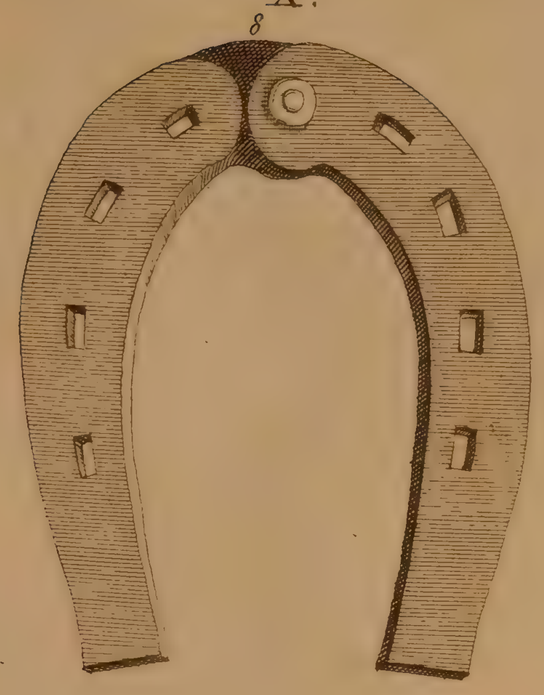

1
1
1
1
3


1
2
5
3
4
4

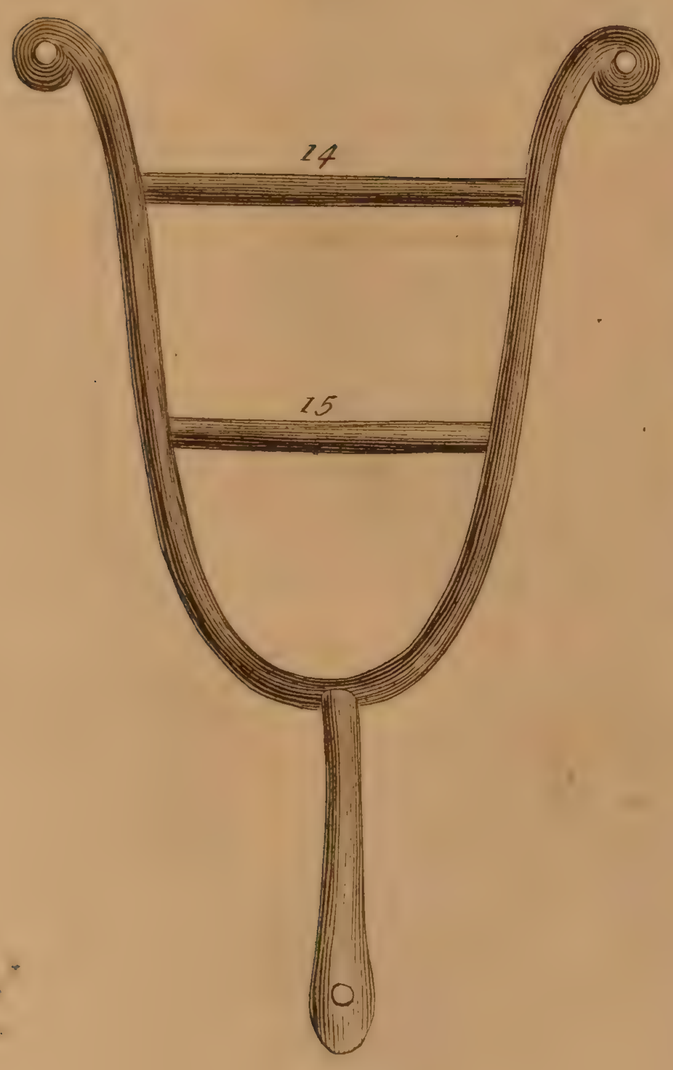
XII.

XI.

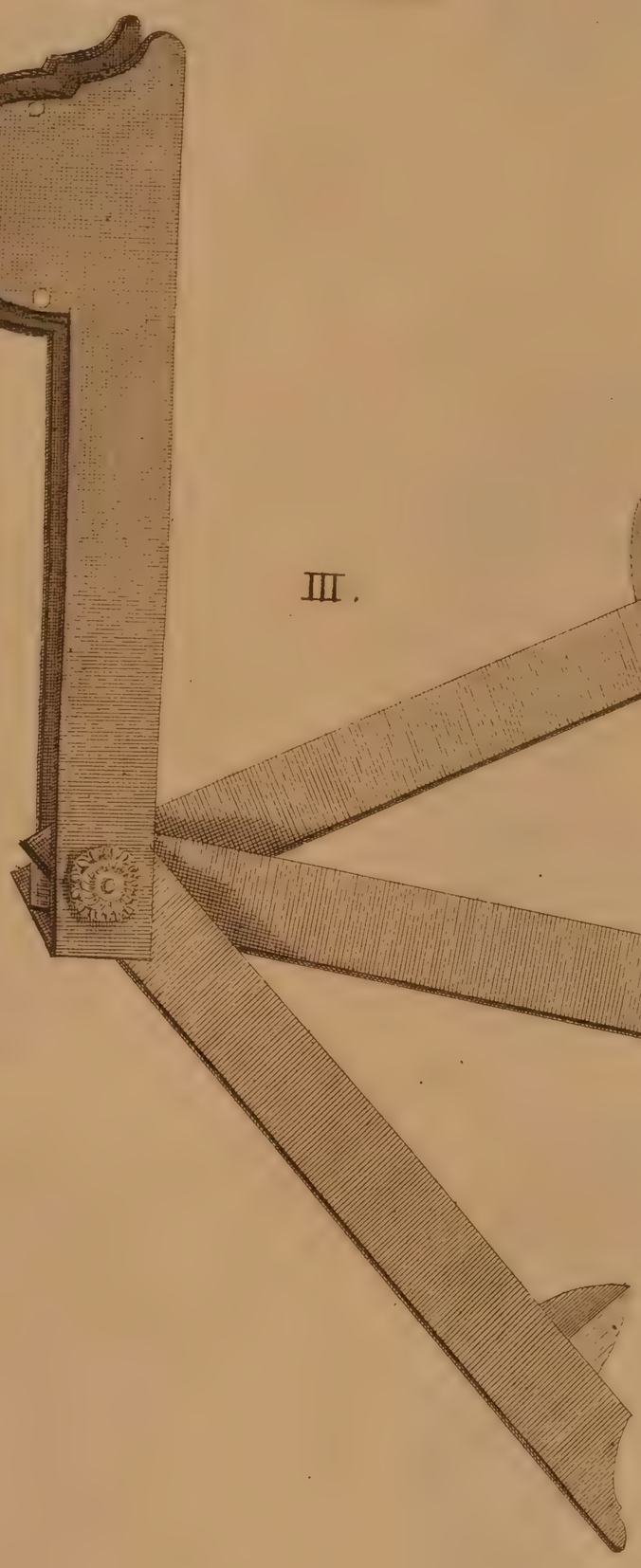
X.



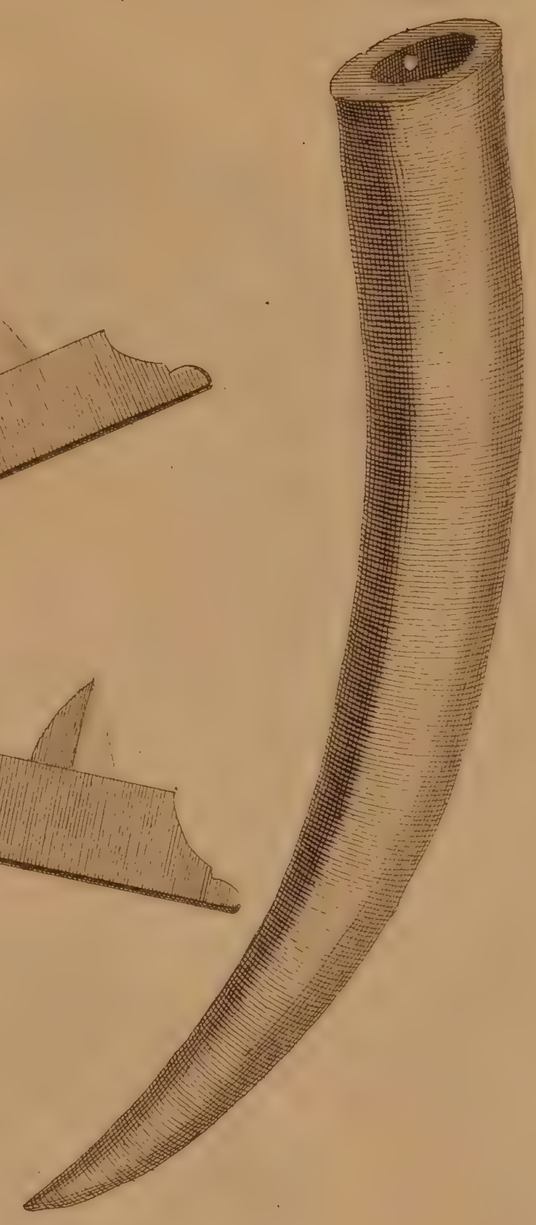
IX.



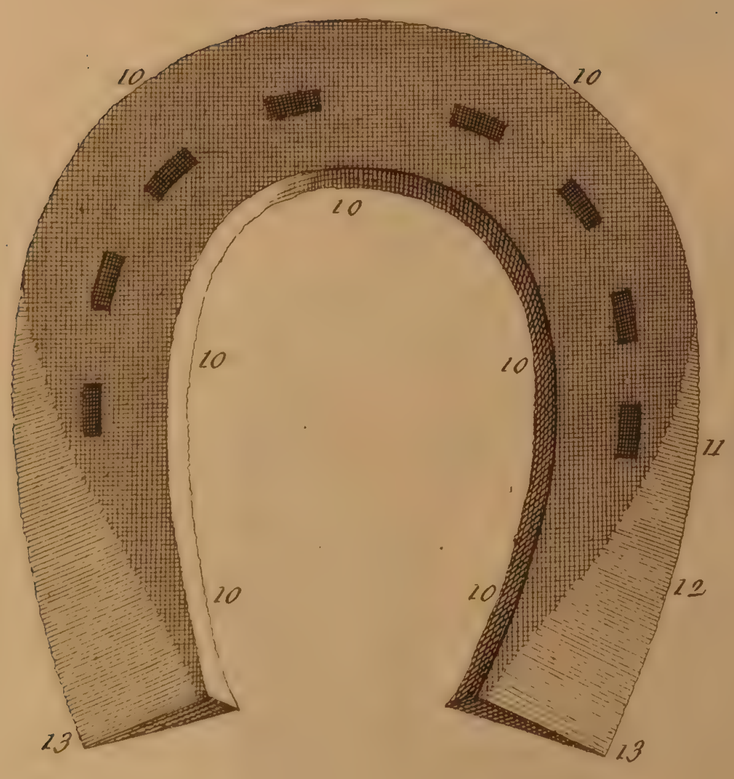
III.



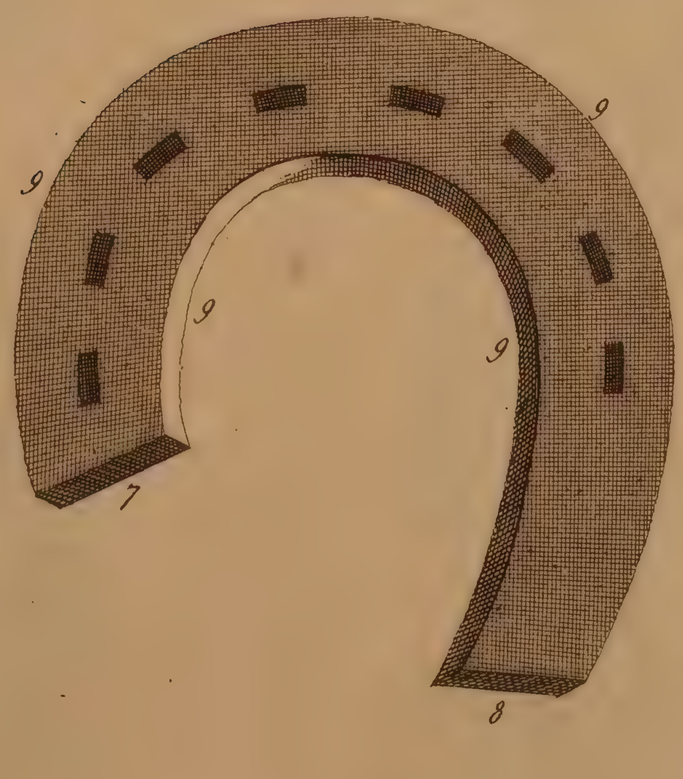
II.



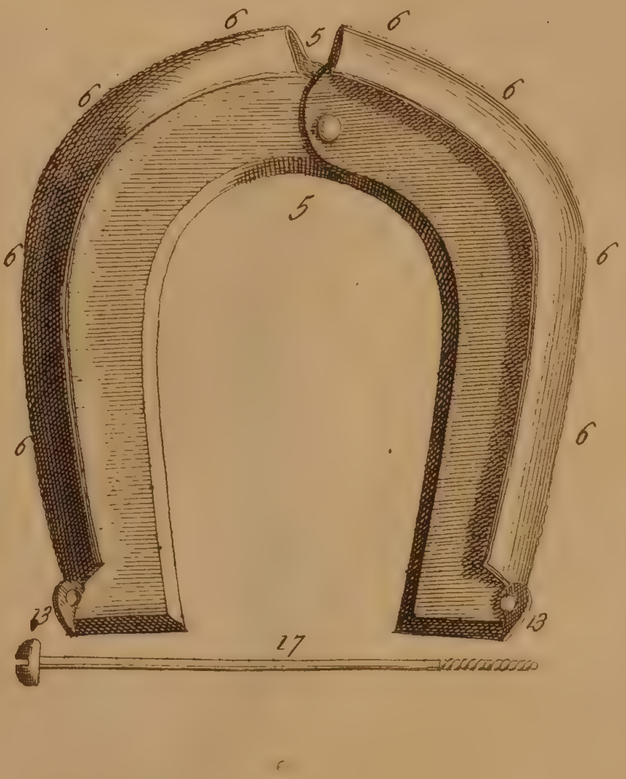
XV.



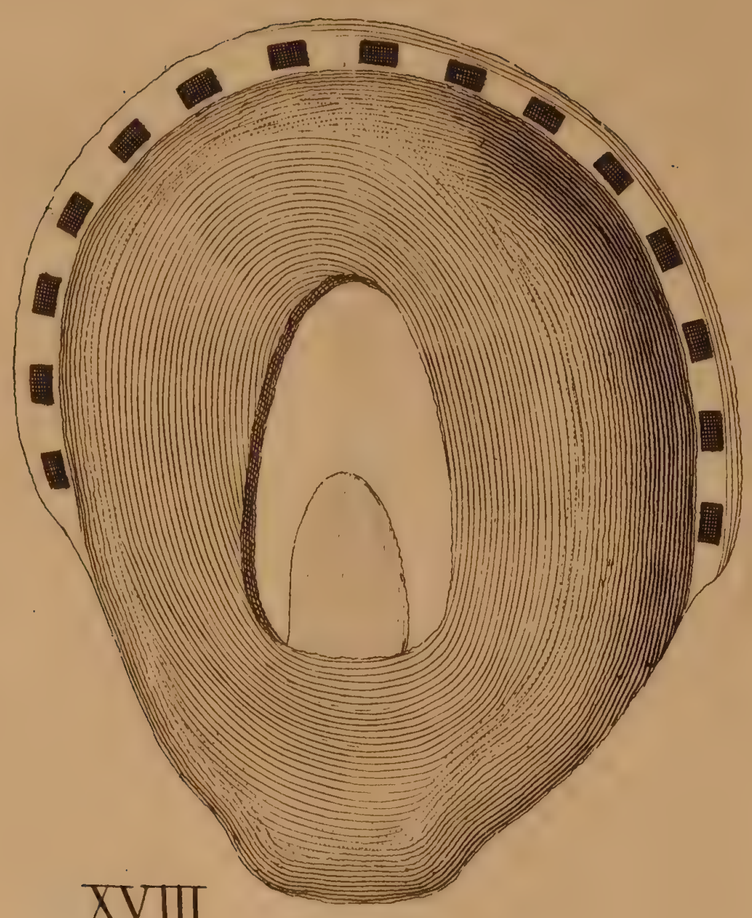
XIV.



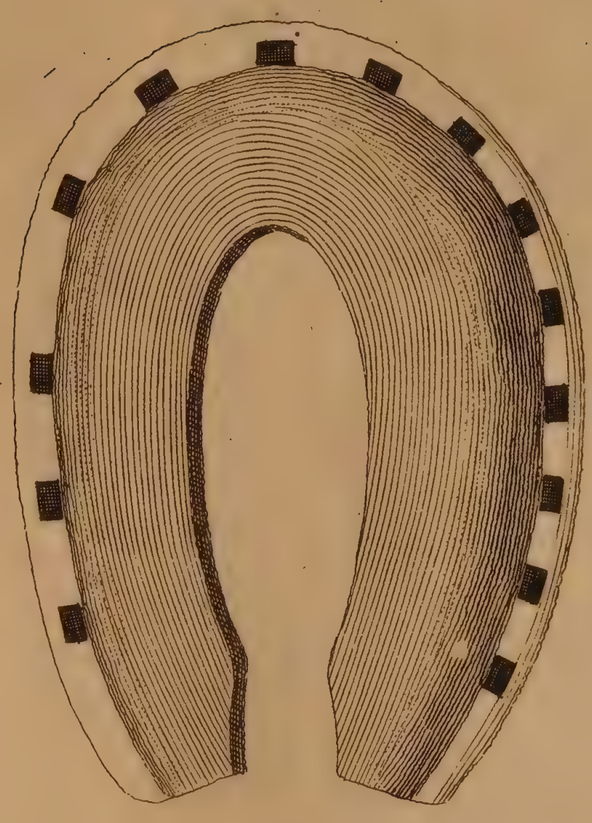
XIII.



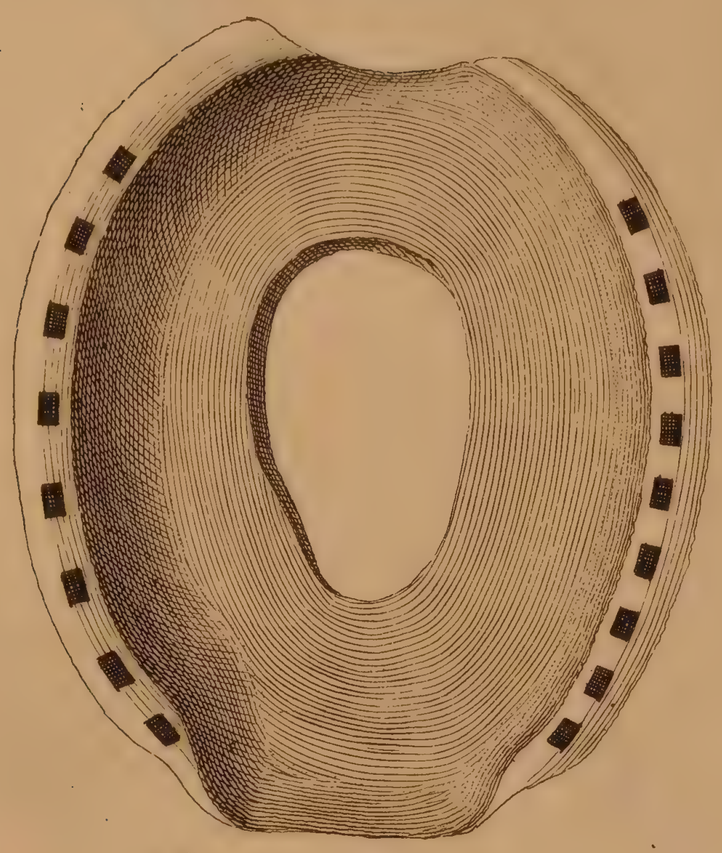
XVI.



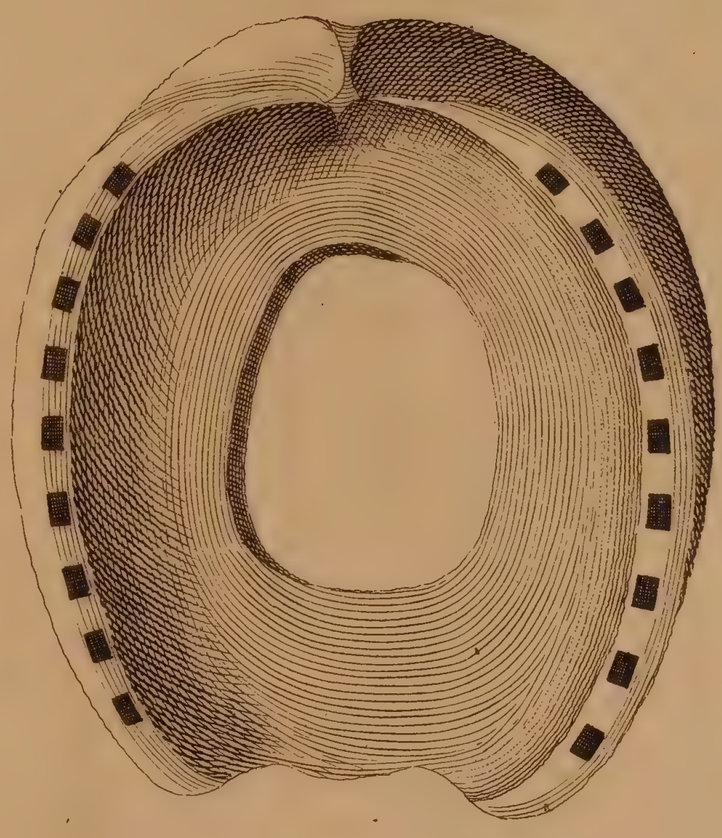
XVII.



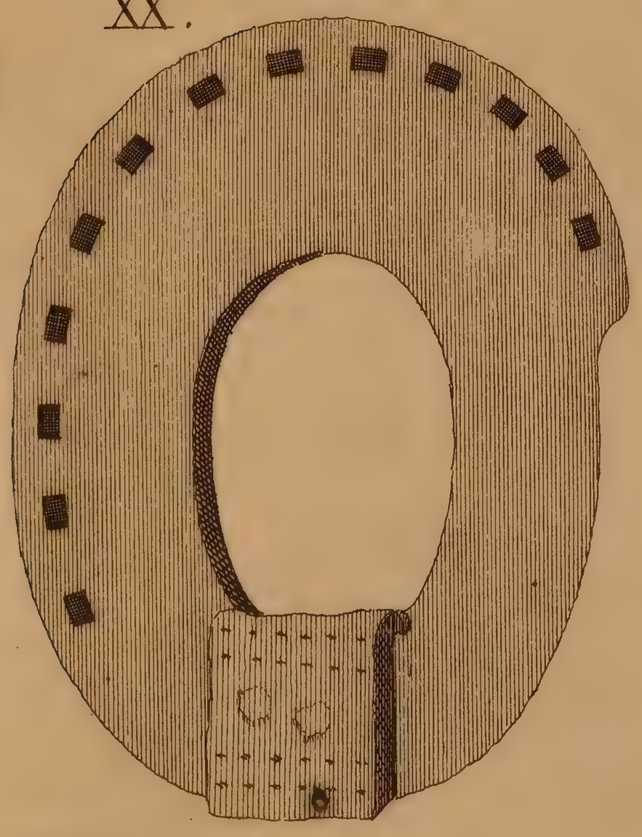
XVIII.



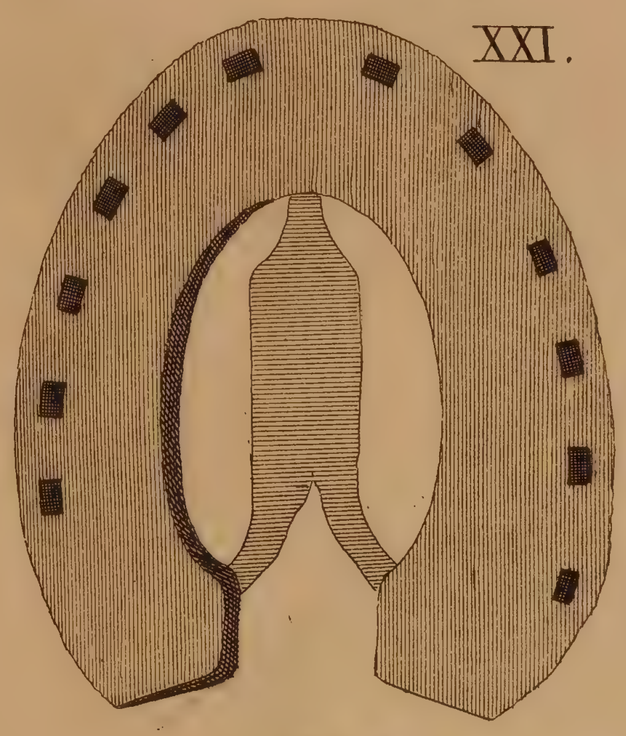
XIX.



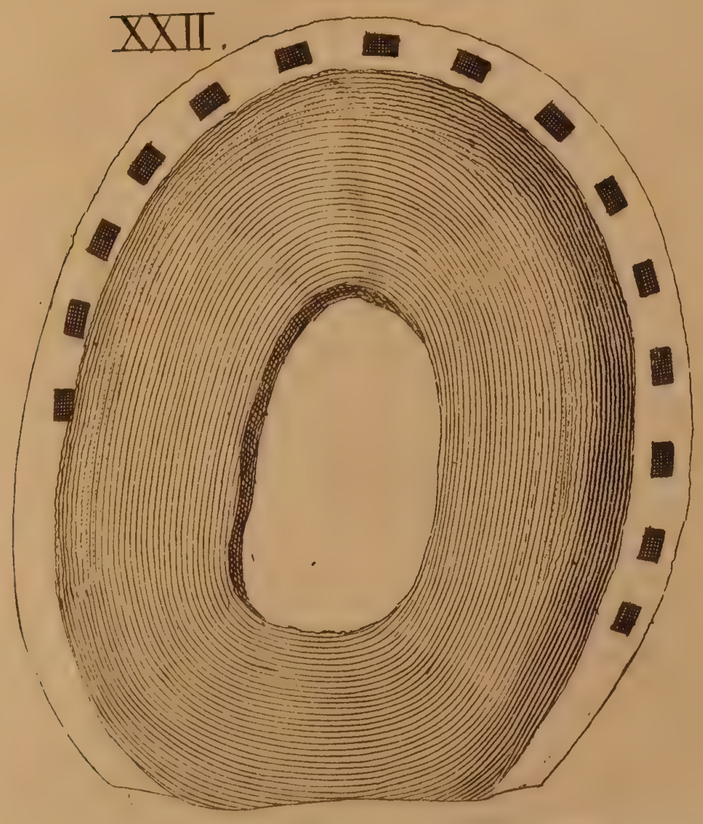
XX.



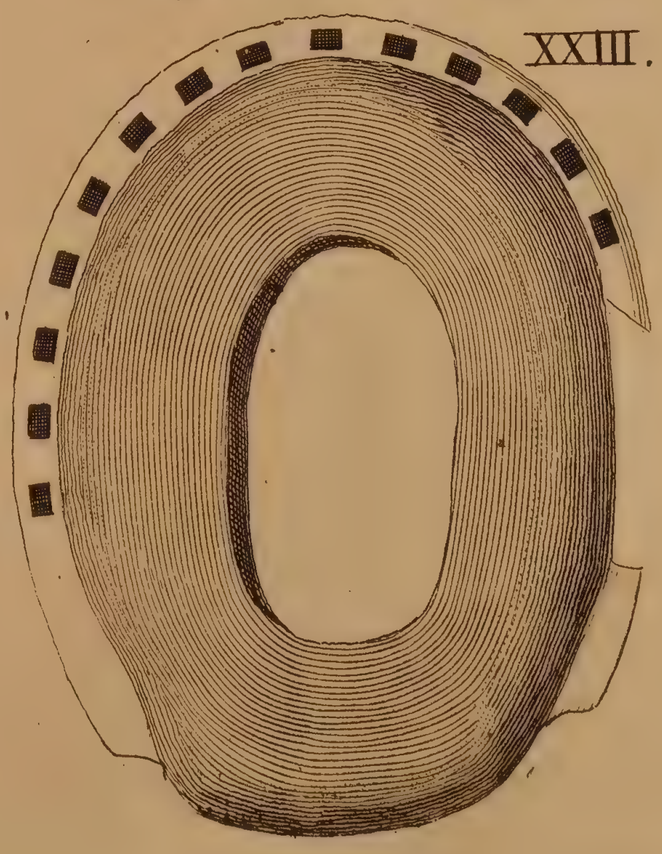
XXI.



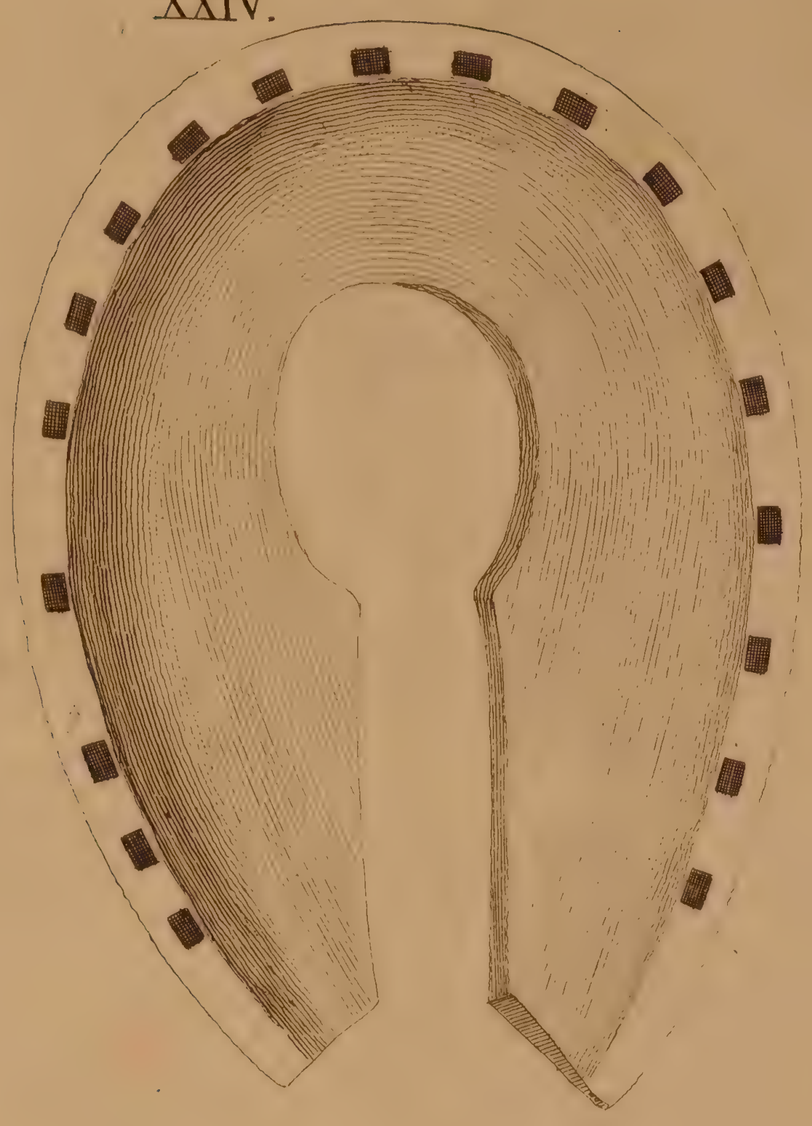
XXII.



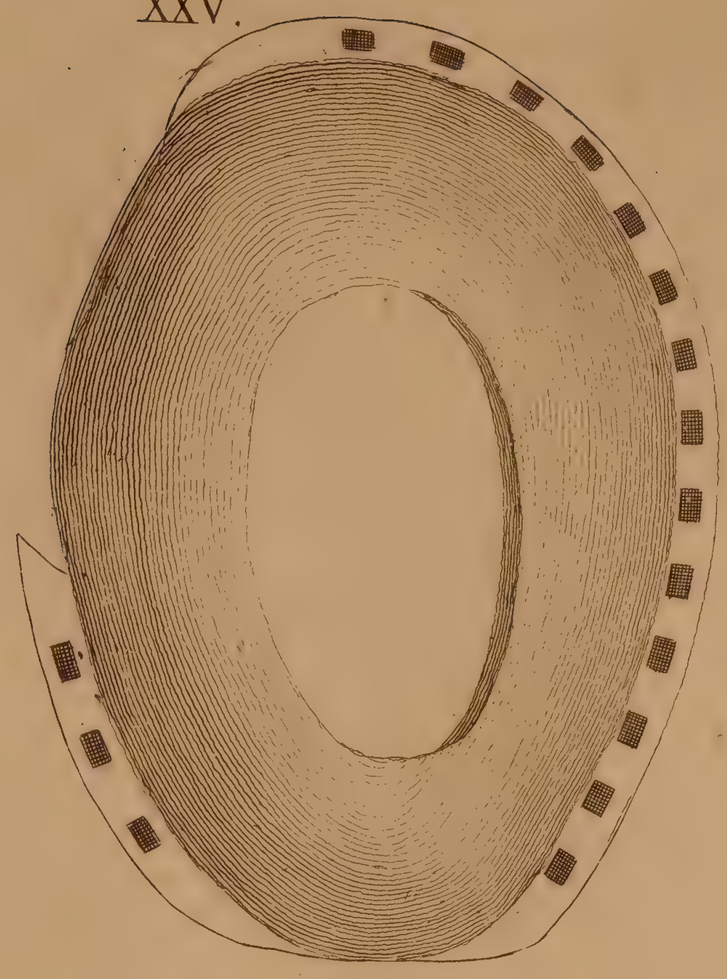
XXIII.



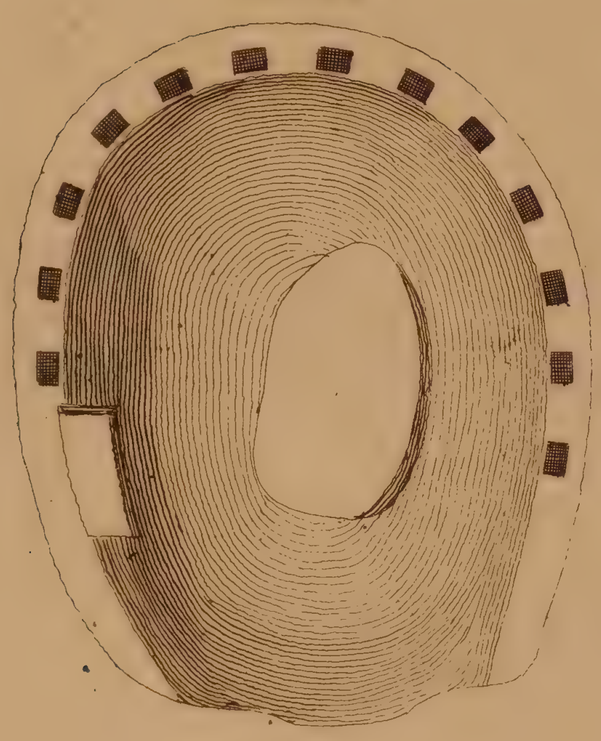
XXIV.



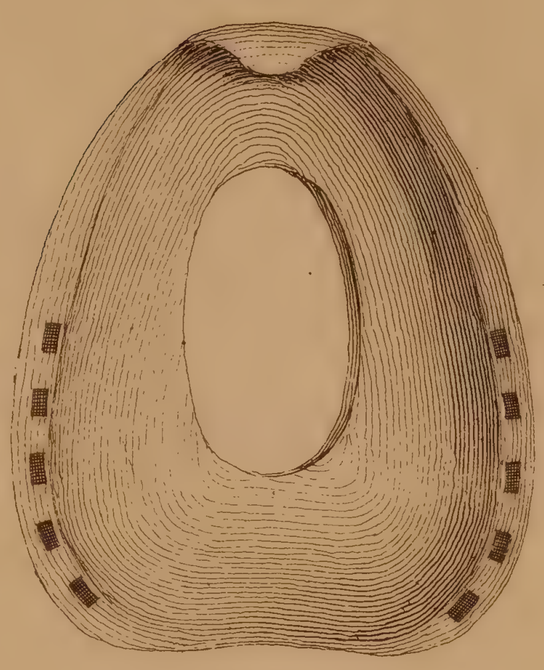
XXV.



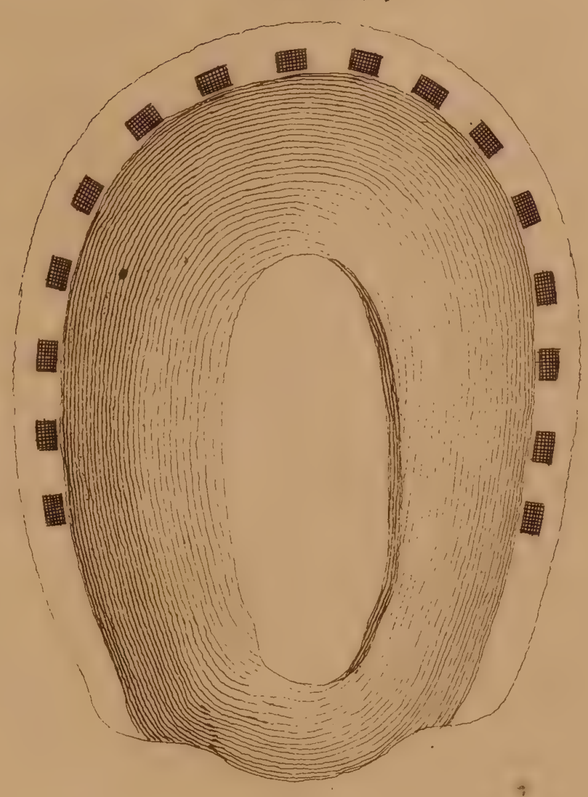
XXVI.



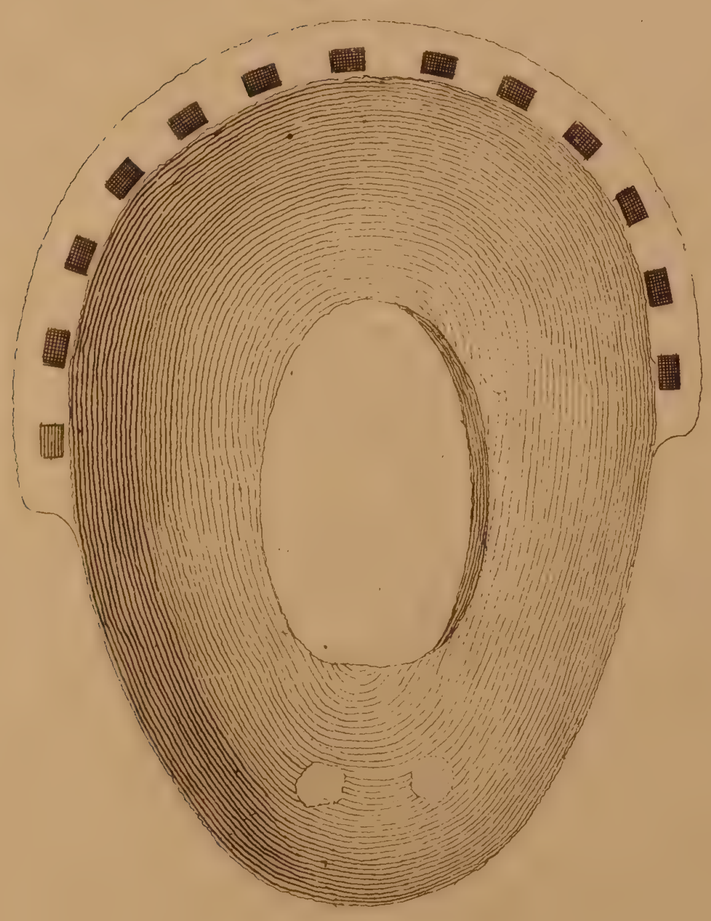
XXVII.



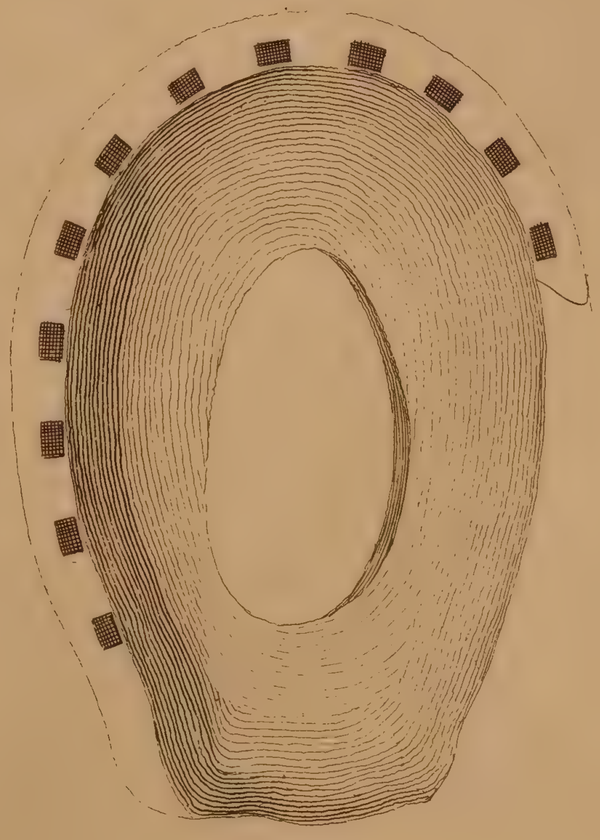
XXVIII.



XXIX.



XXX.



A

SUPPLEMENT:

CONSISTING OF

CHOICE RECEIPTS

For moſt of the

DISTEMPERS to which HORSES are incident,

According to the beſt modern Practice.

Communicated by ſeveral Perſons of the firſt Diſtinction in the Knowledge of Horſes in this Kingdom.

THE Proprietor of this Work would have done honour to himſelf, and pleaſure to the Publick, had he been permitted by thoſe noble Perſons who favour'd him with their Receipts, to inſert their Names; but as that, in ſuch a Work as this, could not be complied with, it is hoped the Encouragers of this Undertaking will excuſe the Omiſſion: And if any Receipts mentioned in this Supplement ſhould agree with the Tranſlations of the Receipts of *Saunier*, the Publick is deſired to excuſe that alſo; they being faithfully tranſmitted as they came to the Proprietor's Hand. But if our Countrymen have made any Additions or Improvements in this noble Art, we cannot doubt but the ſame will with pleaſure be approved of and encouraged by *Europe* in general, and theſe Kingdoms in particular.

Receipt for a Cold, by Sir John Lowther.

One Ounce of Rue, two Ounces of Tar, and as much freſh Butter: mix them together with Powder of Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Nutmegs, and brown Sugar-Candy. Make them into three Balls, and put into a Ball two or three Cloves of Garlick; give one, and then walk a while.

A Drink for a Cold, by the ſame.

One Ounce of Elicampane, one Ounce of Powder of Liquorice, one Ounce of Powder of Anniſeeds, one Ounce of Sugar-Candy, a quarter of an Ounce of Butter, half a Pound of Honey, a quarter of a Pound of Treacle, a Handful of the Leaves of Rue, three Heads of Garlick, the Rue and Garlick minced ſmall together: boil them in a Quart of Ale about half an Hour; then take it off the Fire, put in the other Ingredients, ſtir it well together till 'tis almoſt cold, and give it the Horſe. The Horſe muſt have warm Water a Day after. Three Drinks cures moſt Colds. There muſt be two or three Days between every Drink.

An excellent Ointment for watry Legs, by Monſieur Foubert.

Take two Quarts of Milk, a Pound of fine Flour, a Pound of Honey, half a Pound of Turpentine, an Ounce and an half of black Pitch, half an Ounce of Sulphur, two Spoonfuls of Oil of Olives; put the Milk and the Flour together over a gentle Fire, and mix them; then put in the other Ingredients, and let them ſtand there till the whole is diſſolved and incorporated together. Cut the Horſe's Hair as cloſe as you can, and dreſs with this Ointment every Day, as hot as he can bear it, till the Sore begins to dry; after which every other Day is ſufficient.

Another.

Take white Mercury, and black Soap, well mixed, and rub the Sores with it.

Foot Ointment.

Take a Pound of Mutton Suet without any Skin, a Pound of Hog's Lard, half a Pound of Turpentine, half a Quartern of yellow Wax, and a Quartern of Oil of Olives: melt the Fat, the Oil, and the Wax together over a gentle Fire, and when they are half diſſolved put in the Turpentine. Let them take two or three Boils after they are all well incorporated, and then ſtrain for Uſe.

A Salve for Horſes Hoofs, from Petworth.

Four Ounces of *Venice* Turpentine, half a Pint of Salad Oil, half a Pint of Linſeed Oil, Hogs Lard and ſweet Butter of each half a Pound, Mutton Suet half a Pound, two Ounces of *Burgundy* Pitch, four Ounces of Bees-Wax and Roſin; boil them all together, and anoint the Hoofs within and without, as need ſhall require.

For the Greaſe in the Heel.

Let Honey and white Copperas be mixed together, and apply it to his Legs till he be well.

Another.

Take Gun-Powder, black Sope, and Verdigreaſe; put it into old Steel, and clean the Legs once a Day.

For the Farcy, from Stockpool.

A Handful of Rue, a Handful of Wormwood, half a Pound of Bole Armoniac, and two Ounces of Oil of Spike; put all together in a Quart of old Beer and give it the Horſe luke-warm. No Meat for twelve Hours before, nor twelve Hours after. No Water for twenty-four Hours after. Keep the Horſe very warm for three Days after.

How to dreſs the Sores.

You muſt take eight Pennyworth of the Oil of Vitriol, four Pennyworth of the Oil Origenum, and mix it in a Glaſs; lay it on with a Feather.

To manage a Horſe with the Farcy.

Sugar-Candy beaten to Powder, half an Ounce of the beſt *Venice* Treacle, a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and three Spoonfuls of the beſt Salad Oil; it muſt be given luke-warm. After you have given it the Horſe, clothe him well, and tie him to the Rack four Hours; then give him a little Hay, then a little ſcalded Bran, and afterwards warm Water, with Oatmeal Flour to colour it; next Day Bran, Hay, and the Water as before; the third Day walk him gently in the Day, and water him with cold Water; the fourth Day, give another Drink, and feed him as before: and in three or four Days after bleed him in the Liver-Vein.

Another Receipt for the Farcy, from the Farrier at Bricks.

Half a Pound of Savine, half a Quartern of Sena, half a Quartern of Lawrel Berries, half a Quartern of Sulphur, a Quartern of Alum, a Quartern of Cummin Seeds: mix them all together ſmall, and give it him in Oats three Mornings, the Horſe faſting twelve Hours before.

For a Shoulder-ſlipt or Stiff.

Firſt bleed on the Plate-Vein; then take of Oil of Turpentine, of Oil of Camomil, of Oil of Millepedes, of Oil of Peter or Petreole, of each an equal Quantity: rub it and chaff it in all over.

For the Farcy.

Let the Horſe be blooded on the Full of the Moon more than ordinary; the next Day give this Drink Milk-warm. Take one Pound of Alum, ſix Drachms of the blackeſt Sort of Aloes, half a Pound of Honey, and three Ounces of Brimſtone-flour: put the Alum, Honey, and Brimſtone, into two Quarts of Ale, and let it boil to one Quart; and when it is almoſt cold, put in the Aloes ready pulveris'd: mix all well together, ride your Horſe very well before, and afterwards give it him. If the firſt do not cure him, repeat the ſame again ten Days after, two or three times.

Another

Another from Mr. de la Coudrier, *tried.*

Firſt bleed the Horſe on the Full of the Moon; the next Day ſlit him open in the Fore-Head; melt a big Muſket Ball, or pour into it two Drachms of Quickſilver: cover it over with a Plaiſter of Pitch, and let it lie till the Horſe is cured. It will prevent any Farcy at the firſt Diſcovery. It has been tried with Succeſs.

For the Greaſe in Ireland.

Take Snails in quantity, and maſh them together; a proportionable quantity of Oatmeal and Milk; mix them all well together, make a Poultice of it, and faſten them to the Legs.

For the Farcy, from Capt. Gore.

One Ounce of Quickſilver, a quarter of a Pound of *Engliſh* Sope, diſſolve them in a Quart of Ale; then take of Saffron and Rue, each a Handful, beat them in a Mortar with four Ounces of Oil of Turpentine: ſtrain the Juice in the Ale, give it the Horſe in the Morning, keeping him ſix Hours faſting.

For the Farcy.

Take Herb of St. John's Wort, beaten with Pepper, Salt, and Vinegar; put it in the two Ears, and tie the Ears faſt till it hath cured him.

For the Heat of the Feet or Foundering.

Pare the Feet as thin as you can, and keep the Heels as well open as you can; then with a Raſp, raſp the outſide of the Foot, almoſt to the Blood, and up to the Crown of the Foot; then put into it freſh Butter, and on the outſide alſo, and keep the Feet always moiſt, and take care to ſhoe the Horſe, ſo as the Foot may open and ſpread upon it.

For the Greaſe, from Capt. Davenport.

Take Roots of Birtworth, Turmerick, Anniſeeds, ſweet Fennel Seeds, of each one Ounce.

For a Cold.

Three quarters of an Ounce of Aloes, two Drachms of Jalap, two Drachms of Sena, two Drachms of Cream of Tartar, made up with a little Powder of Liquorice and Flour of Brimſtone, in one Ounce of Syrup of Roſes.

For a Cold.

One Ounce of Diapente in Powder, one Ounce of Flour of Brimſtone, a Pennyworth of *London* Treacle, made up with white Wine, for one Doſe.

For the breaking a Cold.

A Spoonful of Honey, about the Bigneſs of a Walnut of Alum, in powder, a quarter of a Pint of white Wine Vinegar; give it the Horſe, half in one Noſtril, half in the other; two Mornings will be ſufficient.

Another Purge, not ſo ſtrong as the other.

One Ounce of Aloe Succotrine, as much Diapente as will cover a Sixpence, Flour of Brimſtone and Cream of Tartar, the ſame Quantity.

Receipt for a Cold.

Two Quarts of the beſt Beer, boil it to one by Scumming of it; then take half an Ounce of *Venice* Treacle, two or three Pennyworth of Saffron; ride the Horſe well, and clothe him very warm; and when he hath ſweated cool him by degrees. Give it him for three or four Mornings, keeping him faſting. You may give him ſome Honey, Elicampane, and Flour of Brimſtone, or ſome Saffron in his Oats.

For a broken or ſhort-winded Horſe.

Take two Handfuls of Alehoof, one Handful of Groundſil, three Sprigs of Celandine, three Sprigs of Rue, all picked clean, ſix Cloves of Garlick picked; chop them as ſmall as poſſible,

poſſible, and put them in a Quart of Ale which hath been boiled and ſcummed, and boil them till a fourth part be boiled away; then put in two Ounces of brown Sugar-Candy, beaten to powder, half an Ounce of beſt *Venice* Treacle, a quarter of a Pound of Honey, and three Spoonfuls of Salad Oil: it muſt be given luke-warm: after you have given it the Horſe, clothe him well, and tie him to the Rack four Hours; then give him a little Hay, then a little ſcalded Bran, and afterwards warm Water, with Oatmeal Flour to colour it; next Day Bran, Hay, and the Water as before; the third Day walk him gently, in the Day, and water him with cold Water; the fourth Day another Drink, and feed him as before, and in three or four Days bleed him in the Liver-Vein.

To make an Horſe's Hoof grow.

Take new Wax, Goat's Greaſe, or for want of that freſh Sheep's Suet; the fat of Bacon cut ſmall, and ſteeped in Water four and twenty Hours, till it grow freſh, the Water being changed every three or four Hours; of each one Pound; melt them together, and then add a large Handful of the ſecond Bark of Elder, and if it be in the Spring two Handfuls of Elder Buds; boil them over a gentle Fire, about a quarter of an Hour, ſtirring them from time to time; then ſtrain it in a Pot, with two Ounces of Olive Oil, four Ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Honey: after which remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and ſtir the Ointment till it's cold; then anoint the Hoof for the breadth of an Inch round the Hair, and repeat the Application once a Day.

For a Bite.

Take the White of an Egg, ſome Bole Armoniac and Vinegar, mix them together and apply it.

For a Crack or Prick in the Hoof.

A little Turpentine, Tar, and Hogs-lard boiled together; dip a little Toe in it, and apply it.

For a gaul'd Heel.

Apply a Poultice compoſed of Honey, Turpentine, and Hogs-lard, with a little White of an Egg.

To refreſh a Horſe after a Cold.

Take ſome Garlick, Butter, and Nutmeg and Honey; mix them together, wrap them in a Cloth round a Stick, and let him champ upon it.

For a Cold.

Take half a Pint of Sack, half a Pint of Linſeed Oil, two Pennyworth of Sugar-Candy; mix them well together, and apply it.

For a Swelling.

Take ſome *Venice* Turpentine, Honey, and Hogs-lard, White of Eggs, with Flour of Beans; make them into a Poultice and apply it.

November 1727, was attended with an ugly Diſtemper amongſt the Horſes; it declared itſelf by a violent Coughing, Running at the Noſe, and Loſs of Appetite. The Method we uſed for the Cure was keeping them very warm, giving them warm Water and warm Meat; in the Mornings faſting, thirty or forty Drops of Spirit of Sulphur, in half a Pint of Ale; likewiſe putting into their Maſhes one Ounce of Antimony is eſteemed exceeding good.

A Pectoral Ball for a Horſe that has got a Cough.

One Ounce of Liquorice Powder, one Ounce of Fenugreek, one Ounce of Diapente; take care your Diapente has Myrrh in it; half an Ounce of Chemical Oil of Anniſeeds; four Drachms of Balſam of Sulphur, two Ounces of Garlick, one Ounce of Flour of Brimſtone; half a Pound of Honey: beat up together they will make eight Balls; give the Horſe one Ball every Morning early before he is fed, and continue this till his Cough is gone.

This Receipt was given me by Captain *J. Lamley*.

Receipt for the Greaſe in Horſes Legs.

Take two Quarts of Rye Flour, mix into it one Pound of Hogs-lard; let your Poultice be wrapt quite round the Sore.

Another for the Greaſe.

Two Quarts of Milk, one Pound of Meal, one Pound of Honey, half a Pound of Horſe Turpentine, one Ounce of Roſin, two Spoonfuls of Olive Oil; you muſt beat the Milk and Meal together, and put it over the Fire, and when it begins to boil take it off the Fire, and put in all the Ingredients; then put it over the Fire again till all is melted, and then you muſt leave it over a gentle Fire till it is thick. You muſt cut off the Hair as cloſe as you can at firſt. Apply the Poultice as hot as you can once a Day, and when it begins to dry, every other Day.

A Drink for a Cold.

Take a Quart of new Milk; boil it, then put to it five Cloves of Garlick; peel every Clove, ſhread them very ſmall, and put them into the Milk; boil them very ſoft, then put to them half a Pound of Honey; let it ſtand till it is luke-warm, then give it the Horſe.

N. B. Over Night give your Horſe a Maſh and warm Water; let him faſt two Hours before you give him this Drink, and let him ſtand two Hours after it; then give him warm Water, and walk him for two Hours, and give him warm Water at Night. The ſecond Day take a little Blood from him, and if required, give a ſecond Drink; the fourth Day obſerving the ſame Rules, except bleeding.

To take off a Splint.

Cantharides and Euphorbium, of each half a Drachm; mix them up with as much Unguentum Nervinum as is ſufficient to cover the Splint; ſpread it upon a piece of Leather a little bigger than the Splint, tie it up with a Fillet ten Hours, and when taken off let the Groom preſs the Place with his Thumb, four or five times a Day: If the Splint is not quite taken off with the firſt Application, repeat it five or ſix Days after; whilſt the Plaiſter is on, tie your Horſe's Head to the Rack.

For a Cold.

Take three Cloves of Garlick, beat them, and boil them in a Quart of Ale, with Roſemary and Rue, of each half a Handful; ſtrain it, and add Honey and Treacle, of each four Ounces, Diapente, Barberries, and Elicampane, of each half an Ounce, of Salad Oil half a Gill, and of Sugar-Candy, and Syrup of Colts-foot, two Ounces of each: Mix all well together, and give it warm, letting your Horſe faſt two Hours before, and two Hours after.

For a Shoulder-ſlip, or Stiff Shoulder.

Firſt bleed on the Plate-Vein; then take of Oil of Turpentine, of Oil of Camomil, Oil of St. John's Wort, Oil of Peter, of each an equal Quantity; rub it and chaff it in well all over.

Sharp Water.

White Vitriol and common Alum, of each a Quarter of a Pound; burn them together, put in two Quarts of boiling Water, and keep it ſtirring whilſt cold; uſe it warm with a little Spirits of Wine, when it is ſettled and poured off clear.

The Bliſtering Charge.

Black Pitch, two Ounces, Turpentine, two Ounces, Roſin, *Burgundy* Pitch, Maſtich, Frankincenſe, Galbanum, of each one Ounce, Euphorbium, *Spaniſh* Flies, Aſſa Fœtida, of each half an Ounce, Oil of Bays, one Ounce, Oil of Origanum, one Drachm, Sublimate, one Drachm.

The Bliſtering Ointment.

Oil of Bays, four Ounces, *Spaniſh* Flies, two Ounces, Euphorbium, two Ounces, Oil of Origanum, one Ounce, Sublimate Mercury, two Drachms, Hogs-lard, one Ounce; mix all together in a Gallipot.

To make a Horſe ſtale.

Take Grumel Seed, Cummin Seed, Parſley Seed, Broom Seed, *Caſtile* Soap, of each one Ounce, brown Sugar-Candy, four Ounces; to be given in a Pint of white Wine.

For the Gripes.

Take four Drachms of the Spirit of Turpentine, Oil of Dialthæa, four Drachms, Ginger, four Drachms, ſix Cloves of Garlick, Syrup of Roſes, five Drachms; mix theſe together in a Pint of white Wine, and give it the Horſe blood warm; walk him half an Hour afterwards.

A Purge for a Horſe, to be work'd with warm Water.

Take the beſt Succotrine Aloes, one Ounce and two Drachms, Diapente, half an Ounce, Powder of Ginger, two Drachms, Mercurius Dulcis, two Drachms, Oil of Anniſeeds, one Drachm; mix it up with Syrup of Buckthorn.

To eaſe a Splint or Spavin.

Spirit of Wine and *Hungary* Water, of each two Ounces, Oil of Origanum and Spirit of Sal Armoniac, of each two Drachms.

The red Ointment for Greaſe or Cracks.

Take of Litharge of Gold, one Pound, Bole, half a Pound, Verdigreaſe, four Ounces, let them be all in fine Powder; then add to them Honey and brown Sugar, of each one Pound and a half; beat them all well together in a Mortar, put them in a deep Pot, and ſet it in a Dunghil three Days and three Nights.

A Purge.

Aloes, one Ounce and a Quarter, Cream of Tartar, half an Ounce, Mercurius Dulcis, Rhubarb, of each one Drachm, Oil of Anniſeeds, forty Drops, Powder of Liquorice a ſufficient Quantity, and make up with Syrup of Roſes.

For the Canker in the Noſe of a Horſe.

Take Lime Water, one Pint, Sublimate Mercury, half an Ounce, finely powdered, Honey of Roſes, half an Ounce, Ægyptiacum, one Drachm; mix them together, and inject it up the Noſtrils, and put up a long Tent of Tow dipt in the Mixture; to a Gallon of Water put half a Pound of Lime Stone; pour the Water boiling upon the Lime Stone to make the Lime Water, and pour off the clear Liquor for Uſe, after it has ſtood ſome Hours to ſettle.

For a Swelling.

Take Ointment of Marſhmallows and Populeon, of each one Ounce, Oil of Camomile and Worms, of each one Ounce, Oil of Turpentine, two Spoonfuls, Ointment of Elder, Oil of Swallows, Linſeed Oil, of each one Ounce, Oil of Peter, one Spoonful, Oil of Origanum, Oil of Brick, of each half an Ounce.

A Cure for the Gravel in a Horſe's Foot.

Pare the Foot very thin, about the Frog eſpecially; then take half a Spoonful of double Aqua-fortis, and half a Spoonful of Spirits of Wine, mix them together in a Spoon with the Point of a Knife, and put it into the Heart of the Foot, holding the Foot up till it ſinks in; then ſet on the Shoe, but let the Nail be down, and the gravelly Part open'd; fill it only with a little Flax before you ſet on the Shoe. Be ſure you don't cut any Part of the Hoof away. You may travel or work in three or four Hours time without Trouble or Hazard.

A Gliſter for a Horſe.

Take new Cows Milk, one Pint and a half, Lenitive Electuary, two Ounces, brown Sugar, a quarter of a Pound, warm theſe all together; when the Sugar is diſſolved, take it from the Fire, and put to it Oil of Roſes, three Ounces; give it Blood warm.

A Purge for a Horſe.

Aloes, one Ounce, Rhubarb, one Drachm, Cream of Tartar, two Drachms, Jalap, one Drachm, Oil of Anniſeeds, forty Drops, Mercurius Dulcis, one Drachm, made up with Syrup of Roſes.

A ſharp

A ſharp Water.

Take Alum and green Copperas, of each half a Pound, and three Quarts of Water; beat the Alum after boiled a little, then put a Pint of Vinegar to two Quarts of Tanners Water, the ſtrongeſt you can get.

A Drink.

Diapente, Elicampane, Sulphur, of each one Ounce, given in a Quart of warm Ale; faſt two Hours after; give warm Water at Night; repeat it the next Morning; keep warm in the Day; bleed the firſt Day, the third Day give cold Water, with a gentle Gallop.

For a Shoulder or any other Strain.

Linſeed Oil ſix Ounces, Oil of Swallows one Ounce, Oil of Peter ſix Drachms, Nerve Oil one Ounce and half, Oil of Spike two Ounces, Oil of Vitriol two Drachms and half; this Oil will do when another has no Effect.

Ointment for Horſes Heels.

Hog's-lard one Pound and a half, *Venice* Turpentine half a Pound, Oil of Camomile four Ounces, Ointment of Marſhmallows and Populeon of each half a Pound, Egyptiacum two Ounces, Verdigreaſe in Powder two Ounces; heat theſe gently over the Fire, until they are well incorporated; ſtrain it through a Cloth, and keep it for Uſe.

The green Ointment to cure all Wounds and Sores.

Take Roſin and Bees-wax, as much as a large Walnut, make them ſmall, and put them into a Skillet to melt; then add Hog's Greaſe and common Turpentine, of each half a Pound, and one Spoonful of Honey; let them boil and melt well together; keep it ſtirring, and take it off the Fire; add one Ounce of Verdigreaſe in fine Powder, keeping it ſtirring over a gentle Fire; as it riſes, take it off the Fire, ſtirring it, that it may be well mixed, taking care it riſes not over; then ſtrain it through a Cloth, keeping it ſtirring till it ſettles and begins to thicken.

For a Horſe's Foot when the Sole is taken out.

Take ſome Nettles, Soap, and common Turpentine, ſhred the Nettles ſmall, pound them all together, and put ſome into the Horſe's Foot three Days; then open it and dreſs it with warm Medicines, keeping it cloſe ſtop'd.

Horſe Balls.

Take ſweet Fennel Seed, Sulphur, Elicampane, Anniſeeds powdered, of each three Ounces, Fenugreek, Liquorice, of each two Ounces, Syrup of Colts-foot, Maiden Hair, Oil of Anniſeeds, of each one Ounce, Figs and Raiſins, of each half a Pound, Juice of Liquorice two Ounces, brown Sugar-Candy half a Pound, Diapente two Ounces, Sweet Oil half a Pint, Honey and *London* Treacle of each half a Pound.

Balls.

A Quart of white Wine, *Spaniſh* Liquorice two Ounces, diſſolve it over the Fire; then put in four Ounces of Anniſeeds, and four Ounces of Liquorice, powdered Flour of Brimſtone two Ounces, Sugar-Candy four Ounces beat fine, Syrup of Colts-foot two Ounces, Oil of Anniſeeds one Ounce, Sweet Oil half a Pint; mix them with fine Flour, with half a Pound of Honey; keep them in a Bladder.

A Drink.

Venice Treacle one Ounce, Turmerick half an Ounce, Saffron one Drachm, Diapente half an Ounce, common Treacle half a Pound; warm it in a Quart of Ale, and faſt two Hours.

A ſharp Water for a Fiſtula, or Canker, or to waſh and cure any Sore.

Take white Copperas, and *Roman* Vitriol, of each one Ounce, Alum half a Pound, Juice of Celandine one Pint, the Juice of Savin three Spoonfuls; burn the Vitriol, Alum, and Copperas, and beat them to powder; put the Powders and Juices into a Quart Bottle of Spring Water, keeping it for your Uſe.

For

For the Gripes.

A Pint of Ale, half a Pint of Geneva, a quarter of a Pint of Oil of Turpentine, two Ounces of Anniſeeds, two Ounces of Cummin Seeds, a quarter of a Pound of *Caſtile* Soap, one Ounce of Diapente. Give it warm.

A Hoof Salve.

Take two Pounds of Sheep's Tallow, one Pound of Turpentine, one Pint of Train Oil, half a Pound of Bees Wax, one Pound of Hogs-lard; boil the Tallow and Wax together, then put in the Turpentine and Lard; boil them together, then add the Train Oil, and let them ſimmer; ſtrain it into an earthen Pot, and keep it for Uſe.

Lime Water for the Mange.

Take two or three Pounds of unſlack'd Lime that is newly made, put it into a Pot or Baſon, and pour by degrees upon it five Quarts of Rain-Water; then ſet the Baſon in a convenient Place for two or three Days, ſtirring it often; after which let the Lime fall to the Bottom, and pour off the Water by degrees from the Lime; filter it through a brown Paper, and to three Pints of the Water add half a Pint of good Spirits of Wine, an Ounce of Spirits of Vitriol, and as much corroſive Sublimate in Powder: Mix and preſerve this for Uſe, dabbing it on their mangy Tails, or any Part infected.

Ointment for a Horſe's Heels.

Hogs-lard one Pound and a half, Verdigreaſe half an Ounce, *Venice* Turpentine, Oil of Camomile, Marſhmallows, Populeon, Egyptiacum, of each half an Ounce; keep it ſtirring over the Fire, whilſt melted; ſtrain it through a Cloth, and keep it for Uſe.

A Charge.

Boil a Pound of Tar in a Pint of ſtrong Aqua Vitæ, or good Spirits of Wine, over a clear Fire, for a quarter of an Hour, ſtirring it often; then add to it two Ounces of fine Bole in Powder, and thicken it with Wheat Flour to the Thickneſs of a cold Charge. Apply it hot to ſcald the Horſe.

For the Stranguillion.

Take ſweet Parſley Seed, ſweet Fennel Seed, Anniſeeds, of each one Ounce, one Pint of Brandy, one Quart of new Milk; give it warm, keep the Horſe ſtirring, and ſet him up warm.

Oils good for Strains, Knocks, or Swellings.

Take Linſeed Oil, ſix Ounces, Exeter and Swallows of each one Ounce, Peter ſix Drachms, Nerve Oil one Ounce and a half, Spike and Turpentine of each two Ounces, Oil of Vitriol two Drachms and a half; put them together, and mix for Uſe.

A Drink for a Cold.

Take one Quart of Ale, three Pennyworth of Turmerick and Honey, boil them together, with three Pennyworth of Saffron; let them ſtand all Night; then put three Pennyworth of *London* Treacle, and give it the Horſe.

For a Cold.

Take half an Ounce of *Spaniſh* Liquorice, half an Ounce of Mithridate, half an Ounce of Diapente, and a quarter of a Pound of Liquorice Powder.

To make Extract of Malt.

Take a Gallon of Wort, the beſt that comes off the Tun; hang it over the Fire; when it boils, ſcum it well; then put in two Pennyworth of Liquorice ſcraped and ſliced, half a Pound of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, let them boil whilſt they are as thick as a Syrup; then take out the Liquorice and Raiſins, and put in an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and boil it till diſſolved.

For a Cold.

Take one Ounce of Garlick, and the like Quantity of Liquorice: boil them in two Quarts of Water to one Pint, ſweeten it with Honey; give a Spoonful four or five times a Day.

For a Strain in the Back-Sinew.

Take the Whites of a dozen Eggs, white Wine Vinegar a quarter of a Pint, and two Ounces of Bole; beat them together, and apply them three Days aſunder; tie on a Cloth with ſome Liſt.

N. B. This ſhould be applied cold.

Balls.

Liquorice, Anniſeeds, Diapente, of each one Pound, *London* Treacle, two Pounds, Flour of Brimſtone ſix Drachms, Elicampane four Ounces, Antimony two Pounds and half: make theſe up into the Conſiſtence of Balls with Honey, or Syrup of Ground-Ivy.

For a Cold.

Take a Quart of Ale, two Heads of Garlick, Elicampane, Anniſeeds, Turmerick, of each one Ounce, Liquorice one Ounce: boil them together with Honey and Sweet Oil, of each two Ounces.

A Purge.

Aloes one Ounce, Cream of Tartar one Ounce, Ginger two Drachms, Diapente one Pennyworth, a Pint and a half of Ale.

A Drink.

Venice Treacle one Ounce, Turmerick three Pennyworth, Saffron ſix Pennyworth, Diapente two Pennyworth, common Treacle half a Pound, three Pints of Ale; mix them together.

For the Canker.

White Wine Vinegar one Pint, the beſt Roch Alum half a Pound, one Handful of red Sage: boil them together, and waſh the Horſe's Mouth and Tongue.

Sharp Water.

White Wine Vinegar one Quart, *Roman* Vitriol one Ounce, Roch Alum one Ounce; boil all together.

A Poultice.

Take a Pint of Milk, Rye Flour one Pound, Turpentine four Ounces, Hog's Lard four Ounces; laid on with a Cloth and Liſt.

For the Bite of a mad Dog.

Take Rue ſix Ounces, Garlick four Ounces, bruiſed well, *Venice* Treacle, Mithridate, of each two Ounces, ſcraped thin. Boil them in five Pints of Ale, until a Pint is waſted, being cloſe ſtopt: ſtrain the Liquor, and give eight Spoonfuls to a Man three Mornings together; the like Quantity to a Beaſt; four Spoonfuls to a Dog, cold; three Spoonfuls to a Sheep, *&c.* warming it. *Note*, you are to apply the Drugs to any Part hurt, or bit. It ought to be given before nine Days is expired, after the Biting of any mad Creature, with bleeding.

Mr. Mountford's *Receipt for any Sore.*

Take a Pound of unſlacked Lime, and put to a Quart of Water; when it is diſſolved and ſettled, pour the Water as fine from the Settling as you can; put to it half an Ounce of Mercurius Sublimate, one Ounce of Roch Alum, one Ounce of white Copperas, a very little *Roman* Vitriol, ſimmer them all together; all this is to make a Pint of the Water. Waſh the Part three times a Day.

For a Splint, Spavin, or Ringbone.

Two Ounces of Spirits of Wine, the ſame of *Hungary* Water, Spirits of Sal Armoniac, Oil of Origanum each two Drachms; rub a little on a Splint once in three Days, about a Tea-ſpoonful on a Spavin.

For the Worms or Bots in a Horſe.

Take a Handful of Saffron, and ſhred it ſmall, and ſome freſh Butter, and two Drachms of Æthiops Mineral mixt in a Ball; give it three Mornings faſting, then miſs one Morning, and then ditto; add half an Ounce of Succotrine Aloes.

For a Swelling.

Two Ounces of Oil of Peter, one Ounce of Ointment of Bays, and two Ounces of Train Oil.

For any Swelling or Strain.

Take old Verjuice and Oil of Charity; mix them and rub it well in before the Fire.

For a Splint, Spavin, or Curb.

Take Spirits of Wine and Camphire one Spoonful, put it into a Gallypot; then take an Ounce of Mercury Sublimate, ſo mix it with a Stick and rub it with your Finger well in. Tie him up.

To cure the Bots or Worms.

Take common Wormwood Seeds, and Worm Seeds, of each three Quarters of an Ounce, Ethiops Mineral a Quarter of an Ounce, Tanſey in Powder half an Ounce, Myrrha in Powder one Drachm; mix all theſe Ingredients into a Ball, with Syrup of Buckthorn. This Quantity may be given to either Horſe or Mare, for a ſingle Doſe every other Morning faſting; take care to keep them from eating any Food for four Hours after taking the ſame.

This Preparation will cure either Bots or Worms in five or ſix Times taking; or you may give it as often as Occaſion requires.

For a Sinew Strain.

Diſſolve half an Ounce of Camphire, in half a Pint of ſtrong Spirits of Wine; when you have done that, put it into an earthen Pan with a quarter of a Pound of *Caſtile* Sope; take care and melt them all together, and ſtand till cold for Uſe. Two or three Spoonfuls of this may be rubbed on the Part affected warm, Night and Morning, for an Hour, applying a warm Flannel after uſing.

A Gripe Drink.

One Ounce of Carraway Seeds, one Ounce of Cummin Seeds, half an Ounce of ſweet Fennel Seeds, ſcrape one Ounce of *Caſtile* Sope, one Ounce of Oil of Turpentine, one Pint of Geneva. For two Drinks. Keep the Horſe ſtirring and warm.

For the Gripes.

Take half a Pint of *Daffy*'s Elixir, ſixty Drops of the Oil of Juniper; mix them, and give it the Horſe or Mare.

A Receipt for the Farcy.

Take red Precipitate two Drachms, Roſin of Jalap three Drachms, *Venice* Treacle one Ounce and half; make it into a Ball, give the Horſe this early in a Morning, and tie the Horſe up from Meat three Hours; then give him a hot Maſh, and keep him warm with Clothes. Let this be repeated every other Morning for nine times. This has ſeldom failed curing the moſt obſtinate Farcy.

Repre-

Repreſentation of the Jugular Veins.

PLATE Letter A *repreſents the external jugular Veins, commonly called the Neck Veins, which are the Branches of the hollow Veins; and ſhews how, when the Muſcles and Glands that cover it are taken away, it ſeparates firſt into two Branches, and afterwards into four, ſending forth ſeveral others, ſome to the internal, ſome to the external Part of the Head.*

N° 1. The external jugular Vein, which, aſcending the Side of the Neck, ſends out Branches continually to the neighbouring Muſcles.

N° 3. The upper Branch of the ſecond Diviſion of the jugular Vein, which deſcending under the Glandule that covers it, ſends a Branch to the Brain, by the Hole which is in the Skull above the Ear-Hole.

N° 2. The lower Branch of the ſecond Diviſion of the jugular Vein, which being hid under Glandules, creeps under the lower Jaw-bone, and dividing into many Branches, enters into the internal Part of the Head, diſperſing itſelf by the Brain, the Throat, the Tongue, the Os Hyoides, and other Parts.

N° 4. A ſmall Branch of N° 2, called the Eye-Vein, which ſeparating into two, ſpreads over the Parts of the Eye. It is this ſmall Branch that we cut in Diſorders of the Eyes.

N° 5. The lower Branch of the firſt Diviſion of the external jugular Vein, which burrows under the Cheek, ſeparating into two Branches, one whereof runs to the internal Parts of the Head, the other to the internal Parts of the Jaws.

N° 15. A Branch of N° 5, which extends by the upper Part of the Jaws, and goes to the Angles of the Eyes.

Figures repreſenting the Moulds for cutting large Ears, and reducing them to their natural Size, and other Inſtruments for the Performance of different Chirurgical Operations.

Fig. I. You muſt firſt cut off the Hair of the Ears, both without Side and within, as cloſe to the Skin as poſſible: Then put N° 1 into the Ear, and N° 2 without it, ſo that the Ear is even between them both: Then with N° 5 take them hold by the Ends marked 4, to preſs them cloſe together, as you ſee deſcribed in Plate A, where the Numbers 1, 2, and 4 are all faſten'd together by the Screw N° 3. Mind to take hold of both Ears alike, and with the Biſtoury or Inciſion Knife, N° 6, cut them all round cloſe to the Inſtrument. The Operation being performed, put the Tail of the Horſe towards the Manger, and tie him in ſuch manner that he may not rub his Head for four or five Hours, till the Bleeding is intirely ſtop'd, and a ſort of Cruſt formed round the Edge of each Ear. The next Day take a Feather, and anoint them all round with the Ointment preſcribed for Burns, Morning and Evening, till the ſaid Cruſt falls off of itſelf: Which being exactly obſerved, the Skins at the Edges of the Ears will join ſo cloſe, that it will be impoſſible to ſee whether they have been cut or no. For want of the Ointment for Burns, a little Marſhmallows, Honey, and Hog's Lard mixed together over the Fire, in equal Quantities, will anſwer the Purpoſe, and may be uſed in the ſame manner as the other Ointment. See Fig. I. Plate A.

Fig. II. repreſents a little Horn, which is uſed to unnerve a Horſe, or to bar his Veins, or to give him the Prick with a Horn in his upper Palate. See Plate B.

Fig. III. It would be uſeleſs to give here the Draught of a Caſe of Fleams, if it was not to ſhew their Want of Experience who uſe ſmall and narrow ones, with which it is almoſt impoſſible to make a good Orifice; whereas by uſing them according to the Model here given, the Bleeding will be of much greater Advantage. See Plate B.

Fig. IV. repreſents an Inſtrument call'd a Scraping-knife, which ſerves to ſeparate the Foot, when you would unſole a Horſe, and alſo to make an Opening within Side of a Foot that has been prick'd with a Nail, when the Matter does not eaſily come out. It is abſolutely neceſſary that a Groom ſhould have one of them. Your Wine-Merchants have things in the ſame Form, but larger, to mark their Caſks. See Plate A.

Fig. V. repreſents a Kind of Knife to give the Fire, which ought to be two Foot long, with a wooden Handle (though not here deſcrib'd) to hold it by when hot. On the Back,

Back, at N° 6, it ſhould be a full Inch thick, and at the Edge, N° 7, 7, 7, as thin as a common Knife when blunted. The Manner of heating it is deſcrib'd in the Article of giving the Fire. The Edge muſt abſolutely be of Steel, and not of Iron.

Fig. VI. is a Fire-Button, made uſe of for Spavins, for the Anticor, or to pierce and fire with the Point, 9, any Part where there is Matter enclos'd, which you want to diſcharge. You ſee theſe Operations deſcrib'd at large in the Places where this Inſtrument is mentioned.

Fig. VII. is an Iron made to ſolder up Seymes, as has been explain'd in the Article concerning them. You make it red hot, and preſs it croſs the Cleft, from the Crown to the Bottom of it, according to it's Length. This Iron makes the Impreſſion of the Letter S, and ſometimes, when the Cleft is long, there muſt be three or four of theſe Impreſſions: After which apply the Remedies preſcrib'd in the Article of Seymes. The Part numb'er'd 8 is for the Middle of the Cleft, and ought to be of Steel, and as ſharp as the Fire-Knife.

Fig. VIII. is the Form of a Biſtoury, or Inciſion-Knife, proper for all Sorts of Operations, whether for unnerving a Horſe, or cutting his Veins or Arteries. Cut the Skin with it delicately, and then finiſh the Inciſion with the Biſtoury preſcrib'd for cutting the Ears; which, being crooked, opens the Skin without offending the Nerves or Veins you deſign to cut.

Fig. IX. exhibits an Iron call'd a Flap, or Mouth-Iron (in *Saunier* often a Colt's Foot.) This is to put into the Mouth of a Horſe, to examine at leiſure the Diſorders that are here, as the Bean, alias the Lampas, or to cut off the Barbs, or to prick him with the Horn, or to ſmooth his Teeth when they grow out, or uneven.

N° 14 ſhews the upper Bar.

N° 15 the lower Bar, which goes into the Horſe's Mouth, to make him hold it open.

N° 16 the Bar, or Handle, which you hold when you make uſe of it.

A Deſcription of the different Sorts of Shoes, proper for the various Diſeaſes of the Feet, taken from Monſieur de Saunier; *and of many others now in the Poſſeſſion of Mr.* Merick *of* Groſvenor-Meuſe, *Yeoman-Farrier to his Majeſty.*

From Monſieur de Saunier.

Fig X. repreſents a Shoe for all Feet, which every Man, who has a large Equipage to conduct, whether in the Road or the Army, ought to be provided with. It opens and ſhuts in the Middle, as marked at N° 8, and is more eſpecially proper for the Fore-feet, which are moſt ſubject to receive Damage.

Fig. XI. repreſents a Shoe broken at the two Corners, to open the Heels of a Horſe who has them clos'd or incaſtellated. It opens and ſhuts at N° 7, 7, as was deſcrib'd in the Chapter of cloſe and incaſtellated Heels. N° 6 marks the Figure which is plac'd between the Teeth of the Iron Branches. 'Tis the Buſineſs of him who makes the Operation to lengthen it every time he dreſſes the Horſe, according as he ſees occaſion. See Plate B.

Fig. XII. repreſents a Shoe to make ſuch Horſes raiſe their Feet as are ſtiff before, by trotting them Evening and Morning with a Pair of them; as alſo when you cut their Nerves above the Knees, as mark'd in Plate B.

Fig. XIII. demonſtrates a Shoe which may ſerve upon Occaſion, on a Journey or in the Army, when a Horſe has ſlip'd his Foot into a Hole, or any cloſe Place, and pull'd off the Shoe with Violence, and all the Edge of the Crown with it, which makes it impoſſible to nail on another Shoe. No Groom, who has the Charge of many Horſes, ſhould be without one of theſe.

N° 5 points where the Shoe plays, to open and ſhut it as much as you pleaſe.

N° 6 ſhews the Circle or Border round the upper Part of the Shoe, by which it encloſes the Bottom of the Hoof all round. After having fix'd it, take the Screw, N° 17, and paſs it through the two Holes, N° 18, in order to faſten the Shoe behind; which being well adjuſted in this Manner, the Horſe may travel upon it, till the Hoof is grown out enough to hold the Nails of a common Shoe.

Fig. XIV. exhibits a Shoe that is of equal Thickneſs without Side and within, as may eaſily be perceived by N° 9. It is proper for a Horſe that has a Seyme, that is to ſay, whoſe Hoof

Hoof is cleft, either on the Outſide or the Inſide. The Branch N° 7 ought to be ſhorter than that N° 8, becauſe it is to come on the Side where the Seyme is: Theſe Clefts cloſing up better when you fix them, and the Shoe does not bear upon them, as deſcrib'd in the Article of Seymes.

Fig. XV. This Shoe is proper to re-eſtabliſh the Feet of Horſes who have cloſe Heels: It ought to be of equal Thickneſs, as you ſee at N° 10, but to grow thinner towards N° 11, thinner ſtill at 12, and ſo on to 13, always diminiſhing gradually; ſo that the Branches on that Side, oppoſite N° 13, ought to be thicker than the Back of a common Knife. Every Man of good Senſe, and who underſtands Horſemanſhip ever ſo little, may ſee, when a Horſe is ſhoed, that if the Shoe is vaulted all along, from the Point to the End of the Branches, the Heels ſtraiten themſelves: On the contrary, the Branches of the Shoe being thinner without Side than within, the Heels bearing upon them muſt neceſſarily dilate and ſpread, as they meet with no Reſiſtance; and the Hoof will follow the Shoe which is thinner towards the Numbers 11, 12, and 13.

From Mr. Merick.

Fig. XVI. a Tongue-Shoe for a Foot where both Heels are broke or wore away. This is for ſtrengthning the Foot.

Fig. XVII. a Shoe proper to conceal a bad footed Horſe, to be thick all the Outſide of the Fullering, and to be thin upon the Ball of the Foot, and thick heel'd to hide the hollow Work on the Inſide.

N. B. This is very proper for a Horſe on Sale.

Fig. XVIII. repreſents a Box-Shoe, with an open Heel and Toe, for a Horſe that is foundred, hurt, or a Pain in the Toe.

Fig. XIX. repreſents a Box-Shoe, with a Cap to the Front, for a foundred Horſe, when the Cruſt is gone below the Coffin-Bone; to be hob'd and ſeated very fine.

Fig. XX. a Bar-Shoe for a Horſe that has a Corn in the Heel, and likewiſe lined with Leather to bear upon the Frog, where it is ſtrong and will bear it.

Fig. XXI. a Patten-Shoe for a lame Horſe, either in the Shoulder, Whitle-bone, or Stifle; to be put on the contrary Foot.

Fig. XXII. a Box-Shoe for a Pomice Foot, to be ſeated level all round.

Fig. XXIII. a Box-Shoe, where there is a Pain in the Quarters, to be left open for Eaſe and for the Gravel to work out.

Fig. XXIV. a plain Shoe for a bad Foot.

Fig. XXV. a Shoe where the Ball of the Foot is very thin; the void Place being for the Gravel to work out.

Fig. XXVI. ditto, for a Bruiſe for the inſide or outſide Toe; the Part grieved to be left open.

Fig. XXVII. a Bar-Shoe where the Toe and Quarters are broke away, to be ſeated ſmooth and nail'd up at the Heels, the Toe being ſupported by a Clip, for a hind Foot.

Fig. XXVIII. a narrow Bar-Shoe, to improve a thin Foot.

Fig. XXIX. a Bar-Shoe where both the Heels and the Foot are wore away, being lin'd with Leather when the Frog will bear it.

Fig. XXX. a Bar-Shoe when the Heel is wore away, and the Foot and Frog is very thin.

A Table of the Remedies preſcrib'd in this Book, in the Order they occur, with the Prices of the Principal when compounded, which may be had faithfully prepared of Mr. *Wootton*, Chymiſt, at the *Golden Head* in *Brookſtreet, Groſvenor-Square.*

N. B. Wherever Wine is order'd to be made uſe of in any internal Medicine, Ale may be uſed in it's ſtead.

	Page.		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Chap. II.	7	A Remedy for the Barbs			
Chap. III.		A Remedy for the Lampas			
Chap. IV.		For Gigs in the Lips			
Chap. V.	8	For Gag-Teeth			
Chap. VI.		An Eye-Water for a Blow on the Eye —			6
Chap. VII.	9	Remedy for a moon-ey'd Horſe —			
Chap. X.		———for a Web in the Eye —			
		———for diſorder'd Sight —			
		Pills to purge the Brain of a Horſe that has ſore Eyes		1	6
	10	A Powder to diſſipate a Web —			6
		Another for the ſame Purpoſe —		1	3
		Another with White Wine —		2	6
		Another with Snail Shells —		1	
Chap. XI.		A Remedy for Wounds in the Eye			
		An Eye-Water —			6
		Another with Lapis Mirabilis —		1	
	11	A Draught for the Eyes —			8
		An Eye-Water — —			6
Chap. XII.		A Remedy for a Whitloe on the Eye			
Chap. XIII.	12	An Ointment for the Strangles —		2	8
		A cordial Drink for the ſame —		2	9
		A cordial Drink for the Baſtard Strangles —		1	6
	13	An Ointment for the Stranguillion			
		A Drink for the ſame			
	14	A Cordial for Horſes that are ſick and have loſt their Stomachs —		2	8
		Another Remedy for the Strangles			
		A Drink for the ſimple Strangles			
		An Ointment for the running Strangles			
		A Drink for the ſame			
		Chewing Balls for the ſame			
		Pills for a Horſe that has a Running at the Noſe without being Glandery			
		A Remedy for a morfounder'd Horſe			
Chap. XIV.	15	A Medicine for a Running at the Noſe			
	16	Another Medicine for the ſame Purpoſe —		1	2
		A Perfume for the ſame —		1	10
		A Plaiſter for the Glands			
		A Drink for the Glanders —		2	
Chap. XV.	17	Remedies for the Farcy call'd the Farini Oculus			
		A Remedy for the flying Farcy —		1	
		———for the corded Farcy			
		———for the Hens Arſe Farcy			
	18	A Purge for the Farcy —		1	8
		An Ointment for all Sorts of Farcies —		4	6
		Another Ointment for the ſame —		1	
		A Remedy for all Sorts of Farcies			

A Cauſtic

	Page.		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Chap. XV.		A Cauſtic Stone for the ſame —		2	6
	19	Balls for the Farcin —		3	6
		An Ointment for the ſame —		3	4
		An internal Remedy			
		A Lye for the Farcy			
		An Ointment with Quickſilver for the ſame - -		8	
		A Drink for the ſame —		1	6
	20	A cauſtic Ointment for the Buds —		1	10
Chap. XVI.		A Compoſition to eat proud Fleſh in the Farcy, one Ounce, at 3 *d. per* Ounce.			3
		A Sulphur Bag for the Mange			
		Powders for the ſame —		1	6
		Another Remedy for the Mange with Quickſilver		1	6
	21	Another for the ſame			
		Another with *Spaniſh* Flies —		2	6
		Another			
		A Waſh for the ſame —		1	6
		An Ointment with Quickſilver for the ſame		4	
		A Purge for the ſame —		4	
Chap. XVII.		A Remedy for the Mange call'd the Old Reds			
Chap. XVIII.	22	A Remedy for Tetters or Ring-Worms			
		An Ointment to make the Hair come when fallen off by Tetters, *&c.*			
		Another for the ſame			
Chap. XIX.	23	A Remedy for founder'd Horſes			
		A Draught for the ſame —		1	9
		Another Remedy for the ſame			
		A Draught for the ſame, with Garlick			
	24	Another way of treating a founder'd Horſe			
Chap. XX.		A Remedy for a Horſe whoſe Greaſe is melted			
		Another for the ſame —		2	
	25	Another			
Chap. XXI.		An Ointment for the Stag-Evil			
		A ſtrengthning Medicine for the ſame			
		An Embrocation for the ſame			
		A Medicine for the Stag-Evil —		1	4
Chap. XXII.	26	A Remedy for the Vives			
		Another			
Chap. XXIII.		A Remedy for the Gripes and Cholick			
	27	A Draught for the ſame			
		Oil of Amber, one Ounce —			6
		Another Remedy for the Gripes			
		Another			
		Another to make a Horſe piſs			
		Another for the Gripes			
		An Ointment to provoke Urine			
	28	A Gliſter for the Gripes of every kind			
		A Drink for the Gripes —		1	4
Chap. XXIV.		The Method of Cure for the Vertigo or *Spaniſh* Evil			
		Another Method			
Chap. XXV.	29	A Remedy for Numbneſs of the Senſes, which reſembles a Vertigo			
		Another Remedy for the Head-Ach			
		An Ointment for a Vertigo —		2	6
		A Powder for the ſame, one Ounce —			2
	30	Another Remedy for the ſame			

A Drink

	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. XXVI.	30	A Drink in a Fever or fiery Evil			
		Another for the ſame			
		Chewing Balls for the ſame			
		Glaſs of Antimony, one Ounce ——			6
	31	A Remedy for a Fever ——		1	4
		Sal Prunella for the Faſhions, one Ounce —			2
Chap. XXVII.		A Gliſter for the ſame ——		1	6
		A Drink for the ſame			
		Another			
	32	A Medicine for the ſame ——		3	2
		A nouriſhing Gliſter for the ſame			
		Another Remedy ——		1	2
		Another for the ſame ——			8
		Another ——		2	4
Chap. XXVIII.		A Remedy for Incontinence of Urine			
		——for a Horſe that piſſes Blood			
Chap. XXIX.	33	The Method of curing the Anticor or Anticou			
		Another Remedy for the ſame			
Chap. XXX.	34	A Medicine for the Relief of broken-winded Horſes			
		A Powder for the ſame			
		Another Remedy			
		Another for a broken Wind			
		Another			
	35	Another			
		Another			
		Another with Aloes and Saffron ——		2	6
		Another cordial Drink			
		Another to preſerve a Horſe's Wind			
		Another alleviating Remedy to a broken-winded Horſe			
		A Medicine to prevent a broken-winded Horſe from growing worſe			
	36	Another			
		Another for the ſame Purpoſe			
		Balls for a broken Wind ——			10
		A Powder to mix with Oats for the ſame			
		Iron prepar'd with Sulphur, one Pound ——		1	
		Balls for a broken Wind			
		Other Balls with the Gums and Flowers of Benjamin, one Pound ——		9	
Chap. XXVII.*	33*	A Remedy for Heaving of the Flanks —		2	
		Another for the ſame ——		2	
		A Powder for the ſame ——		4	6
		A Charge for a Strain —— —		2	
	34*	A Remedy for a Horſe that is over heated			
Chap. XXVIII.*		A Remedy for a Cheſt-founder			
		Another for the ſame			
Chap. XXIX.*	35*	A Remedy for Worms			
		Æthiops Mineral, one Ounce —			4½
		Another for Worms			
		Purge for Worms ——		2	6
		Crocus Metallorum, 2 *d.* 1 Ounce, 1 Pound —		2	6
Chap. XXX.*		A Poultice for ſwell'd Teſticles			
		Another			
	36*	Another			
		A Plaiſter for the ſame			

	Page.		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Chap. XXX.		A Remedy for another Sort of Swelling in the Teſticles			
		Another			
		Another			
Chap. XXXI.		A Stone for a Gangrene —		1	6
	37	Another Remedy for the ſame			
		A Remedy to hinder the Gangrene reaching the Heart —		1	8
		Another for the ſame			
		A Fomentation for the ſame			
		A Drink againſt internal Venom			
		Another with *Venice* Treacle —		1	8
Chap. XXXII.	38	For Bites of venomous Animals			
		An Ointment of Colewort Leaves			
Chap. XXXIII.		To purge a Horſe gently, and fatten him			
		A Decoction of Starlings			
		A Feed with Nettle Seed			
		—— with Fenugreek Seed			
		—— with Rye Flour			
		Balls to give a Horſe Appetite —		1	2
		A Waſh for Cancers in the Mouth			
Chap. XXXIV.	39	A Remedy for the Tongue cut by the Bridle			
		Another with Figs			
		Pills for a Horſe in a ſick and languiſhing Condition —		2	6
		A Purge for a Horſe with ſweet Oil —		2	6
		A Waſh for all Sorts of Wounds —		2	6
		A Remedy to dry up Wounds			
		A Suppurative for Kernels on a Horſe's Back			
		Eſſence of Turpentine, one Ounce —			2
	40	Another Remedy for a ſore Back —			6
Chap. XXXVII.	41	A Remedy for Hurts on the Withers			
Chap. XLII.	44	Another			
		A Remedy for a bruis'd Shoulder			
		An Ointment for the ſame —		1	2
	45	*Flanders* Oil of Bays, one Pound —		2	
		Candles for a Shoulder-ſlip —		2	6
Chap. XLIII.	46	An Ointment for the Spunge —		3	
Chap. XLVI.	48	A Remedy for Splints			
	49	An Ointment for Splints and Fuſſes —			7
		Another			
		Another			
		A Cauſtic for the ſame —			6
		Another			
		Another			
Chap. XLVIII.	51	An Ointment for Windgalls —		3	
		A Remedy to make Windgalls diſappear			
Chap. XLIX.	52	An Ointment for Burns			
Chap. L.	53	An Ointment for the Mallenders			
		Another for Mallenders, Mules, and Sallenders --		2	4
		Another			
		Another — —		2	
Chap. LIV.	55	A Remedy for a Blow on the Nerve			
		An Ointment for the ſame —		2	6
		A Remedy for the Nerves —		3	

	Page.		l.	s.	d.
Chap. LIV.		Another for ruin'd Nerves ——		1	2
	56	A Fomentation for the ſame ——		2	
		Oil of Nuts for ſwelled Legs, one Pound ——		2	
		Another Remedy for the ſame			
		An Ointment for a Horſe that has got Thorns in Hunting ——		2	6
		An Ointment to fortify relax'd Nerves ——		2	6
		A Remedy for Mallenders and Sallenders			
Chap. LV.	57	A Digeſtive for a Blow near the Fetlock ——			8
Chap. LVI.		A Remedy for a ſimple Javart			
	58	A Plaiſter for the ſame			
Chap. LVII.	59	A Tincture for a Prick in a Horſe's Foot ——			8
		Powdered Sublimate, one Ounce ——			6
		Another Remedy for the ſame			
Chap. LXI.	61	An Ointment for Maltlongs or Maltworms ——			8
Chap. LXIII.	62	A Remedy for a Quarter Seyme			
		Another for ditto			
		Another with Orpiment			
Chap. LXIV.		A Remedy for a Bleyme			
		Another			
	63	A Defenſative when a Horſe's Soles are drawn			
Chap. LXV.		A Waſh for drying of corrupted Frogs ——		1	4
	64	Aqua Infernalis ——		3	2
Chap. LXVI.	65	An Ointment for narrow Heels			
Chap. LXVIII.	66	A Remedy for a Numbneſs or Stunning of the Hoof			
		Another			
		Another to make the Feet good ——		4	4
Chap. LXIX.		A Remedy for a Horſe that is tender ſol'd			
		Another for fat and ſoft Feet			
	67	An Ointment for all Sorts of Feet			
Chap. LXX.	68	A Remedy for the Capelet			
		Another with Spirit of Turpentine			
Chap. LXXII.	69	Ætherial Spirit of Turpentine, one Ounce ---			2
		A Remedy for extended or relax'd Nerves			
		An Ointment for the ſame ——		2	4
Chap. LXXIII.		A Remedy for Diſorders in the Haunch			
Chap. LXXIV.	70	——— for a falſe Step			
Chap. LXXV.		——— for the Comb or Crown Scab			
	71	An Ointment for the ſame ——			9
Chap. LXXVI.		A Remedy for Watery Sores on the Leg			
		Another for the ſame			
		A Remedy for watery Sores ——		6	6
		Another for the ſame Diſtemper ——		2	6
		Another for ſcabby Legs ——		3	4
		Another for watery or ſcabby Legs ——		2	
Chap. LXXVII.	72	Lapis Infernalis for Warts, one Ounce ——			6
		A Stone to eat off Warts and proud Fleſh ——		1	6
Chap. LXXXI.	74	A Remedy for batter'd Soles			
Chap. LXXXIII.	75	——— for Spavins			
		The ſtrong Ointment for Spavins ——		5	
Chap. LXXXIV.	76	A Remedy for Varices			
Chap. LXXXV.		——— for a Veſſigon			
		Another with Spirits of Wine and Camphire ——		5	
Chap. LXXXVII.	79	Purging Pills for a Horſe ——		2	
		Another Purge with Æthiops Mineral ——		2	4

Liver

	Page.		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Chap.LXXXVII.		Liver of Antimony, one Pound —		2	
		Crocus Metallorum, one Pound —		2	6
	80	A Glister for a Looseness			
		Another for a Horse that has taken a Purge which has not work'd —		2	
		A refreshing Glister —		2	
		Another — —		2	
		The cordial and universal Powder, one Pound		2	
	81	Another Medicine to fortify a Horse whose Appetite is pall'd —		1	6
		How to dye the Hair of a Horse			
		How to paint the Eye-brows of an old Horse			
		A Remedy to make Hair come			
	82	How to make what we call a Star come on the Forehead of a Horse			
		How to fill up the hollow Places over a Horse's Eyes			
		Remedies for Figs in a Horse's Feet —		4	
	83	Double Aqua Fortis, one Ounce —			4
	84	Madam Feuillet's green Balsam, one Ounce —		1	
		Gunshot Water			
	85	Lapis Mirabilis, one Ounce —			8
		A Remedy for Sprains			
		A Poultice for swell'd Stones.			

INDEXES

INDEXES

TO

VOLUME II.

I. An Index of Diſeaſes, and other Particulars relating to the Knowledge of a Horſe.

A.

AGE of a Horſe, how to know, 5.
Anticor, or Anticow, 33. Moſt dangerous in hot Countries, ibid.
Appetite, bad, 38.

B.

Barbs, how to know and cure, 6.
Baſtard-Strangles, 12.
Batter'd Soles, 73.
Beating of the Flank, occaſioned by Straining, 33.
Begue, a Mark ſo called, 6.
Bite of a mad Dog, 116, 126.
Bite of a Serpent, or other venomous Animal, 37.
Bleyme, how to know, &c. 62.
Bloated Windgalls, 50.
Blood Spavins, 74.
Bloody Gripes, 27.
Bloody Urine, 85.
Blow on the Eye, 8. On the Nerve, 54. Between the Fetlock and Heel, 56.
Bone-Spavin, 74.
Bow Legs, a Horſe that has them to be rejected, 54.
Broken winded, or Purſive, 34.
Burns, 52.

C.

Cancer in the Mouth, 38.
Cancerous Farcy, 17.
Cancerous Glanders, 15.
Canker in the Noſe, 118, 121.
Capelet, or Paſſe Campane, 63.
Cheſt-Foundering, 34*.
Cholick, ſee Gripes, 118, 120.
Circled Feet, 73.
Cloven, or Oxes Feet, 61.
Cold, 113, 115, 116, 117, 120, 121.
Cooling, or Chilling of the Shoulders, 45.
Core in the Paſtern, or Javart, 57.
Cough, ſee broken Wind, 116.
Crown Scab, or Comb, 70.
Curb, the Diſtemper ſo called, 77.

D.

Dragon in the Eye, 20.
Dung, Remark on it, 78.

E.

Eye, Diſeaſes of the, a Blow on the, 8. Hollow, ibid.
Eyes, Sight of, diſordered, 9. A Web in, ibid. Whitlow in, 11.
Eyes of a Colt, how ſtrained, 8.

F.

Faintneſs for want of Nouriſhment, 43.
Falſe Step, 69.
Farcy, the ſeveral Sorts of, 16. Farini Oculus, ibid. Flying Farcy, 17. Corded Farcy, ibid. Hen's Arſe Farcy, ibid. 114, ibid. 115, 122. Cancerous Farcy, ibid. Internal Farcy, 18. How to manage, ibid.
Farini Oculus, ſee Farcy.
Faſhions, Deſcription and Cauſe of, 31.
Fat Spavin, 75.
Feet, ſoft and tender, 66, 67. Full, or clogg'd up, 73. Circled, ibid.
Fetlock and Heel, a Blow between, 56.
Fever, or fiery Evil, 30, &c. How to know, ibid.
Figs in a Horſe's Feet, 82, 83.
Flanks, ſee Heaving.
Fleſhy Fogs on the fore Feet, 72.
Flying Farcy, ſee Farcy.

Forging,

Forging, what it means in a Horſe, 54.
Foundering of Horſes, Cauſes and Deſcription of it, 22, 23.
Frogs, or Fruſhes, new, 63. Corrupted, ib.
Full, or clogg'd-up Feet, 73.
Fuſees, or Splents, 48.

G.

Gag-Teeth, how to know and make even, 7.
Gangrene, or Mortification, 36*.
Giggs upon the Lips, how to know and cure, 7.
Glanders, incurable Sorts, 15. Of the Glands, how to know, ib. Of the Spine, or Backbone Marrow, ib. The cancerous Glanders, ibid.
Graps upon the Legs, 72.
Greaſy Heels,
Green Diet, a Cauſe of the Farcy, 22.
Gripes, or Cholick, 67, 68, 69.

H.

Halter-caſt, 59.
Haunch, Diſorders of, 69.
Head-ach, and Numbneſs of the Senſes, 29.
Head-evil, the contagious, 13. Cure of, ib.
Heaving of the Flank, 33*.
Heel, gaul'd,
Hen's arſe Farcy, ſee Farcy.
Hoof, numb'd, 66. Brittle, 67.
Horny Javarts, 58.

I.

Javart, or Core in the Paſtern, 57.
Impoſtumations of the Withers, 42.
Incaſtellated Feet, or narrow Heels, 64.
Incontinence of Urine, 32.
Inflammation of the Yard, Teſticles, &c. 41.
Internal Farcy, ſee Farcy.
Itch, ſee Mange.

L.

Lampas, how to know and cure, 7.
Legs, Defects of, 54. Swelling of, 56. Watery Sores on, 71.

M.

Mallenders, how to know, &c. 52, 53.
Maltlong, or Maltworms, 60.
Mange, Itch, or Scab, Cauſes of, 20.
Mark in a Horſe's Mouth, 5. How to counterfeit, 6.
Melted Greaſe, what it is, 24. How to know it, ibid.
Moon-Eyes, how to know, 8.
Morfoundering, a Species of the Strangles, 12.
Mortification, ſee Gangrene.
Mules, diſtinguiſh'd from the Mallenders, 53. Tranſverſe, what, 60.

N.

Narrow Heels, 64.
Navel Galls, or Hurts upon the Navel, 42.
Nerve, a Blow on the, or Nerve-Shoe, 54.
Nerves that are ruin'd, 55. Relax'd, or extended, 68.
Nervous Windgall, 50.
Nervous Javarts, 58.
Numbneſs of the Senſes, reſembling a Vertigo, 29.
Numbneſs, or Stunning of the Hoof, 66.

O.

Old Reds, a Diſeaſe ſo called, being a Species of the Mange, 21.
Opening of the Shoulder, or true Shoulder Slip, 45.
Oſſelets, the three ſeveral Kinds of, 49.
Ox-kneed Horſe, incurable, 47.
Ox, or cloven Feet, 61.

P.

Piſſing Blood, 32.
Poiſon, internal, 37.
Pole-evil, what, 43.
Prick in the Foot, 59.
Proud Fleſh, 20.
Purfive, or broken-winded Horſe, 34.

Q.

Quarter Seyme, 62.

R.

Rats Tails on the Legs, 67.
Ring-worms, ſee Tetters.
Running at the Noſe, 30.

S.

Saddle not fit, Effects of it, 43, 44.
Sallenders, Difference between that and the Mallenders, 53.
Scab, ſee Mange.
Scratches, or Chaps, 59.
Seyme, what and whence, 61.

Shoulder-ſlip, or Shoulder-wrench, 43. Different Cauſes and Kinds of it, ib. 44, 45.
Shrew Mouſe, his venomous Bite, 37.
Soles, battered, 73.
Spaniſh Evil, ſee Vertigo.
Spavin, Bone, 74.
Spavin, Fat, 75.
Spavins, or Blood-Spavins, 74.
Spinal Glanders, 15.
Splents, three ſeveral Sorts of, 43.
Sprains, 85.
Spunge, a Diſeaſe ſo called, 46.
Stable, infected, may be of dangerous Conſequence, 15, 33.
Stag-evil, why ſo called, &c. 25.
Step, falſe, 69.
Stiffneſs of the Legs, 47.
Stirrups uneven, Effect of it, 43.
Straining. Beating of the Flank, occaſioned by Straining, 34.
Strangles, various Species of, 11. How to know them, 12.
Stranguillon, a Species of Strangles, 13.
Stunning of the Hoof, 66.
Swelling of the Teſticles, ſee Teſticles.

T.

Tail of a Horſe, 40.
Teeth, Names of, and Manner of their coming, 1, &c.
Tender-ſole, 66.
Teſticles, Swelling of the, 35*. Another Sort, 36*.
Tetters, or Ring-worms, 22.
Thorn got in Hunting, 56.
Tongue cut by the Bridle, 39.

U.

Varices, 76.
Venom, ſee Poiſon.
Vermiforme, the Vertigo ſo called.
Vertigo, or *Spaniſh* Evil, 28.
Veſſigon, 76.
Vives, Cauſe, &c. of, 26. To prevent, ib. More of, ib. And in the Chapter of Gripes.
Urine, ſee Incontinence of, and Bloody.

W.

Warts upon the Legs, 72.
Watery Sores on the Legs, 71.
Web in the Eye, 9.
Whitlow in the Eye, 11.
Windgalls, the three ſeveral Kinds of, 50. What Horſes are moſt ſubject to them, ib.
Wither-wrung, or Hurts on the Withers, 41. Impoſtumations of, 42.
Worm, Notion of one in the Vertigo fabulous, 29.
Worms in Horſes, 35*.
Wounds, all Sorts of, 39.

II. An Index of Remedies, Operations, Inſtruments, &c.

A.

ADders, Preparation of, for a Seyme, 62.
Æthiops Mineral, for the Worms, 35*.
Antimony, Liver of, how to make, 79.
Appetite, to provoke, 114.
Aqua infernalis, for corrupted Frogs, 64. How to make, ibid.

B.

Bacon, fat, for a broken Wind, 34. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33*. Rind of, for Splents, 49.
Bag of Sulphur, for the Mange, 21. Of hot Ingredients, for the Fever, 80.
Balls, for a Horſe to hold in his Mouth, 30. For the Farcy, 19. For a broken Wind, 34. To give a Horſe Appetite, 38. Pectoral, 116. Other Sorts, 119, 121.
Balm, green, Madam *Feuillet*'s, 84.
Barring a Vein, 78.
Bark, Jeſuits, for a Fever, 30, 31.
Bathing, for a founder'd Horſe, 23.
Billet a Horſe in gelding, how to, 40.
Bite, Receipt for, 116. Of a mad Dog, to cure, 121.
Black Soap, for the old Reds, 52.
Bladder of a Pig, or Ox, to uſe in Splents, 48.
Bleeding, when preſcribed, with various Methods of, in different Caſes, 18, 23, 26, 27, 34*, 45.
Bones of a Horſe, Anatomy of them, 90, &c.
Bots, or Worms, to cure, 122.
Broken Wind, Receipts for, 115.
Bull's Pizzle, it's Uſe in Farriery, 13, 29.
Burgundy Pitch, preſcribed in the Anticor, 33.

C.

Candle, how to make uſe of one for an Opening of the Shoulders, 45.

Cauſtic,

Cauſtic, to uſe in Splents, 49.
Charge, the Bliſtering, 117. Others, 120.
Cloth, Linen for the Pole-evil, 43.
Cold, Sir *John Lowther*'s Receipt for a, 113. A Drink for the ſame, ib. Various Receipts for, 115, 116.
Colt's Foot, an Inſtrument ſo called among Farriers, 7.
Commiſſioners to buy Horſes, Inſtructions for them, 88, 89.
Compoſition to hold in the Mouth, 39. For Wringing on the Withers, 41. For the Inſide of a Horſe's Foot, 66. To put round the Foot of a Horſe, ibid. For a falſe Step, 70.
Cordial, ſee Draught.
Cordial Powder, how to make, 80.
Coudrier, Mr. de la, his Receipt for a Farcy, 115.
Cow-dung, for a founder'd Horſe, 56.
Cream, to be uſed in Inflammations of the Yard, &c. 41.
Crocus Metallorum, Infuſion of, 31. For the Worms, 35.
Cutting a Vein, 78.

D.

Davenport, Capt. his Receipt for the Greaſe, 115.
Decoction, for a morfounder'd Horſe, 14. For the Mange, 21. For Piſſing of Blood, 32.
Defenſative for a Horſe whoſe Soles are drawn, 63.
Digeſtive Ointment, 57.
Draught, a cordial one, 12. Another, ib. In the Stranguillon, 13. For a ſick Horſe, 14. For a Running at the Noſe, ib. Another, 15. For the Farcy, 18, ib. Another, 15. For the Farcy, 18, 19. For melted Greaſe, 24. For the Stag-Evil, 25. For the Vives, 26. For the Gripes, 27, 28. For the Vertigo, &c. 30. For a Fever, ib. For the Faſhions, 31, 32. For a Horſe that piſſes Blood, 32. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36. For the Heaving of the Flanks, 33*. For the Worms, 35*. Againſt a Gangrene, 37. Againſt internal Poiſon, ib. To fortify a Horſe that is ready to caſt, 81. For the Farcy,
Drink for a Cold, 117, 120. For the Gripes, 118, 120. Other Sorts, 119, 121.

E.

Eggs, Yolks of, for a Halter-caſt, 59.
Elder, Conſerve of, for the Vives, 26.
Elder Shoots, for Cheſt-foundering, 34*.
Emetic, preſcribed, 27.
Emetic Wine, how made, 31.
Expreſſions, for the Eyes, 14, 15. Of Figs for a broken Wind, 92.
Eyes, various Forms of Remedies for, 10, &c. How to fill up the hollow Places in them, 82.
Eye-brows of an old Horſe, how to paint, 81.
Eye-water, for a Blow, 8. For a Web in the Eye, 9. Other Forms of, 9, 10.

F.

Farcy, various Remedies for, 42, 48, 114, 122.
Farrier, cannot have a light Hand, 77.
Fatten a Horſe, how to, 112, 113, 114.
Feet, how to pare, 82. And dreſs afterwards, 83.
Feuillet, Madam, her green Balm, 79. How to make, 84.
File, Steel, it's Uſe to Horſe's Teeth, 7.
Fire, to give a Horſe the Fire, Manner of that Operation for Windgalls, 51. Only a good Horſe worthy of it, 52. Manner of it for Maltlongs, 60. For the Capelet, 68. For the Bone-Spavin, 74. For Spavins in general, 75.
Fomentation, for ſwelled Teſticles, 36*. Againſt a Gangrene, 37.
Foubert, Mr. his Ointment, 113.
Foundering, various Remedies for, 56, 58, 115.
Fumigation, for a broken Wind, 35.

G.

Garlick, Infuſion of, for a foundered Horſe, 23. To uſe in Splents, 49.
Geld a Horſe, how to do it, 40.
Glands, how to take away, 15. Inefficacy of that Operation, ib.
Gliſters preſcribed, 22, 24, 25, 28, 30, 33, 34*. One for the Gripes, 27, 28. For the Faſhions, 32. For the Baſtard-ſtrangles, ibid. For a Looſeneſs, 80. For a Horſe that has taken a Purge, ib. A refreſhing one, ib. Others, 118.
Goat Horns, how uſed in Farriery, 8, 33.
Gore, Capt. his Receipt for a Farcy, 115.
Gravel in the Foot, to cure, 118.
Greaſy Heels, Receipts for, 114, 115, 116, 117.
Gunſhot Water, or a vulnerary Draught, 84.

H.

Hair of a Horſe, how to die, 81.
Hair fallen off, to make it come, 22, 81.
Hazleſtick,

Hazleſtick, to uſe in Splents, 48.
Hellebore-root, how uſed in the Vertigo, 29. In the Anticor, 34.
Holes, to be made in a Vertigo, 74.
Hoof, to make it grow, 116.
Honey preſcribed, for Cheſt-foundering, 102.
Horſes, Characters of thoſe of different Countries, 88, 89.

I.

Jeſuits Bark, in Fevers, 30. How ſupplied, if not to be got, ib.
Jews and Jockies, their Manner of marking Horſes, 6.
Inciſion of the Glands, 15. For the Vives, 26. For the Head-ach, 29. For the Anticor, 33.
Impoſtumation of the Withers, 42. For ſtiff Legs, 47.
Intuſions, for the Glanders, 16. For the Mange, 21. For melted Greaſe, 25. For the Vives, 26. For a Fever, 31. For Incontinence of Urine, 32.
Iron, Farrier's, to pierce a Swelling, 33. For a venomous Bite, 37. For an Inciſion in impoſtumated Withers, 42.

K.

Knives of Steel, to give the Fire with, 51.

L.

Lapis infernalis, it's Uſe, and how to make, 72.
Lapis Mirabilis, how uſed for the Eyes, 18. How to make, 85.
Lard, Boar's, for a broken Wind, 35. For Javarts, 58.
Lees of Wine, in what Caſe to uſe, 46.
Lily-roots, for a Javart, 57.
Lime-water, 120.
Liniment, for the Heaving of the Flank, 33*. Againſt a Gangrene, 37.
Liver of Antimony, for the Tetters, 53. How to make, 79.
Lowther, Sir John, his Medicines for a Cold, 113.
Lye, for a Farcy, 19.

M.

Malt, to make Extract of, 120.
Mares, how to chuſe, 87. Other Particulars concerning, ib. 88.
Maſs, to tie up in a Cloth, 14.
Mixture, for a Running of the Noſe, 16. For a Farcy, 18. Melted Greaſe, 25. For the Vives, 26. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36.
Moon-ey'd Horſe, how to cure, 8.
Mountfort, Mr. his Receipt for any Sore, 121.
Muſcles of a Horſe, Anatomy of them, 95.

N.

Navets, ſee Turnips.
Nerves of the fore Legs, how to cut the, 47.

O.

Oil of Turpentine and Brandy, for a foundered Horſe, 23. Mixture of, for the Stag-evil, 25. For the Gripes, 26. Of Bays, &c. for a broken Wind, 35. For Heaving of the Flank, 34*. Againſt a Gangrene, 35*. For a Shoulder-ſlip, 45. For the ſame, 114. Another, 117. Another, 119. For Strains, &c. 120.
Ointments, to ripen the Swelling in the Strangles, 12. Others for the Strangles, 14. For the Farcy, 18, 19. For the Mange, 20, 21. In the Head-ach, 29. For a venomous Bite, 38. Suppurative, 39, 40. For a Shoulder-ſlip, or Strain, 44. For the Sponge in Horſes, 46. For Splents, 48, 49. For Windgalls, 51. For Burns, 52. For the Mallenders, 53. For a Blow on the Nerve, 55. For ruin'd Nerves, ibid. 56. For relaxed Nerves, 56. For a Thorn in the Foot, ibid. For a Blow on the Fetlock, 57. For incaſtellated Heels, 65. For the Hoof, 66. To make the Horns good, ib. For a tender Sole, ib. For all Sorts of Feet, 67. For relaxed Nerves, 69. For Diſorders of the Haunches, ib. For the Crown-Scab, 71. For ſore Legs, ib. For a Spavin, 75. For watry Legs, 113. Foot Ointment, 114. For greaſy Heels, ib. For the Farcy, ib. For a Swelling, 116. The Bliſtering, 117. The Red, for greaſy Heels, 118. For the Heels, 119. The Green, for all Sores, ib. For a Strain, ib.

P.

Panada, for the Stag-Evil, 25. For the Fever, 31.
Paring the Feet, for Figs, 82.
Patience, the Herb ſo called, 42.
Perfume, for a glandery Horſe, 16.

Pills,

Pills, to purge the Brain of a Horſe that has ſore Eyes, 9. For a Running at the Noſe, 14. For a broken Wind, 36. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33*. For the Worms, 35*. For a Horſe in a languiſhing ſick Condition, 39. General purging ones, 79.
Plaiſter, for ſwelled Teſticles, 36*. For Javarts, 58. For a Seyme, 62.
Poultice, for ſwelled Teſticles, 35*, 36*. For a Bleyme, 62. For Sprains, 85. For ſwell'd Stones, ib. Other Sorts,
Powder, to diſſipate a Web, 10. For the Eyes, ib. For a broken Wind, 34, 35, 36. For the Heaving of the Flank, 33*. Cordial Powder, how to make, 80. A general one, ib.
Proud Fleſh, a Compoſition to eat off, 18.
Purge, for the Farcy, 8. For the Mange, 21. A gentle one, that fattens a Horſe, 38. Another Sort of, 39. A general one, 78. Another, 79. Another, ibid. Another, 115 Another, 121.

Q.

Quills, Gooſe, their Uſe in the Head-Evil, 13.

R.

Raponti, or Monk's Rhubarb, 23.
Reſtringents, for the ſore Feet of a foundered Horſe, 24.
Rowell, for the Vertigo, 28. For an Impoſtumation on the Withers, 42.
Ruſhes, Juice of, for melted Greaſe, 24.

S.

Scarification of the Lips, 7.
Sealing Wax, to uſe in a Bleyme, 63.
Shoe, a peculiar Sort for incaſtellated Heels, 65.
Shoes, in what Caſe to be taken off, 23.
Sope, black, of uſe in the Glanders, 15. In the Old Reds, 21. In the Tetters, 22. In the Wringing of the Withers, 41. In a lame Shoulder, 44. In the Crown Scab, 70.
Stable, how to preſerve, or reſtore an infected one, 89.
Stale, to make a Horſe, 18.
Stallions, how to chuſe, 87.
Star in the Head, how to make one come, 82.
Starlings, a Medicine made of them, 38.
Stone, to uſe in Farcies, 5. Againſt a Gangrene, 36*. To eat off Warts, 72.
Strangles, various Remedies for, 23, &c.
Stranguillion, to cure, 120.
Stud, a Treatiſe of the, 86. Rules to be obſerved in, ib.
Suppurative, for Kernels on a Horſe's Back, 39, 40.
Swelling, Receipts for,
Swim on dry Ground, how to make a Horſe, 45.

T.

Tail, the beſt Way of cutting it off, 40.
Teazles, for a broken Wind, 35.
Temporal Artery, how to cut, 13.
Tendon of the Leg, how to cut, 47.
Tile, Pieces of, to uſe in Splents, 49. In Spavins, 75.
Tincture, for Javarts, 58. For a Prick in the Foot, 59.
Turnips, wild, to uſe in Splents, 49. In the Mallenders, 53.
Turpentine, Spirits of, 44, 55. Eſſence of, for Splents, 48. For Javarts, 58. For incaſtellated Feet, 65. For the Capelet, 68. For relaxed Nerves, 69. For a falſe Step, 70. For watery Sores on the Legs, 71.

U.

Vein, how to cut, for the Varices, 76. How to bar, for the Curb, 78.
Vine Aſhes, preſcribed for Cheſt-foundring, 34*.
Vine-Tops, wild, for a founder'd Horſe, 24.
Vinegar, and Honey, their Uſe, 29. Vinegar is in many Compoſitions with Spirits of Turpentine, and with Urine for a Veſſigon. See thoſe Words.
Unnerve a Horſe, how to, 9.
Unſole a Horſe, how to, 63.
Urine, to provoke, 27.
Urine, for a Fomentation, 71. For a Veſſigon, 76.
Vulnerary Draught, or Gunſhot Water, 84.

W.

Waſh, for a Cancer in the Mouth, 38. For a Tongue that is cut, 39. For a Blow on the Nerve, 55. For corrupted Frogs, 63. For ſore Legs, 71.
Water, ſee Eye-Water. For all Sorts of Wounds, 39. Sharp Water, 121. Other Sorts, 119, 120.
Wedge of Wood, for a Horſe's Mouth, 25.
Whale-bone, uſe of in the Gripes, 68.
Whip a Horſe in gelding, how to, 40.
Windgalls, to make them diſappear, 51.
Worm, the *Italians* pretended Manner of taking it, 29.

An INDEX of Remedies in the Supplement, with the Prices of the principal affixed to them.

	s.	d.
Page 113. A Receipt for a Cold by Sir *John Lowther*		
A Drink for a Cold, by the ſame	1	8
An Ointment for watery Legs, by Monſieur *Foubert*		
Another		
Page 114. Foot-Ointment		
A Salve for Horſes Hoofs from *Petworth*		
For the Greaſe in the Heels		
Another		
For the Farcy, from *Stockpool*	1	6
Another for the Sores		
To manage a Horſe with the Farcy		
Another Receipt for the Farcy from the Farrier at *Bucks*	2	
For a Shoulder Slipt or Stiff		
For the Farcy ——	2	
Page 115. Another from Monſieur *De la Coudrier*		
For the Greaſe in Ireland		
For the Farcy from Capt. *Gore*		
For the Farcy		
For the heat of the Feet or foundering		
For the Greaſe, from Capt. *Davenport*		
A Purge for a Cold ——	1	2
For a Cold		
For the Breaking a Cold		
Another Purge not ſo ſtrong as the other —— ——	1	
A Receipt for a Cold		
For a broken or ſhort winded Horſe		
Page 116. To make a Horſe's Hoof grow		
For a Bite		
For a Crack or Prick in the Hoof		
For a Gall'd-Heel		
To refreſh a Horſe after a Cold		
For a Swelling		
A Pectoral Ball for a Cough	1	10
For the Greaſe in Horſes Legs		
Page 117. Another		
A Drink for a Cold		
To take off a Splint		
For a Cold —— ——	2	
For a Shoulder ſlip or ſtiff Shoulder		
Sharp Water		
The Bliſtering Charge	2	6
A Bliſtering Ointment	4	0
To make a Horſe Stale		
Page 118. For the Gripes		
A Purge to be worked with warm Water —— ——	1	8
To eaſe a Splint or Spavin	1	0
The red Ointment for Greaſe or Cracks —— —	3	
A Purge	1	8
For a Canker in the Noſe of a Horſe	1	
For a Swelling	2	4
A Cure for the Gravel in a Horſe's Foot		
A Glyſter for a Horſe		
A Purge for a Horſe	1	8
Page 119. A ſharp Water		
A Drink		
For a Strained Shoulder	1	8
Ointment for Horſes Heels	4	8
Green Oinment for Wounds and Sores —— ——	1	3
For a Horſe's Foot when the Sole is taken out		
Horſe Balls at 2 *s.* 6 *d. per lb.*		
A Drink ——	1	
A Sharp Water for a Fiſtula or Cancer, or to waſh and cure any Sore ——	2	
Page 120. For the Gripes	1	6
A Hoof Salve		
Lime-Water for the Mange		
Ointment for Horſes Heels	1	4
A Charge		
For the Stranguillion		
Oils good for Strains, Knocks or Swellings ——	1	8
A Drink for a Cold		
For a Cold		8
To make Extract of Malt		
Page 121. For a Cold		
For a Strain in the Back Sinew		
Balls		
For a Cold	1	4
A Purge ——		9
A Drink	1	10
For the Canker ——		
Sharp Water		
A Poultice		
For the Bite of a Mad-dog		
A Receipt for any Sore by Mr. *Mounford*		
For a Splint, Spavin, or Ringbone		
Page 122. For Worms and Bots		
For a Swelling		
For any Swelling or Strain		
For a Splint, Spavin, or Curb		
To cure the Bots, or Worms	1	0
For a Sinew Strain		
A Gripe Drink		
For the Gripes ——	1	6
A Receipt for the Farcy	2	3

FINIS.

A

DICTIONARY

EXPLAINING THE

TECHNICAL TERMS

THAT BELONG TO THE

STUD, STABLE, MANAGE, AND FARRIERY;

Or Whatever elſe relates to HORSES.

A.

ABATE; a horſe is ſaid to abate, or take down, his curvets, when working upon curvets, he puts his two hind legs to the ground both at once, and obſerves the ſame exactneſs in all the times.

ABSCESS, proceeds from a blow, hurt, or ſome violence.

ACHE, a pain in any part of the Body; a diſeaſe that cauſes numbneſs in the joints, and proceeds from cold, taken upon hard and violent exerciſe or labour.

ACOPUM, a fomentation to allay the ſenſe of wearineſs; alſo a medicine for horſes, uſed for the ſame purpoſe.

ACTION of the mouth, is the agitation of the tongue, and the mandible of a horſe, that by champing upon the bridle, keep his mouth freſh. You may ſee by the white ropy foam, that a horſe has the action of the mouth, which is a ſign of vigour, mettle, and health.

ACULER, a French word, uſed in the academies, importing that a horſe working upon volts in the Manage, does not go far enough forwards at every time or motion, ſo that his ſhoulders embrace, or take in, too little ground, and his croupe comes too near the center of the volt.

AID; to aid, aſſiſt, or ſuccour, a horſe, is to ſuſtain and help him to work true, and mark his times or motions with a juſt exactneſs.

AIR is a cadence and liberty of motion, accommodated to the natural diſpoſition of the horſe, which makes him work in the manage, and riſe with obedience, meaſure, and juſtneſs of time. Some riding-maſters take the word Air in a ſtrict ſenſe, as ſignifying the manage that is higher, ſlower, and more artful or deſigned than the *terra a terra*; but others gives it a larger ſignification, including under that ſenſe *terra a terra*.

AMBLING; a motion in a horſe that is much deſired, very uſeful, but not eaſily to be obtained the right way, notwithſtanding the vain confidence of the various profeſſors of it, who, tho' they ſo confidently aſſert the ſucceſs, yet differ in their methods to affect it.

ANBURY, a kind of wen, or ſpungy wart, growing upon any part of a horſe's body, full of blood.

APPUI, or *ſtay upon the hand*, is the reciprocal ſenſe between the horſe's mouth and the bridle-hand, or the ſenſe of the action of the bridle in the horſeman's hand.

ARCHED; a horſe is ſaid to have arched-legs when his knees are bended arch-wiſe.

To ARM; a horſe is ſaid to arm himſelf when he preſſes down his head, as if he would check, and bends his neck ſo as to reſt the branches of his bridle upon his counter, in order to diſobey the bit mouth, and guard his bars and his mouth, which are relieved by over-bending his neck.

ARMAN, a confection of wonderful efficacy to prevent a total loſs of appetite in horſes.

ARRESTS, are mangy humours upon the ſinews of the hinder legs of a horſe, between the ham and the paſtern. They ſeldom appear upon the ſhank ſinew.

ARZEL, a horſe is ſaid to be arzel, that has a white mark upon his far foot behind.

ATTAINT, is a blow, or wound, received by a horſe in his inner feet.

AUBIN is a broken going, or pace, of a horſe between an amble and a gallop.

AVERTI, a French word uſed in the manage, as applied to the pace or motion of a horſe; ſignifying a motion that is injoined, regulated, and required in the leſſons.

Pas ecoute, and Pas d'ecole, (*i. e.* liſtening paces, or ſchool paces) ſignify the ſame thing.

B.

BALOTADES are the leaps of a horſe between two pillars, or upon a ſtraight line, made with juſtneſs of time, with the aids of the hands, and the calves of the legs; and that in ſuch manner, that when his fore-feet are in the air, he ſhews nothing but the ſhoes of his hinder feet without yerking out.

BANQUET, is that ſmall part of the branch of the bridle that is under the eye, which being rounded like a ſmall rod, gathers and joins the extremities of the bitt to the branch, and that in ſuch a manner that the banquet is not ſeen, but covered by the cap, or that part of the bit that is next the branch.

BANDS of a ſaddle are two pieces of iron flat, and three fingers broad, nailed upon the bows of the ſaddle, one on each ſide, contrived to hold the bows in the ſituation that maketh the form of the ſaddle.

BARBLES are knots of ſuperfluous fleſh, that grow up the channels of a horſe's mouth; that is the interval that ſeparates the bars, and lies under the tongue.

BARDELLE, is a ſaddle made in the form of a great ſaddle, but only of cloth ſtuffed with ſtraw, and tied tight down with packthread, without either leather, wood or iron.

BARNACLES, horſe twitchers, or brakes; theſe are things which Farriers uſe to put upon horſes noſes, when they will not ſtand quietly to be ſhod, blooded, or dreſſed of any ſore.

BARS of a horſe's mouth, are the ridge, or higheſt parts of that place of the gum that never bears any teeth, and is ſituated between the grinders, and the tuſhes, on each ſide of the mouth: ſo that the part of the gum which lies under, and at the ſide of the bars, retains the name of gum.

BAY colour. A bay horſe is what we commonly call red inclining to cheſnut.

This colour varies ſeveral ways; it is a dark bay, or a light bay, according as it is more or leſs deep: and we hawe likewiſe dapple bays. See MIROUETTE.

BAYARD, a bay horſe.

BEAT. To beat the duſt or powder, is ſaid of a horſe that at each time, or motion, does not take in ground or way enough with his fore-legs.

BELLY; a thick-bellied, a well-bodied, a well thick-flanked horſe; that is, a horſe that has large, long, and well made ribs; or ſuch as are neither too narrow nor too flat.

BELLY-FRETTING, is a grievous pain in the belly of a horſe, beſides the cholic.

BISHOPING, a term amongſt horſe-courſers, which they uſe for thoſe ſophiſtications they uſe to make an old horſe appear young, and a bad one good, &c.

BITT, or horſe-bitt, in general, ſignifies the whole machine of all the iron appurtenances of a bridle; as the bitt-mouth, the branches, the curb, the ſevil-holes, the tranchefil, and croſs chains; but oftentimes it ſignifies only the bitt-mouth in particular.

BITT-MOUTH, is a piece of iron forged ſeveral ways, in order to be put into a horſe's mouth, and to keep it in ſubjection.

BLAZE. See STAR and WHITE-FACE.

BLEYNE, or Bleyme, [*in Horſes*] an inflammation occaſioned by the blood's putrifying in the inner part of the coffin, towards the heel, between the ſole and the coffin-bone. See HOOF-CAST.

BLINDNESS [*in Horſes*] may be thus diſcerned: The walk, or ſtep of a blind horſe, is always uncertain and unequal.

BLOOD-LETTING; the ſigns or indications of blood-letting in a horſe are theſe; his eyes will look red, and his veins ſwell more than ordinary; he will alſo have an itching about his mane

mane and tail; and be continually rubbing them, and ſome times will ſhed ſome of his hair; otherwiſe he will peel about the roots of his ears, in the places where the head-ſtall of the bridle lies; his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung black and hard; likewiſe if he has red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or does not digeſt his meat well; or if the white of his eyes be yellow, or the inſide of his upper or nether lip be ſo, theſe are ſigns he ſtands in need of bleeding.

BLOOD RUNNING ITCH, happens to an horſe by an inflammation of the blood, being overheated by hard riding.

BOAR; A horſe is ſaid to boar when he ſhoots out his noſe as high as his ears, and toſſes his noſe in the wind.

BOLSTERS of a ſaddle, are thoſe parts of a great ſaddle which are raiſed upon the bows, both before and behind, to hold the rider's thigh, and keep him in a right poſture, notwithſtanding the diſorders the horſe may occaſion.

BOUILLON is a lump or excreſcency of fleſh that grows either upon or juſt by the fruſh, inſomuch that the fruſh ſhoots out like a lump of fleſh, and makes the horſe halt; and this we call the fleſh blowing upon the fruſh.

BOULETTE; a horſe is called boulette, when the fetlock, or paſtern joint, bends forward and out of its natural ſituation; whether through violent riding, or by reaſon of being too ſhort jointed, in which caſe the leaſt fatigue will bring it.

BOUTE; a horſe is called boute, when his legs are in a ſtraight line from the knee to the coronet.

BOWS of a ſaddle, are two pieces of wood laid arch-wiſe, to receive the upper part of a horſe's back, to give the ſaddle it's due form, and keep it tight.

BRANCHES of a bridle, are two pieces of iron bended, which, in the interval between one and the other, bear the bitt-mouth, the croſs-chains, and the grub; ſo that on one end they anſwer to the head-ſtall, and on the other to the reins, in order to keep the horſe's head in ſubjection.

BRASSICOURT, or brachicourt; is a horſe whoſe forelegs are naturally bended arch-wiſe; being ſo called by way of diſtinction from an arched horſe, whoſe legs are bowed by hard labour.

BRAYE, an obſolete French word, made uſe of by ſome to ſignify the entry of the horſe's throat, or the extremity of the channel towards the maxillary bones.

BREAK; to break a horſe in trotting, is to make him light upon the hand by trotting, in order to make him fit for a gallop. To break a horſe for hunting, is to ſupple him, to make him take the habit of running.

BREATH, or wind. This word ſignifies ſometimes the eaſy reſpiration of a horſe, and ſometimes it implies the eaſe and reſt, or repoſe of a horſe.

BREED is a place where mares for breed, and ſtallions are kept in order to raiſe a ſtud.

BREEDING *of horſes*. See *Stud* in the *Index*.

BRIDLE is ſo termed when all it's appurtenances are fixed together in the ſeveral parts of it for the government of a horſe.

BRILLIANT; a brisk, high-mettled, ſtately horſe is ſo called, as having a raiſed neck, a fine motion, excellent haunches, upon which he riſes, tho' never ſo little put on.

BRING in a horſe, is to keep down the noſe of a horſe that bores and toſſes his noſe to the wind.

BROUILLER, is when a horſe, put to any manage, plunges, traverſes, and appears in diſorder.

BUTTERESS is an inſtrument of ſteel fitted to a wooden handle, with which they pare the foot, or cut the hoof of a horſe.

C.

CADENCE, is an eqal meaſure or proportion, obſerved by a horſe in all his motions.

CALADE, or Baſſe, is the deſcent, or ſloping declivity, of a riſing manage ground; being a ſmall eminence, upon which we ride down a horſe ſeveral times, putting him to a ſhort gallop, with his fore-hams in the air, to make him learn to ply and bend his haunches, and form his ſtop upon the aids of the calves of the legs, the ſtay of the bridle, and the caveſſon, ſeaſonably given: for without theſe aids he would throw himſelf too much upon his ſhoulders, and not bend his haunches.

CALKINS, a ſort of horſe-ſhoes for froſty weather.

CANNON-MOUTH of a bit, is a round but long piece of iron, conſiſting ſometimes of two pieces that couple and bend in the middle, and ſometimes only of one piece that does not bend, as in the cannon mouth a *trompe*.

CAPARASSON, or horſe-cloth, is a ſort of cover for a horſe.

CAPRIOLES differ from croupades in this, that in a croupade the horſe does not ſhow his

his ſhoes; and from a balotade in this, that in a balotade he does not yerk out.

CARACOL, is an oblique piſte or tread traced out in a ſemi-round, changing from one hand to another, without obſerving a regular ground.

CAREER; this word ſignifies both the ground that is proper for the manage and courſe, and race of a horſe that does not go beyond two hundred paces.

CAVALCADOUR, is a word uſed at the court of *France*, and among the families of the blood, ſignifying the querry; that is, maſter of the horſe.

CAUTING-IRON, an iron with which farriers ſear thoſe parts of a horſe that require burning.

CHANFRIN, is the fore-part of a horſe's head, extending from under the ears, along the interval, between the eye-brows, down to the noſe.

CHANGE a horſe, or change hand, is to turn, or bear the horſe's head from one hand to another, from the right to the left, and from the left to the right.

CHANNEL of a horſe, is the hollow between the two bars, or the nether jaw-bones, in which the tongue is lodged.

CHAPELET, is a couple of ſtirrup-leathers, mounted each of them with a ſtirrup, and joined at top in a ſort of leather buckle, called the head of the chapelet, by which they are made faſt to the pommel of the ſaddle.

CHAPERON of a bit-mouth, is a word only uſed for ſcatch-mouths, and all others that are not cannon-mouths.

CHARBON, an obſolete French word, ſignifying that little black ſpot or mark, that remains after a large ſpot, in the cavity of the corner teeth of a horſe, about the ſeventh or eighth year.

CHASTISEMENTS, or corrections, are the ſevere and rigorous effects of the aids; for when the aids are given with ſeverity they become puniſhments.

CHAUSSE trop-haut; a white-footed horſe is ſaid to be ſuch, when the white marks run too high upon the legs.

CHEVALER (a French word): a horſe is ſaid to be chevaler, when in paſſaging upon a walk or a trot his far fore leg croſſes or overlaps the other fore leg every ſecond motion. See to PASSAGE.

CHOPS, CLEFTS, RIFTS, are maladies in the palate of an horſe's mouth, cauſed either by eating coarſe or rough hay full of thiſtles and other prickly ſtuff; or by foul provender full of ſharp ſeeds, which by frequent pricking of the bars of his mouth cauſes them to wrankle and breed corrupt blood.

CLAMPONNIER, or Claponnier; an obſolete word ſignifying a long jointed horſe.

To CLOSE *a paſſade juſtly*, is when the horſe ends the paſſade with a demivolt, in good order, well narrowed and bounded, and terminates upon the ſame line upon which he parted, ſo that he is ſtill in a condition to part from the hand handſomely at every laſt time or motion of his demivolt.

CLOYED, ACCLOYED, a term uſed by Farriers of a horſe, when he has been pricked by a nail in ſhoeing.

COFFIN, or hoof of a horſe.

COILING *of the Stud*, is the firſt making choice of a colt, or young horſe, for any ſervice.

COLT, a word in general, ſignifying the male and female of the horſe kind.

COLT-EVIL, a diſeaſe to which both ſtone-horſe and gelding are ſubject.

To COMMENCE, or *initiate*, *a horſe*, is to put him to the firſt leſſons, in order to break him.

CORNERS, or angles of the volt, are the extremities of the four lines of the volt when you work in ſquare.

CORONET, or cronet of a horſe, is the loweſt part of the paſtern which runs round the coffin, and is diſtinguiſhed by the hair which joins and covers the upper part of the hoof.

CURVET, (*in the Manage*) an air, when the horſe's legs are more raiſed than in the *demivolts*, being a kind of leap up, and a little forward, wherein the horſe raiſes both his fore-feet at once, equally advanced, (when he is going ſtrait forward, and not in a circle) and as his fore-legs are falling, he immediately raiſes his hind-legs, as he did his fore; that is, equally advanced, and not one before the other: ſo that all his four legs are in the air at once.

CRAPAUDINE, or *tread upon the coronet*, is an imperfection in a horſe's foot.

CREPANCE, is a ſcratch or chap in a horſe's legs, given by the ſpunges of the hinder feet croſſing and ſtriking againſt the other hinder foot.

CRESCENT (among *Farriers*): a horſe is ſaid to have *creſcents*, when the point, or that part of the coffin bone, or little foot, which is moſt advanced, falls down, and preſſes the ſole outwards; and the middle of the hoof above the toe ſhrinks and becomes flat by reaſon of the hollowneſs beneath it.

CREST FALLEN is an imperfection or infirmity in a horſe, when the upper part of his neck, on which his mane grows, called the creſt,

creſt, hangs either on the one ſide or the other, not ſtanding upright as it ought to do.

CROUP *of a horſe* ought to be large and round, ſo that the tops of the two haunch bones be not within view of each other; the greater diſtance between theſe two bones the better.

A racking CROUP, is when a horſe's fore quarters go right, but his croup in walking ſwings from ſide to ſide.

CROWNED; a horſe is ſaid to be crowned, when, by a fall or other accident, he is ſo hurt or wounded in the knee, that the hair ſheds and falls off without growing again.

CRUPPER, the buttocks of a horſe; the rump: alſo a roll of leather put under a horſe's tail.

CURB is a chain of iron made faſt to the upper part of the branches of the bridle.

To CURTAIL *a horſe*, *i. e.* to dock him, or cut off his tail.

To CUT *the round*, or CUT *the volt*, is to change the hand when a horſe works upon volts of one tread; ſo that dividing the volt in two, he turns and parts upon a right line to recommence another volt.

D.

DEVUIDER, a term, in the academies, applied to a horſe, that in working upon the volts, makes his ſhoulders go too faſt for the croupe to follow; ſo that inſtead of going upon two treads, as he ought, he endeavours only to go upon one: which comes from the reſiſtance he makes in defending againſt the heels, or from the fault of the horſeman, that is too haſty with his hand. See HASTEN.

DISARM; to diſarm the lips of a horſe, is to keep them ſubject, and out from above the bars, when they are ſo large as to cover the bars, or prevent the true preſſure, or *appui* of the mouth, by bearing up the bitt, and ſo hindring the horſe from feeling the effects of it upon the bars.

To DISGORGE, is to diſcuſs, or diſperſe an inflammation or ſwelling.

DISUNITE; a horſe is ſaid to diſunite that drags his haunches; that gallops falſe, or upon an ill foot.

DOCK (or *Trouſſequeue*) is a large caſe of leather, as long as the dock of a horſe's tail, which ſerves as a cover to the tails of leaping horſes.

DOCK-PIECE *of a horſe*, ſhould be large and full, rather than too ſmall: if a horſe gall beneath the dock, greaſe the part every day, and waſh it with ſalt and water, or good brandy: the latter is the moſt effectual remedy.

DRAUGHT *horſe*, a horſe deſtined for the cart, plough, &c.

DRENCH, is a ſort of decoction prepared for a ſick horſe.

DRINKING *of horſes* immediately after hard riding, is very dangerous.

DRY, to put a horſe to dry meat is to feed him with corn and hay after taking him from graſs, or houſing him.

DUST *and* SAND will ſo dry the tongues and mouths of horſes, that they loſe their appetite.

E.

EBRIDLADE, is a check of the bridle which the horſeman gives to the horſe, by a jerk of one rein, when he refuſes to turn.

ECAVESSADE, is a jerk of the caveſſon.

ECHAPE; an echape is a horſe got between a ſtallion and a mare of a different breed, and different countries.

ECHAPER, to ſuffer a horſe to eſcape or ſlip from the hand.

ECOUTE; a pace or motion of a horſe.

ECURIE, is a covert-place for the lodging and houſing of horſes.

ECUYER, a *French* word, (in *Engliſh* querry) has different ſignifications in *France*.

EEL-BACK'D *horſes*, are ſuch as have black liſts along their backs.

ENLARGE a horſe, or make him go large, is to make him embrace more ground than he covered.

ENTABLER; a word uſed in the academies, as applied to a horſe whoſe croupe goes before his ſhoulders in working upon volts.

ENTERFERING; a diſeaſe incident to horſes.

ENTREPAS is a broken pace or going, and indeed properly a broken amble.

EPARER; a word uſed in the manage, to ſignify the ſlinging of a horſe; or his yerking or ſtriking out with his hind legs.

ERGOT, is a ſtub like a piece of ſoft horn about the bigneſs of a cheſnut, placed behind and below the paſtern joint, and commonly hid under the tuft of the fetlock.

ESQUIAVINE an old *French* word ſignifying a long and ſevere chaſtiſement of a horſe in the manage.

ESTRAPADE is the defence of a horſe that will not obey; who to get rid of his rider, riſes

rises mightily before; and while his fore-hand is yet in the air, yerks out furiously with his hind legs, striking higher than his head was before, and during his counter time goes back rather than advances.

To EXTEND *a horse*, some make use of this expression, importing to make a horse grow large.

F.

FALCADE; a horse makes falcades when he throws himself upon his haunches two or three times, as in very quick curvets; which is done in forming a stop, and half-stop.

FALLING-EVIL a disease proceeding from ill blood.

FALSE QUARTER is a cleft, crack, or chink, sometimes on the outside, but for the most part on the inside of his hoof.

FARCIN, FARCY, FASHIONS, a creeping ulcer.

FEATHER *in a Horse's forehead*, &c. is nothing else but the turning of the hair.

FEATHER also upon a horse, is a sort of natural frizzling of the hair, which in some places rises above the lying hair, and there casts a figure resembling the top of an ear of corn.

FEEL; to feel a horse in the hand, is to observe that the will of a horse is in the hand, that he tastes the bridle, and has a good *appui* in obeying the bitt.

FERME *a ferme*; a word peculiar to the manage schools, signifying in the same place, without stirring or parting.

FETLOCK is a tuft of hair as big as the hair of the mane, that grows behind the pastern joint of many horses.

FIG [*in Horses*] a disease that takes its name from a wart or broad piece of flesh growing upon the frush towards the heel, resembling a fig in shape.

FILLETS, the loins of a horse.

FIRE, to give the fire to a horse, is to apply the firing iron red hot to some preternatural swelling in order to discuss it.

FIRING IRON is a piece of copper or iron about a foot long, one end of which is made flat, and forged like a knife, the back of it being half an inch thick, and the fore edge about five or six times thinner.

FLEAM, is a small instrument of fine steel, composed of two or three moveable lancets for blooding a horse.

To FLING, is the fiery and obstinate action of an unruly horse.

To FLY *the heels*: a horse is said to fly the heels when he obeys the spur.

FONCEAU, is the bottom, or end, of a cannon-bitt-mouth; that is, the part of the bitt that joins it to the banquet.

FOOT of a horse, consists of the hoof or coffin; which is all the horn that appears when the horse's foot is set on the ground.

FORE-LEGS of a horse, consist of an arm, a fore-thigh and the shank.

To FOUNDER a horse, is to over-ride him, or to spoil him with hard working.

Chest FOUNDERING, a distemper proceeding from crudities in the stomach, or other weaknesses obstructing the passage of the lungs.

G.

GALLOP, is a motion of a horse that runs at full speed.

GALLOP, or *Canterbury-rate*, is a pace between a full speed and a swift running.

GALLOPADE; the fine gallopade, the short gallop, the listening gallop, the gallop of the school: 'Tis a hand gallop, or gallop upon the hand, in which a horse galloping upon one or two treads, is well united, well *raccourci*, knit together, well coupled, and well set under him.

GASCOIN, the hinder thigh of an horse, which begins at the *stifle*, and reaches to the *ply*, or bending of the ham.

GATE, is the going, or pace of a horse.

GAUNT BELLY'D, or *light belly'd horse*, is one whose belly shrinks up towards his flanks.

GENET, a kind of *Spanish* horse.

GIGS, otherwise called bladders, or flaps, are a disease in the mouth of a horse.

GIRTH, a kind of saddle buckled upon a horse's belly; also a saddle that is buckled and compleat for use.

GLANDERS, a distemper in horses, proceeding, according to the *French* accounts, from corrupt humours about the lungs and heart, arising neither from the blood nor phlegm, but from the one and the other *bile*, and therefore it is called dry.

GOING, is the pace or gate of a horse.

GORGED, *i. e.* swelled.

GOURDY LEGS, a distemper in horses, caused by pains and other fleshy sores.

To GRAPPLE; a horse is said to grapple, either in one or both legs; the expression being peculiar to the hinder legs.

GRAVELLING, a misfortune that happens to a horse by travelling, by little gravel-stones getting

getting between the hoof and the ſhoe, which ſettle at the quick, and there feſter and fret.

GREASE MOLTEN, a diſtemper in a a horſe, when his fat is ſaid to be melted by over hard riding or labour. See the *Index*.

GROOM, a man who looks after horſes.

GROUPADE a lofty kind of manage, and higher than the ordinary curvets.

H.

HALBERT is a ſmall piece of iron one inch broad, and three or four inches long, ſoldered to the toe of a horſe's ſhoe, which jets out before, to hinder a lame horſe from reſting or treading upon his toe.

HALTER CAST is an excoriation of the paſtern, occaſioned by the halter being entangled about the foot; upon the horſe's endeavouring to rub his neck with his hinder feet.

HALTING happens ſometimes before, and ſometimes behind; if it be before, the ailment muſt of neceſſity be in the *ſhoulder*, *knee*, *flank*, *paſtern*, or *foot*.

HAM, HOUGH of a horſe is the ply or bending of the hind legs, and likewiſe comprehends the point behind, and oppoſite to the ply, called the hock.

HAND is a meaſure of a fiſt clinched, by which we compute the height of a horſe.

HAND-HIGH is a term uſed in horſemanſhip, and peculiar to the *Engliſh* nation.

HARD *Horſe*, is one that is inſenſible of whip or ſpur.

HARNESS GALLS; ſometimes the breaſts of coach-horſes are galled by the harneſs.

HAUNCH, or hip of a horſe.

HEARTS; a horſe of two hearts, *i. e.* a horſe that works in the manage with conſtraint and irreſolution, and cannot be brought to conſent to it.

HEAVY; to reſt heavy upon the hand, is ſaid of a horſe, who, thro' the ſoftneſs of his back, and weight of his fore-quarters, or thro' wearineſs, throws himſelf upon the bridle, but withal, without making any reſiſtance, or any effort to force the horſeman's hand.

HEEL *of a horſe*, is the lower hinder part of the foot.

HIDE-BOUND, a diſtemper in horſes when the skin ſticks ſo faſt to the back and ribs, that you cannot pull it from the fleſh with your hand.

HIP-SHOT; a horſe is ſaid to be ſuch, when he is wrung, or has ſprained his haunches or hips, ſo as to relaxate the ligaments that keep the bone in its due place.

HOOF of a horſe, is all the horn that appears when his foot is ſet to the ground.

HOOF-BOUND, is a ſhrinking of of the *hoof* at the top, and at the heel, which makes the skin ſtare above the *hoof*, and ſo grow over it.

HOOF-BRITTLE, an infirmity in horſes, proceeding either naturally or accidentally; naturally from the ſire or dam; accidentally from a ſurfeit, that falls down from the feet; or elſe from the horſe's having been formerly foundered.

HOOF-CAST, or, *caſting of the hoof*, is, when the coffin falls clean away from a horſe's foot.

HOOF-SWELLED; an infirmity that ſometimes happens to young horſes by being overridden, or too hard wrought, which cauſes them to ſwell in that part, by reaſon of the blood falling down and ſettling there, which, if not ſpeedily removed, will beget a wet ſpavin.

HOOF-LOOSENED, is an infirmity in a horſe, it is a diſſolution or dividing of the horn or coffin of his hoof from his fleſh, at the ſetting of the coronet. See more upon the *Articles of Diſeaſes*, &c. in the *Index of Diſeaſes*.

HORSE-MEASURE, a rod of box to ſlide out of a cane, with a ſquare at the end, being divided into hands and inches, to meaſure the height of horſes.

HORSE-SHOE; of theſe there are ſeveral ſorts. See the *Supplement*.

HORSE-RACING; a diverſion more uſed in *England* than in all the world beſide, and for which the *Engliſh* horſes are better than any other.

HOUGH, or *ham of a horſe*, is the joint of the hinder quarter, which joins the thigh to the leg.

HUNGRY EVIL, is an inordinate deſire, in horſes, to eat.

I.

JARDES, JARDONS, are callous and hard ſwellings in the hinder legs of a horſe, ſeated on the outſide of the hough, as the ſpavin is on the inſide.

IMPOSTHUME in horſes, is an unnatural ſwelling of humours or corrupt matter in any part of the body.

INSTEP, is that part of the hinder leg of a horſe that correſponds to the ſhank in the fore-leg, extended from the ham to the paſtern-joint.

INTERFERE, or *Cut*; to knock or rub one heel againſt another in going.

JOCKEY,

JOCKEY, one that trims up horſes, and rides about with horſes for ſale.

ITCH [*in Horſes*], a diſtemper which may be perceived by their rubbing their legs till the hair comes off.

K.

KNEE of a horſe, is the joint of the fore-quarters, that joins to the fore-thigh in the ſhank.

L.

LAMPAS, LAMPERS, LAMPRASS, is a ſort of ſwelling in the palate of a horſe's mouth, *i. e.* an inflammation in the roof of his mouth behind the nippers of his upper jaw; ſo called, becauſe it is cured with a lamp or hot iron.

LARGE; a horſe is ſaid to go large and wide when he gains or takes in more ground in going wider off the center of the volt, and deſcribing a greater circumference.

LASSITUDE, or *Wearineſs* in a horſe.

LEAD; a horſe going in a ſtrait line, always leads and cuts the way with his right foot.

LEAPING-HORSE, one that works in the high manage, a horſe that makes his leaps in order, with obedience, between two pillars, upon a ſtrait line, in volts, caprioles, balotades, or croupades.

LEGS *of the Horſeman*, the action of the horſeman's legs given ſeaſonably, and with judgment, is an aid that conſiſts more or leſs with the calf of the leg to the flank of the horſe, and in bearing it more or leſs off, as there is occaſion.

LENGTH; to paſſage a horſe upon his own length, *&c.*

LESSONS *for a Horſe*; when your horſe will receive you to and from his back gently, trot forward willingly, and ſtand ſtill obediently, then he is ſaid to have learnt his leſſons for what purpoſe ſoever he is intended.

LIGHTEN; *to lighten a horſe, to make a horſe lighter in the fore-hand*, is to make him free and lighter in the fore-hand than behind.

LIGS *in a Horſe*, are little puſhes, wheals, or bladders, within the lips of a horſe.

LISTENING; a horſe is ſaid to go a liſtening pace.

LOCKS, are pieces of leather two fingers broad, turned round, and ſtuffed on the inſide, to prevent their hurting the paſtern of a horſe.

LONG-JOINTED *Horſe*, is one whoſe paſtern is ſlender and pliant.

M.

MALANDERS, MALENDERS, a diſeaſe in horſes.

MALT-LONG, MALT-WORM, is a cankerous ſorrance about the hoof of an horſe, juſt upon the cronet, which breaks out into knobs and bunches that run with a waterilh, ſharp lee, and humour, which will, if let alone, envenom the whole foot.

MANAGE, is a word that ſignifies a place, not only ſet a-part for the exerciſe of riding the great horſe, but likewiſe the exerciſe itſelf.

MANE, the hair hanging down on a horſe's neck.

MANGER, is a little raiſed bench under the rack in the ſtable, made hollow, for receiving the grain or corn that a horſe eats.

MARES, the female of the *horſe kind*.

MARK; a horſe marks, that is, he ſhews his age by a black ſpot, called the bud or eye of a bean, which appears at about five and a half, in the cavity of the corner teeth.

MARTINGAL, a thong of leather, faſtened to one end of the girths under the belly of a horſe, and at the other end to the muſs-roll, to hinder him from rearing.

MASTIGADOUR, or *Slabbering-bitt*, is a ſnaffle of iron, all ſmooth, and of a piece, guarded with *paternoſters*, and compoſed of three halfs of great rings, made into demi-ovals, of unequal bigneſs, the leſſer being incloſed within the greateſt, which ought to be about half a foot high. A *maſtigadour* is mounted with a headſtall and two reins.

MELLIT, a diſtemper in a horſe, being a dry ſcab growing upon the heels of his fore-feet.

MES-AIR, is a manage half *terra a terra*, and half corvet.

MIDDLING-TEETH *of a Horſe*, are the four teeth that come out at three years and a half, in the room of other four foal-teeth, ſeated between the nippers and the corner-teeth.

MOLTEN GREASE, is a fermentation or ebullition of pituitous and impure humous, which precipitate and diſembogue the guts, and oftentimes kill a horſe.

MONTER *a dos*, or, *a poil*; a *French* expreſſion, ſignifying, to mount a horſe bare backed, or without a ſaddle.

MOON-EYES; a horſe is ſaid to have moon-eyes when the weakneſs of his eyes increaſes or decreaſes, according to the courſe of the

the moon; ſo that in the wane of the moon his eyes are muddy and troubled, and at new moon clear up; but ſtill he is in danger of loſing his eye-ſight quite.

MOUTH *of a Horſe*, ſhould be moderately well cloven; for when it is too much, there is much difficulty to bitt a horſe ſo as that he may not ſwallow it, as horſemen term it.

MULE, MOIL, is of two ſorts, the one engendred of a *horſe* and a *female aſs*, and the other of a *male aſs* and a *mare*.

N.

NAG, *Little Nag*, or *Tit*, is a horſe of a ſmall, low ſize.

NARROW, a horſe that narrows, is one that does not take ground enough; that is, does not bear far enough out to the one hand or to the other.

NAVEL-GALL, is a bruiſe on the back of a horſe, or pinch of a ſaddle behind, which if let alone long will be hard to cure.

NEEZINGS; helps to purge a horſe's head when it is ſtopped with phlegm, cold, and other groſs humours.

NEIGHING, is the cry of a horſe. Such a horſe neighs.

NIGHT-MARE, a malady incident to horſes as well as human bodies, proceeding from a melancholy blood oppreſſing the heart.

NIPPERS, are four teeth in the fore-part of a horſe's mouth, two in the upper and two in the lower jaw.

NOSE-BAND, or *Muſ-roll*, that is, the part of a head-ſtall of a bridle that comes over a horſe's noſe.

NOSTRILS *of a Horſe*, ſhould be large and extended, ſo that the red within them may be perceived, eſpecially when he ſneezes: the wideneſs of the noſtrils does not a little contribute to the eaſineſs of breathing.

O.

OBEY; a horſe is ſaid to obey the hands and the heels, to obey the aids and helps, (*i. e.*) to know or anſwer them according to demand.

OPENING *of a Horſe's heels*, is when the ſmith, in paring the foot, cuts the heel low, and takes it down within a finger's breadth of the coronet, ſo that he ſeparates the corners of the heel, and by that means impairs the ſubſtance of the foot, cauſing it to cloſe, and become narrow at the heel.

OSSELETS, (i. e.) *little Bones*, are hard excreſcences in the knees of ſome horſes.

OVER-DONE, *over-rid*, or *over-worked*; a horſe is ſo called, when his wind and ſtrength are broke and exhauſted with fatigue.

OVER-REACH, a horſe is ſaid to over-reach when he brings his feet too far forwards, and ſtrikes his toes againſt the ſpunges of his fore-ſhoe.

OX-FEET *in a Horſe*. See *Index of Diſeaſes*.

OX-LEGS, an imperfection in ſome horſes, which, tho' they have the back-ſinew of their fore-legs ſomewhat ſeparate from the bone, yet their ſinews are ſo ſmall, and ſo little ſet off, that their legs will become round after ſmall labour.

P.

PACES *of a Horſe*; the natural paces of a horſe's legs are three, *viz.* a *walk*, a *trot*, and a *gallop*; to which may be added, an *amble*, becauſe ſome horſes have it naturally; and ſuch horſes are generally the ſwifteſt *amblers* of any.

PAINS *in Horſes*, is a diſtemper, a kind of ulcerous ſcab, full of a fretting mattery water, breeding in the paſterns, between the fetlock and the heel; which comes for want of clean keeping and good rubbing, after the horſes are come off a journey, by means of which, ſand and dirt remaining in the hair, frets the skin and fleſh, which turns to a ſcab.

PALATE, the upper part or roof of the mouth.

PALSEY *in Horſes*, a diſeaſe that ſometimes deprives the whole body of ſenſe.

PANNELS *of a Horſe*, are two cuſhions or bolſters, filled with cow's, deer's, or horſe-hair, and placed under the ſaddle, one on each ſide, touching the horſe's body, to prevent the bows or bands from galling or hurting his back.

PANTONS, or *Pantable-ſhoes*, are a ſort of horſe-ſhoes that ſerve for narrow or low heels, and to hinder the ſole from growing too much downwards, ſo that the foot may take a better ſhape.

PARE; to pare a horſe's foot, is to cut his nails, that is, the horn and ſole of the foot, with a buttrice, in order to ſhoe him.

PARTS of a horſe's body proper to bleed in:

1. It is uſual to bleed *horſes* in the *jugular veins*, which lie on each ſide the neck, for the *farcy*, *mange*, *repletion*, and ſeveral other diſtempers; and alſo by way of evacuation twice a-year,

a-year, to all horſes that feed well and labour but little.

2. Blood is uſually taken from the temples, with a ſmall lancet, for bites or blows on the eyes.

3. *Farriers* have a lancet made on purpoſe for opening of veins beneath the tongue, for *head-aches*, or for being diſguſted or over-heated by exceſſive labour, or for *cholics*, and the *vives*.

4. It is uſual to bleed horſes in the griſtle of the noſe, without any regard whether they hit the vein or not; and this is alſo for *cholics*, *vives*, and being much over-heated.

5. Horſes are let blood in the middle of the palate, above the fourth bar, with a lancet or ſharp horn, when they have been diſguſted, harraſſed, or over-heated and dull.

6. Blood is taken from the *baſilisk*, or thigh-veins of horſes, for ſtrains in the ſhoulders, or the mange in thoſe parts.

7. Horſes are blooded in the paſterns, with a fleam or a lancet, for ſtrains or infirmities in the hams or knees.

8. They are let blood in the toes, with a buttrice, or drawing iron, for beating in the feet, and infirmities in the legs, ſuch as ſwellings and oppreſſions of the nerves.

9. The flank-veins are ſometimes opened, with a ſmall lancet made for that purpoſe, for the *farcy*.

10. Blood is drawn with fleams in the flat of the thighs, for blows and ſtrains in the *haunches*.

11. They bleed in the tail or dock, with a long lancet, for a fever and purſineſs.

PASSADE is a tread, or way, that a horſe makes oftener than once upon the ſame extent of ground, paſſing and repaſſing from one end of its length to the other; which cannot be done without changing the hand, or turning and making a demi-tour at each of the extremities of the ground.

PASSAGE; to paſſage a *horſe*, is to make him go upon a walk or trot upon two piſtes or treads, between the two heels, and ſide-ways, ſo that his hips make a track parallel to that made by his ſhoulders.

PASTERN *of a Horſe*, is the diſtance between the joint of that name and the coronet of the hoof.

PATIN-SHOE, a horſe-ſhoe ſo called, under which is ſoldered a ſort of half ball of iron, hollow within: 'Tis uſed for hip-ſhot horſes, and put upon a ſound foot, to the end that the horſe, not being able to ſtand upon that without pain, may be conſtrained to ſupport himſelf upon the lame foot, and ſo hinder the ſinews from ſhrinking, and the haunch from drying up.

PAW *the Ground*; a horſe paws the ground, when his leg being either tired or painful, he does not reſt it upon the ground, and fears to hurt himſelf as he walks.

PESATE, or *Peſade*, or *Poſade*, is when a *horſe* in lifting or raiſing his fore-quarters, keeps his hind-legs upon the ground without ſtirring, ſo that he marks no time with his haunches till his fore-legs reach the ground.

PIAFFEUR, is a proud ſtately horſe, who being full of mettle, or fire, reſtleſs and forward, with a great deal of motion, and an exceſſive eagerneſs to go forwards, makes this motion. The more that you endeavour to keep him in, he bends his leg the more up to his belly: He ſnorts, traverſes, if he can, and by his fiery action ſhews his reſtiveneſs.

PICKER, is an iron inſtrument five or ſix inches long, bent or crooked on one ſide, and flat and pointed on the other, uſed by grooms to cleanſe the inſide of the manage horſes feet.

PILLAR; moſt great manages have pillars fixed in the middle of the manage-ground, to point out the center; but all manages in general have upon the ſide or circumference, other pillars placed two and two, at certain diſtances, from whence they are called the two pillars, to diſtinguiſh them from that of the center.

PINCHING is when a horſe ſtanding ſtill, the rider keeps him faſt with the bridle-hand, and applies the ſpurs juſt to the hair of his ſides.

PISSING *of Blood*, may proceed from divers cauſes; for which, with the Cure, ſee the *Index*.

PISTE, is the tread, or track, that a horſe makes upon the ground he goes over.

PLANET-STRUCK, or *ſhrew-running*, as it is called by ſome, is a diſtemper in horſes, being a deprivation of feeling or motion.

PLANTED [*with Farriers*], a term uſed of a horſe, who is ſaid to be *right planted on his limbs*, when he ſtands equally firm on his legs, and not one advanced before the other; his legs ſhould be wider above than below, that is, the diſtance between his feet ſhould be leſs than between his fore-thighs, at that part next to the ſhoulders; the knees ought not to be too cloſe, but the whole leg ſhould deſcend in a ſtrait line, to the very *paſtern-joint*, and the feet ſhould be turned neither out nor in, the paſtern being placed about two fingers breadth more backwards than the coronet.

PLATE-LONGE, is a woven ſtrap, four fathom long, as broad as three fingers, and as thick as one, made uſe of in the manage for rai-

ſing

ſing a horſe's legs, and ſometimes for taking him down, in order to facilitate ſeveral operations of the Farrier.

PLAT-VEIN, is a vein on the inſide of each fore-thigh, a little below the elbow.

POGE, a cold in a horſe's head.

POINSON, is a little point, or piece of ſharp-pointed iron, fixed in a wooden handle, which the cavalier holds in his right hand when he means to prick a leading-horſe in the croupe, or beyond the end of the ſaddle, in order to make him yerk out behind.

POINTS, or *Toes* of a bow of a ſaddle.

POINT; a horſe is ſaid to make a point, when in working upon volts he does not obſerve the round regularly, but putting a little out of his ordinary ground, makes a ſort of angle, or point, by his circular tread.

POLL-EVIL, is a ſort of *fiſtula*, or deep ulcer between the ears of the poll, or in the nape of the horſe's neck, which proceeds from corrupt humours falling upon it.

PONT-LEVIS, is a diſorderly reſiſting action, in diſobedience to his rider, in which the horſe rears up ſeveral times running, and riſes ſo upon his hind-legs that he is in danger of coming over.

PORTER, [*to carry*], uſed in the *French* manage, for directing or puſhing on a horſe at pleaſure, whether forwards, upon turns, &c.

PRESS *upon the Hand*; a horſe is ſaid to reſiſt, or preſs upon the hand, when either thro' the ſtiffneſs of his neck, or from an ardour to run too much a-head, he ſtretches his head againſt the horſe's hand, refuſes the aid of the hand, and withſtands the effects of the bridle.

To PRICK, or *pinch*, is to give a horſe a gentle touch of the ſpur, without clapping them hard to him.

PRICKER, [*Hunting-Term*], a hunter on horſeback.

PRICKT, otherwiſe called *accloyed*, *cloyed*, or *retrait*, &c. in reſpect to horſes, ſignifies only the having a prick by the negligence of the Farrier in driving the nails, by their weakneſs, ill pointing, or breaking them; which, if not preſently taken out, will, in time, break out into a foul ſore. You may diſcern it by the horſe's going lame; but if you would know it more certainly, pinch him round the hoof with a pair of pincers, and when you come to the place aggrieved he will ſhrink in his foot; or elſe you may try where he is pricked by throwing water on his hoof, for that place where he is hurt will be ſooner dry than the reſt.

PUNCH; a well-ſet, well-knit horſe, is ſhort backed, and thick ſhouldered, with a broad neck, and well lined with fleſh.

PURSINESS *in Horſes*, is a ſhortneſs of breath, either *natural* or *accidental*. The *natural* is when the horſe is cock throppled; for that his thropple or wind-pipe being ſo long, he is not able to draw his breath in and out with ſo much eaſe as other horſes do which are looſe throppled, becauſe the wind-pipe being too ſtreight, which ſhould convey the breath to the lungs, and vent it again at the noſe, makes him pant and fetch his breath ſhort; and in like manner when his pipe is filled with too much fat, or other phlegmatic ſtuff, which ſuffocates him, and makes his lungs labour the more.

PUT; 'tis uſed for the breaking or managing of a horſe; as, *Put your horſe to corvets, put him to caprioles.*

PYE-BALD *Horſe*, is one that has white ſpots upon a coat of another colour.

PYROET; ſome are of one tread or piſte, and ſome of two.

Thoſe of one tread are otherwiſe called, *Pirouettes de la tete a la queve.*

Pyroets de la tete a la queve, are entire and narrow turns made by the horſe upon one tread, and almoſt in one time, in ſuch a manner, that his head is placed where his tail was, without putting out his haunches.

Q.

QUARTER; to work from quarter to quarter, is to ride a horſe three times in end, upon the firſt of the four lines of a ſquare; then changing your hand, and riding him three times upon a ſecond; at the third line changing your hand, and ſo paſſing to the third and fourth, obſerving the ſame order.

QUARTERS *of a Saddle*, are the pieces of leather, or ſtuff, made faſt to the lower part of the ſides of a ſaddle, and hanging down below the ſaddle.

QUARTERS. *Fore-Quarters*, and *Hind-Quarters*; the fore-quarters are the ſhoulders and the fore-legs; the hind-quarters are the hips and the legs behind.

QUITTER-BONE, a hard round ſwelling upon the coronet, between a horſe's heel and the quarter, which moſt commonly grows on the inſide of the foot.

QUITTER, the matter of an ulcer or ſore.

R.

RACK, a wooden frame made to hold hay or fodder for cattle.

RACKING, a certain pace of a horſe, or a motion in going, in which he trots nor gallops, but is between both.

RAGOT, is a horſe that has ſhort legs, a broad croupe, and a ſtrong thick body.

RAISE; to raiſe a horſe upon corvets, upon caprioles, upon peſades, is to make him work at corvets, caprioles, or peſades.

RAISE is likewiſe uſed for placing a horſe's head right, and making him carry well; and hindering him from carrying low, or arming himſelf.

RAISTY, RESTIVE, a term uſed in reſpect of a horſe, when he will go neither backwards nor forwards.

RAKE; a horſe rakes, when being ſhoulder-ſplait, or having ſtrained his fore-quarters, he goes ſo lame, that he drags one of his fore-legs in a ſemicircle, which is more apparent when he trots than when he paces.

To RAKE *a Horſe*, is to draw his ordure with one hand out of his fundament, when he is coſtive, or cannot dung; in doing this the hand is to be anointed with *ſallad oil*, *butter*, or *hog's greaſe*.

RAMINGUE; a horſe called in *French* *ramingue*, is a reſtive ſort of a horſe, that reſiſts the ſpurs, or cleaves to the ſpurs, that is, defends himſelf with malice againſt the ſpurs, ſometimes doubles the reins, and frequently yerks, to favour his diſobedience.

RASE; to raſe, or glance upon the ground, is to gallop near the ground, as our *Engliſh* horſes do.

RATS-TAILS, a moſt venomous diſeaſe in horſes.

RAT-TAIL; a horſe is ſo called when he has no hair upon his tail.

RAZE; a horſe razes, or has razed, that is, his corner teeth ceaſe to be hollow, ſo that the cavity where the black mark was, is now filled up.

REARING *an End*, is when a horſe riſes ſo high before, as to endanger his coming over upon his rider.

RECHEAT, a leſſon which huntſmen wind upon the horn when the hounds have loſt their game, to call them back from purſuing a counter game.

RHEUM, is a flowing down of humours from the head, upon the lower parts.

RHEUMATIC *Eyes in Horſes*, are cauſed by a flux of humours from the brain, and ſometimes by a blow.

REINS, two long ſlips of leather faſtened on each ſide the curb or ſnaffle.

REMOLADE, is a leſs compounded *honey charge* for horſes.

RENETTE, is an inſtrument of poliſhed ſteel, with which they ſound a prick in a horſe's foot.

REPART, is to put a horſe on, or make him part a ſecond time.

REPOLON, is a demi-volt; the croupe is cloſed at five times.

REPOSTE, is the vindictive motion of a horſe, that anſwers the ſpur with a kick of his foot.

REPRISE, is a leſſon repeated, or a manage recommended.

RESTY, a reſty horſe, is a malicious unruly horſe.

RETRAITS, or *Pricks*; if a prick with a nail is neglected, it may occaſion a very dangerous ſore, and feſter ſo in the fleſh, that the foot cannot be ſaved without extreme difficulty.

RIBS *of a Horſe*, ſhould be circular and full, taking their compaſs from the very backbone.

RIDGES, or *Wrinkles of a Horſe's mouth*, are the riſings of the fleſh in the roof of his mouth, which run a-croſs from one ſide of the jaw to the other.

RIDGELING, the male of any beaſt that has been but half cut

RIG, a horſe that has had one of his ſtones cut out, and yet has got a colt.

RING-BONE *in a Horſe*, is a hard, callous, or brawny ſwelling.

RIVET, is that extremity of the nail that reſts or leans upon the horn when they ſhoe a horſe.

ROAN; a *Roan* horſe is one of a bay ſorrel, or black colour, with grey or white ſpots interſperſed very thick.

ROPE, *Cord*, or *Strap*, is a great ſtrap tied round a pillar, to which a horſe is faſtened when we begin to quicken and ſupple him, and teach him to fly from the chambriere, and not to gallop falſe.

ROPES *of two pillars*, are the ropes or reins of a caveſſon, uſed to a horſe that works between two pillars.

ROUND, or *volt*, is a circular tread.

ROUSSIN, is a ſtrong, well knit, well ſtowed horſe.

ROWEL, the goad or pricks of a ſpur.

S.

SACCADE, is a jerk more or leſs violent, given by the horſeman to the horſe in pulling or twitching the reins of the bridle all on a ſudden, and with one pull, and that when a

a horſe lies heavy upon the hand, or obſtinately arms himſelf.

SADDLE, is a ſeat upon a horſe's back, contrived for the conveniency of the rider.

SADDLE-GALL; when a horſe's back is hurt or fretted by the ſaddle.

SALLENDERS, are chops or mangy ſores in the bending of the horſe's hough.

SAULTS, the leaping or prancing of horſes, a kind of curveting.

SCAB, or *itch*, a diſtemper in horſes, proceeding from their being over-heated, and corrupt blood.

SCABBARD, is the skin that ſerves for a ſheath or caſe to a horſe's yard.

SCABBED HEELS *in Horſes*, a diſtemper, called alſo the *fruſh*.

SCATCH-MOUTH, is a bitt-mouth, differing from a cannon-mouth in this, that the cannon is round, and the other more oval.

SEAMS, SEYMES, *in Horſes*, are certain clifts in their quarters, cauſed by the dryneſs of the foot, or by being ridden upon hard ground.

SEAT, is the poſture or ſituation of a horſeman.

SEELING; a horſe is ſaid to *ſeel*, when, upon his eye-brows, there grow white hairs, mixed with thoſe of his uſual colour.

SEVIL *of the branches of a bridle*, is a nail turned round like a ring, with a large head made faſt in the lower part of the branch, called *gargouille*.

SHAMBRIER, or *Chambriere*, is a long thong of leather, made faſt to the end of a cane or ſtick, in order to animate a horſe, and puniſh him if he refuſes to obey the rider.

SHANK, *in a horſe*, is that part of the fore-leg, which is between the knee and ſecond joint, next to the foot, called a fet-lock, or paſtern joint,

SHORT-JOINTED; a horſe is ſaid to be ſhort-jointed that has a ſhort paſtern.

SHOULDER *of a Horſe*, is the joint in the fore-quarters that joins the end of the ſhoulder-blade with the extremity of the fore-thigh.

SHOULDER-PIGHT *in a Horſe*, is a malady, being the diſplacing of the point of the ſhoulder by ſome great fall, rack, or pain, which may be known by one ſhoulder-point's ſticking out farther than its fellow.

SHOULDER-PINCHING, a misfortune that befals a horſe by labouring or ſtraining when too young, or by being over-loaded.

SIDE; to ride a horſe ſide-ways, is to paſſage him, to make him go upon two treads, one of which is marked by his ſhoulders, and the other by his haunches.

SIGUETTE, is a caveſſon with teeth or notches; that is, a ſemi-circle of hollow and vaulted iron, with teeth like a ſaw.

SINEW, to *unſinew a horſe*, is to cut the two ſinews on the ſide of his head.

SINEW *ſprung*, is a violent attaint, or overreach, in which a horſe ſtrikes his toe, or hinder-feet, againſt the ſinew of his fore-leg.

SKITTISH *Horſe*, is one that leaps inſtead of going forward, and does not ſet out or part from the hand freely, nor employ himſelf as he ought to do.

SLACK *a leg*, is ſaid of a horſe, when he trips or ſtumbles.

SNAFFLE, or *ſmall watering bitt*, is commonly a ſcatch-mouth accounted, with two very little ſtrait branches, and a curb, mounted with a head-ſtall, and two long reins of *Hungary* leather.

SNORT, is a certain ſound, that a horſe, full of fire, breaths through his noſtrils, and ſounds as if he had a mind to expel ſomething that is in his noſe, and hindred him from taking breath.

SOLE *of a Horſe*, is a nail, or ſort of horn, that is much tenderer than the other horn that encompaſſes the foot, and by reaſon of it's hardneſs, is properly called the horn or hoof.

SORRANCES; maladies incident to horſes.

SPAVIN, a diſeaſe among horſes, which is a ſwelling or ſtiffneſs in the hams.

SPEAR; the feather of a horſe.

SPLENTS; a diſeaſe in horſes, which is a callous, hard, inſenſible ſwelling, or a hard griſtle, breeding on the ſhank bone. It ſpoils, in time, the Shape of the Leg.

SPUNGE *of a Horſe-ſhoe*, is the extremity or point of the ſhoe that anſwers to the horſe's heel.

STARS, are diſtinguiſhing marks in the fore-heads of horſes.

STEP *and* LEAP, is one of the ſeven airs, or artificial motions of a horſe.

STIFLE *in a Horſe*, a large muſcle, or that part of the hind-leg which advances towards his belly, and is a moſt dangerous part to receive a blow upon.

STONE-BRUISING, a misfortune that befals the cods of a horſe.

STOP, is a pauſe or diſcontinuation.

STRAIN, SPRAIN, a misfortune that befals a horſe when his ſinews are ſtretched beyond their due tone.

STRING-HALT [*in a Horſe*]; an imperfection which is a ſudden twitching or ſnatching up of his hinder leg.

STUD; a place where ſtallions and mares are kept to propagate their kind.

SUMPTER-HORSE; a horſe that carries proviſions and neceſſaries for a journey.

SOLE *of a Horſe*, is, as it were, a plate of horn,

horn, which encompaſſing the fleſh, covers the whole bottom of the foot.

SORREL, is a reddiſh colour, with which the mane ought to be red or white; it is diſtinguiſhed, according to the degrees of it's deepneſs, into a burnt ſorrel, and a bright or light ſorrel; but, generally ſpeaking, 'tis the ſign of a good horſe.

SOUND; a horſe is ſuch that does not halt.

T.

TEDDER, TETHER, a rope wherewith the leg of a horſe is tied, that he may graze within a certain compaſs.

TEETH, are little bones in a horſe's jaws, which ſerve not only to facilitate the nouriſhment, but likewiſe to diſtinguiſh the age of horſes.

TERRA A TERRA, or *terre a terre* is a ſeries of low leaps, which a horſe makes forwards, bearing ſide-ways, and working upon two treads.

TERRAIN, is the managed ground upon which the horſe marks his piſte or tread.

THIGHS *of a Horſeman:* The effect of the rider's thighs is one of the aids that ſerves to make a horſe work vigorouſly in the manage.

TICK, an infirmity in an horſe, when he preſſes the edge of the manger with his upper teeth.

TOE *before, and quarter behind,* [*with Farriers*] a rule which they obſerve in ſhoeing horſes.

TRAMEL, a machine for teaching a horſe to amble.

TRANCHE-FILE, is the croſs-chain of a bridle that runs along the bitt-mouth from one branch to the other,

TRAVES, a kind of ſhackles for a horſe that is in teaching to amble or pace.

TRAVERSE, a horſe is ſaid to traverſe when he cuts his tread croſs-wiſe, throwing his croupe to one ſide, and his head to the other.

TRAVICE, is a ſmall incloſure or oblong quadrangle, placed before a farrier's ſhop.

TREPINGER, is the action of a horſe, who beats the duſt with his fore-feet in managing, without imbracing the volt; and who makes his motions and times ſhort, and near the ground, without being put upon his haunches.

TRIP, a ſtumbling, a falſe ſtep.

TRUSSED; a horſe is ſaid to be well truſſed, when his thighs are large, and proportioned to the roundneſs of the croup.

TUEL; the fundament of a horſe.

TURN, is a word commonly uſed by the Riding-Maſters, when they direct their ſcholars to change hands.

TURNING *ſtraight* [*in the Manage*], an artificial motion of a horſe.

TUSHES, are the fore teeth of a horſe, ſeated beyond the corner teeth, upon the bars.

TWIST; the inſide, or flat part of a man's thigh; upon which a true horſeman reſts upon horſe-back.

TROT, is one of the natural paces of a horſe.

V.

VARISSE, [*in Horſes*] an imperfection upon the inſide of the ham, a little diſtant from the curb, but about the ſame height.

To VAULT *a ſhoe*, is to forge it hollow, for horſes that have high and round ſoles.

UNITE; a horſe is ſaid to unite, or walk in union, when in galloping the hind-quarters follow and keep time with the fore.

VOLT, ſignifies a round or circular tread.

URINE; a ſerous or wateriſh excrement derived from the blood, which paſſes from the reins, and is diſcharged through the bladder.

W.

WALK, is the ſloweſt, and leaſt raiſed of a horſe's goings.

WIND-GALLS, a diſeaſe, being bladders full of a corrupt jelly.

WIND-GALL, is a ſoft ſwelling, occaſioned bp over-working, juſt by the horſe's fetlock.

WITHERS *of a Horſe* begins where the mane ends, being joined to, and ending at the tip of the ſhoulder-blades.

WITHER-WRUNG; a horſe is ſaid to be wither-wrung when he has got a hurt in the withers.

Y.

YARD-FALLEN; a malady in a horſe which proceeds from want of ſtrength to draw it up within the ſheath.

YIELD, is to ſlack the bridle, and give the horſe head.

Z.

ZAIN, is a horſe of a dark colour, neither grey nor white, and without any white ſpot or mark upon him.

FINIS.